METHODS FOR COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS OF AQUATIC BIOLOGICAL AND MICROBIOLOGICAL SAMPLES

Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations
of the United States Geological Survey

Book 5, Chapter A4

›en-File Report 88-190

METHODS FOR COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS OF AQUATIC BIOLOGICAL AND MICROBIOLOGICAL SAMPLES

By L. J. Britton and P. E. Greeson, Editors

Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations
of the United States Geological Survey
Book 5, Chapter A4

Open-File Report 88-190

Lakewood, Colorado

1988

DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR

DONALD PAUL HODEL, Secretary

U.S. GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

Dallas L. Peck, Director

For additional information
write to:

District Chief
U.S. Geological Survey
Water Resources Division
Box 25046, Mail Stop 415
Federal Center
Denver, CO 80225-0046

Copies of this report can
be purchased from:

U.S. Geological Survey
Books and Open-File Reports
Federal Center, Bldg. 810
Box 25425
Denver, CO 80225-0425

PREFACE

The series of chapters on techniques describes methods used by the U.S. Geological Survey for planning and conducting water-resources investigations. The material is arranged under major subject headings called books and is further subdivided into sections and chapters. Book 5 is on laboratory analysis. Section A is on water. The unit of publication, the chapter, is limited to a narrow field of subject matter. "Methods for Collection and Analysis of Aquatic Biological and Microbiological Samples" is the fourth chapter to be published under Section A of Book 5. The chapter number includes the letter of the section.

This chapter was prepared by several aquatic biologists and microbiologists of the U.S. Geological Survey to provide accurate and precise methods for the collection and analysis of aquatic biological and microbiological samples.

Use of brand, firm, and trade names in this chapter is for identification purposes only and does not constitute endorsement by the U.S. Geological Survey.

This chapter supersedes "Methods for Collection and Analysis of Aquatic Biological and Microbiological Samples" edited by P.E. Greeson, T.A. Ehlke, G.A. Irwin, B.W. Lium, and K.V. Slack (U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, Book 5, Chapter A4, 1977) and also supersedes "A Supplement to--Methods for Collection and Analysis of Aquatic Biological and Microbiological Samples" by P.E. Greeson (U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, Book 5, Chapter A4), Open-File Report 79-1279, 1979.

CONTRIBUTORS

BACTERIA

T.A. Ehlke
G.G. Ehrlich
P.E. Greeson
R.T. Kirkland
G.E. Mallard

PERIPHYTON

R.C. Averett
P.E. Greeson
G.A. Irwin
B.W. Lium
D.B. Radtke
W.T. Shoaf
F.J. Triska

CELLULAR CONTENTS

P.E. Greeson
B.W. Lium
L.E. Lowe
W.T. Shoaf

PHYTOPLANKTON

J.E. Cloern
P.E. Greeson
H.V. Leland
R.G. Lipscomb
B.W. Lium
W.T. Shoaf
L.J. Tilley

MACROPHYTES

V.P. Carter
P.E. Greeson
R.G. Lipscomb
P.T. Gammon

PRODUCTIVITY

B.E. Cole
V.J. Janzer
J.R. Knapton
L.J. Schroder, II
K.V. Slack
D.W. Stephens
F.J. Triska

ZOOPLANKTON

L.J. Britton
R.F. Ferreira
P.E. Greeson
J.W. LaBaugh

BENTHIC INVERTEBRATES

S.S. Hahn
K.V. Slack
L.J. Tilley

BIOASSAY

G.A. McCoy
B.W. Lium
W.T. Shoaf

SESTON

P.E. Greeson
K.V. Slack

AQUATIC VERTEBRATES

R.C. Averett
J.L. Barker
G.A. Irwin

SELECTED TAXONOMIC REFERENCES

K.V. Slack
I.G. Sohn

CONTENTS

CONTENTS--Continued

CONTENTS--Continued

FIGURES

FIGURES--Continued

TABLES

TABLES--Continued

CONVERSIONS FACTORS

Metric units (International System) in this report may be converted to inch-pound units by using the following conversion factors:

Multiply metric unit	By	To obtain inch-pound unit
centimeter (cm)	0.3937	inch
cubic meter (m^3)	35.31	cubic foot
gram (g)	0.03527	ounce, avoirdupois
gram per cubic meter (g/m^3)	62.45×10^{-6}	pound per cubic foot
gram per cubic meter per hour [$(g/m^3)/h$]	62.45×10^{-6}	pound per cubic foot per hour
kilogram (kg)	2.205	pound, avoirdupois
kilogram per square centimeter (kg/cm^2)	14.22	pound per square inch
liter (L)	0.2642	gallon
meter (m)	3.281	foot
meter per second (m/s)	3.281	foot per second
microgram (µg)	35.27×10^{-8}	ounce, avoirdupois
microliter (µL)	26.42×10^{-8}	gallon
micrometer (µm)	39.37×10^{-6}	inch
milligram (mg)	35.27×10^{-5}	ounce, avoirdupois
milliliter (mL)	26.42×10^{-5}	gallon
millimeter (mm)	0.3937	inch
square centimeter (cm^2)	0.155	square inch
square kilometer (km^2)	0.3861	square mile
square meter (m^2)	10.76	square foot
square millimeter (mm^2)	1.550×10^{-3}	square inch

Inch-pound units in this report may be converted to metric units (International System) by using the following conversion factors:

Multiply inch-pound unit	By	To obtain metric unit
acre-foot (acre-ft)	1,233	cubic meter
cubic foot per second (ft^3/s)	0.02832	cubic meter per second
foot (ft)	0.3048	meter
inch (in.)	25.4	millimeter
mile (mi)	1.609	kilometer
ounce, fluid	0.02957	liter
pound, avoirdupois (lb)	453.6	gram
pound per square inch (psi)	703.1	kilogram per square meter
square inch (in^2)	6.452	square centimeter
square mile (mi^2)	2.59	square kilometer

Degree Celsius (°C) may be converted to degree Farhenheit (°F) by using the following equation:

$$°F = 9/5\ (°C+32).$$

Degree Fahrenheit (°F) may be converted to degree Celsius (°C) by using the following equation:

$$°C = 5/9\ (°F-32).$$

The following terms and abbreviations also are used in this report:

disintegrations per minute (dpm)
gram per liter (g/L)
gram per milliter (g/mL)
liter per milligram multiplied by centimeter (L/mg)×cm
lumens per square meter (lumens/m^2)
microcurie (μCi)
microcurie per microgram (μCi/μg)
microcurie per milliliter (μCi/mL)
microgram-atoms per liter (μg-atoms/L)
microgram per liter (μg/L)
microgram per milliliter (μg/mL)
millicurie (mCi)
milligram carbon per cubic meter per day [mg(C/m^3)/d]
milligram carbon per cubic meter per hour [mg(C/m^3)/h]
milligram carbon per square meter per day [mg(C/m^2)/d]
milligram oxygen per cubic meter per day [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]
milligram oxygen per cubic meter per hour [mg(O_2/m^3)/h]
milligram oxygen per square meter per day [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]
milligram per cubic meter (mg/m^3)
milligram per liter (mg/L)
milligram per liter per acre-foot [(mg/L)/acre-ft]
milligram per square meter (mg/m^2)
milliliter per minute (mL/min)
millivolt (mV)
nanometer (nm)
revolutions per minute (r/min)
volt (V)
Watt (W)

METHODS FOR COLLECTION AND ANALYSIS OF AQUATIC BIOLOGICAL AND MICROBIOLOGICAL SAMPLES

L. J. Britton and P. E. Greeson, Editors

ABSTRACT

Chapter A4 contains methods used by the U.S. Geological Survey to collect, preserve, and analyze water to determine its biological and microbiological properties. Part 1 consists of detailed descriptions of more than 45 individual methods, including those for bacteria, phytoplankton, zooplankton, seston, periphyton, macrophytes, benthic invertebrates, fish and other vertebrates, cellular contents, productivity, and bioassays. Each method is summarized, and the applications, interferences, apparatus, reagents, analyses, calculations, reporting of results, precisions, and references are given. Part 2 consists of a glossary. Part 3 is a list of taxonomic references.

INTRODUCTION

The U.S. Department of the Interior has the basic responsibility for the appraisal, conservation, and efficient use of the Nation's natural resources, including water as a resource, as well as water involved in the use and development of other resources. As one of the several agencies of the U.S. Department of the Interior, the U.S. Geological Survey's primary responsibility in relation to water is to assess its availability and use as a natural resource. The U.S. Geological Survey's responsibility for water appraisal includes not only assessments of the location, quantity, and availability of water but also determinations of water quality. Inherent in this responsibility is the need for extensive water-quality studies related to the physical, chemical, and biological adequacy of natural and developed surface- and ground-water resources. Included, also, is the need for supporting research to increase the effectiveness of these studies.

As part of its mission, the U.S. Geological Survey is responsible for providing a large part of the water-quality data for rivers, lakes, and ground water that is used by planners, developers, water-quality managers, and pollution-control agencies. A high degree of reliability and standardization of these data is paramount.

This chapter was prepared to provide accurate and precise methods for the collection and analysis of aquatic biological and microbiological samples, primarily from freshwater. Although excellent and authoritative manuals on

aquatic biological analyses are available, their methods and procedures often are diverse. The purpose of this chapter is to provide, in a single publication, the methods used by the U.S. Geological Survey in conducting biological investigations.

The work of the U.S. Geological Survey in aquatic biology and microbiology ranges from research to the collection of biological information from onsite investigations and from a nationwide network of water-quality stations. The objectives vary so widely that it is impractical to tailor methods to fit all possible requirements. In general, the methods herein apply to the collection of biological information.

It is clear from the accelerating rate of publication of reports on the subject of aquatic biology that new and improved methods are being developed in response to man's increasing awareness of his environment. A technique that represents the state-of-the-art today may be outdated tomorrow. The author of a manual of techniques may have the impression of taking a "grab sample" from a changing stream of new developments, although it is possible t a degree to integrate the experience of the past and to select the most appropriate methods from an ever-growing number of methods.

A methods manual is only one of several tools available to the investigator. At best, it can indicate to him "how to"; it can never indicate to him "what to"; nor can it indicate to him what a specific numerical value means. Entire volumes have been written on subjects, for example, primary productivity, to which this chapter can devote only a few pages. It is emphasized that the successful investigator must keep abreast of the new developments, both in methodology and in the understanding of aquatic ecosystems.

Safety procedures, especially with use of hazardous chemicals or equipment, micro-organisms that may produce human disease, water that may contain bacteria, and radioactive substances, should be recognized and manufacturers' instructions followed when using the methods in this chapter. Special attention is called to a number of hazardous materials within the individual methods and serves to emphasize safety concerns.

PART 1: DESCRIPTION OF METHODS

BACTERIA

Introduction

Bacteria can be collected, observed, and counted directly using the highest resolution of the light microscope. A method for counting total bacteria by epifluorescence is included in this chapter; however, the method is somewhat difficult and may not be appropriate for general use. Of far greater applicability are methods whereby the bacteria in a measured volume of water are placed in contact with material on which they can grow. After a suitable time, each bacterium in the sample will multiply into an easily visible colony. The number of colonies is extrapolated from the number of bacteria in the original sample. The first method in the following section provides an approximation of the total bacterial population. Because all culture methods are selective, a total count of the bacteria in a habitat is impossible using this technique. However, uniform methods permit comparison of results by different investigators. The remaining methods given are designed to be selective for specific groups of bacteria. These methods will provide an estimate of the number of bacteria in an environment, but no information is obtained about the activity of the organisms in the ecosystem being studied.

Most-probable-number (MPN) methods, using multiple-dilution tubes, can be used to estimate the size of a bacterial population without counting either single cells or colonies (Meynell and Meynell, 1970). Several dilutions of a sample are made and aliquots are inoculated into suitable media. The method requires either that the media be selective for a specific group of bacteria and allow only those organisms to grow or that some readily identifiable product be produced. The dilutions, including the most dilute samples used, need to contain no bacterial cells of the type under study (dilution to extinction). Based on the distribution of positive and negative cultures, the MPN of bacteria in the original sample is calculated.

MPN tables are included with each applicable method. These tables are based on those published in "Standard Methods" by the American Public Health Association and others (1985); however, the tables have been modified to include the procedures specified in "Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations" methods. All MPN tables use 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL sample volumes and express MPN per 1 or 100 mL depending on how the count is to be reported. Examples included with each method illustrate the calculation of MPN if sample volumes other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL are used.

The membrane-filter (MF) method has attained widespread application in microbiology principally because it is simple and quick to perform (Bordner and others, 1977). Also, it is statistically more reliable than the MPN method. A brief discussion of the merits and limitations of the MF method are appropriate at this time because precision and accuracy are dependent to a great extent on careful attention to procedural details.

Membrane filters used in microbiology are inert plastic films about 125 μm thick. The membranes are available in a variety of chemical types, each designed for a particular application. It is imperative that the analyst select a type intended for bacterial application. Whatever the type, the membrane is about 80 percent void with pores of uniform size. Pore sizes of 0.45 or 0.7 μm (Green and others, 1975; Sladek and others, 1975; American Public Health Association and others, 1985) are the most common sizes used in microbiology because the type of bacteria most often counted is larger than 0.5 μm. Membranes with pore size less than 0.45 μm are available but are used less commonly in microbiology because of their susceptibility to clogging. Filters are manufactured in many sizes from about 13 to 293 mm in diameter, but only the 47-mm diameter size is used commonly in microbiology. The useful shelf life of membrane filters is 1 year (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

Bacterial analysis begins with sample collection, which is described in a general way in this introduction. Media and equipment preparation are described with each specific method. At some point in each method, a sample aliquot is passed through a filter. Membrane filters have a rapid flow rate initially due to the large void volume, but the filter will clog quickly if the sample is turbid. For this and other reasons, the MF method generally is not suitable for turbid waters. Even with relatively clear waters, sample filtration generally is limited to about 100 to 250 mL per filter. If it is necessary to filter a larger volume of sample, as with the isolation of Salmonella, it is permissible to divide a sample volume between several filters.

After filtration, the bacteria may be arrayed singly, paired, or in chains on the surface of the membrane. They cannot be seen without magnification; therefore, the filters must be incubated for a time sufficient for the individual cells to grow into visible colonies. After filtration, the filter is aseptically placed in a petri dish containing solid (agar) medium. Liquid-broth medium is not recommended for use in the Water Resources Division. Incubation is allowed to proceed at 35 °C for 24 to 48 hours for total coliform and fecal streptococcal bacteria or at 44.5 °C for 24 hours for fecal coliform bacteria. It is very important that the temperature be held within the limits established for each method. Recent work (Green and others, 1975) indicated that many more cells are retained on the surface of the membrane than actually grow. Use of broth media is not recommended because optimum cell growth depends on an adequate nutrient supply, and solid (agar) media have been found to yield larger colony counts than broth-grown media cultures. This is due to the larger volume (6.5 mL compared to 1.8 mL) of medium used in the agar technique. During incubation, the petri dishes generally will lose moisture and dry. This is particularly true of dry (air) incubators at 44.5±0.2 °C. The result of drying serves to inhibit bacterial growth, thus underestimating the true population. To prevent this from occurring, the petri dishes should be checked for proper sealing before incubation. Cracked dishes should be discarded.

When the individual cells have multiplied to visible colonial size (usually 24- to 48-hour incubation), the colonies must be counted. The counting procedure is based on enumerating all colonies of a specific color, regardless of size or shape. Each bacterial method has different colony

identification criteria. After a count has been made, the result is calculated and reported in terms of number of colonies per milliliter or 100 mL of sample.

Media used in many of the methods described in this manual are commercially available in a pre-mixed, dehydrated form. Unopened containers of nutrient media should not be stored for more than 1 year. The shelf life of opened containers of media is highly variable; to extend the shelf life of opened containers, the media should be stored in a dessicator.

Collection

If valid information about the number and type of bacteria present in an environment is to be obtained, care must be taken before, during, and after sampling. A valid sample will be representative of the organisms present at the site under study and will be uncontaminated by extraneous organisms. After such a soil or water sample has been obtained, it must be processed as quickly as possible and carefully maintained so the bacterial populations do not change extensively.

The study objective is of overriding importance, and the final determination of the best sampling method, frequency of sample collection, and number and distribution of sampling sites is left to the judgment of the investigator. The sites and methods used for sampling of bacteria need to correspond as closely as possible to those selected for chemical and other biological sampling.

Some of the general guidelines for collecting soil and water samples given by Hem (1985), Guy and Norman (1970), and Wood (1976, p. 1-7) can be applied to microbiological work. However, collecting valid samples for bacterial analysis is more difficult because extra care is required to avoid contamination and because micro-organisms rarely are distributed randomly. Bacteria within any habitat or microhabitat probably will have a clumped or patchy distribution. Localized differences in chemical and physical characteristics, such as Eh, pH, temperature, nutrient availability, and dissolved-oxygen concentration, will affect the size and distribution of the bacterial population.

Although guidelines for sample collection are provided in this section, it is impossible to provide detailed instructions on sample collection for all possible circumstances. More extensive discussions of microbiological sampling are given in the following:

1. Surface water--Rodina (1972), Collins and others (1973), and Skinner and Shewan (1977).

2. Ground water--Dunlap and McNabb (1973), Dunlap and others (1977), and Scalf and others (1981).

3. Soil--Black (1965), Parkinson and others (1971), and Williams and Gray (1973).

Surface Water

The location of sampling sites and the frequency of sampling are critical factors in obtaining meaningful data about bacterial density in any water body. In lakes, reservoirs, deep rivers, and estuaries, bacterial abundance may vary laterally, with depth, and with time of day. Generally, multiple samples collected at different depths and sites within a study area yield more reliable data than do single samples. Water in small, fast-flowing streams is likely to be well mixed. A point sample, collected at a single transverse position located at the centroid of flow, may be adequate (Goerlitz and Brown, 1972).

To collect a sample of water at the surface, open a sterile milk dilution bottle or equivalent sample container, grasp it near its base, and plunge it, neck downward, below the water surface. Allow the bottle to fill by slowly rotating the bottle until the neck points slightly upward. The mouth of the bottle must be directed into the current. If there is no current, as in a lake, a current should be created artificially by pushing the bottle horizontally forward in a direction away from the hand (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

Several types of microbiological sampling apparatus are available that collect a water sample at depth. Samplers of the Kemmerer or Van Dorn type have been used, but their use is discouraged; most of these devices are not autoclavable, and the metallic parts, if present, can have bacteriocidal effects if they remain in contact with the sample for a prolonged period of time. Niskin and ZoBell samplers (Rodina, 1972) collect a sample in either a sterile plastic bag or a sterile bottle. All of these sampling devices are triggered by a messenger and collect samples at one point in the water column.

Samplers, such as the D-77 and DH-80, available from the Federal Interagency Sedimentation Project, St. Anthony Falls, Hydraulic Laboratory, Minneapolis, Minn., can be used for collecting depth-integrated samples from flowing water. The sampler's nozzle and chamber are autoclavable.

Ground Water

Obtaining a valid sample of ground water for microbiological examination requires care in well construction and sampling technique. During well construction, the potential for contamination by the extraneous introduction of nutrients and bacteria needs to be minimized.

Generally, the water in the casing and in proximity to the well is not representative of the ground water at a distance from the well. Oxidation-reduction and nutrient conditions generally are different near the well where bacteria may be present in greater numbers than in the aquifer some distance from the well. There is no general rule for the number of times that water in the well casing must be cleared before collecting water samples for bacterial analysis. The volume of pumping necessary will depend on site-specific conditions and the purpose of the investigation. Public-supply, industrial, or irrigation wells, which are pumped continuously, may give the most representative sample of aquifer water.

The possibility of external contamination during sampling can be lessened by sterilizing all materials that will come in contact with the water sample; however, this may be difficult during some onsite conditions. Water within 25 ft of land surface can be collected by peristaltic and other low-volume suction pumps fitted with sterile hoses. For studies that require water samples collected deeper than 25 ft, other types of pumps must be used. Gas-powered, all-glass pumps that can be heat sterilized have been developed, but these are fragile and require special care (Tomson and others, 1980). Gas-powered squeeze pumps that fit into small-diameter wells and that may be autoclaved also have been developed (Koopman, 1979). Portable submersible pumps commonly are the most convenient sampling devices. Although they may be difficult or impossible to sterilize, these pumps can be disinfected by recirculating a chlorine solution.

Soil and Sediment

Collect soil samples using sterile procedures and place in sterile glass, polypropylene or teflon bottles, or Whirl-Pak bags. Avoid exposing soil samples to heat or drying. If the sample is not processed on the day of collection, it may be stored at 4 °C for 1 to 2 weeks in the closed container, provided that the container is pinholed for aeration. Just prior to processing, pass the entire sample through a 10-mesh sieve (2,000 μm) and mix thoroughly before taking an aliquot for analysis. If desired, a separate subsample may be taken for determination of dry weight (Clark, 1965).

Bottom-material sampling devices suitable for use in anaerobic environments are available. The simplest device, useful in soft muds and mucks, consists of a length of thin-wall plastic or metal tubing. The tube is pushed into the soil to the desired depth, and the open end is sealed with a rubber stopper. The entire assembly then is withdrawn. The core should remain in place because of the suction effect exerted by the closed air chamber above the core. In deep water, a remote-operating core sampler, such as the K-B type (Wildlife Supply Co., or equivalent), may be required. Fine-grained material may be sampled by inserting a large bore hypodermic syringe or cannula through holes drilled through the side of the coring tube. If a core is to be subdivided, contaminants from the coring device should be removed by trimming the perimeter of the core with sterile instruments.

Sample Containers

Samples for microbiological examination must be collected and held in containers that have been carefully cleaned and sterilized by autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for at least 15 minutes. Narrow-mouth bottles (milk dilution) are the preferred sample containers. Caps or stoppers must be loosened during autoclaving to allow the steam to contact all surfaces. Alternatively, dry glassware may be sterilized in a hot air oven at 170 °C for a minimum of 2 hours. Presterilized plastic bags (Whirl-Pak, or equivalent) are commercially available and may be suitable for soil or bottom-material samples but are not recommended for collection of water samples for bacterial analysis.

Sample containers must be constructed of a material that can be sterilized and that is resistant to the solvent action of water. Borosilicate glass or plastic that can be autoclaved without distortion or the production of toxic compounds are acceptable materials. Containers made of polypropylene and teflon are autoclavable.

Containers may be of any suitable size and shape; they must allow a sufficient volume of sample to be collected and maintain the sample uncontaminated until analyses are complete. When the sample is collected, ample air space must be left in the container to facilitate mixing of the sample by shaking.

Bottle closures must be water tight. Ground-glass-stoppered bottles are acceptable, as are bottles with plastic screwcap closures, provided that, during sterilization, no bacteriostatic or nutritive compounds are produced.

Dechlorination

A dechlorinating agent should be added to sample bottles used to collect water containing residual chlorine. Sodium thiosulfate is a satisfactory dechlorinating agent that will neutralize any residual chlorine and prevent continuing bacteriocidal action prior to sample processing. Add 0.1 mL of a 10-percent solution of sodium thiosulfate to each 120-mL sample container prior to sterilization (American Public Health Association and others, 1985). This concentration of sodium thiosulfate will neutralize a sample containing about 15 mg/L of residual chlorine.

Chelating Agent

A chelating agent should be added to water samples suspected of containing greater than 0.01 mg/L of heavy metals, such as copper, nickel, or zinc. Add 0.3 mL of a 15-percent solution of ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) tetrasodium salt to each 120-mL sample bottle prior to sterilization (Bordner and others, 1978).

Preservation and Storage

A general rule in working with micro-organisms is that the more rapidly the samples are processed, the more accurate the results will be. The chemical and biological characteristics of the sample will change during storage and no longer will be representative of conditions at the sampling site. Therefore, microbiological analysis should begin as soon as possible after collection, preferably within 1 hour and not more than 6 hours. Samples should be iced or refrigerated, but never frozen, and kept in the dark during the holding period. Sample containers should not be totally immersed in water during storage. Under no circumstances should samples be exposed to direct sunlight. If it is impossible to transport the sample to the laboratory within the required period of time, onsite analytical procedures should be considered.

References Cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Black, C. A., ed., 1965, Methods of soil analysis: Madison, Wis., American Society of Agronomy, Part 2, 1,572 p.

Bordner, R. H., Frith, C. F., and Winter, J. A., eds., 1977, Proceedings of the symposium on recovery of indicator organisms employing membrane filters: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/9-77-024, 188 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Clark, F. E., 1965, Agar-plate method for total microbial count, in Black, C. A., ed., Methods of soil analysis: Madison, Wis., American Society of Agronomy, Part 2, p. 1462-1465.

Collins, V. G., Jones, J. G., Hendrie, M. S., Shewan, J. M., Wynn-Williams, D. D., and Rhodes, M. E., 1973, Sampling and estimation of bacterial populations in the aquatic environment, in Board, R. G., and Lovelock, D. W., eds., Sampling--Microbiological monitoring of environments: New York, Academic Press, p. 77-110.

Dunlap, W. J., and McNabb, J. F., 1973, Subsurface biological activity in relation to ground-water pollution: Corvallis, Oreg., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-660/12-73-014, 60 p.

Dunlap, W. J., McNabb, J. F., Scalf, M. R., and Cosby, R. L., 1977, Sampling for organic chemicals and microorganisms in the subsurface: Ada, Okla., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/2-77-176, 26 p.

Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.

Green, B. L., Clausen, E., and Litsky, W., 1975, Comparison of the new Millipore HC with conventional membrane filters for the enumeration of fecal coliform bacteria: Applied Microbiology, v. 30, p. 697-699.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hem, J. D., 1985, Study and interpretation of the chemical characteristics of natural water (3d ed.): U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2254, 263 p.

Koopman, F. C., 1979, Downhole pumps for water sampling in small diameter wells: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 79-1264, 67 p.

Meynell, G. G., and Meynell, E., 1970, Theory and practice in experimental bacteriology: London, Cambridge University Press, 34 p.

Parkinson, D., Gray, T. R. G., and Williams, S. T., 1971, Methods for studying the ecology of soil microorganisms: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 19, 116 p.

Rodina, A. G., 1972, Methods in aquatic microbiology: Baltimore, University Park Press, 461 p.

Scalf, M. R., McNabb, J. F., Dunlap, W. J., Cosby, R. L., and Fryberger, J. S., 1981, Manual of ground-water quality sampling procedures: Worthington, Ohio, National Water Well Association, 93 p.

Skinner, F. A., and Shewan, J. M., eds., 1977, Aquatic microbiology: New York, Academic Press, 369 p.

Sladek, K. J., Suslavich, R. V., Sohn, B. I., and Dawson, F. W., 1975, Optimum membrane structures for growth of coliform and fecal coliform organisms: Applied Microbiology, v. 30, p. 685-691.

Tomson, M. B., Hutchins, S., King, J. M., and Ward, C. H., 1980, A nitrogen powered continuous delivery, all-glass-teflon pumping system from below 10 meters: Groundwater, v. 18, p. 444-446.

Williams, S. T., and Gray, T. R. G., 1973, General principles and problems of soil sampling, in Board, R. G., and Lovelock, D. W., eds., Sampling--Microbiological monitoring of environments: New York, Academic Press, p. 111-121.

Wood, W. W., 1976, Guidelines for collection and field analysis of ground-water samples for selected unstable constituents: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 1, chap. D2, 24 p.

Standard Plate Count (Membrane-Filter Method)
(B-0001-85)

Parameter and Code:
Total plate count, TPC medium, 35 °C, 24 hours
(colonies/mL): 31751

The standard plate count is an empirical method for estimating the aerobic, heterotrophic bacterial population in a water sample. Because the nutrient and environmental requirements of certain bacteria are unique, the colony counts derived by this method generally underestimate the natural population. Anaerobic bacteria and many species of autotrophic bacteria will not grow on the specified medium, and for these, other methods must be used.

1. Applications

The method is applicable for all water with a dissolved-solids concentration of less than 20,000 mg/L. The test is performed using the agar-plate method (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

2. Summary of method

The sample is filtered onsite immediately after collection, and the filter is placed on tryptone glucose extract (TPC) agar. After incubation at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours, the colonies are counted. Staining is used to enhance the contrast between the bacterial colonies and the filter.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended materials may not permit the filtration of sample volumes sufficient to produce significant results. Water samples with a large suspended-solids concentration may be divided between two or more membrane filters.

3.2 Some species of bacteria and fungi exhibit a spreading type of growth, and a single colony may cover the entire surface of the filter, obscuring other colonies.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

Figure 1.--Portable water laboratory. (Photograph courtesy of Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass.)

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.4 Bottles, serum.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.8 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.9 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.11 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.12 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.13 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45-µm pore size, 47-mm diameter, and absorbent pads.

4.14 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.15 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.18 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.19 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.20 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

Figure 2.--Portable heaterblock incubator. (Photograph courtesy of Millipore Corp., Bedford, Mass.)

4.21 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.22 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.4 Methyl alcohol, absolute, for sterilizing filter-holder assembly.

5.5 Methylene blue staining solution. Add 3 g methylene blue dye to 300 mL of 95-percent ethyl alcohol. Dissolve 0.1 g of potassium hydroxide (KOH) in 1 L of distilled water. Add to the alcoholic methylene blue solution and mix well.

5.6 Tryptone glucose extract agar. Prepare medium according to manufacturer's instructions, using agar. Heat while stirring vigorously until the solution becomes clear. Remove from heat immediately when clear. (Prevent scorching or boiling over of the medium.) The agar must be dispensed into suitably capped containers and sterilized in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes before the medium is added to presterilized petri dishes (see 6.1).

6. Analysis

The volume of the sample to be filtered depends on the expected bacterial density of the water being tested, but the volume should be enough that, after incubation, at least one of the membrane filters will contain from 20 to 150 colonies. When there are no existing data on the bacterial density of a given sample, the quantities must be determined by trial. The following guidelines may be helpful for unknown water: unpolluted ground water, 10- and 50-mL samples; unpolluted surface water, 0.001-, 0.01-, 0.1-, and 1-mL samples.

6.1 Pour the agar medium at 45 to 50 °C into a petri dish bottom to a depth of about 4 mm (6-7 mL). Replace petri dish tops (not tightly, to prevent excessive condensation) and allow agar to solidify.

6.2 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 1). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 1: Onsite sterilization of filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.3 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 2), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 2: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.4 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.4.1 If the volume of sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane.

6.4.2 If the volume of the sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.4.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.4.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.5 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.6 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.7 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the agar in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.8 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.9 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.10 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the agar. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the agar again.

6.11 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.12 Incubate the filters in the tightly closed petri dishes in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium.

6.13 After incubation, saturate an absorbent pad with 1.8 mL of methylene blue staining solution.

6.14 Transfer incubated filter with developed colonies to the newly saturated pad and wait 15 minutes.

6.15 Count the colonies, which will be dark blue against a lighter color background. The counts are best made using 10X to 15X magnification. Illumination is not critical.

6.16 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 150, use the equation:

$$\text{Colonies/mL} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted}}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}} .$$

7.2 If all filters have colony counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 150 colonies, calculate using the equations in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as number per milliliter, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters contain colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) the calculated value.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 150 for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts for all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\begin{array}{r} \text{Volume filter 1} \\ +\ \text{Volume filter 2} \\ \hline \text{Volume sum} \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} \text{Colony count filter 1} \\ +\ \text{Colony count filter 2} \\ \hline \text{Colony count sum} \end{array}$$

$$\text{Colonies/mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum}}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the total colonies per milliliter for each volume filtered and then average the results.

8. Reporting of results

Report number of colonies per milliliter to two significant figures and designate as "standard plate count at 35 °C." Never report a count as less than one.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Total Coliform Bacteria (Membrane-Filter Method)

Immediate Incubation Test
(B-0025-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, membrane filter, immediate M-Endo medium
(colonies/100 mL): 31501

The standard test for presence of members of the coliform group may be made by using the following membrane-filter method or by using the multiple-tube test described in the "Presumptive Test," "Presumptive Onsite Test," and "Confirmation Test" subsections in the "Total Coliform Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)" section, or in Bordner and others (1978) and American Public Health Association and others (1985).

The coliform group is defined as the aerobic and facultative anaerobic, gram-negative, nonspore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria that ferment lactose with gas formation at 35 °C within 48 hours. For the purposes of the methods described in the following paragraphs, the coliform group is defined as all the organisms that produce colonies with a golden-green metallic sheen when incubated at 35 °C on M-Endo medium within 24 hours.

1. Applications

The membrane-filter method is applicable to fresh and saline water. The test is performed using the agar-plate method.

2. Summary of method

The sample is filtered onsite immediately after collection, and the filter is placed on a nutrient medium designed to stimulate the growth of members of the coliform group and to suppress the growth of most noncoliform organisms. After incubation at 35±0.5 °C for 22 to 24 hours, the colonies are counted.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended materials may inhibit the filtration of sample volumes sufficient to produce significant results. Coliform colony formation on the filter may be inhibited by large numbers of noncoliform colonies, by the presence of algal filaments and detritus, or by toxic substances.

3.2 Water samples having a large suspended-solids concentration may be divided between two or more membrane filters. The multiple-tube test, which is described in this chapter, will give the most reliable results when suspended-solids concentration are large and coliform counts are small.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.4 Bottles, serum.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.8 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.9 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.11 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.12 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.13 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45- or 0.7-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter, and absorbent pads.

4.14 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.15 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.18 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.19 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.20 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.21 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.22 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deonized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.4 M-Endo agar. Add 4.8 g of M-Endo broth MF to 100 mL 2 percent nondenatured ethyl alcohol, then add 1.5 g agar. Stir well and place the beaker containing the medium in a boiling water bath and heat the medium to 96 °C, stirring constantly. Do not autoclave the medium. When the medium begins to boil, promptly remove from heat and cool to 45 to 50 °C. Pour

to a depth of 4 mm (6-7 mL) in 50-mm petri dish bottoms. When the medium solidifies, store the prepared petri dishes at 2 to 10 °C for a maximum period of 4 to 5 days.

5.5 Methyl alcohol, absolute, for sterilizing filter-holder assembly.

6. Analysis

The volumes of the sample to be filtered depend on the expected bacterial density of the water being tested, but the volumes should be enough that, after incubation, at least one of the membrane filters will contain from 20 to 80 total coliform colonies and not more than 200 of all types (total coliform plus noncoliform colonies). It is extremely important that the limitation on total coliform colonies be observed, otherwise the medium used in the method may not support development of the characteristic metallic sheen. If the upper limit of 80 total coliform colonies per membrane filter is exceeded, interferences from crowding, deposits of extraneous material, and other factors will give questionable results.

The lower limit of 20 total coliform colonies per membrane filter is arbitrarily set as a number below which statistical validity becomes questionable. However, even with a bacterial population of 200 or fewer colonies (coliform plus noncoliform) per 100 mL of sample, fewer than 20 total coliform colonies will be present on the membrane filter of some samples.

The following sample volumes are suggested for filtration:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 0.4-, 1.5-, 6-, 25-, and 100-mL samples will include a range of 20 to 80,000 total coliform colonies per 100 mL using the criterion of 20 to 80 total coliform colonies on a filter as an ideal determination.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.002-, 0.006-, 0.025-, 0.1-, 0.4-, and 1.6-mL samples will include a range of 1,200 to 4,000,000 total coliform colonies per 100 mL.

6.1 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 1). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 1: Onsite sterilization of filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.2 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 2), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 2: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.3 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.3.1 If the volume of sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane.

6.3.2 If the volume of the sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.3.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.3.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.4 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.5 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.6 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the agar in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.7 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.8 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.9 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the agar. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the agar again.

6.10 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.11 Incubate the filters in the tightly closed petri dishes in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 35±0.5 °C for 22 to 24 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium.

6.12 Using forceps, remove the filters and allow to dry for at least 1 minute on an absorbent surface. Membranes that have colonies having poor sheen production can be allowed to dry completely. This will enhance sheen production.

6.13 Count the number of coliform sheen colonies, that is, dark colonies having a golden-green metallic sheen. The sheen may cover the entire colony or appear only in a central area or on the periphery. The color plate in Millipore Corp. (1973, p. 42) may be helpful in identifying total coliform colonies. The counts are best made using 10X to 15X magnification. Place the illuminator (fluorescent) as directly above the filter as possible.

6.14 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 80, use the equation:

$$\text{Total coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted} \times 100}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}} .$$

7.2 If all filters have counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 80 colonies, calculate using the equations in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as number per 100 mL, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters develop characteristic total coliform colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 80 total coliform colonies for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts for all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\frac{\begin{array}{r}\text{Volume filter 1} \\ + \text{Volume filter 2}\end{array}}{\text{Volume sum}} \qquad \frac{\begin{array}{r}\text{Colony count filter 1} \\ + \text{Colony count filter 2}\end{array}}{\text{Colony count sum}}$$

$$\text{Total coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum} \times 100}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the total coliform colonies per 100 mL for each volume filtered and then average the results.

8. Reporting of results

Report total coliform concentration as total coliform colonies per 100 mL, M-Endo immediate incubation at 35 °C as follows: less than 10 colonies, whole numbers; 10 or more colonies, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Millipore Corp., 1973, Biological analysis of water and wastewater: Bedford, Mass., Application Manual AM302, 84 p.

Total Coliform Bacteria (Membrane-Filter Method)

Delayed Incubation Test
(B-0030-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, membrane filter, delayed M-Endo medium
(colonies/100 mL): 31503

The delayed incubation test is not a substitute for the immediate incubation test. Results obtained from these two tests are not comparable.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to fresh and saline water. It is used when it is not possible to begin incubation of samples at the specified temperature within 6 hours of collection. Within 72 hours, the membranes must be transferred to a nutrient medium and normal incubation started. The applicability of the delayed incubation test for a specific water source can be determined by comparative test procedures with conventional methods.

2. Summary of method

The sample is filtered onsite immediately after collection, and the filter is placed on a holding medium and shipped to the laboratory. The holding medium maintains the viability of the coliform organisms and generally does not permit visible growth during the time of transit. The coliform determination is completed in the laboratory by transferring the membrane to a growth medium, incubating at 35±0.5 °C for 20 to 22 hours, and counting the typical coliform colonies.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended materials may inhibit the filtration of sample volumes sufficient to produce significant results. Coliform colony formation on the filter may be inhibited by large numbers of noncoliform colonies, by the presence of algal filaments and detritus, or by toxic substances.

3.2 Water samples having a large suspended-solids concentration may be divided between two or more membrane filters.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.4 Bottles, serum.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.8 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.9 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.11 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.12 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.13 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45- or 0.7-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter, and absorbent pads.

4.14 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.15 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.18 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.19 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.20 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.21 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.22 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Cyclohexamide. Dissolve 500 mg of cyclohexamide in 10 mL distilled water. The cyclohexamide solution needs to be refrigerated; storage should not exceed 6 months.

CAUTION.--Cyclohexamide is a powerful skin irritant and needs to be handled according to the manufacturer's directions. Add 1 mL of cyclohexamide solution to 100 mL of M-Endo preservative medium described in 5.6.

5.3 Distilled or deonized water.

5.4 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.5 M-Endo agar. Add 4.8 g of M-Endo broth MF to 100 mL 2 percent nondenatured ethyl alcohol, then add 1.5 g agar. Stir well and place the beaker containing the medium in a boiling water bath and heat the medium to 96 °C, stirring constantly. Do not autoclave the medium. When the medium begins to boil, promptly remove from heat and cool to 45 to 50 °C. Pour

to a depth of 4 mm (6-7 mL) in 50-mm petri dish bottoms. When the medium solidifies, store the prepared petri dishes at 2 to 10 °C for a maximum period of 4 to 5 days.

5.6 M-Endo preservative medium. Add 4.8 g M-Endo broth MF to 100 mL 2 percent nondenatured ethyl alcohol in a beaker and stir for 3 minutes. Place the beaker on a hot plate and heat to boiling, stirring constantly. (Prevent scorching or boiling over of the medium.) When the medium reaches the boiling point, promptly remove from heat and cool to less than 45 °C. Do not sterilize by autoclaving. To 100 mL of M-Endo broth, add 3.2 mL 12 percent sodium benzoate solution. Store the finished medium in the dark at 2 to 10 °C for a maximum period of 4 to 5 days.

5.7 Methyl alcohol, absolute, for sterilizing filter-holder assembly.

5.8 Sodium benzoate solution, 12 percent. Dissolve 12 g sodium benzoate ($C_7H_5NaO_2$) in sufficient distilled water to make 100 mL. Sterilize by filtration through a 0.45-μm pore-size membrane filter or autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Discard unused solution after 6 months.

6. Analysis

The volumes of sample to be filtered depend on the expected bacterial density of the water being tested, but the volumes should be enough that, after incubation, at least one of the membrane filters will contain from 20 to 80 total coliform colonies and not more than 200 of all types (total coliform plus noncoliform colonies). It is extremely important that the limitation on total coliform colonies be observed, otherwise the medium used in the method may not support development of the characteristic metallic sheen. If the upper limit of 80 total coliform colonies per membrane filter is exceeded, interferences from crowding, deposits of extraneous material, and other factors will give questionable results.

The lower limit of 20 total coliform colonies per membrane filter is arbitrarily set as a number below which statistical validity becomes questionable. However, even with a bacterial population of 200 or fewer colonies (coliform plus noncoliform) per 100 mL of sample, fewer than 20 total coliform colonies will be present on the membrane filter of some samples.

The following sample volumes are suggested for filtration:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 0.4-, 1.5-, 6-, 25-, and 100-mL samples will include a range of 20 to 80,000 total coliform colonies per 100 mL using the criterion of 20 to 80 total coliform colonies on a filter as an ideal determination.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.002-, 0.006-, 0.025-, 0.1-, 0.4-, and 1.6-mL samples will include a range of 1,200 to 4,000,000 total coliform colonies per 100 mL.

6.1 Place a sterile absorbent pad in the bottom (larger half) of each sterile plastic petri dish using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 1).

Note 1: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.2 Saturate each pad with about 2 mL M-Endo preservative medium and tilt the petri dish to expel excess liquid. Replace petri dish tops (not tightly to prevent excessive condensation).

6.3 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 2). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 2: Onsite sterilization of filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.4 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps, place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

6.5 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.5.1 If the volume of sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane.

6.5.2 If the volume of sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.5.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.5.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.6 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.7 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.8 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the broth-soaked absorbent pad in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.9 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.10 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.11 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the saturated pad. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the absorbent pad again.

6.12 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.13 Place the petri dish containing the membrane filter in an insulated shipping container and mail. The container needs to arrive in the laboratory within 72 hours. Limited bacterial growth sometimes occurs on the preservative medium when high temperatures are encountered.

6.14 In the laboratory, transfer the membrane from the petri dish in which it was shipped to a fresh sterile petri dish containing M-Endo agar. Use sterile forceps and ensure a good contact between the filter and medium.

6.15 Incubate the filters in the tightly closed petri dishes in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 35±0.5 °C for 20 to 22 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium.

6.16 Using forceps, remove the filters and allow to dry for at least 1 minute on an absorbent surface. Membranes that have colonies having poor sheen production can be allowed to dry completely. This will enhance sheen production.

6.17 Count the number of coliform sheen colonies, that is, dark colonies having a golden-green metallic sheen. The sheen may cover the entire colony or appear only in a central area or on the periphery. The color plate in Millipore Corp. (1973, p. 42) may be helpful in identifying total coliform colonies. The counts are best made using 10X to 15X magnification. Place the illuminator (fluorescent) as directly above the filter as possible.

6.18 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 80, use the equation:

$$\text{Total coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted} \times 100}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}} .$$

7.2 If all filters have counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 80 colonies, calculate using the equations in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as number per 100 mL, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters develop characteristic total coliform colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) calculated value per 100 mL.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 80 total coliform colonies for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts for all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\begin{array}{rr} \text{Volume filter 1} & \text{Colony count filter 1} \\ + \text{Volume filter 2} & + \text{Colony count filter 2} \\ \hline \text{Volume sum} & \text{Colony count sum} \end{array}$$

$$\text{Total coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum} \times 100}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the total coliform colonies per 100 mL for each volume filtered and then average the results.

8. Reporting of results

Report the total coliform concentration as total coliform colonies per 100 mL, M-Endo delayed incubation at 35 °C as follows: less than 10 colonies, whole numbers; 10 or more colonies, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Millipore Corp., 1973, Biological analysis of water and wastewater: Bedford, Mass., Application Manual AM302, 84 p.

Total Coliform Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)

Presumptive Test
(B-0035-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, presumptive (MPN): 31507

1. Applications

This method is applicable to fresh and saline water, water having large suspended-solids concentration, and water having large populations of non-coliform bacteria.

2. Summary of method

Decimal dilutions of multiple sample aliquots are inoculated into lauryl tryptose broth. The cultures are incubated at 35±0.5 °C and examined after 24 and 48 hours for evidence of growth and gas production. The most probable number (MPN) of coliform organisms in the sample is determined from the distribution of gas-positive cultures among the inoculated tubes or serum bottles. Do not use the presumptive test unless the confirmation test (B-0045-85) also is done.

3. Interferences

Large concentrations of heavy metals or toxic chemicals may interfere when large volumes of sample are added to small volumes of concentrated lauryl tryptose broth. Certain noncoliform organisms can ferment lactose with gas formation.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.5 Culture tubes and durham (fermentation) tubes. Two combinations of culture tubes and durham (fermentation) tubes may be used. The choice will depend on the volume of water to be tested. The durham tube, used to detect gas production, must be completely filled with medium and at least partly submerged in the culture tube. The following combinations have been satisfactory:

4.5.1 For testing 10-mL aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 20×150 mm; tube caps, 20 mm; and use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 10×75 mm, as durham tubes.

4.5.2 For testing 1-mL or small aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 16×125 mm; tube caps, 16 mm; and use flint glass culture tubes, 6×50 mm, as durham tubes.

4.6 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16- and 20-mm culture tubes.

4.7 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.8 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.9 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.10 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.11 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.12 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.13 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.14 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.15 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.16 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal

eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Lauryl tryptose broth. Use premixed lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985).

5.3.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 71.2 g/L lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in a 20×150-mm culture tube for each 10-mL aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.3.2 Place 10 mL of medium containing 35.6 g/L lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in a 16×125-mm culture tube for each 1-mL or smaller aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.3.3 In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Sterilize culture tubes in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tubes during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any culture tubes in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tubes.

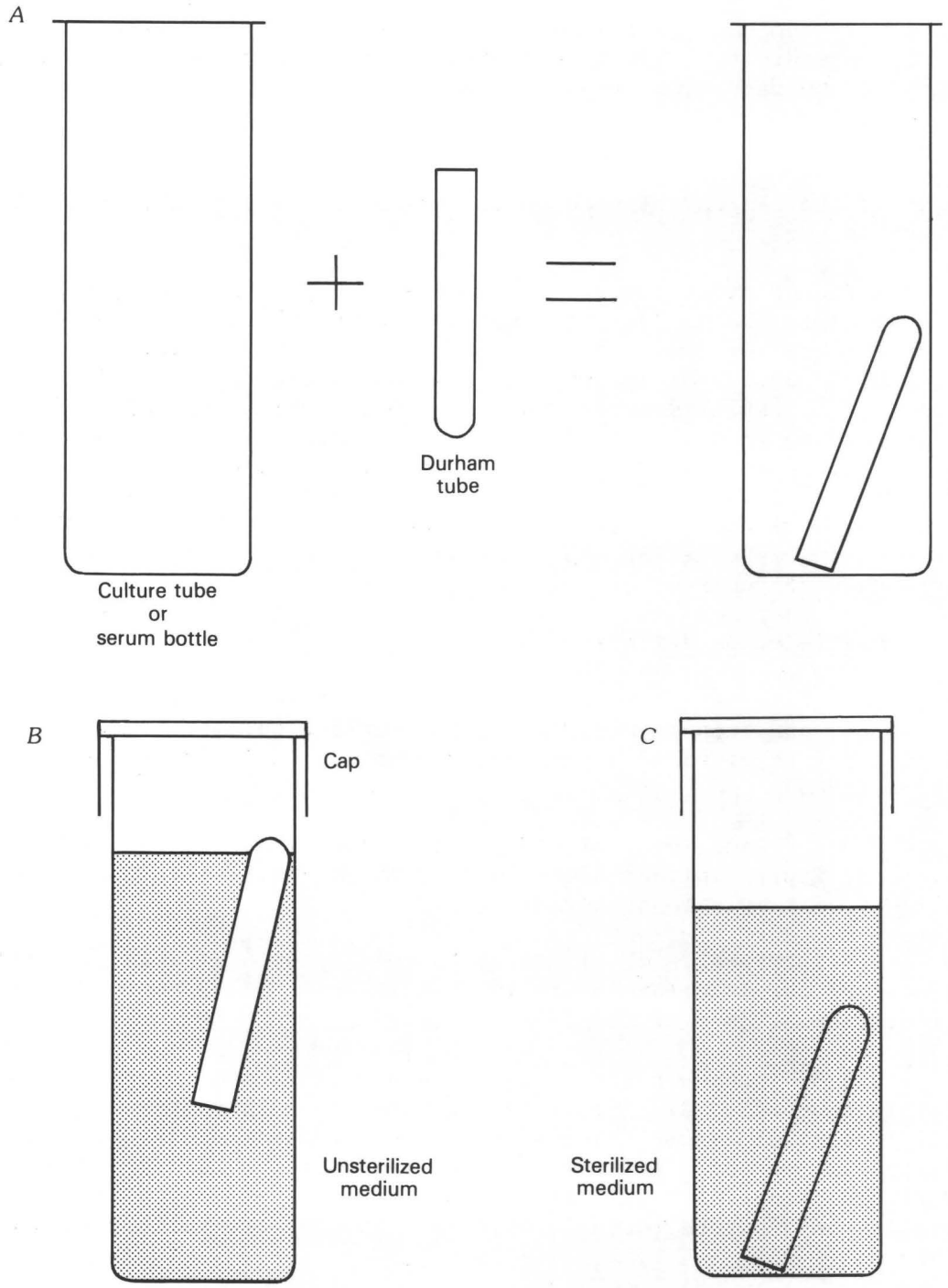


Figure 3.--Preparation of culture tube or serum bottle: (A) Invert durham tube inside culture tube or serum bottle; (B) add unsterilized medium and cap; (C) durham tube fills with medium following sterilization.

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple-tube test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many culture tubes of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of culture tubes used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of tubes inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. A five-tube series is described below. The following sample volumes are suggested:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 1-, and 10-mL samples will include an MPN range of <2 to ≥2,400 coliforms per 100 mL.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.001-, 0.01-, 0.1-, and 1-mL samples will include an MPN range of 20 to 240,000 coliforms per 100 mL.

6.1 Set up five culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth for each sample volume to be tested.

6.1.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the culture tubes using sterile pipets (Note 1).

6.1.2 If the volume of original water sample is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.1.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:10	----------	0.1 milliliter of original sample
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 1: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2 Clearly mark each set of culture tubes indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each tube for easy identification.

6.3 Place the inoculated culture tubes in the culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours. Tubes must be maintained in an upright position.

6.4 Remove culture tubes from incubator and examine. Gas in any quantity in the durham tube, even a pinhead-sized bubble, constitutes a positive test (fig. 4). The appearance of an air bubble must not be confused with actual gas production. If the gas is formed as a result of fermentation, the broth medium will become cloudy. Active fermentation may be indicated by the continued appearance of small bubbles of gas in the medium outside the durham tube when the culture tube is shaken gently (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

6.5 After submitting all gas-positive culture tubes to the confirmation test (B-0045-85), autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

6.6 Return all gas-negative culture tubes to incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for an additional 24±2 hours.

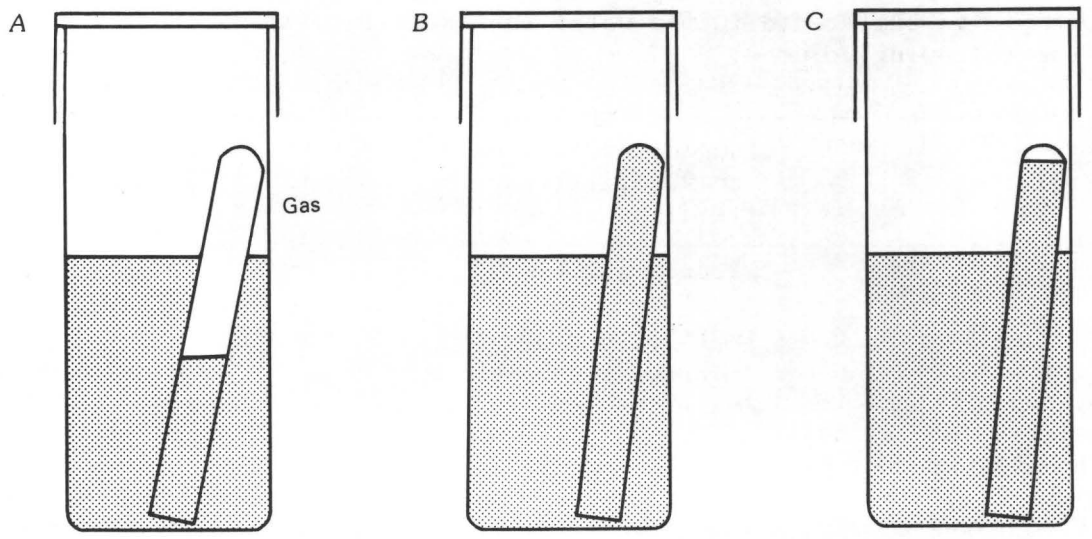


Figure 4.--Examination for gas formation: (A) Positive; (B) negative; (C) positive.

6.7 Remove culture tubes from incubator and examine for gas formation. Autoclave all remaining tubes of lauryl tryptose broth as in 6.5 before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 Record the number of gas-positive culture tubes at 24 and 48 hours occurring for all sample volumes tested.

7.2 When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.3 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive culture tubes; the denominator represents the total number of tubes inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	5/5	5/5	2/5	0/5	5-2-0
b	5/5	4/5	2/5	0/5	5-4-2
c	0/5	1/5	0/5	0/5	0-1-0
d	5/5	3/5	1/5	1/5	5-3-2
e	5/5	3/5	2/5	0/5	5-3-2

In example c, the first three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in d, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in e (Note 1).

(Note 1: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.4 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 1. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value in table 1 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value in table 1 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the culture tubes having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 1 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and numbers of tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

Table 1.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<20	---	---
0	0	1	20	<5	70
0	1	0	20	<5	70
0	2	0	40	<5	11
1	0	0	20	<5	70
1	0	1	40	<5	110
1	1	0	40	<5	110
1	1	1	60	<5	150
1	2	0	60	<5	150
2	0	0	50	<5	130
2	0	1	70	10	170
2	1	0	70	10	170
2	1	1	90	20	210
2	2	0	90	20	210
2	3	0	120	30	280
3	0	0	80	10	190
3	0	1	110	20	250
3	1	0	110	20	250
3	1	1	140	40	340
3	2	0	140	40	340
3	2	1	170	50	460
4	0	0	130	30	310
4	0	1	170	50	460
4	1	0	170	50	460
4	1	1	210	70	630
4	1	2	260	90	780
4	2	0	220	70	670
4	2	1	260	90	780
4	3	0	270	90	800
4	3	1	330	110	930
4	4	0	340	120	930

Table 1.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used--Continued

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
5	0	0	230	70	700
5	0	1	310	110	890
5	0	2	430	150	1,100
5	1	0	330	110	930
5	1	1	460	160	1,200
5	1	2	630	210	1,500
5	2	0	490	170	1,300
5	2	1	700	230	1,700
5	2	2	940	280	2,200
5	3	0	790	250	1,900
5	3	1	1,100	310	2,500
5	3	2	1,400	370	3,400
5	3	3	1,800	440	5,000
5	4	0	1,300	350	3,000
5	4	1	1,700	430	4,900
5	4	2	2,200	570	7,000
5	4	3	2,800	900	8,500
5	4	4	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	0	2,400	680	7,500
5	5	1	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	2	5,400	1,800	14,000
5	5	3	9,200	3,000	32,000
5	5	4	16,000	6,400	58,000
5	5	5	≥24,000	---	---

7.5 Example: The following results were obtained with a five-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results	5/5	5/5	3/5	1/5	0/5.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 5-3-1 for which the MPN (table 1) is 1,100. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 11×10^8 total coliform bacteria per 100 mL and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.1×10^8 and 25×10^8 total coliform bacteria per 100 mL.

8. Reporting of results

Report total coliform concentrations as MPN total coliforms per 100 mL as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of culture tubes is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of tubes increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 tubes instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of tubes from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of the number of tubes inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is given below:

Number of culture tubes at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 1.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Total Coliform Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)

Presumptive Onsite Test
(B-0040-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, presumptive (MPN): 31507

1. Applications

This method is applicable to fresh and saline water, water having large suspended-solids concentration, and water having large populations of non-coliform bacteria. It is suitable for application at the sampling site to eliminate sample transport and storage.

2. Summary of method

Decimal dilutions of multiple sample aliquots are inoculated into lauryl tryptose broth. The cultures are incubated at 35±0.5 °C and examined after 24 and 48 hours for evidence of growth and gas production. The most probable number (MPN) of coliform organisms in the sample is determined from the distribution of gas-positive cultures among the inoculated serum bottles. The method described in this section is similar to the total coliform MPN method (presumptive test, B-0035-85) except provision is made for the incubation of samples onsite. Do not use the presumptive onsite test unless the confirmed test (B-0045-85) also is done.

3. Interferences

Large concentrations of heavy metals or toxic chemicals may interfere when large volumes of sample are added to small volumes of concentrated lauryl tryptose broth. Certain noncoliform organisms can ferment lactose during gas formation.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.5 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.6 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.7 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.8 Incubator* for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.9 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.10 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.11 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.12 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.13 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.14 Serum bottles and durham (fermentation) tubes. Two combinations of serum bottles and durham (fermentation) tubes may be used. The choice will depend on the volume of water to be tested. The durham tube, 6×25 mm test tubes, used to detect gas production, must be completely filled with medium and at least partly submerged in the serum bottle. The following combinations have been satisfactory:

4.14.1 For testing 10-mL aliquots, use borosilicate glass serum bottles, 20-mL capacity.

4.14.2 For testing 1-mL or smaller aliquots, use borosilicate glass serum bottles, 10-mL capacity.

4.15 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months). Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent. Dilute 74 mL 95-percent ethyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water. Undiluted isopropanol (ordinary rubbing alcohol) may be used instead of 70-percent ethyl alcohol.

5.4 Lauryl tryptose broth. Use premixed lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985).

5.4.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 71.2 g/L lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in a 20-mL serum bottle for each 10-mL aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.4.2 Place 10 mL of medium containing 35.6 g/L lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in each 10-mL serum bottle for each 1-mL or smaller aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.4.3 In each serum bottle, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Place rubber stopper in mouth of bottle and attach aluminum seal using crimper. Sterilize bottles in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tubes during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any bottle in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube.

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple serum-bottle test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many serum bottles of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of serum bottles used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of bottles inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. A five serum-bottle series is described below. The following sample volumes are suggested:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 1-, and 10-mL samples will include an MPN range of <2 to ≥2,400 coliforms per 100 mL.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.001-, 0.01-, 0.1-, and 1-mL samples will include an MPN range of 20 to 240,000 coliforms per 100 mL.

6.1 Set up five serum bottles of lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth for each sample volume to be tested.

6.1.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the serum bottles using presterilized disposable hypodermic syringes (Note 1).

6.1.2 If the volume of original water sample is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.1.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:10	----------	0.1 milliliter of original sample
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 1: Use a sterile hypodermic syringe for each serum bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2 When using serum bottles with rubber septums, proceed as follows:

6.2.1 Remove the inserts from the metal caps and swab the exposed area of the rubber septum using a bit of cotton saturated with 70-percent ethyl alcohol, undiluted isopropanol, or disinfectant.

6.2.2 Carefully invert a serum bottle so that the rubber septum is at the bottom. Inoculate the medium by carefully puncturing the septum with the sterile hypodermic syringe and insert the needle until only the beveled tip is inside the bottle. Discharge the contents of the syringe into the bottle and withdraw the needle. Agitate the bottle gently to mix the contents.

6.2.3 Carefully return serum bottle to the normal, upright position with septum at top. Make sure that the inverted durham tube is completely filled with medium and no residual bubbles remain in the durham tube.

6.3 Clearly mark each set of serum bottles indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each bottle for easy identification.

6.4 Place the inoculated serum bottles in the incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours. Bottles must be maintained in an upright position.

6.5 Remove serum bottles from incubator and examine. Gas in any quantity in the durham tube, even a pinhead-sized bubble, constitutes a positive test (fig. 4). The appearance of an air bubble must not be confused with actual gas production. If the gas is formed as a result of fermentation, the broth medium will become cloudy. Active fermentation may be indicated by the continued appearance of small bubbles of gas in the medium outside the durham tube when the bottle is shaken gently (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

6.6 After submitting all gas-positive serum bottles to the confirmation test (B-0045-85), autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

6.7 Return all gas-negative serum bottles to incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for an additional 24±2 hours.

6.8 Remove serum bottles from incubator and examine for gas formation. Autoclave all remaining bottles of lauryl tryptose broth as in 6.6 before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 Record the number of gas-positive serum bottles occurring for all sample volumes tested.

7.2 When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.3 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive serum bottles; the denominator represents the total number of bottles inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	5/5	5/5	2/5	0/5	5-2-0
b	5/5	4/5	2/5	0/5	5-4-2
c	0/5	1/5	0/5	0/5	0-1-0
d	5/5	3/5	1/5	1/5	5-3-2
e	5/5	3/5	2/5	0/5	5-3-2

In example c, the first three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in d, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in e (Note 1).

Note 1: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.4 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 2. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value from table 2 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value from table 2 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the serum bottles having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 2 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and numbers of bottles at each level of inoculation are in the American Public Health Association and others (1985).

Table 2.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<20	---	---
0	0	1	20	<5	70
0	1	0	20	<5	70
0	2	0	40	<5	11
1	0	0	20	<5	70
1	0	1	40	<5	110
1	1	0	40	<5	110
1	1	1	60	<5	150
1	2	0	60	<5	150
2	0	0	50	<5	130
2	0	1	70	10	170
2	1	0	70	10	170
2	1	1	90	20	210
2	2	0	90	20	210
2	3	0	120	30	280
3	0	0	80	10	190
3	0	1	110	20	250
3	1	0	110	20	250
3	1	1	140	40	340
3	2	0	140	40	340
3	2	1	170	50	460
4	0	0	130	30	310
4	0	1	170	50	460
4	1	0	170	50	460
4	1	1	210	70	630
4	1	2	260	90	780
4	2	0	220	70	670
4	2	1	260	90	780
4	3	0	270	90	800
4	3	1	330	110	930
4	4	0	340	120	930

Table 2.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used--Continued

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
5	0	0	230	70	700
5	0	1	310	110	890
5	0	2	430	150	1,100
5	1	0	330	110	930
5	1	1	460	160	1,200
5	1	2	630	210	1,500
5	2	0	490	170	1,300
5	2	1	700	230	1,700
5	2	2	940	280	2,200
5	3	0	790	250	1,900
5	3	1	1,100	310	2,500
5	3	2	1,400	370	3,400
5	3	3	1,800	440	5,000
5	4	0	1,300	350	3,000
5	4	1	1,700	430	4,900
5	4	2	2,200	570	7,000
5	4	3	2,800	900	8,500
5	4	4	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	0	2,400	680	7,500
5	5	1	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	2	5,400	1,800	14,000
5	5	3	9,200	3,000	32,000
5	5	4	16,000	6,400	58,000
5	5	5	≥24,000	---	---

7.5 Example: The following results were obtained with a five serum-bottle series:

Volume (milliliters)	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results	5/5	5/5	3/5	1/5	0/5.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 5-3-1 for which the MPN (table 2) is 1,100. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 11×10^8 total coliform bacteria per 100 mL and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.1×10^8 and 25×10^8 total coliform bacteria per 100 mL.

8. Reporting of results

Report total coliform concentrations as MPN total coliforms per 100 mL as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of serum bottles is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of bottles increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 bottles instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of bottles from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of number of bottles inoculated from tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of serum bottles at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 2.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Total Coliform Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)

Confirmation Test
(B-0045-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, confirmed (MPN): 31505

All gas-positive cultures from the presumptive test (B-0035-85 or B-0040-85) need to be verified by the confirmation test. When the membrane-filter method is used, some members of the coliform group may react atypically and not produce the characteristic colonies on M-Endo medium. Thus, the identity of suspected coliform colonies need to be verified. Geldreich and others (1967) discussed verification and other aspects of the membrane-filter method.

Because coliform organisms are defined on the basis of their ability to ferment lactose with gas formation at 35±0.5 °C within 48 hours, verification is readily accomplished by using the lactose fermentation-tube method described in this section. Only a minimum of special equipment is needed. Ready-to-use sterile media are commercially available.

1. Applications

The confirmation test is applicable to all gas-positive cultures from the presumptive test and to coliform colonies produced by the membrane-filter method. Initiation of the confirmation test needs to be made immediately for gas-positive cultures from the presumptive test and as soon as possible after completion of the membrane-filter method, but not later than 24 hours.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Material from selected colonies on the membrane filters is placed in tubes of sterile lactose broth and incubated at 35±0.5 °C for 48 hours. Material from these tubes indicating gas formation within 48 hours or gas-positive cultures from the presumptive test are placed in tubes of sterile, brilliant green lactose bile broth. Gas production in the brilliant green lactose bile broth at 35±0.5 °C within 48 hours confirms the presence of coliform bacteria.

2.2 The confirmation test is compatible with the procedure described by Bordner and others (1978) and the American Public Health Association and others (1985).

3. Interferences

Certain noncoliform organisms can ferment lactose with gas formation, but their presence in this double enrichment method is unlikely.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bunsen burner, for sterilizing inoculating loop.

4.3 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.4 Culture tubes and durham (fermentation) tubes. Two combinations of culture tubes and durham (fermentation) tubes may be used. The choice will depend on the volume of water to be tested. The durham tube, used to detect gas production, must be completely filled with medium and at least partly submerged in the culture tube. The following combinations have been satisfactory:

4.4.1 For testing 10-mL aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 20×150 mm; tube caps, 20 mm; and use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 10×75 mm, as durham tubes.

4.4.2 For testing 1-mL or smaller aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 16×125 mm; tube caps, 16 mm; and use flint glass culture tubes, 6×50 mm, as durham tubes.

4.5 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16- and 20-mm culture tubes.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.8 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.9 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having a more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.10 Inoculating loop, platinum-iridium wire, 3 mm, Brown and Sharpe gauge 26.

4.11 Needle holder.

4.12 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.13 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Brilliant green lactose broth, prepackaged brilliant green lactose broth in 16×125-mm tubes and fermentation shell. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985). Use brilliant green bile, 2 percent, or brilliant green bile broth, 2 percent, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. Place 10 mL of medium in a culture tube for each colony to be tested. In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Sterilize culture tubes in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tube during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any culture tube in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube.

5.2 Lauryl tryptose broth, prepackaged lauryl tryptose broth in 16×125-mm tubes and fermentation shell, or use premixed lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985).

5.2.1 Place 10 mL of medium in a culture tube for each colony to be tested.

5.2.2 In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Sterilize tubes in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tube during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any tube in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube.

6. Analysis

6.1 Complete the membrane-filter method for total coliform bacteria according to procedures described in this chapter.

6.2 Select a colony or colonies to be confirmed for total coliform bacteria from the incubated membrane filters.

6.3 Sterilize the inoculating loop by flaming in the burner. The long axis of the wire needs to be held parallel to the cone of the flame so the entire end of the wire and loop is heated to redness.

6.4 Remove from flame and allow the wire to cool for about 10 seconds. Do not allow the inoculating loop to contact any foreign surface during the cooling period. When cool, touch the loop lightly to the colony. Part of the colony material will adhere to the wire.

6.5 Uncap a culture tube containing lauryl tryptose broth and hold it at an angle of about 45°. Insert the inoculating loop and colony material into the tube. Rub the wire loop and attached bacteria against the side of tube at the liquid meniscus to disperse the bacteria in the liquid.

6.6 Recap the culture tube. Flame the inoculating loop and inoculate additional tubes as in 6.5 until all colonies to be tested have been placed into broth in separate tubes. Place the inoculated tubes in the culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours.

6.7 Remove culture tubes from incubator and examine. Gas in any quantity in the durham tube constitutes a positive test (fig. 4). Return all gas-negative tubes to incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for an additional 24±2 hours.

6.8 Using a sterile inoculating loop, transfer one loopful of broth from each culture tube indicating gas to a culture tube of sterile brilliant green lactose broth. Sterilize the loop after each transfer.

6.9 Autoclave all gas-positive culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

6.10 Incubate the culture tubes of brilliant green lactose broth at 35±0.5 °C for 48±3 hours.

6.11 Examine the remaining culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth. Transfer one loopful of material from each tube producing gas to a culture tube of brilliant green lactose broth as in 6.8 and continue as in 6.10. If no gas appears in the tube of lauryl tryptose broth within 48±3 hours, the original colony was not of the coliform group. Autoclave all tubes of lauryl tryptose broth as in 6.9 before discarding.

6.12 Examine culture tubes of brilliant green lactose broth after 24±2 and 48±3 hours. The formation of gas in any quantity in the durham tube constitutes a positive confirmation for the presence of total coliform bacteria. If no gas appears in the tube of brilliant green lactose broth within 48±3 hours, the original colony was not of the coliform group, even though gas was produced in the tube of lauryl tryptose broth.

6.13 Culture tubes of brilliant green lactose broth need to be autoclaved as in 6.9 before discarding.

7. Calculations

No calculations are necessary.

8. Reporting of results

Results of the total coliform confirmation test are included in the results of the membrane-filter and presumptive tests for total coliform bacteria.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Geldreich, E. E., Jeter, H. L., and Winter, J. A., 1967, Technical considerations in applying the membrane filter procedure: Health Lab Science, v. 4, p. 113-125.

Fecal Coliform Bacteria (Membrane-Filter Method)

Immediate Incubation Test
(B-0050-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, fecal, 0.7-µm, M-FC media at 44.5 °C
(colonies/100 mL): 31625

Fecal coliforms are those organisms of the coliform group that are present in the intestines and feces of warm-blooded animals. They are capable of producing gas from lactose in a suitable culture medium at 44.5 °C. Bacterial organisms from other sources generally cannot produce gas when subjected to the same conditions (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

For the purpose of the method described in this section, the fecal coliform group is defined as all organisms that produce blue colonies when incubated at 44.5±0.2 °C within 24 hours on M-FC medium. The nonfecal coliform colonies are gray to cream colored.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to fresh and saline waters.

2. Summary of method

The sample is filtered onsite immediately after collection, and the filter is placed on a nutrient medium containing a pH-sensitive color indicator. Filters are incubated at a temperature of 44.5±0.2 °C for 24 hours in an incubator to suppress growth of nonfecal coliform bacteria, thereby selectively favoring growth of fecal coliforms.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended materials may inhibit the filtration of sample volumes sufficient to produce significant results. Fecal coliform colony formation on the filter may be inhibited by large numbers of noncoliform colonies, by the presence of algal filaments and detritus, or by toxic substances.

3.2 Water samples having a large suspended-solids concentration may be divided between two or more membrane filters. The multiple-tube method, which is described in this chapter, will give the most reliable results when suspended-solids concentrations are large and fecal coliform counts are small.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.4 Bottles, serum.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.8 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.9 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.10 Hydrodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.11 Hydrodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.12 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.13 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.7-μm pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.14 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.15 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.18 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.19 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.20 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.21 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.22 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.4 Methyl alcohol, absolute, for sterilizing filter-holder assembly.

5.5 M-FC agar. Add 5.2 g M-FC agar to 100 mL distilled water. Do not autoclave. Heat to 90 °C in a water bath stirring occasionally, then add 1 mL rosolic acid solution. Continue heating for a maximum of 1 minute, then remove from heat and allow to cool to 50 °C. Pour to a depth of 4 mm (6-7 mL) in 50-mm petri dish bottoms. Replace petri dish tops loosely until medium solidifies, then close tightly and store the prepared petri dishes at 2 to 10 °C for a maximum of 72 hours; preferably the medium should not be stored for more than 24 hours.

5.6 Rosolic acid solution. Add 10 mL 0.2 N NaOH to 0.10 g rosolic acid crystals. Stir vigorously to dissolve. Do not heat. Store in the dark at room temperature for a maximum of 2 to 3 weeks. Discard if color changes from deep red to orange.

6. Analysis

The volumes of the sample to be filtered depend on the expected bacterial density of the water being tested, but the volumes should be enough that after incubation, at least one of the membrane filters will contain from 20 to 60 fecal coliform colonies.

The following sample volumes are suggested for filtration:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 0.3-, 1-, 3-, 10-, 30-, and 100-mL samples will include a range of 20 to 60,000 fecal coliforms per 100 mL using the criterion of 20 to 60 coliform colonies on a filter as an ideal determination.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.01-, 0.03-, 0.1-, 0.3-, 1-, and 3-mL samples will include a range of 670 to 600,000 fecal coliforms per 100 mL.

6.1 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 1). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 1: Onsite sterilization of filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.2 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 2), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 2: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.3 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.3.1 If the volume of sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane.

6.3.2 If the volume of sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.3.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.3.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.4 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.5 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.6 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the agar surface in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.7 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.8 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.9 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the agar. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the agar again.

6.10 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.11 If using a water-bath incubator, place each petri dish in a waterproof plastic bag or seal the dish with waterproof plastic tape.

6.12 Incubate the filters in the tightly closed petri dishes in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 44.5±0.2 °C for 24±2 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium.

6.13 Count the fecal coliform colonies (blue color) within 20 minutes after the dishes have been removed from the incubator. M-FC medium is very selective, and growth of colonies other than fecal coliform is inhibited. Colonies that are not fecal coliform will be gray to cream colored. The color plate in Millipore Corp. (1973, p. 42) may be helpful in identifying fecal coliform colonies. The counts are best made using 10X to 15X magnification.

6.14 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 60, use the equation:

$$\text{Fecal coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted} \times 100}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}} .$$

7.2 If all filters have counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 60 colonies, calculate using the equations in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as number per 100 mL, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters develop characteristic fecal coliform colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 60 coliform colonies for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts for all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\begin{array}{rr} \text{Volume filter 1} & \text{Colony count filter 1} \\ + \text{Volume filter 2} & + \text{Colony count filter 2} \\ \hline \text{Volume sum} & \text{Colony count sum} \end{array}$$

$$\text{Fecal coliform colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum} \times 100}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the fecal coliform colonies per 100 mL for each volume filtered and then average the results.

8. Reporting of results

Report fecal coliform concentration as fecal coliform colonies per 100 mL as follows: less than 10 colonies, report whole numbers; 10 or more colonies, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available. However, the method gives 93-percent accuracy for differentiating between fecal coliforms and coliforms from other sources (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Millipore Corp., 1973, Biological analysis of water and wastewater: Bedford, Mass., Application Manual AM302, 84 p.

Fecal Coliform Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)

Presumptive Test
(B-0051-85)

Parameter and Code:
Coliform, fecal, EC broth at 44.5 °C (MPN): 31615

1. Applications

This method is applicable to fresh and saline water, water having large suspended-solids concentration, and water having large populations of non-coliform bacteria.

2. Summary of method

Decimal dilutions of multiple sample aliquots are inoculated into lauryl tryptose broth. The cultures are incubated at 35±0.5 °C and examined after 24 and 48 hours for evidence of growth and gas production. Positive cultures at 24 and 48 hours are transferred to EC broth, incubated at 44.5±0.2 °C for 24 hours, and examined for growth and gas production. The MPN of fecal coliform bacteria in the sample is determined from the distribution of gas-positive cultures among the inoculated EC broth culture tubes.

3. Interferences

Large concentrations of heavy metals or toxic chemicals may interfere when large volumes of sample are added to small volumes of concentrated lauryl tryptose broth.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Bunsen burner, for sterilizing inoculating loop.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Culture tubes and durham (fermentation) tubes. The sizes of the culture tube and durham tube, used for the detection of gas production, should enable the durham tube to completely fill with medium and at least partly submerge in the culture tube. The specific choice of culture tubes and durham tubes depends on the volume of water to be tested and whether the test is to be done in the laboratory or onsite. The procedure described below specifies the use of culture tubes as culture vessels. Serum bottles may be more

appropriate as culture vessels if samples are to be inoculated and incubated onsite. Apparatus needed for an onsite procedure is described in "Presumptive Onsite Test" (B-0040-85) subsection of the "Total Coliform Bacteria" section. The following combinations have been satisfactory.

4.6.1 For testing 10-mL aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 20×150 mm; tube caps, 20 mm; and use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 10×75 mm, as durham tubes.

4.6.2 For testing 1-mL or smaller aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 16×125 mm; tube caps, 16 mm; and use flint glass culture tubes, 6×50 mm, as durham tubes.

4.7 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16- and 20-mm culture tubes.

4.8 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.9 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.11 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C, or water bath, capable of maintaining a temperature of 35±0.5 °C.

4.12 Incubator, water bath, for operation at 44.5±0.2 °C. Precise, uniform temperature control is essential.

4.13 Inoculating loop, platinum-iridium wire, 3 mm, Brown and Sharpe gauge 26.

4.14 Needle holder.

4.15 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.18 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.19 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.20 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months). Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 EC medium or broth. Use premixed EC medium or broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985) (Note 1).

Note 1: Because the number of positive lauryl tryptose cultures is unknown at the time of medium preparation, it is advisable to prepare a sufficient number of culture tubes of medium to enable inoculation of the maximum number of positives.

5.3.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 37 g/L of EC medium or broth in a 20×150-mm culture tube for each culture tube or serum bottle of lauryl tryptose broth prepared in 5.4.

5.3.2 In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) 10×75-mm durham tube (fig. 3). Sterilize tubes at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tubes during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any culture tube in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube. Prepared medium may be retained at 4 °C for no longer than 96 hours.

5.4 Lauryl tryptose broth. Use premixed lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985).

5.4.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 71.2 g/L lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in a 20×150-mm culture tube for each 10-mL aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.4.2 Place 10 mL of medium containing 35.6 g/L of lauryl tryptose broth or lauryl sulfate broth in a 16×125-mm culture tube for each 1-mL or smaller aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.4.3 In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Sterilize tubes in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tube during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any tube in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube.

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple-tube test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many culture tubes of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of culture tubes used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of tubes inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. A five-tube series is described below. The following sample volumes are suggested:

1. Unpolluted raw surface water: 0.1-, 1-, and 10-mL samples will include an MPN range of <2 to ≥2,400 coliforms per 100 mL.

2. Polluted raw surface water: 0.001-, 0.01-, 0.1-, and 1-mL samples will include an MPN range of 20 to 240,000 coliform organisms per 100 mL.

6.1 Set up five culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth for each sample volume to be tested.

6.1.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the culture tubes using sterile pipets (Note 2).

6.1.2 If the volume of original water sample is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.1.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:10	----------	0.1 milliliter of original sample
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 2: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2 Clearly mark each set of culture tubes indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each tube for easy identification.

6.3 Place the inoculated culture tubes in the culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours. Tubes must be maintained in an upright position.

6.4 Remove culture tubes from incubator and examine. Gas in any quantity in the durham tube, even a pinhead-sized bubble, constitutes a positive test (fig. 4). The appearance of an air bubble must not be confused with actual gas production. If the gas is formed as a result of fermentation, the broth medium will become cloudy. Active fermentation may be indicated by the continued appearance of small bubbles of gas in the medium outside the durham tube when the culture tube is shaken gently (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

6.5 Sterilize the inoculating loop by flaming in the burner. The long axis of the wire must be held parallel to the cone of the flame so the entire end of the wire and loop is heated to redness. Remove from flame and allow wire to cool for about 10 seconds. Do not allow the loop to contact any foreign surface during the cooling period.

6.6 Gently shake and uncap a positive culture tube of lauryl tryptose broth. Insert the inoculating loop beneath the liquid surface and carefully withdraw a loopful of culture. Uncap a tube of EC broth and insert the loop beneath the medium surface. Gently swirl the loop to disperse bacteria in the medium.

6.7 Recap both culture tubes. Flame the inoculating loop and inoculate additional tubes until all positive cultures have been transferred to EC broth. Sterilize the loop after each transfer. Place the culture-tube racks of inoculated EC tubes into a water-bath incubator and incubate at 44.5±0.2 °C for 24±2 hours. Place all inoculated EC tubes in the water bath as soon as possible and always within 30 minutes.

6.8 Return remaining gas-negative culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth to the incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for an additional 24±2 hours.

6.9 Autoclave all gas-positive culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

6.10 Remove culture tubes of EC broth and examine for gas production. Gas in any quantity indicates a positive test for fecal coliforms.

6.11 Remove remaining culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth and examine for gas production. Transfer any positive cultures to EC broth and incubate as in 6.7 and 6.8.

6.12 Autoclave all gas-positive culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth and EC broth before discarding as in 6.9.

6.13 Remove remaining culture tubes of EC broth incubated in 6.11 and examine for gas production.

6.14 Autoclave all culture tubes of EC broth before discarding as in 6.9.

7. Calculations

7.1 Record the number of gas-positive culture tubes of lauryl tryptose broth and EC broth at 24 and 48 hours for all sample volumes tested. Determine presumptive MPN of total coliform bacteria from the number of positive tubes of lauryl tryptose broth. Determine MPN of fecal coliform bacteria from the number of positive tubes of EC broth.

7.2 When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (Bordner and others, 1978; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.3 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive culture tubes; the denominator represents the total number of tubes inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	5/5	5/5	2/5	0/5	5-2-0
b	5/5	4/5	2/5	0/5	5-4-2
c	0/5	1/5	0/5	0/5	0-1-0
d	5/5	3/5	1/5	1/5	5-3-2
e	5/5	3/5	2/5	0/5	5-3-2

In example c, the first three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in d, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in e (Note 3).

Note 3: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.4 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 3. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value in table 3 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value in table 3 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the culture tubes having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 3 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and numbers of tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

7.5 Example: The following results were obtained with a five-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)-----	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results-----------------	5/5	5/5	3/5	1/5	0/5.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 5-3-1 for which the MPN (table 3) is 1,100. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 11×10^{8} fecal coliform bacteria per 100 mL and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.1×10^{8} and 25×10^{8} fecal coliform bacteria per 100 mL.

8. Reporting of results

Report presumptive fecal coliform concentrations as MPN fecal coliforms per 100 mL as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures.

Table 3.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<20	---	---
0	0	1	20	<5	70
0	1	0	20	<5	70
0	2	0	40	<5	11
1	0	0	20	<5	70
1	0	1	40	<5	110
1	1	0	40	<5	110
1	1	1	60	<5	150
1	2	0	60	<5	150
2	0	0	50	<5	130
2	0	1	70	10	170
2	1	0	70	10	170
2	1	1	90	20	210
2	2	0	90	20	210
2	3	0	120	30	280
3	0	0	80	10	190
3	0	1	110	20	250
3	1	0	110	20	250
3	1	1	140	40	340
3	2	0	140	40	340
3	2	1	170	50	460
4	0	0	130	30	310
4	0	1	170	50	460
4	1	0	170	50	460
4	1	1	210	70	630
4	1	2	260	90	780
4	2	0	220	70	670
4	2	1	260	90	780
4	3	0	270	90	800
4	3	1	330	110	930
4	4	0	340	120	930

Table 3.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used--Continued

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
5	0	0	230	70	700
5	0	1	310	110	890
5	0	2	430	150	1,100
5	1	0	330	110	930
5	1	1	460	160	1,200
5	1	2	630	210	1,500
5	2	0	490	170	1,300
5	2	1	700	230	1,700
5	2	2	940	280	2,200
5	3	0	790	250	1,900
5	3	1	1,100	310	2,500
5	3	2	1,400	370	3,400
5	3	3	1,800	440	5,000
5	4	0	1,300	350	3,000
5	4	1	1,700	430	4,900
5	4	2	2,200	570	7,000
5	4	3	2,800	900	8,500
5	4	4	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	0	2,400	680	7,500
5	5	1	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	2	5,400	1,800	14,000
5	5	3	9,200	3,000	32,000
5	5	4	16,000	6,400	58,000
5	5	5	≥24,000	---	---

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of culture tubes is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of tubes increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 tubes instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of tubes from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of number of tubes inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of culture tubes at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results, when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 3.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Fecal Streptococcal Bacteria (Membrane-Filter Method)

Immediate Incubation Test
(B-0055-85)

Parameter and Code:
Streptococci, fecal, MF, KF agar
(colonies/100 mL): 31673

Fecal streptococci are increasingly used as indicators of substantial contamination of water because the normal habitat of these organisms is the intestines of man and animals. Fecal streptococcal data verify fecal pollution and may provide additional information concerning the recency and probable origin of pollution.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to most types of water.

2. Summary of method

The sample is filtered onsite immediately after collection, and the filter is placed on a nutrient medium designed to stimulate the growth of fecal streptococci and to suppress the growth of other organisms. After incubation at 35±0.5 °C for 48 hours, the red or pink colonies are counted.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended materials may inhibit the filtration of sample volumes sufficient to produce significant results. Streptococcal colony formation on the filter may be inhibited by large numbers of nonstreptococcal colonies, by the presence of algal filaments and detritus, or by toxic substances.

3.2 Water samples having a large suspended-solids concentration may be divided between two or more membrane filters. The multiple-tube method, which is described in this chapter, will give the most reliable results when suspended-solids concentrations are large and streptococcal counts are small.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.4 Bottles, serum.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.7 Filter apparatus, sterile, complete with membrane filter, 0.22-μm mean pore size, 25-mm diameter.

4.8 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.9 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.10 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.11 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.12 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.13 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.14 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45-μm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.15 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.16 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.17 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.18 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.19 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.20 Plastic syringe, disposable, 20-mL capacity.

4.21 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.22 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.23 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.24 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.4 KF streptococcus agar. Suspend 7.64 g KF streptococcus agar in 100 mL distilled water. Do not autoclave. Stir and heat to boiling in a water bath. Once boiling starts, heat an additional 5 minutes. Remove from heat and cool to 50 to 60 °C. Add 1 mL 1-percent TTC solution after the medium has cooled to less than 60 °C. If commercially prepared 1-percent sterile TTC solution is used, swab the rubber septum on the vial with 95-percent ethyl alcohol before use. Remove 1 mL using a sterile, disposable

hypodermic syringe. When medium has cooled to approximately 50 °C, pour medium into 50×12-mm petri dishes to a depth of 4 mm (6-7 mL). When medium solidifies, store the prepared plates in a refrigerator. Discard after 2 weeks if sterile TTC was used and after 24 hours if unsterilized TTC was used.

5.5 Methyl alcohol, absolute, for sterilizing filter-holder assembly.

5.6 TTC solution. Sterile 1-percent TTC solution is available from commercial sources. Alternatively, prepare a 1-percent sterile solution by dissolving 0.1 g triphenyltetrazolium chloride in 10 mL distilled water. Filter the solution aseptically through a 0.22-μm-membrane filter into a sterile, capped test tube. Store sterilized TTC solution at 2 to 8 °C in darkness and discard after container has been opened for 1 month or if contamination occurs, as indicated by color change or turbidity. As an expedient, substitute freshly prepared unsterilized TTC solution if the KF medium will be used promptly. TTC solution cannot be sterilized by heat.

6. Analysis

The volumes of the sample to be filtered depend on the expected bacterial density of the water being tested, but the volumes should be enough that, after incubation, at least one of the membrane filters will contain from 20 to 100 fecal streptococcal colonies.

Fecal streptococci generally are present in fewer numbers than coliform bacteria; therefore, the filtered volume of sample needs to be larger than that used for other indicator bacterial determinations. When filtering water of unknown quality, the following sample volumes are suggested: 0.05, 0.25, 1, 5, 25, and 100 mL. This will include a range of 20 to 200,000 fecal streptococci per 100 mL using the criterion of 20 to 100 colonies on a filter as an ideal determination.

6.1 Pour agar medium at 45 to 50 °C into bottom (larger half) of each sterile plastic petri dish to a depth of about 4 mm (6-7 mL). Pads are not used. Replace petri dish tops.

6.2 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 1). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 1: Onsite sterilization of the filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.3 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 2), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 2: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.4 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.4.1 If the volume of the sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane.

6.4.2 If the volume of sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL of sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.4.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.4.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.5 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.6 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.7 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the agar surface in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.8 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.9 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.10 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the agar. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the agar again.

6.11 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.12 Incubate the filters in the tightly closed petri dishes in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 35±0.5 °C for 48±2 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium.

6.13 Count all red or pink colonies as fecal streptococci. The color plate in Millipore Corp. (1973, p. 42) may be helpful in identifying fecal streptococcal colonies. The counts are best made using 10X to 15X magnification. Illumination is not critical.

6.14 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 100, use the equation:

$$\text{Fecal streptococcal colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted} \times 100}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}} .$$

7.2 If all filters have counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 100 colonies, calculate using the equations in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as number per 100 mL, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters develop characteristic fecal streptococcal colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 100 fecal streptococcal colonies for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts for all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\frac{\begin{array}{r}\text{Volume filter 1}\\ +\ \text{Volume filter 2}\end{array}}{\text{Volume sum}} \qquad \frac{\begin{array}{r}\text{Colony count filter 1}\\ +\ \text{Colony count filter 2}\end{array}}{\text{Colony count sum}}$$

$$\text{Fecal streptococcal colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum} \times 100}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the fecal streptococcal colonies per 100 mL for each volume filtered and then average the results.

8. Reporting of results

Report the fecal streptococcal concentration as fecal streptococcal colonies per 100 mL as follows: less than 10 colonies, whole numbers; 10 or more colonies, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Millipore Corp., 1973, Biological analysis of water and wastewater: Bedford, Mass., Application Manual AM302, 84 p.

Fecal Streptococcal Bacteria (Membrane-Filter Method)

Confirmation Test
(B-0060-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

KF agar medium stimulates the growth of fecal streptococci. A few other types of bacteria, chiefly nonfecal streptococci, may appear occasionally on this medium. Colonies of nonfecal streptococci typically are very small but exhibit the characteristic red or pink coloration and could be counted as fecal streptococci in the membrane-filter method. Suspected colonies may be confirmed according to this test.

The fecal streptococcal bacteria are distinguished from other bacteria by the following three characteristics: (1) They lack the enzyme catalase; (2) they can grow at 45±0.5 °C; and (3) they grow in 40-percent bile. The confirmation test uses these three characteristics as criteria for identification. The procedure is similar to that in Bordner and others (1978) and the American Public Health Association and others (1985).

1. Applications

The confirmation test is applicable to fecal streptococcal colonies produced by the membrane-filter method. Confirmation must be made as soon as possible after completion of the membrane-filter method, but not later than 24 hours.

2. Summary of method

Cells from colonies to be tested are streaked on brain-heart infusion agar slants. Cells from the slants are tested for the presence of catalase and for the ability to grow at 45±0.5 °C and in the presence of 40-percent bile. Absence of catalase and growth at 45±0.5 °C and in 40-percent bile constitute a positive test for fecal streptococci. Presence of catalase or failure to grow at 45±0.5 °C or in 40-percent bile indicate that the original colony was not of the fecal streptococcal group.

3. Interferences

As far as is known, only fecal streptococci show the pattern of results described in this method.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the

manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Bunsen burner, for sterilizing inoculating loop.

4.2 Culture tubes, borosilicate glass, 16×150 mm, and culture-tube caps, 16 mm.

4.3 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16-mm tubes.

4.4 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.5 Inoculating loop, platinum-iridium wire, 3 mm, Brown and Sharpe gauge 26.

4.6 Microscope slides, glass, 76×25 mm.

4.7 Needle holder.

4.8 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Brain-heart infusion agar. Add 52 g brain-heart infusion agar to 1 L distilled water. Heat in a water bath and vigorously stir until solution becomes clear. Remove from heat immediately on clearing. Place 5 mL of hot solution in each of twelve 16×150-mm culture tubes. CAUTION:--Do not allow solution to cool below 45 °C or it will solidify.

Cap each tube. Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Remove from sterilizer and set tubes of molten agar at an angle of about 20° from the horizontal (fig. 5). Allow to cool until the solution solidifies.

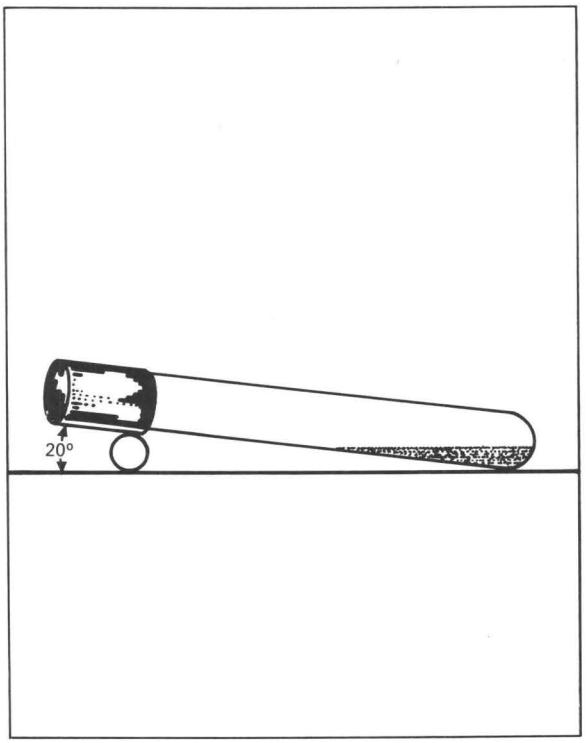


Figure 5.--Preparation of agar slant.

5.2 Brain-heart infusion broth. Add 37 g brain-heart infusion broth to 1 L distilled water. Stir until dissolved. Place 6 mL of broth in each of twelve 16×150-mm culture tubes. Cap each tube. Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

5.3 Brain-heart infusion-40-percent bile broth. Add 37 g brain-heart infusion broth to 1 L distilled water. Stir until dissolved. Place 6 mL of brain-heart infusion broth in each of twelve 16×150-mm culture tubes. Cap each tube. Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

Add 100 g oxgall to 1 L distilled water. Stir until dissolved. Place 4 mL of 10-percent oxgall solution in each of twelve 16×150-mm culture tubes. Cap each tube. Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

Remove caps from a tube of sterile 10-percent oxgall solution and a tube of sterile brain-heart infusion broth. Quickly pour the oxgall solution into the brain-heart infusion-broth tube and recap.

5.4 Distilled or deionized water.

5.5 Hydrogen peroxide solution, 3 percent.

5.6 Potassium iodide, crystals.

6. Analysis

6.1 Complete the membrane-filter method for fecal streptococcal bacteria according to procedures described in this chapter.

6.2 Select a colony or colonies to be confirmed for fecal streptococcal bacteria from the incubated membrane filter.

6.3 Sterilize the inoculating loop by flaming in the burner. The long axis of the wire needs to be held parallel to the cone of the flame so the entire end of the wire and loop is heated to redness.

6.4 Remove from flame and allow the wire to cool for about 10 seconds. Do not allow the inoculating loop to contact any foreign surface during the cooling period. When cool, touch the loop lightly to a single, well-isolated colony. Part of the colony material will adhere to the wire.

6.5 Uncap a culture tube of a brain-heart infusion-agar slant and hold it at an angle of about 45° with the flat surface of the slant upward (fig. 6). Insert the inoculating loop and colony material into the tube. Starting at the base of the slant, lightly rub the loop against the agar, moving toward the top, in a zig-zag pattern (fig. 6).

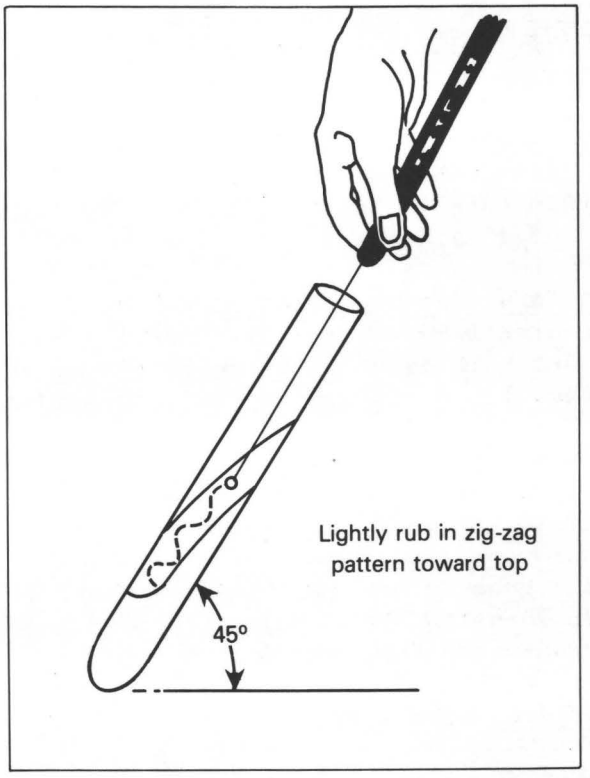


Figure 6.--Method of streaking on an agar slant.

6.6 Recap the culture tube. Flame the inoculating loop and inoculate additional tubes as in 6.4 and 6.5 until all colonies to be tested have been placed on agar in separate tubes. Place the inoculated tubes in the culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24 to 48 hours.

6.7 Remove the culture tubes from the incubator and examine. Growth will be evident as a translucent, glistening film on the surface of the agar.

6.8 Test the potency of the hydrogen peroxide solution by placing a few milliliters in a test tube and adding a few potassium iodide crystals. A brown coloration and the appearance of bubbles in the solution indicate that the hydrogen peroxide solution is acceptable for use. If these reactions do not occur, discard and obtain a fresh hydrogen peroxide solution.

6.9 Flame the inoculating loop and allow to cool. Immediately uncap a culture tube of brain-heart infusion agar having growth. Remove a loopful of growth from the tube and smear on a clean glass slide. Add a few drops of freshly tested 3-percent hydrogen peroxide solution to the material on the slide. Immediately watch the slide for bubble formation. Observation of bubble formation may be facilitated by use of a low-power microscope. The absence of bubbles constitutes a negative catalase test indicating a probable fecal streptococcal culture, and the confirmation test should be continued. The presence of bubbles constitutes a positive catalase test indicating the presence of a nonstreptococcal bacteria, and the test may be terminated at this point.

6.10 Proceed as follows for all catalase-negative cultures. Uncap one culture tube each of brain-heart infusion broth and brain-heart infusion-40-percent bile broth. Using a flamed inoculating loop, transfer one loopful of material from the brain-heart infusion-agar slant to one of the tubes. Reflame the loop and transfer a loopful of material from the agar slant to the other tube. Recap the tubes.

6.11 Flame the inoculating loop and inoculate additional culture tubes as in 6.9 until all catalase-negative cultures have been placed in separate tubes of brain-heart infusion broth and brain-heart infusion-40-percent bile broth.

6.12 Place the inoculated culture tubes of brain-heart infusion broth in a culture-tube rack and incubate at 45±0.5 °C for 48±3 hours. Include tubes of uninoculated medium as controls.

6.13 Place the inoculated culture tubes of brain-heart infusion-40-percent bile broth in a culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 72±4 hours. Include tubes of uninoculated medium as controls.

6.14 Remove culture tubes from incubator and examine. Appearance of turbidity in the inoculated tubes, when compared to the controls, constitutes a positive test for growth.

Appearance of growth in the brain-heart infusion broth and the brain-heart infusion-40-percent bile broth constitutes a positive confirmation for the presence of fecal streptococci in the original colony. Absence of growth in either or both culture tubes indicates that the original colony was not of the fecal streptococcal group.

6.15 Autoclave all inoculated culture tubes and smeared slides at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

No calculations are necessary.

8. Reporting of results

Results of the fecal streptococcal confirmation test are included in the colony counts for fecal streptococcal bacteria.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Fecal Streptococcal Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method)

Presumptive and Confirmation Test
(B-0065-85)

Parameter and Code:
Streptococci, fecal (MPN): 31677

1. Applications

This method is not applicable to saline water. It is applicable to fresh water having large suspended-solids concentration and large populations of nonstreptococcal bacteria.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Decimal dilutions of multiple sample aliquots are inoculated into azide dextrose broth. The cultures are incubated at 35±0.5 °C and examined after 24 and 48 hours for evidence of growth. Positive cultures at 24 or 48 hours constitute a positive presumptive test for fecal streptococci.

2.2 Positive cultures at 24 and 48 hours are inoculated into ethyl violet azide broth and incubated at 35±0.5 °C and examined after 24 hours. Negative ethyl violet azide cultures after 24-hour incubation are reinoculated with original positive presumptive cultures of azide dextrose broth, incubated, and examined again after an additional 24 hours. Growth in ethyl violet azide after 24 or 48 hours constitutes a positive confirmation test for fecal streptococci.

3. Interferences

Certain members of the streptococcal group from soil, vegetative, and insect sources will test positive in this procedure; therefore, the test should be used concurrently with tests for other fecal indicators to substantiate the sanitary significance of the results (American Public Health Association and others, 1985). Differentiation of the streptococcal group requires additional taxonomic tests (Bordner and others, 1978, p. 144-153).

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Bunsen burner, for sterilizing inoculating loop.

4.5 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.6 Culture tubes. The size and the type of culture tube used depend on the volume of water to be tested and whether the test is to be done in the laboratory or onsite. The procedure described below specifies the use of test tubes as culture vessels. Serum bottles may be more appropriate as culture vessels if samples are to be inoculated and incubated onsite. Apparatus needed for an onsite procedure is described in the "Presumptive Onsite Test" (B-0040-85) subsection of the "Total Coliform Bacteria" section.

4.6.1 For testing 10-mL aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 20×150 mm; tube caps, 20 mm.

4.6.2 For testing 1-mL or smaller aliquots, use borosilicate glass culture tubes, 16×125 mm; tube caps, 16 mm.

4.7 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16- and 20-mm culture tubes.

4.8 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.9 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.11 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.12 Inoculating loop, platinum-iridium wire, 3 mm, Brown and Sharpe gauge 26.

4.13 Needle holder.

4.14 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.15 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.16 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.17 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.18 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.19 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Azide dextrose broth. Use premixed azide dextrose broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label. The medium also may be prepared according to American Public Health Association and others (1985).

5.1.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 69.4 g/L azide dextrose broth in a 20×150-mm culture tube or a serum bottle for each 10-mL aliquot of sample to be tested.

5.1.2 Place 10 mL of medium containing 34.7 g/L azide dextrose broth in a 16×125-mm culture tube or a serum bottle for each 1-mL or smaller aliquot to be tested.

5.1.3 Sterilize capped culture tubes or serum bottles of media in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

5.2 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months). Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at

121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Ethyl violet azide (EVA) broth. Use premixed EVA broth, and prepare according to directions on bottle label (Note 1).

Note 1: Because the number of positive azide dextrose broth cultures is unknown at the time of medium preparation, prepare a sufficient number of culture tubes containing ethyl violet azide broth to enable inoculation of the maximum number of positives.

5.4.1 Place 10 mL of medium containing 35.8 g/L EVA broth in a 16×125-mm culture tube for each culture tube or serum bottle of azide dextrose broth prepared in 5.1.

5.4.2 Sterilize capped culture tubes or serum bottles of media in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple-tube test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many culture tubes of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of culture tubes used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of tubes inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. A five-tube series is described below. Order-of-magnitude estimates can be made using a one-tube series.

6.1 Set up five culture tubes of azide dextrose broth for each sample volume to be tested.

6.1.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the culture tubes using sterile pipets (Note 1).

6.1.2 If the volume of original water sample is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.1.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:10	----------	0.1 milliliter of original sample
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 1: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2 Clearly mark each set of culture tubes indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each tube for easy identification.

6.3 Place the inoculated culture tubes in the culture-tube rack and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours. Tubes must be maintained in an upright position. Include a tube of uninoculated medium as a control.

6.4 Remove the inoculated culture tubes from the incubator and examine each tube for the presence of turbidity. Any quantity of turbidity in the inoculated tubes, when compared to the control, constitutes a positive presumptive test for fecal streptococci.

6.5 Sterilize the inoculating loop by flaming in the burner. The long axis of the wire needs to be held parallel to the cone of the flame so the entire end of the wire and loop is heated to redness.

6.6 Remove from flame and allow wire to cool for about 10 seconds. Do not allow the inoculating loop to contact any foreign surface during the cooling period.

6.7 Gently shake and uncap a positive culture tube of azide dextrose broth. Insert the inoculating loop beneath the liquid surface and carefully withdraw a loopful of culture. Uncap a tube of EVA broth and insert the loop of culture beneath the liquid surface. Gently swirl the loop to disperse the

bacteria. Repeat this procedure twice more, flaming the loop between inoculations, until three loopfuls of culture have been transferred to the tube containing the EVA broth.

6.8 Recap both culture tubes. Flame the inoculating loop and inoculate additional tubes as in 6.7, transferring three loopfuls of culture to each tube, until all positive cultures have been transferred to EVA broth.

6.9 Return all positive and negative culture tubes of azide dextrose broth and inoculated tubes of EVA broth to the incubator and incubate at 35±0.5 °C for 24±2 hours.

6.10 Remove all culture tubes from the incubator and examine. A positive culture on EVA broth is indicated by a purple button of growth at the bottom of the tube or occasionally by dense turbidity. Sterilize positive EVA broth tubes in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

6.10.1 Reinoculate any negative EVA broth culture tubes using an additional three loopfuls of the original positive azide dextrose broth as in 6.7. Discard the original positive presumptive tubes after autoclaving.

6.10.2 Inoculate into EVA broth material from any additional culture tubes of azide dextrose broth that have become positive during the preceding 24±2-hour incubation.

6.10.3 Return remaining positive azide dextrose broth culture tubes and remaining EVA broth tubes to the incubator and incubate as in 6.3.

6.11 Remove all culture tubes from the incubator and examine.

6.11.1 Discard after autoclaving any EVA broth culture tubes that remain negative after reinoculation in 6.10.1.

6.11.2 Reinoculate any negative EVA broth culture tubes from 6.10.2 with three loopfuls of original positive azide dextrose broth cultures.

6.11.3 Sterilize and discard all remaining culture tubes of azide dextrose broth cultures and all positive tubes of EVA broth.

6.11.4 Return remaining culture tubes of EVA broth to the incubator and incubate as in 6.3.

6.12 Remove the last EVA broth culture tubes and examine. Discard all remaining tubes after autoclaving.

7. Calculations

7.1 Record the number of positive culture tubes occurring for all sample volumes tested. Calculate presumptive fecal streptococci from the total number of positive tubes of azide dextrose broth. Use the number of positive tubes of EVA broth to determine the most probable number of confirmed fecal streptococci.

7.2 When more than three volumes are tested, use the results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.3 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive culture tubes; the denominator represents the total number of tubes inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	5/5	5/5	2/5	0/5	5-2-0
b	5/5	4/5	2/5	0/5	5-4-2
c	0/5	1/5	0/5	0/5	0-1-0
d	5/5	3/5	1/5	1/5	5-3-2
e	5/5	3/5	2/5	0/5	5-3-2

In example c, the first three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in d, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in e (Note 2).

Note 2: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.4 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 4. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value in table 4 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value in table 4 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the culture tubes having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 4 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and number of tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

Table 4.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<20	---	---
0	0	1	20	<5	70
0	1	0	20	<5	70
0	2	0	40	<5	11
1	0	0	20	<5	70
1	0	1	40	<5	110
1	1	0	40	<5	110
1	1	1	60	<5	150
1	2	0	60	<5	150
2	0	0	50	<5	130
2	0	1	70	10	170
2	1	0	70	10	170
2	1	1	90	20	210
2	2	0	90	20	210
2	3	0	120	30	280
3	0	0	80	10	190
3	0	1	110	20	250
3	1	0	110	20	250
3	1	1	140	40	340
3	2	0	140	40	340
3	2	1	170	50	460
4	0	0	130	30	310
4	0	1	170	50	460
4	1	0	170	50	460
4	1	1	210	70	630
4	1	2	260	90	780
4	2	0	220	70	670
4	2	1	260	90	780
4	3	0	270	90	800
4	3	1	330	110	930
4	4	0	340	120	930

Table 4.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used--Continued

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
5	0	0	230	70	700
5	0	1	310	110	890
5	0	2	430	150	1,100
5	1	0	330	110	930
5	1	1	460	160	1,200
5	1	2	630	210	1,500
5	2	0	490	170	1,300
5	2	1	700	230	1,700
5	2	2	940	280	2,200
5	3	0	790	250	1,900
5	3	1	1,100	310	2,500
5	3	2	1,400	370	3,400
5	3	3	1,800	440	5,000
5	4	0	1,300	350	3,000
5	4	1	1,700	430	4,900
5	4	2	2,200	570	7,000
5	4	3	2,800	900	8,500
5	4	4	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	0	2,400	680	7,500
5	5	1	3,500	1,200	10,000
5	5	2	5,400	1,800	14,000
5	5	3	9,200	3,000	32,000
5	5	4	16,000	6,400	58,000
5	5	5	≥24,000	---	---

7.5 Example: The following results were obtained with a five-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results	5/5	5/5	3/5	1/5	0/5.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 5-3-1 for which the MPN (table 4) is 1,100. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 11×10^{8} streptococcal bacteria per 100 mL and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.1×10^{8} and 25×10^{8} streptococcal bacteria per 100 mL.

8. Reporting of results

Report fecal streptococcal concentration as MPN fecal streptococci per 100 mL as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of culture tubes is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of tubes increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 tubes instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of tubes from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of the number of tubes inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of culture tubes at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 4.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bordner, R. H., Winter, J. A., and Scarpino, Pasquale, eds., 1978, Microbiological methods for monitoring the environment, water and wastes: Cincinnati, Ohio, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA-600/8-78-017, 338 p.

Nitrifying Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method) (B-0420-85)

Parameter and Code:
Nitrifying bacteria (MPN): 31854

Nitrification is the biological oxidation of reduced nitrogen compounds to nitrite and nitrate. Most commonly, the initial substance is ammonium, and the final product is nitrate. The process has two distinct steps, each mediated by a specific group of bacteria. The Nitrosomonas group, which includes several genera of bacteria, oxidizes ammonium (NH_4^+) only to nitrite (NO_2^-) as shown:

$$NH_4^+ + 3/2\ O_2 \longrightarrow NO_2^- + 2H^+ + H_2O\ .$$

The Nitrobacter group of bacteria oxidizes NO_2^-, but not NH_4^+ or any other reduced nitrogen compound, to nitrate (NO_3^-) as shown:

$$NO_2^- + 1/2\ O_2 \longrightarrow NO_3^-\ .$$

Hydrogen ions produced by the oxidation of NH_4^+ to NO_3^- may be of some geochemical significance because the excess acid can dissolve minerals and can serve as the catalyst in exchange reactions on clays. Nitrification is important in soils because the process controls the supply of NO_3^- used by higher plants. In surface waters, nitrification contributes to oxygen demand.

The organisms, Nitrosomonas and Nitrobacter, are autotrophic bacteria; they obtain their energy from the inorganic oxidations indicated in the preceding paragraph and use carbon dioxide as a source of cellular carbon. Media used to isolate these bacteria are assumed to be free of organic carbon. This assumption is valid initially, and only nitrifiers will grow on the media; however, as these autotrophs grow, they release cell substances to the media, and heterotrophs may develop.

The medium for isolating Nitrosomonas contains NH_4^+. Appearance of NO_2^- in the inoculated cultures, but not in the control cultures, presumptively indicates the presence of Nitrosomonas in the sample. A negative test is not sufficient evidence to prove that Nitrosomonas is absent because NO_2^- produced by Nitrosomonas can be oxidized to NO_3^- by Nitrobacter. Therefore, a positive test for either NO_2^- or NO_3^- in the inoculated cultures indicates the presence of Nitrosomonas. The medium for isolating Nitrobacter contains NO_2^-; disappearance of NO_2^- from the inoculated cultures, but not from the control cultures, presumptively indicates the presence of Nitrobacter.

1. Applications

The method described is similar to that described by Alexander and Clark (1965) and is applicable to all types of soil and fresh and saline water.

2. Summary of method

Decimal dilutions of multiple sample aliquots are inoculated into organic-carbon-free media containing NH_4^+ ions for Nitrosomonas isolation or NO_2^- ions for Nitrobacter isolation. After incubation at 28±1 °C for 21 days, the inoculated cultures and control cultures are tested for the presence of NO_2^-. The most-probable-number (MPN) of each group of nitrifying bacteria is determined from the distribution of positive and negative tests among the inoculated tubes.

3. Interferences

No interferences are known for the procedure.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.5 Culture tubes and caps, borosilicate glass culture tubes, 16×125 mm; tube caps, 16 mm.

4.6 Culture-tube rack, galvanized, for 16-mm culture tubes.

4.7 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.8 Glass beads, solid, 3 mm may be necessary for soil samples.

4.9 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.11 Incubator, for operation at a temperature of 28±1 °C, or water bath capable of maintaining a temperature of 28±1 °C.

4.12 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.13 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.14 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.15 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.16 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.17 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Ammonium calcium carbonate medium for MPN of Nitrosomonas. To 1 L distilled water, add 0.5 g ammonium sulfate [$(NH_4)_2SO_4$], 1 g potassium phosphate dibasic (K_2HPO_4), 0.03 g ferrous sulfate ($FeSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 0.3 g sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.3 g magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), and 7.5 g calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$). Place 3 mL of medium in each culture tube; cap and autoclave at 121° at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

5.2 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months). Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.3 Dilution water for soils. For dilution blanks, place 95 mL distilled water and approximately three dozen, 3-mm diameter, glass beads in a milk dilution bottle. For each 95-mL dilution blank, also prepare 5 dilution blanks of 90 mL distilled water in milk dilution bottles. Omit the glass beads from the 90-mL dilution blanks. Autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.4 Distilled or deionized water.

5.5 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent. Dilute 74 mL of 95-percent ethyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water. Undiluted isopropanol (ordinary rubbing alcohol) may be used instead of 70-percent ethyl alcohol.

5.6 Nitrite calcium carbonate medium for MPN of Nitrobacter. To 1 L distilled water, add 0.006 g potassium nitrite (KNO_2), 1 g potassium phosphate dibasic (K_2HPO_4), 0.3 g sodium chloride (NaCl), 0.1 g magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$), 1 g calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$), and 0.3 g calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$). Place 3 mL of medium in each culture tube; cap and autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes.

5.7 Nitrite-test reagent. Add 200 mL concentrated phosphoric acid (specific gravity 1.69) and 20 g sulfanilamide to approximately 1.5 L demineralized water. Dissolve completely (warm if necessary). Add 1 g N-1 naphthylethylenediamine dihydrochloride and dissolve completely. Dilute to 2 L using demineralized water. Store in an amber bottle and refrigerate. The reagent must be at room temperature when it is used. The reagent is stable for approximately 1 month.

5.8 Zinc copper manganese dioxide mixture. Mix together 1 g powdered zinc metal (Zn), 0.1 g powdered copper (Cu), and 1 g powdered manganese dioxide (MnO_2).

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple-tube test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many culture tubes of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of culture tubes used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of tubes inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. For general use, the three-tube series is recommended and is described in this section. Order-of-magnitude estimates can be made using a one-tube series. The following test volumes are suggested:

1. For water samples, use volumes of 1, 0.1, 0.01, 0.001, and 0.0001 mL.

2. For soil samples, use dilutions of 10^{-2} to 10^{-6} mL.

It may be advisable to do an order-of-magnitude estimate prior to undertaking an extensive sampling program.

6.1 Before starting the analysis, clear an area of the laboratory bench and swab it using a bit of cotton moistened with 70-percent ethyl alcohol, undiluted isopropanol, or disinfectant.

6.2 Set out three culture tubes of ammonium calcium carbonate medium and three tubes of nitrite calcium carbonate medium for each volume to be tested. For each dilution series, set aside one extra tube of each medium as an uninoculated control tube.

6.2.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the culture tubes using sterile pipets (Note 1). Carefully remove caps from sterile tubes to avoid contamination.

6.2.2 If the volume of the desired sample aliquot is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.2.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
$1:10^6$	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution	1 milliliter of $1:10^6$ dilution
$1:10^7$	----------	0.1 milliliter of $1:10^6$ dilution

Note 1: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2.3 Dilution series of soil samples are prepared as follows: Transfer 10 g of soil to a dilution blank containing 95 mL water and glass beads. Cap the bottle and shake vigorously for 1 minute. Immediately transfer 10 mL from the center of the suspension to a 90-mL dilution blank and shake. Continue transferring 10-mL portions to 90-mL dilution blanks until the desired dilution is reached.

6.3 Clearly mark each set of inoculated culture tubes indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each tube for easy identification.

6.4 Place the inoculated culture tubes and control tubes in a culture-tube rack and incubate at 28±1 °C for 21 days. Clearly defined results will occur only if the bacteria consume all the NO_2^-(or convert all NH_4^+ to NO_2^-). For this reason, incubation should always be for 21 days.

6.5 Test for the production of NO_2^-. After incubation, add 0.5 mL of the nitrite-test reagent to each inoculated culture tube and control tube. Observe the contents of each tube for the development within 5 minutes of a reddish color.

CAUTION.--Nitrite-test reagent contains acid and must be handled carefully.

6.6 Growth of Nitrosomonas usually is evidenced by a brick-red color at the bottom of a culture tube and a purplish-red coloration in the overlying liquid. Control tubes and inoculated tubes having no NO_2^- may turn faintly pink; thus, it is imperative that uninoculated control tubes be used in color comparison.

6.7 To all culture tubes of ammonium calcium carbonate medium (Nitrosomonas) that do not develop a purplish-red color within 5 minutes, add a small pinch of the zinc copper manganese dioxide mixture. If a reddish color develops, record the culture tube as positive for Nitrosomonas on the basis that the initial negative reading for NO_2^- indicated that the NO_2^- produced by Nitrosomonas was oxidized to NO_3^- by Nitrobacter.

6.8 Record as positive for Nitrobacter all culture tubes of nitrite calcium carbonate medium that do not develop the characteristic purplish-red color formed by the reaction of NO_2^- with the nitrite-test reagent.

6.9 A positive result in a control culture tube indicates a contamination of the medium and results of the test, therefore, are invalid.

6.10 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

Record the number of positive inoculated culture tubes occurring for all sample volumes tested. When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive culture tubes; the denominator represents the total number of tubes inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	3/3	3/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-0
b	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3	0-1-0
c	3/3	2/3	1/3	1/3	3-2-2
d	3/3	2/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-2

In example b, the three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in c, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in d (Note 2).

Note 2: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.3 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 5. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value in table 5 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value in table 5 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the culture tubes having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 5 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and numbers of tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

7.4 If only one culture tube is inoculated at each decimal dilution level, record the smallest dilution showing a positive response compared to the largest dilution showing a negative response. Record the results as a range of numbers, for example 100 to 1,000 nitrifying bacteria per milliliter. If all tubes are positive, record the result as a number greater than that indicated by the value of the largest dilution of the series. For example, 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL samples are tested, and all tubes are positive at the end of the test. Record the result as greater than 100 nitrifying bacteria per milliliter (greater than 10^4 nitrifying bacteria per 100 mL).

Table 5.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 100 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Three of 1 mL each	Three of 0.1 mL each	Three of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<30	---	---
0	0	1	30	<5	90
0	1	0	30	<5	130
1	0	0	40	<5	200
1	0	1	70	10	210
1	1	0	70	10	230
1	1	1	110	30	360
1	2	0	110	30	360
2	0	0	90	10	360
2	0	1	140	30	370
2	1	0	150	30	440
2	1	1	200	70	890
2	2	0	210	40	470
2	2	1	280	100	1,500
3	0	0	230	40	1,200
3	0	1	390	70	1,300
3	0	2	640	150	3,800
3	1	0	430	70	2,100
3	1	1	750	140	2,300
3	1	2	1,200	300	3,800
3	2	0	930	150	3,800
3	2	1	1,500	300	4,400
3	2	2	2,100	350	4,700
3	3	0	2,400	360	13,000
3	3	1	4,600	710	24,000
3	3	2	11,000	1,500	48,000
3	3	3	≥24,000	---	---

7.5 Examples of test results and calculations are listed below.

7.5.1 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series:

[-, negative; +, positive]

Volume (milliliters)	Culture tube number 1	2	3	Result
0.1	+	+	+	3/3
0.01	+	+	+	3/3
0.001	+	+	-	2/3
0.0001	-	-	-	0/3

Following the guideline given above and using 0.01-, 0.001-, and 0.0001-mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 3-2-0. From this, an MPN of 930 is indicated (table 5). Dividing by 0.01 mL to correct for the effect of dilution, the MPN of the sample is 9.3×10^4 nitrifying bacteria per 100 mL. The 95-percent confidence limits are 1.5×10^4 and 38×10^4 nitrifying bacteria per 100 mL.

7.5.2 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results	3/3	3/3	2/3	1/3	0/3.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 3-2-1 for which the MPN (table 5) is 1,500. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 15×10^8 nitrifying bacteria per 100 mL and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.0×10^8 and 44×10^8 nitrifying bacteria per 100 mL.

7.5.3 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)	1	0.1	0.01	0.001
Results	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3.

Use the sequence of 0-1-0 for which the MPN is 30 and 95-percent confidence limits of <5 and 130 (table 5).

7.6 The various combinations listed in table 5 represent those most likely to be obtained. Other combinations are statistically unlikely. If unlikely combinations are obtained, it is probable either that the multiple-tube technique is inapplicable or that errors of manipulation have occurred.

8. Reporting of results

Report concentration of nitrifying bacteria as MPN Nitrosomonas and MPN Nitrobacter per 100 mL for water samples or as MPN per 100 g for soil samples as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures. Indicate the method of expressing unit weight (wet or dry) of soil samples.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of culture tubes is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of tubes increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 tubes instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of tubes from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of the number of tubes inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of culture tubes at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 5.

10. References cited

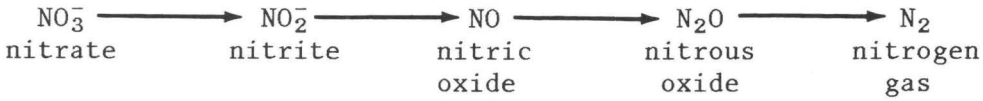
Alexander, Martin, and Clark, F. E., 1965, Nitrifying bacteria, in Black, C. A., ed., Methods of soil analysis: Madison, Wis., American Society of Agronomy, Part 2, p. 1477-1483.

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Denitrifying and Nitrate-Reducing Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method) (B-0430-85)

Parameter and Code:
Denitrifying bacteria (MPN): 31856

Some bacteria reduce the nitrogen (N) atom of nitrate (NO_3^-). This occurs by a sequence of reactions that may stop at the level of nitrite (NO_2^-) or proceed to completion with the production of gaseous N compounds. The following pathway indicates the steps involved:



The bacteria that cause these reactions can be referred to collectively as nitrate-reducers or nitrate-respirers. Organisms that do only the first step produce NO_2^- and sometimes are called nitrite-accumulators. They also are commonly referred to by the more general terms nitrate-reducers or nitrate-respirers. The term denitrifiers is more specific and is used for those bacteria that remove N from the system by producing gaseous end products.

Regardless of the final product, the bacteria involved are using the N atom as a sink for the electrons generated during the oxidation of their energy source. Because these denitrifying bacteria also use oxygen as a terminal electron acceptor (aerobic respiration) and will do so as long as oxygen is available, NO_3^- and other oxidized N forms will not be reduced until oxygen has been depleted. Essentially, the bacteria continue respiration even though NO_3^- or NO_2^- has replaced oxygen in their metabolism.

A large and diverse group of bacteria causes NO_3^- reduction and denitrification. Typically, the number of nitrite-accumulators in an environment is greater than the number of denitrifiers. Species in the following genera are believed to be most significant in denitrification in soil: Pseudomonas, Alcaligenes, and Flavobacterium (Gamble and others, 1977). Bacillus and Paracoccus species may be significant in some environments.

Because of the diversity of the group of organisms responsible for NO_3^- reduction and denitrification, the environmental conditions necessary for the processes to occur are not too restrictive. Ranges reported for pH (5-9) and temperature (15-65 °C) are quite broad (Focht and Verstraete, 1977). Various types of soil, sediment, fresh and saline water, and sewage-treatment systems support NO_3^- reduction and denitrification. There are two environmental factors that have an important effect on NO_3^- reduction: A suitable energy source (usually a carbon-containing compound) must be available, and oxygen must be absent because it will be used in preference to NO_3^- by denitrifying and nitrate-respiring bacteria. However, denitrification can take place in apparently well-aerated systems due to the existence of anaerobic microsites.

1. Applications

The method is for the determination of the most probable number (MPN) of nitrate-reducing and denitrifying bacteria. The method is applicable to all types of soil and fresh water.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Samples of soil or water and decimal dilutions thereof are inoculated into nutrient broth containing 0.1 percent potassium nitrate (KNO_3). The cultures are incubated at 28±1 °C for 14 days and scored for gas production, production of NO_2^-, and loss of NO_3^-. The MPN of denitrifiers in the sample is determined by the distribution of culture tubes indicating gas production and loss of NO_3^-. Nitrate-reducers (nitrite-accumulators) in the sample may be isolated by the distribution of tubes containing NO_2^-.

2.2 The method is similar to that of Focht and Joseph (1973) and depends on trapping the gas produced and detecting any NO_2^- or NO_3^- remaining in the culture tube.

3. Interferences

Large concentrations of heavy metals or toxic chemicals in the soil or water sample to be tested may interfere.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Bottles, serum.

4.4 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.5 Culture tubes and caps, borosilicate glass, screwcap culture tubes, 16×125 mm. Larger screwcap tubes may be used if larger volumes of water are analyzed. Screwcap tubes will slow diffusion of oxygen from the atmosphere and promote anaerobic conditions.

4.6 Culture-tube rack, use any rack appropriate for culture tubes being used.

4.7 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.8 Durham (fermentation) tubes. The durham tube, used to detect gas production, must be completely filled with medium and at least partly submerged in the culture tube. For 16×125-mm culture tubes, use 6×50-mm durham tubes.

4.9 Glass beads, solid, 3 mm, may be necessary for soil samples.

4.10 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.11 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.12 Incubator, for operation at a temperature of 28±1 °C or water bath capable of maintaining a temperature of 28±1 °C.

4.13 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.14 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.15 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.16 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.17 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.18 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months). Dispense in milk dilution or serum bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in

quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Dilution water for soil. For dilution blanks, place 95 mL distilled water and approximately three dozen, 3-mm diameter, glass beads in a milk dilution bottle. For each 95-mL dilution blank, also prepare 5 dilution blanks of 90 mL distilled water in milk dilution bottles. Omit the glass beads from the 90-mL dilution blanks. Autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent. Dilute 74 mL 95-percent ethyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water. Undiluted isopropanol (ordinary rubbing alcohol) may be used instead of 70-percent ethyl alcohol.

5.5 Nitrate broth. Use nitrate broth or nutrient broth, plus 0.1 percent KNO_3. Prepare according to directions on bottle label. Place 9 mL medium in a 16×125-mm culture tube for each 1-mL or smaller aliquot of sample to be tested. In each culture tube, place an inverted (mouth downward) durham tube (fig. 3). Place caps on culture tubes. Sterilize tubes in upright position at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes as soon as possible after dispensing medium. Loosen screwcaps prior to sterilizing and tighten when tubes have cooled. Air will be expelled from the inverted durham tubes during heating; each will fill completely with medium during cooling. Discard any culture tube in which air bubbles are visible in the durham tube.

5.6 Nitrite-test reagent. Add 200 mL concentrated phosphoric acid (specific gravity 1.69) and 20 g sulfanilamide to approximately 1.5 L demineralized water. Dissolve completely (warm if necessary). Add 1 g N-1 naphthylethylenediamine dihydrochloride and dissolve completely. Dilute to 2 L using demineralized water. Store in an amber bottle and refrigerate. The reagent must be at room temperature when it is used. The reagent is stable for approximately 1 month.

5.7 Zinc copper manganese dioxide mixture. Mix together 1 g powdered zinc metal (Zn), 1 g powdered manganese dioxide (MnO_2), and 0.1 g powdered copper (Cu).

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple-tube test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many culture tubes of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of culture tubes used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of tubes inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. For general use, the three-tube series is recommended and is described in this section. Order-of-magnitude estimates can be made using a one-tube series. Increased precision can be obtained using a five-tube series. The following test volumes are suggested:

1. For water samples, use volumes of 1, 0.1, 0.01, 0.001, and 0.0001 mL.

2. For sewage or heavily polluted water samples, use volumes of 10^{-2} to 10^{-6} mL.

3. For soil samples, use dilutions of 10^{-2} to 10^{-6} mL.

It may be advisable to do an order-of-magnitude estimate prior to undertaking an extensive sampling program.

6.1 Before starting the analysis, clear an area of the laboratory bench and swab it using a bit of cotton moistened with 70-percent ethyl alcohol, undiluted isopropanol, or disinfectant.

6.2 Set out three culture tubes of nitrate broth for each volume to be tested. For each dilution series, set aside one extra tube of medium as an uninoculated control tube.

6.2.1 If the volume to be tested is 0.1 mL or more, transfer the measured samples directly to the culture tubes using sterile pipets (Note 1). Carefully remove caps from sterile tubes to avoid contamination.

6.2.2 If the volume of the desired sample aliquot is less than 0.1 mL, proceed as in 6.2.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Size of inoculum
1:10	----------	0.1 milliliter of original sample
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution
1:100,000	----------	0.1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 1: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the organisms in the sample. Diluted samples need to be inoculated within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.2.3 Dilution series of soil samples are prepared as follows: Transfer 10 g of soil to a dilution blank containing 95 mL water and glass beads. This is a 1:10 dilution. Cap the bottle and shake vigorously for 1 minute. Immediately transfer 10 mL from the center of the suspension to a 90-mL dilution blank and shake. This is a 1:100 dilution. Continue transferring 10-mL portions to 90-mL dilution blanks until the desired dilution is reached.

6.3 Clearly mark each set of inoculated culture tubes indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each tube for easy identification.

6.4 Place the inoculated culture tubes and control tubes in a culture-tube rack and incubate tubes at 28±1 °C for 14 days.

6.5 Examine the culture tubes after 14 days. Each tube will be examined for three characteristics in the following order: gas formation, production of NO_2^-, and removal of NO_3^-. A flow diagram of the test procedure for each culture is shown in figure 7.

6.5.1 Gas production is determined by examining the durham tube for gas bubbles (fig. 4). Any bubble is presumptive evidence for denitrification; however, a check for removal of NO_3^- is advised.

6.5.2 Test for the production of NO_2^-. Add 0.5 mL nitrite-test reagent to each inoculated culture tube and control tube. Tubes that show a red color are positive for NO_2^-.

CAUTION.--Nitrite-test reagent contains acid and must be handled carefully.

6.5.3 Test for the presence of NO_3^-. To all culture tubes that remain colorless or have only a light pink color, add about 50 mg zinc copper manganese dioxide mixture. This mixture of metals reduces any NO_3^- remaining in the tube to NO_2^-. The NO_2^- reacts with the nitrite-test reagent already in the tube to give a deep red color. If the red color develops within 5 minutes, record the tube as positive for NO_3^-.

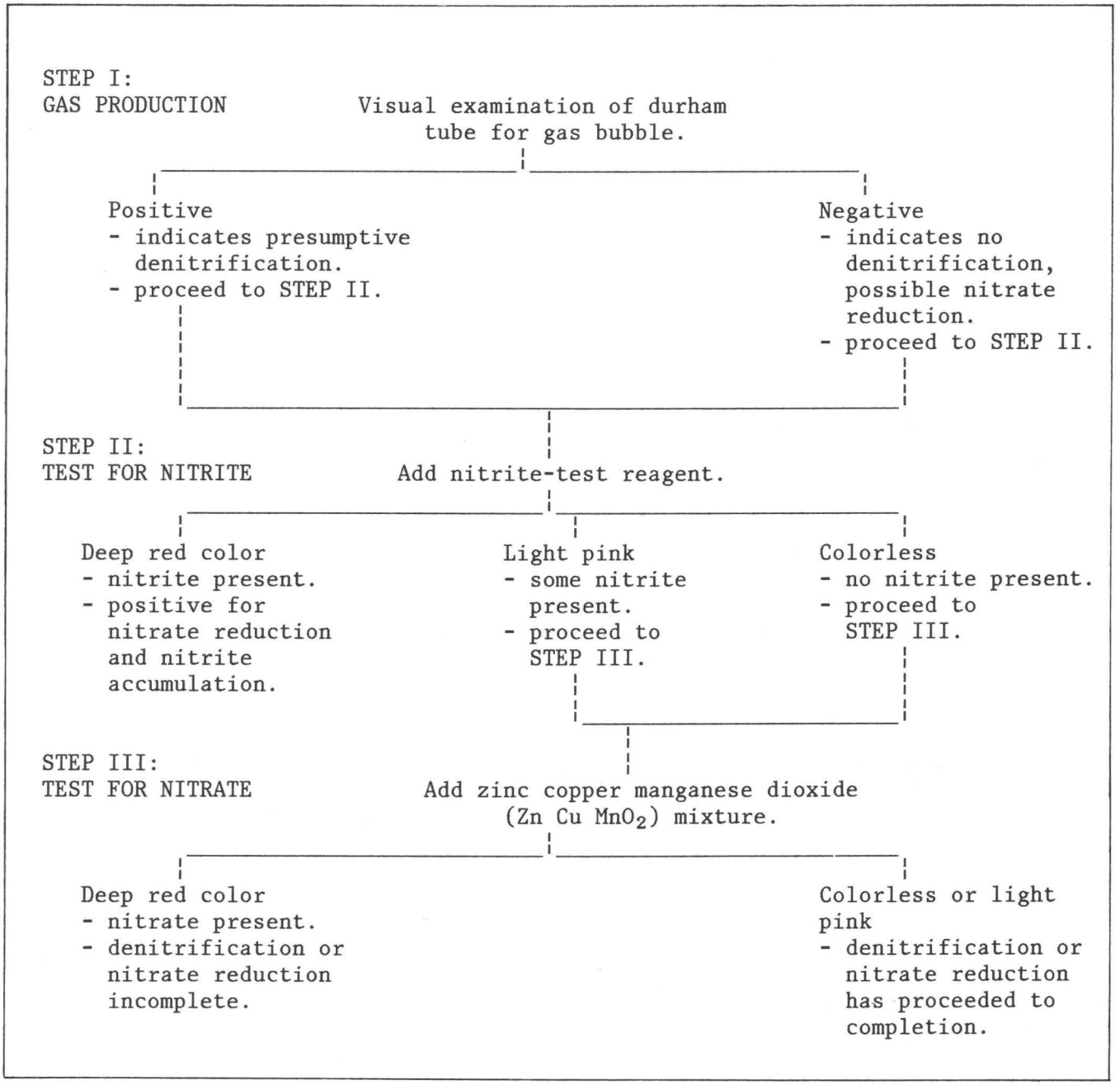


Figure 7.--Flow diagram showing the test procedure for each culture of denitrifying or nitrate-reducing bacteria.

6.5.4 Examples of possible results for any given culture tube and interpretation:

[-, negative; +, positive]

Sample	Gas	Nitrite	Nitrate
A	-	-	+
B	+/	-	-
C	-	+	not tested
D	-	+	+
E	+	+	-
F	+	-	+
G	-	-	-

Sample A: Negative for denitrification.
Negative for nitrate reduction.

Sample B: Positive for denitrification.

Sample C: Negative for denitrification.
Positive for nitrate reduction.

Sample D: Negative for denitrification.
Positive for nitrate reduction.

Sample E: Positive for denitrification.
Positive for nitrate reduction.

Sample F: Inconclusive.

Sample G: NO_3^- has been removed, although there is no accumulation of NO_2^- and no apparent gas production. It is possible that nitrous oxide (N_2O), which is soluble in water, has been produced. It also is possible that the NO_3^- has been reduced to some other unknown compound.

6.6 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculation

7.1 Record the number of positive inoculated culture tubes occurring for all sample volumes tested. When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.2 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive culture tubes; the denominator represents the total number of tubes inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	3/3	3/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-0
b	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3	0-1-0
c	3/3	2/3	1/3	1/3	3-2-2
d	3/3	2/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-2

In example b, the three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in c, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in d (Note 2).

Note 2: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

7.3 The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 6. If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN value in table 6 needs to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the value in table 6 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the culture tubes having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the value in table 6 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and numbers of tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

7.4 If only one culture tube is inoculated at each decimal dilution level, record the smallest dilution indicating a positive response compared to the largest dilution indicating a negative response. Record the results as a range of numbers, for example 100 to 1,000 denitrifying bacteria per milliliter. If all tubes are positive, record the result as a number greater than that indicated by the value of the largest dilution of the series. For example, 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL samples are tested, and all tubes are positive at the end of the test. Record the result as greater than 100 denitrifying bacteria per milliliter.

Table 6.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of culture tubes indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 1 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Three of 1 mL each	Three of 0.1 mL each	Three of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<0.3	---	----
0	0	1	.3	<0.05	0.9
0	1	0	.3	<.05	1.3
1	0	0	.4	<.05	2.0
1	0	1	.7	.1	2.1
1	1	0	.7	.1	2.3
1	1	1	1.1	.3	3.6
1	2	0	1.1	.3	3.6
2	0	0	.9	.1	3.6
2	0	1	1.4	.3	3.7
2	1	0	1.5	.3	4.4
2	1	1	2.0	.7	8.9
2	2	0	2.1	.4	4.7
2	2	1	2.8	1.0	15.0
3	0	0	2.3	.4	12.0
3	0	1	3.9	.7	13.0
3	0	2	6.4	1.5	38.0
3	1	0	4.3	.7	21.0
3	1	1	7.5	1.4	23.0
3	1	2	12.0	3.0	38.0
3	2	0	9.3	1.5	38.0
3	2	1	15.0	3.0	44.0
3	2	2	21.0	3.5	47.0
3	3	0	24.0	3.6	130.0
3	3	1	46.0	7.1	240.0
3	3	2	110.0	15.0	480.0
3	3	3	≥240.0	---	---

7.5 Examples of test results and calculations are listed below.

7.5.1 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series

[-, negative; +, positive]

Volume (milliliters)	Culture tube number 1	2	3	Result
0.1	+	+	+	3/3
0.01	+	+	+	3/3
0.001	+	+	-	2/3
0.0001	-	-	-	0/3

Following the guideline in 7.3 and using 0.01-, 0.001-, and 0.0001-ml sample volumes, a sequence of 3-2-0 is indicated. From this, an MPN of 9.3 is indicated (table 6). Dividing by 0.01 mL to correct for the effect of dilution, the MPN of the sample is 930 denitrifying bacteria per milliliter. The 95-percent confidence limits are 150 and 3,800.

7.5.2 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)-----	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results-----------------	3/3	3/3	2/3	1/3	0/3.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 3-2-1 for which the MPN (table 6) is 15.0. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 15×10^{6} denitrifying bacteria per milliliter and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.0×10^{6} and 44×10^{6} denitrifying bacteria per milliliter.

7.5.3 The following results were obtained with a three-tube series:

Volume (milliliters)-------	1	0.1	0.01	0.001
Results-------------------	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3.

Use the sequence of 0-1-0 for which the MPN is 0.3 and 95-percent confidence limits of <0.05 and 1.3.

7.6 The various combinations listed in table 6 represent those most likely to be obtained. Other combinations are statistically unlikely. If unlikely combinations are obtained, it is probable either that the multiple-tube technique is inapplicable or that errors of manipulation have occurred.

8. Reporting of results

Report the concentration of denitrifying or nitrate-reducing bacteria, or both, as MPN per milliliter for water samples or as MPN per gram for soil samples as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures. Indicate the method of expressing unit weight (wet or dry) of soil samples.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of culture tubes is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of tubes increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 tubes instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of tubes from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of the number of tubes inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of culture tubes at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in table 6.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Focht, D. D., and Joseph, H., 1973, An improved method for the enumeration of denitrifying bacteria: Soil Science Society of America Proceedings, v. 37, p. 698-699.

Focht, D. D., and Verstraete, W., 1977, Biochemical ecology of nitrification and denitrification, in Alexander, Martin, ed., Advances in microbiological ecology, v. 1: New York, Plenum Press, p. 135-214.

Gamble, T. N., Betlach, M. R., and Tiedje, J. M., 1977, Numerically dominant denitrifying bacteria from world soils: Applied and Environmental Microbiology, v. 33, p. 926-939.

Sulfate-Reducing Bacteria (Most-Probable-Number, MPN, Method) (B-0400-85)

Parameter and Code:
Sulfate-reducing bacteria (MPN): 31855

Sulfate-reducing bacteria commonly are found in environments where reducing conditions prevail, such as ground water, the hypolimnion of stratified lakes, saturated soil, and mud from lake bottoms and stream bottoms. The geochemical implications of sulfate-reducing bacteria have been discussed by Kuznetsov and others (1963). Although many species of bacteria reduce sulfate during the synthesis of sulfur-containing amino acids, four genera of obligate anaerobic bacteria use sulfate reduction as a major energy-yielding reaction and produce large quantities of hydrogen sulfide. These are Desulfovibrio, Desulfotomaculum, Desulfomonas, and Desulfobulbus.

1. Applications

The method described in this section is similar to the sulfate-reducing bacteria test given in the American Petroleum Institute (1965). The method is applicable for all water, including brine with large salt concentrations.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Samples are collected and handled using techniques that minimize exposure to oxygen. The samples are incubated at 18 to 25 °C for 28 days, and results are recorded. The most probable number (MPN) of organisms in the sample is determined from the positive and negative responses among a number of inoculated serum bottles of suitable culture medium.

2.2 The sulfate-reducing bacteria are cultivated on a medium containing lactate as a carbon and energy source. Growth is enhanced in the presence of yeast extract. Ascorbic acid is present as a reducing agent. Hydrogen sulfide produced by the bacteria reacts with ferrous iron to produce an inky blackening of the culture medium. Blackening of the culture medium is a positive response and indicates the presence of sulfate-reducing bacteria.

3. Interferences

3.1 Other species of facultative and obligate anaerobic bacteria can grow in the lactate-yeast extract broth and produce a turbidity in the medium, but only sulfate reducers will produce the characteristic inky blackening.

3.2 According to Postgate (1959), the Eh of the culture medium must be less than -200 mV for initiation of growth of sulfate-reducing bacteria. The presence of traces of oxygen will render the medium unsuitable.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Cotton balls.

4.2 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent serum bottles.

4.3 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.4 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.5 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.6 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines given in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.7 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent. Dilute 74 mL 95-percent ethyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water. Undiluted isopropanol (ordinary rubbing alcohol) may be used instead of 70-percent ethyl alcohol.

5.3 Sulfate API broth. Ready-to-use presterilized medium packed in 10-mL serum bottles.

6. Analysis

Two questions must be answered when planning a multiple serum-bottle test:

1. What volumes of water need to be tested?

2. How many serum bottles of each volume need to be tested?

Choose a range of volumes so positive and negative results are obtained throughout the range tested. The method fails if only positive or only negative results are obtained when all volumes are tested. The number of serum bottles used per sample volume depends on the precision required. The greater the number of bottles inoculated with each volume, the greater the precision, but the effort involved and expense also are increased. For general use, the three serum-bottle series is recommended and is described in this section. Order-of-magnitude estimates can be made using a one serum-bottle series. Increased precision can be obtained using a five serum-bottle series. The following test volumes are suggested: For water samples, use volumes of 1, 0.1, 0.01, 0.001, and 0.0001 mL. It may be advisable to do an order-of-magnitude estimate prior to undertaking an extensive sampling program.

6.1 Remove the inserts from the metal caps of the serum bottles and swab the exposed area of the rubber septa using a bit of cotton saturated with 70-percent ethyl alcohol, undiluted isopropanol, or disinfectant.

6.2 Using a sterile syringe, withdraw 1 mL of sample.

6.3 Invert a serum bottle so the rubber septum is at the bottom. Inoculate the medium by carefully puncturing the septum with the sterile hypodermic syringe and insert the needle until only the beveled tip is inside the bottle. Discharge the contents of the syringe into the bottle and withdraw the needle. Agitate the bottle vigorously.

6.4 Using a new sterile syringe, withdraw 1 mL from the previously inoculated serum bottle and then inoculate a fresh bottle as in 6.3.

6.5 To conserve time and reagents, a scheme such as given in the following example is recommended. Suppose it is desired to test 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL of a given water sample:

6.5.1 Set out 10 serum bottles of culture medium.

6.5.2 Prepare them as in 6.1.

6.5.3 Withdraw 1 mL of sample as in 6.2 and inoculate one serum bottle of medium as in 6.3.

6.5.4 Using the dilution prepared in 6.5.3, inoculate three fresh serum bottles of culture medium as in 6.4 to prepare the 0.1-mL dilutions.

6.5.5 Using one of the dilutions prepared in 6.5.4, inoculate three fresh serum bottles of culture medium as in 6.4 to prepare the 0.01-mL dilutions.

6.5.6 Using one of the dilutions prepared in 6.5.5, inoculate three fresh serum bottles of culture medium as in 6.4 to prepare the 0.001-mL dilutions.

Similar schemes can be established for other combinations using any number of bottles per dilution level.

6.6 Clearly mark each set of inoculated serum bottles indicating location, time of collection, sample number, and sample volume. Code each bottle for easy identification.

6.7 Incubate serum bottles at room temperature (18 to 25 °C) for 28 days. Do not consider serum bottles that turn black within 2 hours as positive because this probably is due to the presence of sulfide ion in the sample. Subcultures of these false positives may be made after 1 week following the guidelines in 6.1 through 6.3.

6.8 Examine the serum bottles after 28 days. Record as positive all bottles that have substantial quantities of black precipitate. When shaken, the bottles should assume an inky black appearance. Record as negative all bottles in which the medium is turbid but only slightly grayish.

6.9 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 Record the number of positive inoculated serum bottles occurring for all sample volumes tested. When more than three volumes are tested, use results from only three of them when computing the MPN. To select the three dilutions for the MPN index, use as the first, the smallest sample volume in which all tests are positive (no larger sample volume having any negative results) and the next two succeeding smaller sample volumes (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7.2 In the examples listed below, the number in the numerator represents positive serum bottles; the denominator represents the total number of bottles inoculated.

Example	Decimal dilutions				Combination of positives
	1 milliliter	0.1 milliliter	0.01 milliliter	0.001 milliliter	
a	3/3	3/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-0
b	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3	0-1-0
c	3/3	2/3	1/3	1/3	3-2-2
d	3/3	2/3	2/3	0/3	3-2-2

In example b, the three dilutions need to be taken to place the positive results in the middle dilution. When a positive result occurs in a dilution larger than the three chosen according to the guideline, as in c, it needs to be placed in the result for the largest chosen dilution as in d (Note 1).

Note 1: The largest dilution has the smallest concentration of the sample; the largest dilution in the preceding table is 0.001.

The MPN for various combinations of positive and negative results when three and five 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in tables 7 and 8.

Table 7.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three 1-, three 0.1-, and three 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of serum bottles indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 1 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Three of 1 mL each	Three of 0.1 mL each	Three of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<0.3	---	---
0	0	1	.3	<0.05	0.9
0	1	0	.3	<.05	1.3
1	0	0	.4	<.05	2.0
1	0	1	.7	.1	2.1
1	1	0	.7	.1	2.3
1	1	1	1.1	.3	3.6
1	2	0	1.1	.3	3.6
2	0	0	.9	.1	3.6
2	0	1	1.4	.3	3.7
2	1	0	1.5	.3	4.4
2	1	1	2.0	.7	8.9
2	2	0	2.1	.4	4.7
2	2	1	2.8	1.0	15.0
3	0	0	2.3	.4	12.0
3	0	1	3.9	.7	13.0
3	0	2	6.4	1.5	38.0
3	1	0	4.3	.7	21.0
3	1	1	7.5	1.4	23.0
3	1	2	12.0	3.0	38.0
3	2	0	9.3	1.5	38.0
3	2	1	15.0	3.0	44.0
3	2	2	21.0	3.5	47.0
3	3	0	24.0	3.6	130.0
3	3	1	46.0	7.1	240.0
3	3	2	110.0	15.0	480.0
3	3	3	≥240.0	---	---

Table 8.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used

[mL, milliliters; MPN, most probable number; ---, not applicable; modified from American Public Health Association and others, 1985]

Number of serum bottles indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 1 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
0	0	0	<0.2	---	---
0	0	1	.2	<0.05	0.7
0	1	0	.2	<.05	.7
0	2	0	.4	<.05	1.1
1	0	0	.2	<.05	.7
1	0	1	.4	<.05	1.1
1	1	0	.4	<.05	1.1
1	1	1	.6	<.05	1.5
1	2	0	.6	<.05	1.5
2	0	0	.5	<.05	1.3
2	0	1	.7	.1	1.7
2	1	0	.7	.1	1.7
2	1	1	.9	.2	2.1
2	2	0	.9	.2	2.1
2	3	0	1.2	.3	2.8
3	0	0	.8	.1	1.9
3	0	1	1.1	.2	2.5
3	1	0	1.1	.2	2.5
3	1	1	1.4	.4	3.4
3	2	0	1.4	.4	3.4
3	2	1	1.7	.5	4.6
4	0	0	1.3	.3	3.1
4	0	1	1.7	.5	4.6
4	1	0	1.7	.5	4.6
4	1	1	2.1	.7	6.3
4	1	2	2.6	.9	7.8

Table 8.--Most-probable-number (MPN) index and 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when five 1-, five 0.1-, and five 0.01-milliliter dilutions are used--Continued

Number of serum bottles indicating positive reaction out of:			MPN index per 1 mL	95-percent confidence limits	
Five of 1 mL each	Five of 0.1 mL each	Five of 0.01 mL each		Lower	Upper
4	2	0	2.2	0.7	6.7
4	2	1	2.6	.9	7.8
4	3	0	2.7	.9	8.0
4	3	1	3.3	1.1	9.3
4	4	0	3.4	1.2	9.3
5	0	0	2.3	.7	7.0
5	0	1	3.1	1.1	8.9
5	0	2	4.3	1.5	11.0
5	1	0	3.3	1.1	9.3
5	1	1	4.6	1.6	12.0
5	1	2	6.3	2.1	15.0
5	2	0	4.9	1.7	13.0
5	2	1	7.0	2.3	17.0
5	2	2	9.4	2.8	22.0
5	3	0	7.9	2.5	19.0
5	3	1	11.0	3.1	25.0
5	3	2	14.0	3.7	34.0
5	3	3	18.0	4.4	50.0
5	4	0	13.0	3.5	30.0
5	4	1	17.0	4.3	49.0
5	4	2	22.0	5.7	70.0
5	4	3	28.0	9.0	85.0
5	4	4	35.0	12.0	100.0
5	5	0	24.0	6.8	75.0
5	5	1	35.0	12.0	100.0
5	5	2	54.0	18.0	140.0
5	5	3	92.0	30.0	320.0
5	5	4	160.0	64.0	580.0
5	5	5	≥240.0	---	---

If a series of decimal dilutions other than 1, 0.1, and 0.01 mL is used, the MPN values in tables 7 and 8 need to be corrected for the dilutions actually used. To do this, divide the values in tables 7 and 8 by the dilution factor of the first number in the three-number sequence (the serum bottles having the largest concentration of the sample). For example, if dilutions of 0.1, 0.01, and 0.001 mL are used, divide the values in tables 7 and 8 by 0.1 mL. MPN tables for other combinations of sample volumes and number of serum bottles or culture tubes at each level of inoculation are in American Public Health Association and others (1985).

7.5 If only one serum bottle is inoculated at each decimal dilution level, record the smallest dilution showing a positive response compared to the largest dilution showing a negative response. Record the results as a range of numbers, for example 100 to 1,000 sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter. If all bottles are positive, record the result as a number greater than that indicated by the value of the largest dilution of the series. For example, 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL samples are tested, and all tubes are positive at the end of the test. Record the result as greater than 100 sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter.

7.6 Examples of test results and calculations are listed below.

7.6.1 The following results were obtained with a three serum-bottle series:

[-, negative; +, positive]

Volume (milliliters)	Serum bottle number 1	2	3	Result
0.1	+	+	+	3/3
0.01	+	+	+	3/3
0.001	+	+	-	2/3
0.0001	-	-	-	0/3

Following the guideline in 7.3 and using 0.01-, 0.001-, and 0.0001-mL sample volumes, a sequence of 3-2-0 is indicated. From this, an MPN of 9.3 is indicated (table 7). Dividing by 0.01 mL to correct for the effect of dilution, the MPN of the sample is 930 sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter. The 95-percent confidence limits are 150 and 3,800.

7.6.2 The following results were obtained with a five serum-bottle series:

Volume (milliliters)	10^{-5}	10^{-6}	10^{-7}	10^{-8}	10^{-9}
Results	5/5	5/5	3/5	1/5	0/5.

Using 10^{-6}, 10^{-7}, and 10^{-8} mL sample volumes, the test results indicate a sequence of 5-3-1 for which the MPN (table 8) is 11.0. Dividing by 10^{-6}, the MPN is computed to be 11×10^{6} sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter and 95-percent confidence limits of 3.1×10^{6} and 25×10^{6} sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter.

7.6.3 The following results were obtained with a three serum-bottle series:

Volume (milliliters)	1	0.1	0.01	0.001
Results	0/3	1/3	0/3	0/3.

Use the sequence of 0-1-0 for which the MPN is 0.3 and 95-percent confidence limits of <0.05 and 1.3 (table 7).

8. Reporting of results

8.1 For one serum-bottle series, report the data as a range of numbers.

8.2 For a multiple serum-bottle series, report results as MPN of sulfate-reducing bacteria per milliliter as follows: less than 10, whole numbers; 10 or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 Precision of the MPN method increases as the number of serum bottles is increased. It increases rapidly as the number of bottles increases from 1 to 5, but then it increases at a slower rate making the gain, when using 10 bottles instead of 5, much less than is achieved by increasing the number of bottles from 1 to 5. Variance as a function of the number of bottles inoculated from a tenfold dilution series is listed below:

Number of serum bottles at each dilution	Variance for tenfold dilution series
1	0.580
3	.335
5	.259
10	.183

9.2 The 95-percent confidence limits for various combinations of positive and negative results when three and five 1-, 0.1-, and 0.01-mL dilutions are used are listed in tables 7 and 8.

10. References cited

American Petroleum Institute, 1965, Recommended practice for biological analysis of subsurface injection waters (2d ed.): Dallas, Tex., American Petroleum Institute Division Production API RP 38, 6 p.

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Kuznetsov, S. I., Ivanov, V. M., and Lyalikova, N. N., 1963, Introduction to geological microbiology: New York, McGraw-Hill, 252 p.

Postgate, J. R., 1959, Sulfate reduction by bacteria, in Clifton, C. E., Raffel, Sidney, and Starr, M. P., eds., Annual review of microbiology: Palo Alto, Calif., Annual Reviews, Inc., p. 505-520.

Total Bacteria (Epifluorescence Method)
(B-0005-85)

Parameter and Code:
Bacteria, total count, epifluorescence (number/mL): 81803

Epifluorescent microscopy is one method for determining the bacterial density in water. It has the advantage of being more rapid than viable count methods (standard plate count, membrane filter, and most probable number). However, bacterial densities determined by epifluorescent microscopy are not directly comparable to viable cell counts or to other biomass measurements, such as adenosine triphosphate (ATP). Direct microscopic counts usually are greater than viable counts for two principal reasons. First, cells that are living as well as dead at the time of collection will be counted by direct microscopy. Second, only a fraction of the total bacteria is enumerated in a viable count.

1. Applications

The epifluorescence method is suitable for all water, except that having a large suspended-sediment concentration. It is similar to other published methods (Hobbie and others, 1977; Dutka, 1978).

2. Summary of method

A water sample is collected and preserved onsite using formaldehyde. In the laboratory, an aliquot of the sample is mixed with a fluorescent dye and filtered through a black membrane filter. The membrane filter is mounted on a microscope slide and viewed at 1,000X using epifluorescent microscopy. Bacteria and other life forms appear green, orange, or red against a black background. The number of bacteria per milliliter in the sample is calculated from the average bacterial density per microscopic field.

3. Interferences

Bacteria absorbed on particulate matter are difficult to isolate and the number may be underestimated. Fluorescence of nonbacterial matter, such as algae, protozoa, and fungi, also may cause enumeration errors. Some surfactants prevent the fluorescent dye from attaching to the bacteria or may remove dye from the membrane filter making analysis impossible. Excessive sediment on the filter makes it difficult to view underlying cells.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.2 Cover slips, 25-mm circles.

4.3 Filter-holder assembly, 25 mm.

4.4 Filter-holder assembly, 47 mm.

4.5 Flasks, 1 L, erlenmeyer (borosilicate glass).

4.6 Laboratory film, parafilm.

4.7 Membrane filters, cellulose, 0.45-μm pore size, 25-mm diameter.

4.8 Membrane filters, polycarbonate, 0.2-μm pore size, 25-mm diameter.

4.9 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45-μm pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.10 Membrane forceps.

4.11 Microscope, with lamp, heat filter, red attenuation filter, beam splitter, barrier filter, exciter filter, or equivalent apparatus.

4.12 Microscope slides, 25×75 mm.

4.13 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile.

4.14 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile.

4.15 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.16 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.17 Stage micrometer.

4.18 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.19 Test tubes, 16x100 mm, glass, disposable.

4.20 Vacuum filtering flask.

4.21 Vacuum pump.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acridine orange, 0.1 percent. Dissolve 0.1 g acridine orange in 97 mL distilled water, then add 3 mL 37-percent formaldehyde solution. Filter solution through a 0.45-µm membrane filter to remove insoluble dye and store in an amber or black bottle in darkness. The acridine orange solution is stable for approximately 1 month at room temperature.

CAUTION.--Acridine orange resulted in mutagenic activity in the Ames test and needs to be treated with care.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Formaldehyde preservative, 37-percent formaldehyde solution.

5.4 Immersion oil, low fluorescence.

5.5 Irgalan black solution, 0.2 percent. Dissolve 2 g irgalan black in 1 L distilled water containing 2 percent acetic acid.

5.6 Particle-free sterile distilled or deionized water. Filter distilled water through a 0.45-µm membrane filter and transfer into a 1-L screwcap erlenmeyer flask. Sterilize by autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes.

6. Analysis

6.1 Preserve the sample, immediately after collection, by the addition of formaldehyde solution (37 percent) at the rate of 5 mL of formaldehyde to 95 mL of sample. Record the volume of preservative added. Maintain the sample in a cool, dark location prior to analysis but prevent from freezing. Refrigeration is ideal but is not required. Sample analysis needs to be completed within 1 month of collection.

6.2 Soak the polycarbonate membrane filters in irgalan black solution for 8 to 24 hours. Rinse the filters in two successive sterile particle-free distilled water rinses and place in a sterile petri dish prior to use.

6.3 Shake the water sample vigorously for 10 seconds to distribute the contents evenly.

6.4 Using a sterile pipet, place 0.5 mL acridine orange solution into a 16×100-mm test tube. Place a 4.5 mL sample into the test tube or a 4.5-mL combination of sample plus particle-free distilled water. Cover the test tube with a small piece of parafilm and invert several times to mix. Let stand for 2 (or as much as 30) minutes.

6.5 Assemble the 25-mm filter-holder assembly with a cellulose membrane filter (0.45 µm, 25-mm diameter) on the bottom and a polycarbonate filter (0.2 µm, 25-diameter) on top. Attach vacuum pump to vacuum filtering flask.

6.6 Filter the acridine orange containing sample at 0.5 bar (15 in. of vacuum) until the filter just becomes dry. Rinse the test tube using about 5 mL of particle-free sterile distilled water and filter as before to rinse particulate matter from the inner surface of the filter-holder assembly.

6.7 When the polycarbonate filter just becomes dry, place it on a microscope slide. Allow to dry for an additional minute, place a drop of immersion oil on the filter, and add a cover slip.

6.8 Examine the preparation under epifluorescent microscopy at 100X following the manufacturer's instructions for the unit. When the filter surface is in focus, change to high dry (450X) and scan the filter looking for problems such as poor dispersion or excessive fluorescence. If the filter has no apparent problems, add a drop of immersion oil to the cover slip and change to 1,000X magnification. Count the bacteria either within the entire field or within the area enclosed by an ocular grid. Bacterial enumeration is easiest using a Whipple or similar ocular grid. Ideally, each microscopic field should have 5 to 50 bacteria. Generally, most bacteria fluoresce green, but a few also may fluoresce orange or red. Only objects having clearly discernible bacterial morphology should be counted. Count each field separately. Count at least 10 random fields until a total of 300 or more bacteria are counted. If the preparation is too concentrated or dilute, prepare another mount with a different sample volume.

7. Calculations

7.1 Calculate the number of bacteria per milliliter as follows:

$$\text{Bacteria/mL} = \frac{\dfrac{\text{Average count per field} \times \text{effective filter area (square millimeters)}}{\text{field area (square millimeters)}}}{\text{Sample volume filtered (milliliters)} \times \text{dilution factor}} .$$

The effective filter area is the area of filter exposed to the water sample. The 25-mm filter-holder assembly described in the "Apparatus" subsection has an effective filter diameter of 16 mm or an effective filter area of 201 mm^2. Other types of filter-holder assemblies may have different effective filter areas. The field area must be determined for each microscope using a stage micrometer and following the procedure described by the American Public Health Association and others (1985). The dilution factor corrects for the addition of preservative as follows:

$$\text{Dilution factor (Note 1)} = \frac{\text{Sample volume (milliliters)}}{\text{Sample volume (milliliters)} + \text{preservative (milliliters)}} .$$

Note 1: Addition of 5 mL of formaldehyde to 95 mL of sample will give a dilution factor of 0.95.

7.2 Example calculation:

95 mL of sample + 5 mL preservative = dilution factor 0.95

Sample volume = 2 mL

Effective filter area = 201 mm^2

Field area of microscope = 2.303×10^{-3} mm^2

Total bacteria per field = 60

$$\text{Bacteria/mL} = \frac{(60)\ \frac{201}{2.303 \times 10^{-3}}}{(2)\ (0.95)}$$

$$= \frac{(60)\ (0.8727 \times 10^{5})}{(2)\ (0.95)}$$

$$= 2{,}756{,}130$$

$$= 2{,}760{,}000\ .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report the bacterial density as bacteria per milliliter as follows: three significant figures.

9. Precision

The precision is dependent on the density of bacteria in the sample and the quantity of nonbacterial debris. For typical samples, the precision is approximately ±10 percent.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Dutka, B. J., ed., 1978, Methods for microbiological analysis of waters, wastewaters, and sediments: Burlington, Canada Centre for Inland Waters, 288 p.

Hobbie, J. E., Daley, R. J., and Jasper, S., 1977, Use of nuclepore filters for counting bacteria by fluorescence microscopy: Applied and Environmental Microbiology, v. 33, p. 1225-1228.

Salmonella and Shigella (Diatomaceous-Earth and Membrane-Filter Method) (B-0100-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

Pathogenic bacteria of the genera Salmonella and Shigella may be isolated from water by similar methods. The genus Salmonella comprises more than 1,000 varieties, all of which are potentially pathogenic to humans. The more common diseases caused by Salmonella include typhoid and paratyphoid fever and salmonellosis. Because morphologically and physiologically similar Salmonella varieties can cause different diseases, Salmonella identification involves serology, which is specific for a particular type of Salmonella. The members of the genus Shigella are all potentially pathogenic and are similar to Salmonella in many aspects. Shigella causes acute bacillar dysentery, also known as shigellosis.

Salmonella and Shigella can inhabit the gastrointestinal tract of humans. The bacteria pass with the feces. These organisms share the same native environment and travel the water route along with fecal coliforms. The pathogens in water form an extremely small part of the total bacterial population because of excessive numbers of coliforms. Geldreich (1970) reported isolation of Salmonella in less than 27.6 percent of freshwater samples when the fecal coliform concentration was less than 200 colonies per 100 mL. Salmonella was isolated in 85.2 percent of water samples having fecal coliform concentrations between 200 and 2,000 colonies per 100 mL and was isolated in 98.1 percent of samples having fecal coliform concentrations exceeding 20,000 colonies per 100 mL.

Because of the small occurrence of pathogenic bacteria in most water, large volumes of sample must be filtered. In addition, selective enrichment culture is necessary to increase the population density of the pathogens so that detection is possible. Thus, the procedure is qualitative only. Quantification of pathogens in an original sample cannot be determined readily by this method.

This method is approved for use in the Water Resources Division by those individuals who have special training and knowledge in the handling of pathogenic organisms. Extreme care must be taken because the method provides for the reproduction and enhancement of growth of pathogenic bacteria. Following completion of tests, all cultures must be destroyed and all equipment sterilized by autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 30 minutes.

1. Applications

The method is applicable for all fresh and estuarine water. Very few reports of the occurrence of Salmonella and Shigella in marine environments are available except to indicate that sediment may be an important source.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Samples are collected using sterile procedures to avoid contamination, while minimizing exposure of onsite personnel to possible pathogens. Several liters of water are filtered through either diatomaceous earth or a

membrane filter. The bacteria-laden diatomaceous earth or membrane filter is divided into parts for inoculation into suitable enrichment media. Selenite and tetrathionate broth media are recommended for all Salmonella and most Shigella determinations.

2.2 Selective solid media plates are streaked at 24-hour intervals for as much as 5 days after incubation at 41.5 °C. Colonies that appear on the selective media having typical Salmonella or Shigella characteristics are purified and further classified by biochemical reactions. Several non-pathogenic organisms share some important biochemical characteristics with the Salmonella and Shigella groups. For this reason, many differential biochemical tests are necessary for presumptive identification of the pathogenic Enterobacteriaceae, of which Salmonella and Shigella are members. Identification cannot be done until the bacteria is verified serologically. A diagrammatic identification scheme is shown in figure 8.

3. Interferences

The membrane-filter method may not work with water having a large suspended-solids concentration. Additionally, many bacteria, other than Salmonella and Shigella, growing in the enrichment media make isolation and identification of the pathogenic Enterobacteriaceae difficult, even for experienced investigators. Cultures used for inoculation of media in biochemical tests must be pure; if not, false results will be obtained.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Bacteriological transfer loops and needles.

4.2 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.3 Diatomaceous earth.

4.4 Durham tubes, flint glass, 6×50 mm.

4.5 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.6 Flasks, 125-mL, screwcap, erlenmeyer.

4.7 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

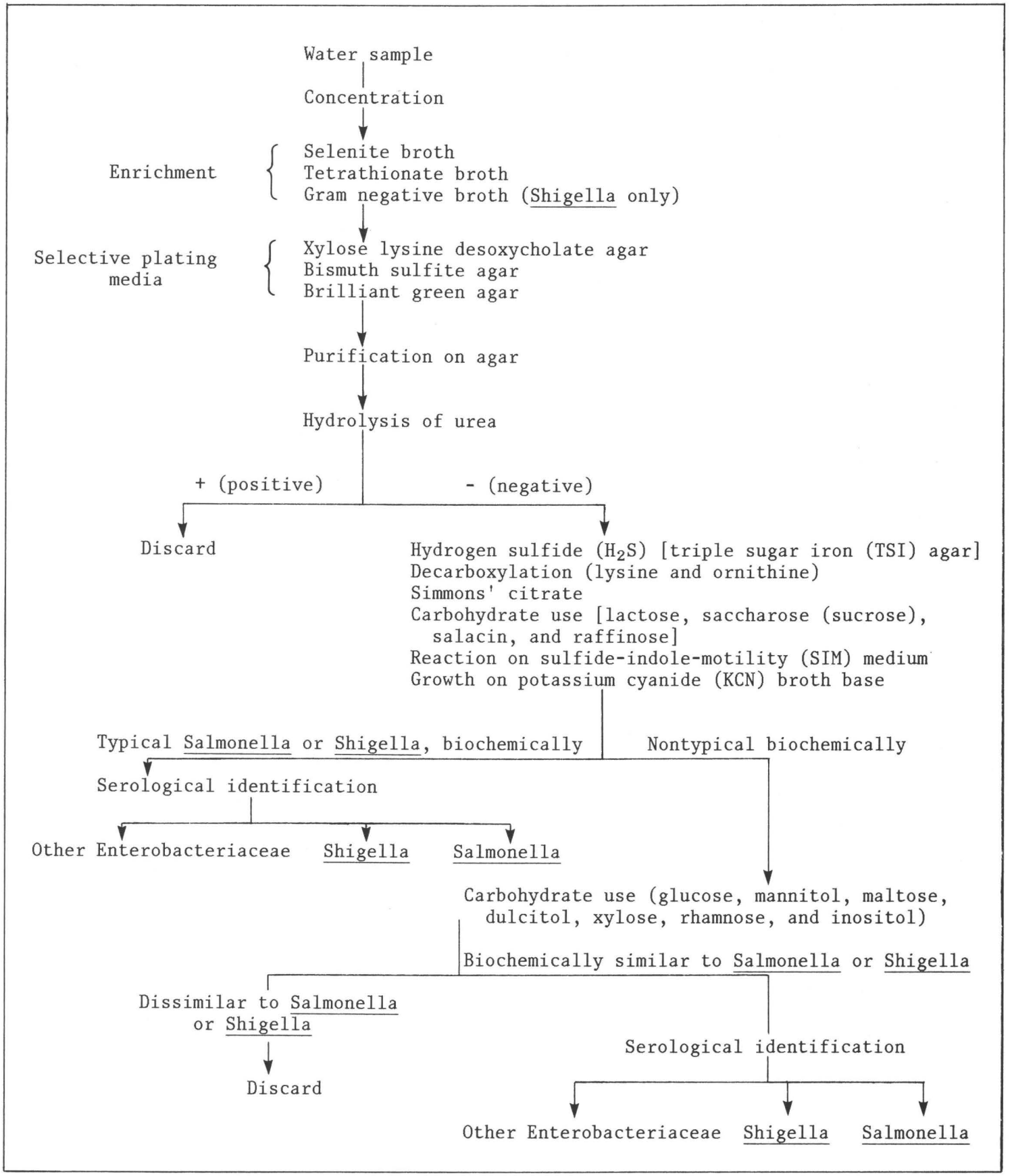


Figure 8.--Identification scheme for Salmonella and Shigella.

4.8 Hot plate, or kitchen stove.

4.9 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 35±0.5 °C and 41.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use.

4.10 Laboratory balance, with sensitivity to 0.01 g.

4.11 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter, and absorbent pads.

4.12 Microscope slides, 25×75 mm.

4.13 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 100×15 mm.

4.14 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section. Care when collecting the sample is advised to preclude the possibility of contamination of the sample or the collector. Sterile, disposable gloves are recommended. A minimum of 2 L of sample is necessary for filtration. Because this procedure will be used for qualitative determinations, samples representative of mean flow of a stream generally are not required.

4.15 Scissors, autoclavable.

4.16 Spatula, laboratory, 120×20 mm.

4.16 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.18 Test tubes, borosilicate glass, 16×150 mm, and tube caps, 16 mm.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Agar.

5.2 Bismuth sulfite agar.

5.3 Brilliant green agar.

5.4 Decarboxylase base Moeller.

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for slevilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.7 GN (gram negative) broth.

5.8 KCN (potassium cyanide) broth base.

5.9 Kliger iron agar.

5.10 Lactose.

5.11 L-lysine HCL.

5.12 L-ornithine HCL.

5.13 Potassium cyanide (KCN), powdered, reagent grade.

5.14 Purple broth base.

5.15 Raffinose.

5.16 Saccharose.

5.17 Salicin.

5.18 Salmonella H Antiserum Kit.

5.19 Salmonella O Antiserum Kit.

5.20 Selenite broth.

5.21 SIM (sulfide-indole-motility) medium.

5.22 Simmons' citrate agar.

5.23 Sucrose.

5.24 Tetrathionate broth.

5.25 TSI (triple sugar iron) agar.

5.26 Urea agar base.

5.27 Veal infusion broth.

5.28 XLD (xylose lysine desoxycholate) agar.

Note 1: It is important that manufacturer's instructions be followed closely in the preparation and storage of all media. If onsite inoculation is intended, discretion is advised in the final dispensing of selenite and tetrathionate broth. The container must allow room for diatomaceous earth and membrane filters and must fit in an onsite incubator.

6. Analysis

6.1 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 2). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 2: Onsite sterilization of filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed at all sites.

6.2 Assemble the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 3), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up, or a sterile absorbent pad in the funnel part of the filter-holder assembly (6.4). Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 3: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.3 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.4 Concentration: the sample must be concentrated before inoculation into selective media. Two procedures are available for concentration--diatomaceous-earth filtration and membrane filtration.

6.4.1 Diatomaceous-earth filtration: Place a sterile 47-mm diameter absorbent pad in the funnel part of the filter-holder assembly and fill the neck halfway with diatomaceous earth. Pour 2 L of sample slowly into the funnel and apply vacuum. When the sample has been completely filtered, transfer equal parts of the diatomaceous earth to the selective growth media (Note 4).

Note 4: Not all bacteria are retained; the filtrate will contain some bacteria and possibly pathogens.

6.4.2 Membrane filtration: Filter 2 L (minimum) of sample through a 0.45-μm mean pore size membrane filter. Because of the small pore diameter, a 47-mm diameter membrane filter will clog quickly unless the water is relatively free of suspended material. Larger diameter filters, such as 100 or 150 mm, may be used if suitable filter-holder assemblies are available. When filtration is complete, remove the filter from the assembly, cut with sterile scissors, and transfer equal-sized pieces of the filter to selective growth media. Record volume of sample that was filtered.

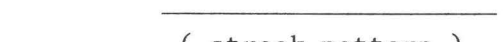
6.5 If isolation of Salmonella is desired, transfer one-half of the diatomaceous earth or membrane filter(s) to previously prepared and prewarmed (41.5 °C) flasks of selenite and tetrathionate broth. Prepare flasks by placing 50-mL aliquots of appropriate broth medium in sterilized 125-mL screwcap erlenmeyer flasks. If only Shigella is desired, transfer one-half of the diatomaceous earth or membrane filter(s) to GN broth. GN broth cannot be used to isolate Salmonella.

6.6 Immediately place inoculated flasks into an incubator preset at 41.5 °C. No more than 24 hours may elapse between incubation and subsequent culture transfers (6.5).

6.7 After arrival at the laboratory, transfer primary culture flasks to a laboratory incubator prewarmed to 41.5 °C and prepare selective media. For Salmonella, use brilliant green agar, bismuth sulfite agar, and XLD agar. XLD agar also may be used for Shigella. One to four petri dishes of each medium will be needed for every primary (broth) culture.

6.8 After incubation periods indicated in this paragraph and using bacteriological needles, streak broth cultures having evidence of bacterial growth onto media prepared in 6.4. Selenite broth cultures displaying growth become turbid and develop orange-red coloration. Optimum recovery of Salmonella from selenite broth is obtained after incubation at 41.5 °C for 24 hours, but additional streaking after 48 and 72 hours may be needed to recover some slower growing strains. Incubate tetrathionate cultures for 48 hours before streaking. Repeated streaking from tetrathionate cultures may be necessary for as much as 5 days to recover all Salmonella. Streak the GN broth after 24-hour incubation only. Streak using care and precision so isolated colonies will grow in a discrete pattern (Note 5).

Note 5: The following streak pattern will give good results if care is taken to flame the needle after streaking each section:



(streak pattern)

6.9 Incubate inoculated petri dishes in an inverted (upside down) position at 41.5 °C. Incubate XLD agar petri dishes for 24 hours. Incubate all other petri dishes for 48 hours.

6.10 After incubation, inspect the petri dishes for Salmonella or Shigella colonies. The petri dishes usually have luxuriant bacterial growth, so care and discretion are necessary in the selection of possible colonies of pathogens. On brilliant green agar, Salmonella typically forms pinkish-white colonies having a red background (if well isolated). If the petri dish is overgrown with colonies, Salmonella may be indistinguishable from the usually more numerous nonpathogens. On bismuth sulfite agar, Salmonella develops black colonies that may or may not have a metallic sheen; sometimes a halo is produced around the colony. A few Salmonella strains develop a green, rather than black, coloration on bismuth sulfite agar. Therefore, isolate some green colonies. On XLD agar, Shigella forms red colonies, and Salmonella produces black-centered red colonies.

6.11 Carefully transfer all suspected Salmonella or Shigella colonies, using a sterile bacteriological loop, to fresh agar petri dishes. Incubate at 41.5 °C for 48 hours. Continue repeated examination, streaking, and incubation of suspected Salmonella and Shigella until pure cultures are obtained.

6.12 After the suspected Salmonella or Shigella colonies have been developed in pure culture, subject them to a series of biochemical tests. If cultures are still positive for Salmonella or Shigella following the biochemical testing, serological confirmation must be done. In some areas, State or local health departments may be able to perform the biochemical and serological testings. If not, use the scheme in figure 8.

Biochemical identification of large numbers of cultures is expensive and time consuming. It should not be attempted independently without previous training and experience in reading reactions and interpreting results. Additionally, care must be used in working with cultures if laboratory-acquired infections are to be avoided.

There are many published identification schemes for Salmonella and Shigella. Publications by Brezenski and Russomanno (1969), Claudon and others (1971), Presnell and Miescier (1971), and Edwards and Ewing (1972) describe various methods for the identification procedure. The manufacturers of bacteriological media also provide useful leaflets about certain testing procedures. Difco Laboratories publications (1968, 1969a, 1969b, 1971a, 1971b) are available on request to Difco Laboratories.

If local identification of a suspect culture is desired, first check for the production of urease. Salmonella and Shigella always are negative for urease production using the Christensen method (Difco Laboratories, 1969b). Screen urease negative cultures for biochemical action as follows: Lysine and ornithine decarboxylation using the Moeller method (Difco Laboratories, 1969a); citrate using the Simmons method (Difco Laboratories, 1953); hydrogen sulfide production on TSI; fermentation of lactose, saccharose (sucrose), salicin, and raffinose; growth in KCN broth; and action on SIM medium. Procedural details are listed in table 9.

If biochemical tests (table 10) indicate the isolated culture may be Salmonella or Shigella, identify serologically.

6.13 Serological identification. Serological identification of Salmonella or Shigella should be carried out as described by Edwards and Ewing (1972) and American Public Health Association and others (1985). Difco Laboratories (1971b) developed one procedure for the serological identification of Salmonella.

A brief description of the serological process may improve the nonserologist's understanding. If an organism is exposed to a foreign body, such as a bacterial cell, part of the organism's defense is the production of a specific protein, called an antibody, that renders the bacterium harmless or nonvirulent. Antibodies are found in the plasma fraction of the blood; hence, blood serum that contains antibodies against, for example, Salmonella, is called antiserum. Antiserum, if specific for a certain bacterium, will cause clumping of the bacteria. The clumping can be observed under 100X magnification. The serological process is so specific that more than 1,000 different Salmonella types (serotypes) have been identified.

A foreign body that stimulates the production of an antibody is called an antigen. Salmonella has two main types of antigens, the O (somatic or intracellular) antigens and H (flagellar) antigens. The O antigens are heat stable and provide basic differentiation into groups of bacteria. The H antigens are heat labile and are used for differentiation within a bacterial group. Occasionally another somatic antigen, termed Vi, is observed. The Vi antigen can block activity of an O antigen and must be inactivated by heat during the serological grouping tests.

The serological procedure for the identification of Shigella is similar to that of Salmonella; therefore, only the Salmonella serology is further detailed. A simplified scheme devised by Spicer and Edwards (Difco Laboratories, 1971b) can be used for tentative serological identification of Salmonella using minimal effort. The O antigen is identified first using Salmonella O antiserum. If the results are positive (clumping occurs), the culture is one of the genus Salmonella. If only verification that the culture is a Salmonella is needed, the O antigen analysis is sufficient.

If further identification is desired, the H antigen needs to be determined using Salmonella H antiserum. In this step, most Salmonella can be classified into a specific serotype. A diagrammatic serological scheme for Salmonella is shown in figure 9.

All cultures not retained for serological testing should be autoclaved at 121 °C at 1.05 kg per/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

Table 9.--Biochemical test procedures for Salmonella and Shigella

[°C, degrees Celsius; mL, milliliters; H_2S, hydrogen sulfide; TSI, triple sugar iron; SIM, sulfide-indole-motility; KCN, potassium cyanide]

Test	Media requirements	Media preparation	Inoculation and incubation	Typical result
Urease.	Urea agar base or agar.	Prepare medium in slants with generous butts.	Make one streak along entire length. Do not inoculate butt. Incubate at 37 °C for 24 hours.	Salmonella and Shigella are negative (no color change). Others turn medium pink within 24 hours.
Decarboxylation of lysine and ornithine.	Decarboxylase base, L-lysine, and L-ornithine.	Use amino acids at 0.5 percent, added to base medium. Ornithine must be adjusted to pH 6.5 with I N sodium hydroxide. Dispense in 5-mL quantities in screwcap tubes.	Inoculate with a 24-hour agar slant culture. Screw caps on tightly and incubate at 37 °C for 24 hours.	Reddish violet, if positive; yellow, if negative. Salmonella, usually positive and Shigella, negative, on lysine; variable on ornithine (see table 10).
Citrate.	Simmons' citrate agar.	Prepare medium in slants with generous butts.	Make one streak along length and stab the butt using a needle. Incubate at 37 °C for 24 to 48 hours.	Shigella is negative (green color). Most Salmonella are positive (deep blue).
H_2S production.	TSI agar.	Prepare medium in slants with generous butts.	Streak slant heavily along entire length and stab the butt. Incubate at 37 °C for 24 hours.	Salmonella has red slant, yellow butt, positive for H_2S production (blackening), gas variable. Shigella has red slant, yellow butt, negative for H_2S production (no blackening).

Table 9.--Biochemical test procedures for Salmonella and Shigella--Continued

Test	Media requirements	Media preparation	Inoculation and incubation	Typical result
Carbohydrate use.	Purple broth base, lactose, saccarose sucrose), salicin, and raffinose.	Sterilize base and sugar separately, the latter by filter. Use 0.5 to 1 percent sugar. Add after sterilizing base in test tubes with durham tubes.	Inoculate from 24-hour agar slant culture. Incubate at 37 °C. Examine daily for 7 days.	A positive reaction is production of acid (yellow color) with or without gas (bubbles in durham tube). Salmonella is negative.
SIM.	SIM medium and indole test strips.	Dispense in test tubes half full. Sterilize, allow to harden upright. Put a test strip in each tube.	Inoculate with needle from 24-hour agar slant culture. Stab in center to 1/2 depth. Incubate at 37 °C for 24 to 48 hours.	If indole is produced, paper turns pink. Medium blackens if H_2S is produced. Salmonella is negative for indole; may produce H_2S.
KCN.	KCN broth base KCN reagent, powder.	Sterilize base separately. Prepare 0.5 percent KCN solution and add 1.5 mL to 100 mL sterile base. Dispense 2 mL in test tubes and close with sterile paraffined stoppers.	Inoculate from 24-hour KCN broth culture without KCN. Incubate at 37 °C for 48 hours.	Salmonella and Shigella will not grow. Other Enterobacteriaceae may grow (see table 10).

Table 10.--Differentiation of Enterobacteriaceae by biochemical tests

[+, 90 percent or more cultures positive within 1- or 2-day incubation; - or +, majority of cultures negative; -, 90 percent or more cultures negative; d, different biochemical reactions (+, (+), -); + or -, majority of cultures positive; d^w, different biochemical reactions (+, (+), -), weak reaction; (+), delayed positive reaction; - or (+), majority of cultures negative (delayed reaction of 3 days or more); (+) or +, majority of reactions delayed, some occur within 1 or 2 days; + or (+), 90 percent or more positive (delayed reaction of 3 days or more); °C, degrees Celsius; from Edwards and Ewing, 1972]

Test or substrate	Escherichieae		Edward-sielleae	Salmonelleae		
	Escherichia	Shigella	Edwardsiella	Salmonella	Arizona	Citrobacter
Indol	+	- or +	+	-	-	-
Methyl red	+	+	+	+	+	+
Voges-proskauer	-	-	-	-	-	-
Simmons' citrate	-	-	-	d	+	+
Hydrogen sulfide (TSI)	-	-	+	+	+	+ or -
Urease	-	-	-	-	-	d^w
KCN	-	-	-	-	-	+
Motility	+ or -	-	+	+	+	+
Gelatin (22 °C)	-	-	-	-	(+)	-
Lysine decarboxylase	d	-	+	+	+	-
Arginine dihydrolase	d	- or (+)	-	(+) or +	+ or (+)	d
Ornithine decarboxylase	d	d(1)	+	+	+	d
Phenylalanine deaminase	-	-	-	-	-	-
Malonate	-	-	-	-	+	d
Gas from glucose	+	-(1)	+	+	+	+
Lactose	+	-(1)	-	-	d	d
Saccharose (Sucrose)	d	-(1)	-	-	-	d
Mannitol	+	+ or -	-	+	+	+
Dulcitol	d	d	-	d(2)	-	d
Salicin	d	-	-	-	-	d
Adonitol	-	-	-	-	-	-
Inositol	-	-	-	d	-	-
Sorbitol	+	d	-	+	+	+
Arabinose	+	d	-	+(2)	+	+
Raffinose	d	d	-	-	-	d
Rhamnose	d	d	-	+	+	+

Table 10.--Differentiation of Enterobacteriaceae by biochemical tests--Continued

Test or substrate	Klebsiella	Klebsielleae: Enterobacter: Cloacae	Enterobacter: Aerogenes	Enterobacter: Hafniae 37 °C	Enterobacter: Hafniae 22 °C	Enterobacter: Liquefaciens 37 °C	Enterobacter: Liquefaciens 22 °C	Serratia	Pectobacterium 25 °C
Indol	- or +	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	- or +
Methyl red	-	-	-	+ or -	-	+ or -	- or +	- or +	+ or -
Voges-proskauer	+	+	+	+ or -	+	- or +	+ or -	+	- or +
Simmons' citrate	+	+	+	(+) or -	d	+	+	+	d
Hydrogen sulfide (TSI)	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Urease	+	+ or -	-	-	-	d	-	d^{W}	d^{W}
KCN	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+ or -
Motility	-	+	+	+	+	d	+	+	+ or -
Gelatin (22 °C)	-	(+) or -	- or (+)		-		+	+	+ or (+)
Lysine decarboxylase	+	-	+	+	+	+ or -	+	+	-
Arginine dihydrolase	-	+	-	-	-	-	-	-	- or +
Ornithine decarboxylase	-	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-
Phenylalanine deaminase	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Malonate	+	+ or -	+ or -	+ or -	+ or -	-	-	-	- or +
Gas from glucose	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+ or -(3)	- or +
Lactose	+	+	+	- or (+)	- or (+)	d	(+)	- or (+)	d
Saccharose (Sucrose)	+	+	+	d	d	+	+	+	+
Mannitol	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	+
Dulcitol	- or +	- or +	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Salicin	+	+ or (+)	+	d	d	+	+	+	+
Adonitol	+ or -	- or +	+	-	-	d	d	d	-
Inositol	+	d	+	-	-	+	+	d	-
Sorbitol	+	+	+	-	-	+	+	+	-
Arabinose	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	+
Raffinose	+	+	+	-	-	+	+	-	+ or (+)
Rhamnose	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	-	d

Table 10.--Differentiation of Enterobacteriaceae by biochemical tests--Continued

Test or substrate	Proteeae					
	Proteus				Providencia	
	Vulgaris	Mirabilis	Morganii	Rettgeri	Alcali-faciens	Stuartii
Indol	+	-	+	+	+	+
Methyl red	+	+	+	+	+	+
Voges-proskauer	-	- or +	-	-	-	-
Simmons' citrate	d	+ or (+)	-	+	+	+
Hydrogen sulfide (TSI)	+	+	-	-	-	-
Urease	+	+	+	+	-	-
KCN	+	+	+	+	+	+
Motility	+	+	+	+	+	+
Gelatin (22 °C)	+ or (+)	+	-	-	-	-
Lysine decarboxylase	-	-	-	-	-	-
Arginine dihydrolase	-	-	-	-	-	-
Ornithine decarboxylase	-	+	+	-	-	-
Phenylalanine deaminase	+	+	+	+	+	+
Malonate	-	-	-	-	-	-
Gas from glucose	+ or -	+	d	- or +	+ or -	-
Lactose	-	-	-	-	-	-
Saccharose (Sucrose)	+	d	-	d	d	d
Mannitol	-	-	-	+ or -	-	d
Dulcitol	-	-	-	-	-	-
Salicin	d	d	-	d	-	-
Adonitol	-	-	-	d	+	-
Inositol	-	-	-	+	-	+
Sorbitol	-	-	-	d	-	d
Arabinose	-	-	-	-	-	-
Raffinose	-	-	-	-	-	-
Rhamnose	-	-	-	+ or -	-	-

(1) Certain biotypes of S. flexneri produce gas; S. sonnei cultures ferment lactose and sucrose slowly and decarboxylate ornithine.

(2) S. typhi, S. cholerae-suis, S. enteritidis bioserv. Paratyphi A and Pollorum, and a few others ordinarily do not ferment dulcitol promptly. S. cholerae-suis does not ferment arabinose.

(3) Gas volumes produced by cultures of Serratia, Proteus, and Providencia are small.

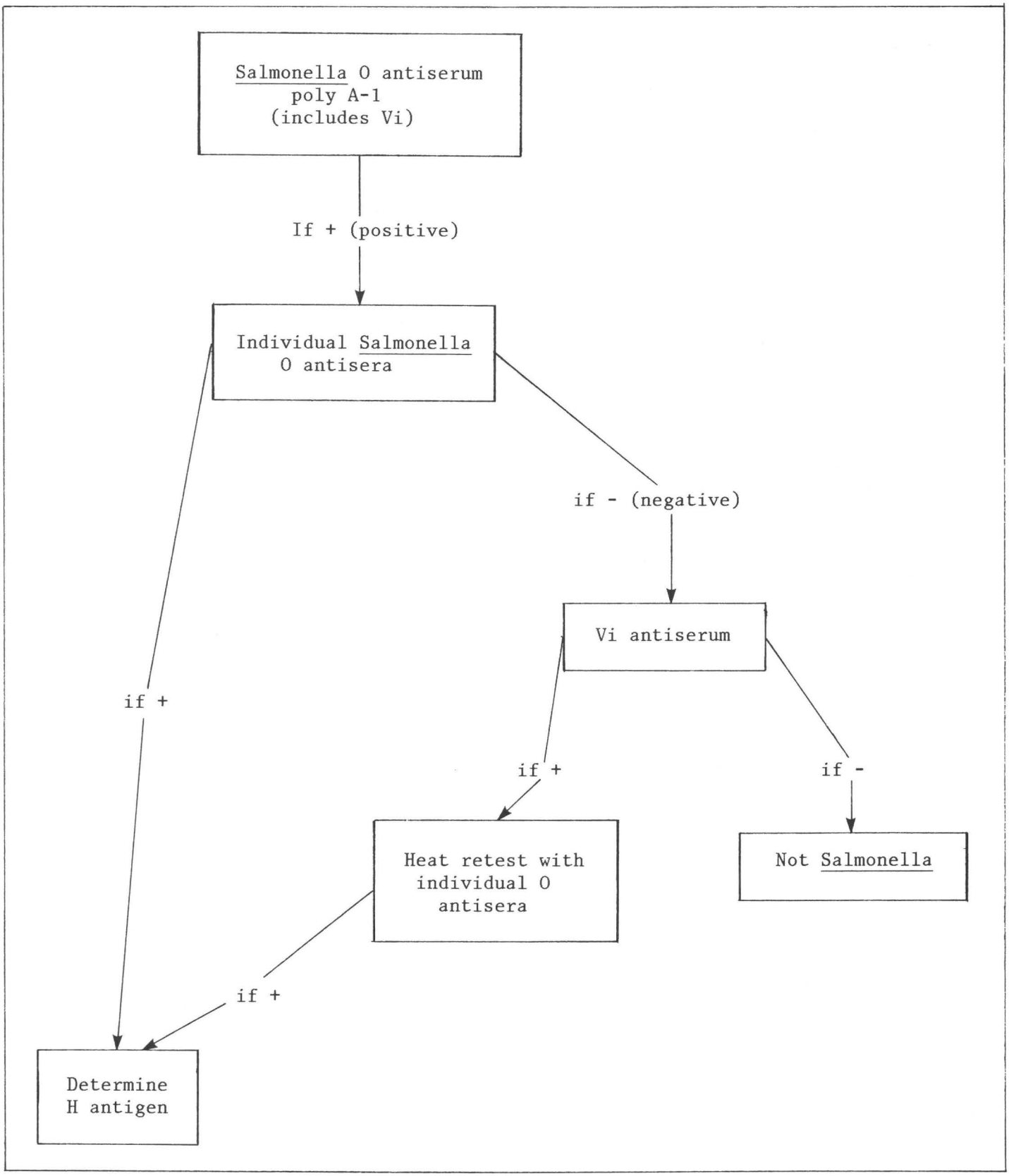


Figure 9.--Salmonella serology (from Difco Laboratories, 1971b).

If Difco reagents are used for serological identification, the procedure is as follows:

6.13.1 Somatic O Antigen Analysis (Difco Laboratories, 1971b).

1. Only micro-organisms that give typical Salmonella reactions culturally and biochemically should be tested.

2. Colonies growing on TSI agar or Kligler iron agar are satisfactory.

3. Prepare a dense suspension of the organisms to be tested by suspending the growth from an 18-hour TSI agar slant in 0.5 mL of 0.85 percent sodium chloride solution. This should produce a dense homogeneous suspension approximating 50 times that of a McFarland barium sulfate standard. Care must be taken to ensure an even suspension.

4. Using a wax pencil, mark a microscope slide or glass plate into sections about 1 cm square.

5. Place a drop (0.05 mL) of the appropriate Salmonella O antiserum poly on the ruled section of slide or plate as shown.

Antiserum	NaCl
Bacteria	Bacteria

6. Place one drop of 0.85 percent sodium chloride solution in the square adjacent to the one containing the antiserum. This will serve as a negative control of the bacterial suspension.

7. Using a clean bacteriological loop, transfer a loopful (0.05 mL) of the bacterial suspension (step 3) to the square containing sodium chloride solution. Mix bacterial and sodium chloride solutions thoroughly to obtain an even mixture.

8. Transfer a second loopful of bacterial suspension (step 3) to the square containing the antiserum. Mix bacterial solutions and antiserum thoroughly to obtain an even mixture.

9. Positive agglutination will be completed within 1 to 2 minutes. A delayed or partial agglutination should be considered negative.

10. If positive agglutination occurs, identify the group to which the bacterium belongs by using the desired individual Salmonella O antisera groups in the same manner as described in steps 5 through 9 for the Salmonella O antiserum poly.

11. If the culture reacts with Salmonella O antiserum poly A-1, step 10, but does not react with the specific Salmonella O antisera groups, it should be checked using Salmonella Vi antiserum by the method described in steps 5 through 9. If there is no agglutination caused by Salmonella Vi antiserum at this point, the culture may be regarded as not of the Salmonella genus. If the culture reacts

with the Salmonella Vi antiserum, the culture suspension should be heated in a boiling water bath for 10 minutes and cooled. After cooling, the heated culture should be retested using the desired individual Salmonella O antisera groups and the Salmonella Vi antiserum. If the culture does not react with the Vi antiserum after heating but reacts with the Salmonella O antiserum group D, factor 9, it is most likely Salmonella typhi and should be confirmed using Salmonella H antiserum d and an unheated culture.

12. If the heated culture in step 11 continues to react with the Vi antiserum and does not react with any of the Salmonella O antisera, the culture may be classified as a member of the Citrobacter (Citrobacter freundii) group. Edwards and Ewing (1972) recommended resubmitting for further biochemical tests all cultures having a typical reaction with Salmonella Vi antiserum and Salmonella O antiserum (poly or individual groups). They recommend using lysine decarboxylase broth and KCN broth. This step will aid in the elimination of the Citrobacter group (Bethesda-Ballerup) of bacteria.

13. Cultures having positive agglutination with Salmonella O antiserum groups may be analyzed further for their H antigens using the appropriate Salmonella H antisera, if necessary.

6.13.2 Flagellar H Antigen Analysis (Difco Laboratories, 1971b). For final identification of the Salmonella serotypes within a group, as determined by the Salmonella O antisera, it is necessary to determine the H antigens and the phase of the bacterium. Use tube-test procedure developed by Edwards and Bruner (1947). It is necessary to have a motile bacterium when testing for H antigens. Usually TSI broth cultures of fresh isolates are satisfactory for use as antigens. Occasionally, it is necessary to increase the motility of the test bacteria by making several consecutive transfers in SIM medium. This is a semi-solid medium that permits visual determination of bacterial movement. If the bacterium grows well on SIM medium, the biochemical test procedure is described in table 9. Inoculate the test tubes slightly below the surface of the medium by the stab method. Incubate the tubes at 41.5 °C for 18 to 20 hours. Transfer only those bacteria that have migrated to the bottom of the tube when making successive cultures. After several transfers, if the bacteria in the culture travel 50 to 60 mm through the medium in 18 to 20 hours, it is ready for use.

1. Inoculate a veal infusion broth using the motile bacteria from the last transfer (in motility medium) and incubate at 41.5 °C overnight.

2. Inactivate the culture using equal volumes of culture and 0.6 percent physiological saline solution (6 mL of 40 percent formaldehyde solution plus 8.5 g sodium chloride in 1 L distilled water).

3. Dilutions containing Salmonella H antisera depend on which sera are to be used. In general, use a 1:1,000 dilution with the majority of the H sera. This is done by diluting the rehydrated antiserum in a ratio of 0.1 mL antiserum to 33 mL 0.85-percent sodium chloride solution. A few of the specific single-factor sera must be used at a 1:500 dilution because extensive absorption is necessary to render them specific. The 1:500 dilution is recommended when Salmonella H antisera s, z13, z15, and z28 are used. To prepare a 1:500 dilution, add 0.1 mL rehydrated antiserum to 16 mL 0.85-percent sodium chloride solution. When using Salmonella H antiserum poly a-z, use a dilution of 1:100. To obtain this dilution, add 1 mL rehydrated polyvalent antiserum to 33 mL 0.85-percent sodium chloride solution. Salmonella H antisera poly A, B, C, D, E, and F, however, are used at a 1:1,000 dilution as prepared above. Prepare only the quantity of diluted Salmonella H sera that can be used in any given day. Discard all excess.

4. Add 0.5 mL of the appropriate serum dilution to Kahn-type serological tubes.

5. Add 0.5 mL of the antigen and incubate in a water bath at 50 °C for 1 hour.

6. Observe the agglutination and record. Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

Not applicable.

8. Reporting of results

Report results only as positive or negative for Salmonella or Shigella in the sample. Record the sample volume if it is known.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Brezenski, F. T., and Russomanno, R., 1969, The detection and use of Salmonella in studying polluted tidal estuaries: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 41, no. 5, p. 725-737.

Claudon, D. G., Thompson, D. I., Christenson, E. H., Lawton, G. W., and Dick, E. C., 1971, Prolonged Salmonella contamination of a recreational lake by runoff waters: Applied Microbiology, v. 21, no. 5, p. 875-877.

Difco Laboratories, 1953, Difco manual of dehydrated culture media and reagents for microbiological and clinical laboratory procedures (9th ed.): Detroit, 350 p.

_____1968, Bacto KCN broth base: Detroit, Difco no. 0647, 1 v.

_____1969a, Decarboxylase differential media for the Enterobacteriaceae: Detroit, Difco no. 0171, 1 v.

_____1969b, Urease reaction media for screening and identifying microorganisms: Detroit, Difco no. 0125, 1 v.

_____1971a, Differentiation of Enterobacteriaceae by biochemical tests: Detroit, Difco no. 0320, 1 v.

_____1971b, Serological identification of the Salmonella: Detroit, Difco no. 0168, 1 v.

Edwards, P. R., and Bruner, D. W., 1947, Simplified serologic identification of Salmonella cultures: American Journal of Hygiene, v. 45, no. 19, p. 16-21.

Edwards, P. R., and Ewing, W. H., 1972, Identification of Enterobacteriaceae (3d ed.): Minneapolis, Burgess Publishing Co., 128 p.

Geldreich, E. E., 1970, Applying bacteriological parameters to recreational water quality: Journal of the American Water Works Association, v. 62, p. 113-120.

Presnell, M. W., and Miescier, J. J., 1971, Coliforms and fecal coliforms in an oyster growing area: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 43, no. 3, p. 407-416.

Pseudomonas Aeruginosa (Membrane-Filter Method) (B-0105-85)

Parameter and Code:
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, MF (colonies/100 mL): 71220

The occurrence of Pseudomonas aeruginosa is of increasing concern because it is frequently the causative agent of skin, ear, eye, nose, and throat infections among those engaged in water-contact sports. P. aeruginosa also has often been implicated as the cause of some hospital-acquired infections. P. aeruginosa is a natural inhabitant of soil, surface water, and vegetation. The majority of the strains identified as P. aeruginosa are nonpathogenic to humans. However, the appearance and biochemical characteristics of pathogenic strains are indistinguishable from nonpathogenic P. aeruginosa (in the method reported here) so that caution should be observed while handling all pseudomonas cultures. P. aeruginosa is a gram-negative, rod-shaped bacterium, motile by monotrichous polar flagella. Most strains produce a variety of pigments, some of which are used for identification in this method. A fluorescent greenish-blue pigment and pyocyanin, a blue pigment, are the most common, but some strains also produce pyorubin, a brownish-red pigment. An incubation temperature of 41.5±0.5 °C is used because other fluorescent pseudomonads, such as P. fluorescens, will not grow at, or above, 41 °C.

The presence of P. aeruginosa in water used for swimming has caused health concern. Presently, insufficient work has been done to indicate safe limits of P. aeruginosa in bathing waters. Brodsky and Nixon (1974) reported that 43 percent of the swimming pools studied had greater than 18 P. aeruginosa per 100 mL and 77 percent had a count of greater than 160 P. aeruginosa per 100 mL. The occurrence and pathogenicity of P. aeruginosa in surface water is not well known except that P. aeruginosa is widely distributed in all water.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to all water that does not have large suspended-solids concentration.

2. Summary of method

A water sample is filtered through a 0.45-µm pore size membrane filter (0.7-µm filters would allow passage of the pseudomonads). The membrane filter is placed on m-PA agar and incubated at 41.5±0.5 °C for 48±2 hours. After incubation, colonies having typical diffuse brown pigment are counted. Typical colonies may be verified by reaction on skim milk agar.

3. Interferences

Suspended materials may inhibit the filtration of sufficiently large sample volumes to produce statistically valid results. In addition, some suspended material is toxic to bacteria and inhibits their growth. If suspended material is a problem, the multiple-tube method described by the American Public Health Association and others (1985) may be used to estimate P. aeruginosa numbers.

4. Apparatus

All materials used in microbiological testing need to be free of agents that inhibit bacterial growth. Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

The following apparatus list assumes the use of an onsite kit for microbiological water tests, such as the portable water laboratory (Millipore, or equivalent). If other means of sample filtration are used, refer to the manufacturer's instructions for proper operation of the equipment. Items marked with an asterisk (*) in the list are included in the portable water laboratory (fig. 1).

4.1 Alcohol burner, glass or metal, containing ethyl alcohol for flame sterilizing of forceps.

4.2 Aluminum seals, one piece, 20 mm.

4.3 Analytical balance, with sensitivity of 0.1 mg.

4.4 Bacteriological transfer needle.

4.5 Bottles, milk dilution, screwcap.

4.6 Bottles, serum.

4.7 Crimper, for attaching aluminum seals.

4.8 Decapper, for removing aluminum seals from spent tubes.

4.9 Filter-holder assembly* and syringe that has a two-way valve* or vacuum hand pump.

4.10 Forceps*, stainless steel, smooth tips.

4.11 Graduated cylinders, 100-mL capacity.

4.12 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 1-mL capacity, equipped with 26-gauge, 3/8-in. needles.

4.13 Hypodermic syringes, sterile, 10-mL capacity, equipped with 22-gauge, 1- to 1½-in. needles.

4.14 Incubator*, for operation at a temperature of 41.5±0.5 °C. A portable incubator as provided in the portable water laboratory, or heaterblock (fig. 2), which operates on either 115 V ac or 12 V dc, is convenient for onsite use. A larger incubator, having more precise temperature regulation, is satisfactory for laboratory use. A water bath capable of maintaining a temperature of 41.5±0.5 °C also is satisfactory.

4.15 Membrane filters, white, grid, sterile, 0.45-µm pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.16 Microscope, binocular wide-field dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.17 pH meter.

4.18 Pipets, 1-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.19 Pipets, 10-mL capacity, sterile, disposable, glass or plastic, having cotton plugs.

4.20 Pipettor, or pi-pump, for use with 1- and 10-mL pipets.

4.21 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 50×12 mm.

4.22 Plastic petri dishes with covers, disposable, sterile, 100×15 mm.

4.23 Rubber stoppers, 13×20 mm.

4.24 Sample-collection apparatus. Use an appropriate device for collecting a representative sample from the environment to be tested, following guidelines in the "Collection" subsection of the "Bacteria" section.

4.25 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.26 Thermometer, having a temperature range of at least 40 to 100 °C.

4.27 Whirl-Pak, 18 oz.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Buffered dilution water. Dissolve 34 g potassium dihydrogen phosphate (KH_2PO_4) in 500 mL distilled water. Adjust to pH 7.2 using 1 N sodium hydroxide (NaOH). Dilute to 1 L using distilled water. Sterilize in dilution bottles at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Add 1.25 mL KH_2PO_4 solution to 1 L distilled water containing 0.1 percent peptone. (Do not store KH_2PO_4 solutions for more than 3 months.) Dispense in milk dilution or serum

bottles (capped with rubber stoppers and crimped with aluminum seals) in quantities that will provide 99±2 mL after autoclaving at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes. Allow enough space between bottles for steam to circulate during autoclaving. Loosen caps prior to sterilizing and tighten when bottles have cooled.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Ethyl alcohol, 95-percent denatured or absolute ethyl alcohol for sterilizing equipment. Absolute methyl alcohol also may be used for sterilization.

5.4 m-PA agar. This agar medium is not available in dehydrated form and requires preparation from the basic ingredients. The composition of m-PA agar is listed in table 11. To prepare m-PA agar, combine all ingredients, except antibiotics, and adjust to pH 6.5 using 1 N NaOH. Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Cool to 55 to 60 °C and aseptically readjust to pH 7.1±0.1. This is done by removing small aliquots of medium to check the pH after adding 1 N NaOH. If the quantities in table 11 are followed, approximately 1.1 mL of 1 N NaOH is needed at this point to attain pH 7.1. After the pH of 7.1 has been achieved, add the antibiotics listed in table 11, using a gentle swirling motion. Pour the medium into 50-mm diameter petri dishes to a depth of 4 mm (6-8 mL) when the melted medium has cooled to 50 °C or less.

5.5 Skim milk agar

Solution A:

Skim milk	100 g
Distilled water	500 mL

Solution B:

Nutrient broth	12.5 g
Sodium chloride (NaCl)	2.5 g
Agar	15 g
Distilled water	500 mL

Heat solutions separately to boiling and dispense in convenient volumes (such as 75 mL in 160-mL milk dilution bottles). Sterilize at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Cool to approximately 60 °C, then combine equal volumes of solution A and B, and pour into 100-mm petri dishes to a depth of 4 mm (15 mL). After solidification occurs, store the petri dishes in a plastic bag at 2 to 5 °C (refrigerated) for not more than 2 weeks. Sterile skim milk agar (solutions uncombined) also may be refrigerated for 2 weeks and can be melted and combined as needed.

Table 11.--Composition of m-PA agar

Ingredients	Quantity
L-lysine HCl	2.5 grams
Sodium chloride	2.5 grams
Yeast extract	1.0 gram
Xylose	1.25 grams
Sucrose	.62 gram
Lactose	.62 gram
Phenol red	.04 gram
Ferric ammonium citrate	.40 gram
Sodium thiophosphate	3.40 grams
Agar	7.5 grams
Distilled water	500 milliliters
Antibiotics:	
Sulfapyridine	88 milligrams
Kanamycin	4.25 milligrams
Naladixic acid	18.5 milligrams
Actidione	75 milligrams

6. Analysis

6.1 Sterilize filter-holder assembly (Note 1). In the laboratory, wrap the funnel and filter base parts of the assembly separately in kraft paper or polypropylene bags and sterilize in the autoclave at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 minutes. Steam must contact all surfaces to ensure complete sterilization. Cool to room temperature before use.

Note 1: Onsite sterilization of the filter-holder assembly needs to be in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions but usually involves application and ignition of methyl alcohol to produce formaldehyde. Autoclave sterilization in the laboratory prior to the trip to the sampling site is preferred. Sterilization must be performed for all sites.

6.2 Assemble the filter holder and, using flame-sterilized forceps (Note 2), place a sterile membrane filter over the porous plate of the assembly, grid side up. Carefully place funnel on filter to avoid tearing or creasing the membrane.

Note 2: Flame-sterilized forceps--Dip forceps in ethyl or methyl alcohol, pass through flame to ignite alcohol, and allow to burn out. Do not hold forceps in flame.

6.3 Shake the sample vigorously about 25 times to obtain an equal distribution of bacteria throughout the sample before transferring a measured portion of the sample to the filter-holder assembly.

6.3.1 If the volume of sample to be filtered is 10 mL or more, transfer the measured sample directly onto the dry membrane. For most surface water, sample volumes of 10, 40, 100, and 200 mL are suggested. Filtration volumes more than 100 mL need to be split between two or more filters.

6.3.2 If the volume of sample is between 1 and 10 mL, pour about 20 mL sterilized buffered dilution water into the funnel before transferring the measured sample onto the membrane. This facilitates distribution of bacteria.

6.3.3 If the volume of original water sample is less than 1 mL, proceed as in 6.3.1 after preparing appropriate dilutions by adding the sample to buffered dilution water in a sterile milk dilution bottle (Note 3) in the following volumes:

Dilution	Volume of sample added to 99-milliliter milk dilution bottle	Filter this volume
1:10	11 milliliters of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution
1:100	1 milliliter of original sample	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution
1:1,000	1 milliliter of 1:10 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:1,000 dilution
1:10,000	1 milliliter of 1:100 dilution	1 milliliter of 1:10,000 dilution

Note 3: Use a sterile pipet or hypodermic syringe for each bottle. After each transfer, close and shake the bottle vigorously at least 25 times to maintain distribution of the bacteria in the sample. Diluted samples need to be filtered within 20 minutes after preparation.

6.4 Apply vacuum and filter the sample. When vacuum is applied using a syringe fitted with a two-way valve, proceed as follows: Attach the filter-holder assembly to the inlet of the two-way valve with plastic tubing. Draw the syringe plunger very slowly on the initial stroke to avoid the danger of air lock before the assembly fills with water. Push the plunger forward to expel air from the syringe. Continue until the entire sample has been filtered. If the filter balloons or develops bubbles during sample filtration, disassemble the two-way valve and lubricate the rubber valve plugs lightly with stopcock grease. If a vacuum hand pump is used, do not exceed a pressure of 25 cm to avoid damage to bacteria.

6.5 Rinse sides of funnel twice with 20 to 30 mL of sterile buffered dilution water while applying vacuum.

6.6 Maintaining the vacuum, remove the funnel from the base of the filter-holder assembly and, using flame-sterilized forceps, remove the membrane filter from the base and place it on the agar surface in the plastic petri dish, grid side up, using a rolling action at one edge. Use care to avoid trapping air bubbles under the membrane (Note 4).

Note 4: Hold the funnel while removing the membrane filter and place it back on the base of the assembly when the membrane filter has been removed. Placement of the funnel on anything but the base of the assembly may result in contamination of the funnel.

6.7 Place top on petri dish and proceed with filtration of the next volume of water. Filter in order of increasing sample volume, rinsing with sterile buffered dilution water between filtrations.

6.8 Clearly mark the lid of each plastic petri dish indicating location, time of collection, time of incubation, sample number, and sample volume. Use a waterproof felt-tip marker or grease pencil.

6.9 Inspect the membrane in each petri dish for uniform contact with the agar. If air bubbles are present under the filter (indicated by bulges), remove the filter using sterile forceps and roll onto the agar again.

6.10 Close the plastic petri dish by firmly pressing down on the top.

6.11 Incubate the petri dishes with filters in an inverted position (agar and filter at the top) at 41.5±0.5 °C for 48±2 hours. Filters need to be incubated within 20 minutes after placement on medium. If a water-bath incubator is used, the petri dishes should either be taped to prevent water entry or the dishes put into Whirl-Pak, or equivalent plastic bags. The dishes must be incubated below the water surface.

6.12 After incubation, remove petri dish lids and count typical colonies at 15X magnification. Angle of illumination is not critical. P. aeruginosa colonies are dark brown, have an irregular margin, and are almost flat. A light-brown pigment diffusing radially away from the colony is usually visible. Petri dishes having between 20 and 80 P. aeruginosa colonies are considered to be ideal for counting purposes and should be used for calculation, if possible.

6.13 Some of the colonies counted as P. aeruginosa should be confirmed by determining growth on skim milk agar. Sterilize the bacteriological transfer needle (sterile round toothpicks also are suitable) by flaming in the burner. The long axis of the needle needs to be held parallel to the cone of the flame so that the entire length of the needle is heated to redness. Remove from flame and allow the needle to cool for about 10 seconds. Do not allow the needle to contact any foreign surface during the cooling period. When cool, remove a small portion of a colony using the sterilized needle and lightly streak the skim milk agar surface. Several such transfers may be made to each petri dish [multiple (24) well petri dishes are useful], sterilizing the needle between each inoculation. Every inoculation should have appropriate notation to identify the source.

6.14 Invert and incubate each inoculated petri dish at 20 to 35 °C for 24 to 48 hours. P. aeruginosa causes casein hydrolysis (clearing of the agar) where growth occurs. A yellow-green diffusible pigment should be visible when the petri dish is viewed from the side.

6.15 Autoclave all cultures at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 15 to 30 minutes before discarding.

7. Calculations

7.1 If only one filter has a colony count between the ideal of 20 and 80, use the equation:

$$\text{P. aeruginosa (colonies/100 mL)} = \frac{\text{Number of colonies counted} \times 100}{\text{Volume of original sample filtered (milliliters)}}.$$

7.2 If all filters have counts less than the ideal of 20 colonies or greater than 80 colonies, calculate using the equation in 7.5 for only those filters having at least one colony and not having colonies too numerous to count. Report results as the number per 100 mL, followed by the statement, "Estimated count based on nonideal colony count."

7.3 If no filters develop characteristic P. aeruginosa colonies, report a maximum estimated value. Assume a count of one colony for the largest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as less than (<) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.4 If all filters have colonies too numerous to count, report a minimum estimated value. Assume a count of 80 P. aeruginosa colonies for the smallest sample volume filtered, then calculate using the equation in 7.1. Report the results as greater than (>) the calculated value per 100 mL.

7.5 Sometimes two or more filters of a series will produce colony counts within the ideal counting range. Make colony counts on all such filters. The method for calculating and averaging is as follows (Note 5):

$$\frac{\text{Volume filter 1} + \text{Volume filter 2}}{\text{Volume sum}} \qquad \frac{\text{Colony count filter 1} + \text{Colony count filter 2}}{\text{Colony count sum}}$$

$$\text{P. aeruginosa colonies/100 mL} = \frac{\text{Colony count sum} \times 100}{\text{Volume sum (milliliters)}}$$

Note 5: Do not calculate the P. aeruginosa colonies per 100 mL for each volume filtered and then average the results. If a large filtered volume was divided between several filters, make the count using the equations as in 7.5. Such counts are considered to be in the ideal range if the sum of the colonies is between 20 and 80 colonies.

8. Reporting of results

Report P. aeruginosa concentration as P. aeruginosa colonies per 100 mL as follows: less than 10 colonies, whole numbers; 10 or more colonies, two significant figures.

9. Precision

Carson and others (1975) reported a mean recovery of 95 percent of naturally occurring P. aeruginosa using m-PA agar.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Brodsky, M. H., and Nixon, M. C., 1974, Membrane filter method for the isolation and enumeration of Pseudomonas aeruginosa from swimming pools: Applied Microbiology, v. 27, no. 5, p. 938-943.

Carson, L. A., Peterson, N. J., Favero, M. S., Doto, I. L., Collins, D. E., and Levin, M. A., 1975, Factors influencing detection and enumeration of Pseudomonas aeruginosa by most-probable-number and membrane filtration techniques: Applied Microbiology, v. 30, no. 6, p. 935-942.

PHYTOPLANKTON

Introduction

Phytoplankton are unicellular algae existing as single cells, colonies, chains, or filaments that generally are transported passively (some forms are active swimmers) by currents and turbulent mixing. Morris (1967) divides the planktonic algae into nine taxonomic divisions, including the blue greens (Cyanophyta), greens (Chlorophyta), diatoms (Bacillariophyta), dinoflagellates (Pyrrophyta), and five other divisions of flagellates. The range of sizes among phytoplankton cells or colonies is diverse (ranging from about 1 to about 1,000 μm) and has been partitioned into four size classes by Wetzel (1975): macroplankton (more than 500 μm), netplankton (50-500 μm), nannoplankton (10-50 μm), and ultraplankton (less than 10 μm). Physiological processes of planktonic algae can profoundly affect (and indicate) the productivity and quality of natural water. Their photosynthetic assimilation of carbon dioxide and production of organic matter provide a (the) primary food source for other trophic levels, including harvestable species; they also affect the concentration of dissolved gases (carbon dioxide, oxygen), inorganic nutrients (nitrogen, phosphorus, silica, and trace elements), and dissolved organic substances. Phytoplankton blooms can severely affect water quality, either through the production of toxins that lead to fish kills or threats to human health or through the decomposition of organic matter that can deplete oxygen.

Integrated studies of aquatic ecosystems need to include measurements of phytoplankton biomass and composition. Measurement of bulk constituents [chlorophyll *a*, adenosine triphosphate (ATP), and particulate organic carbon or nitrogen] can be used as indices of biomass, while particle counters can provide information about size distribution. However, these methods have interferences from nonphytoplankton particulate matter (detritus, bacteria, microzooplankton, and sediment). The only method of determining the species composition of phytoplankton communities is by microscopic enumeration and identification. Although time consuming and laborious, this method can offer valuable information. Knowledge of species composition can indicate the causes of seasonal changes in biomass, can be useful as tracers for different water masses, and can indicate stresses imposed by pollutants that may not be evident from measurements of biomass alone. Estimates of cell size and measurements of cell-size distribution also can provide an accurate measurement of phytoplankton biomass [as biovolume, which can be converted to carbon (Strathman, 1967)].

Collection

There is no single best method for collecting and enumerating phytoplankton samples because phytoplankton types and abundance differ spatially and temporally. Therefore, it is necessary to choose a sampling strategy and method most consistent with the goals of a given water-quality study. For example, frequent collection of a depth-integrated sample at one representative site may be appropriate for a monitoring study; whereas a detailed spatial grid may be more appropriate for assessing the effects of a point

source of a pollutant. Sampling in those areas having the greatest environmental variability or having rapid temporal change needs to be intensified. Sournia (1978) has compiled a detailed manual of phytoplankton methods that includes a discussion of sampling strategy and statistical analyses.

A phytoplankton sample consists of a volume of water (usually 100 mL to 1 L) that is stored in a graduated polyethylene or glass bottle. Dissolution of weakly silicified diatoms is minimized in bottles made of soft glass (Banse, 1974). To ensure maximum correlation of results, the sample site and method used need to correspond as closely as possible to those selected for chemical and microbiological sampling. If a living sample is to be examined, it can be maintained at 3 to 4 °C for 24 hours or it can be kept cool and darkened for 3 to 4 hours. Extended storage requires use of a preservative. Two preservatives commonly are used:

1. To each 100 mL of sample, add 3 mL 34 to 70 percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (100 percent formalin), 0.5 mL 20 percent detergent solution, and 0.1 mL cupric sulfate solution. This preservative maintains cell coloration and is effective indefinitely but may distort the cell shape of species and cause loss of flagella.

2. Lugol's solution using acetic acid (Rodhe and others, 1958) will stain cells (and other organic particles) brownish yellow and will maintain cell morphology of flagellates. To each 100 mL of sample, add 1 mL Lugol's solution having 10 percent acetic acid.

Phytoplankton samples can be collected using a water-sampling bottle, depth-integrating sampler, net, or pump. Most water-sampling bottles consist of a cylindrical tube that has stoppers at each end and a closing device that is activated by a messenger. The bottle is lowered into the water in the open position to a desired depth, tripped, and retrieved. Most common examples of bottles are the Kemmerer (fig. 10), Van Dorn-type (fig. 11), the Nansen, the Fjarlie, and the Niskin. These bottles are available in a variety of sizes, having capacities from 0.2 to more than 30 L, and are constructed of brass, clear acrylic, or polyvinyl chloride. Advantages of water-sampling bottles include: (1) Quantitative samples can be collected that include nannoplankton and ultraplankton; (2) samples of a known volume can be obtained from a precise depth; (3) bottles can be hung in arrays to collect simultaneous samples at a variety of depths; and (4) bottles are light and do not require auxiliary equipment. However, they are difficult to handle in strong currents.

Depth-integrating samplers are used to collect quantitative samples representative of a cross section of a stream or the water column of a lake, reservoir, stream, or estuary (Schröder, 1969; Lewis and Saunders, 1979; Wetzel and Likens, 1979). The simplest depth-integrating sampler is a length of garden hose or flexible tubing that is weighted on one end (Lund, 1949). The weighted end is lowered through the desired sampling depth of the water column, and the open end then is pinched off to secure the sample within the hose as it is raised to the surface.

Figure 10.--Kemmerer water-sampling bottle. (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.)

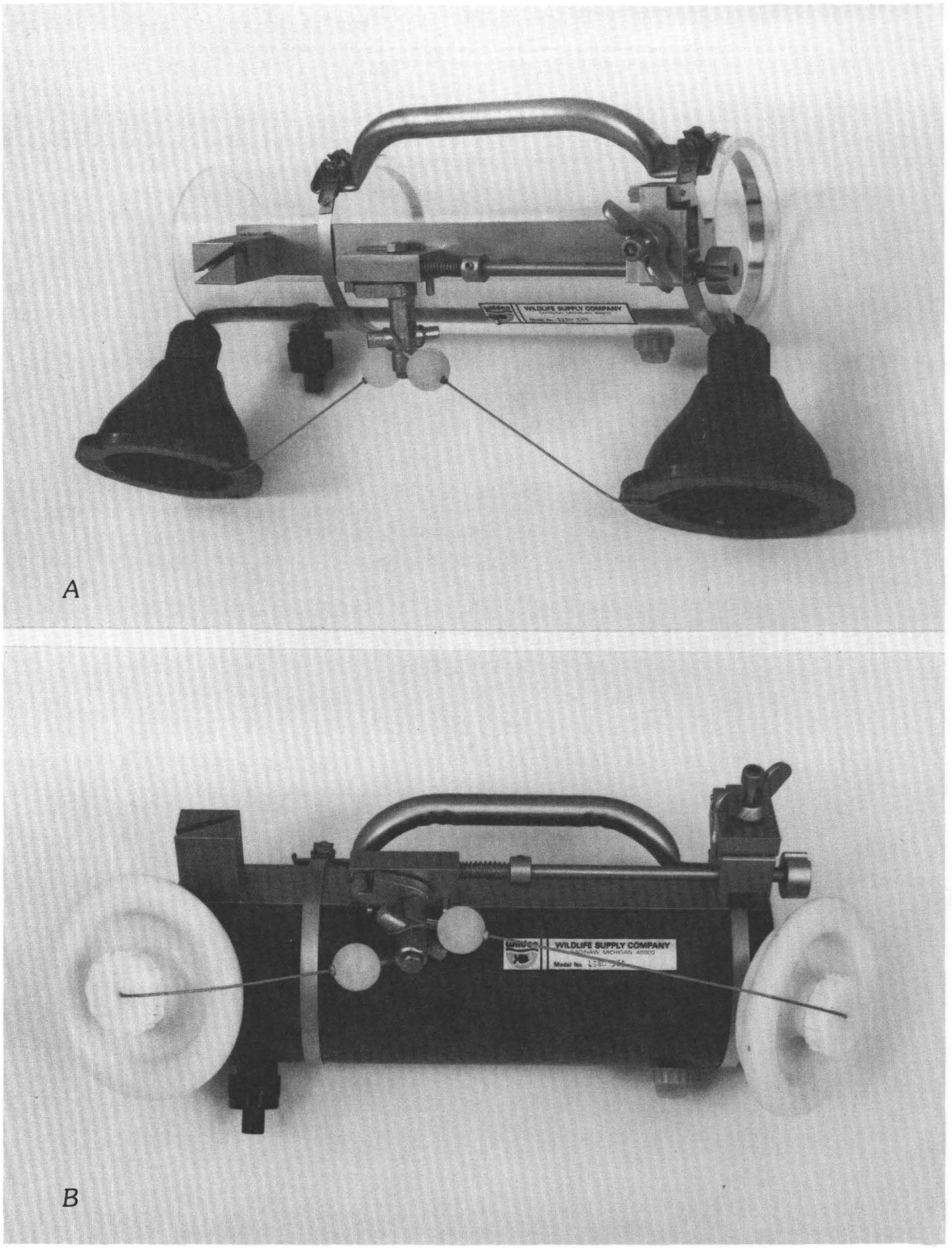


Figure 11.--Van Dorn-type water-sampling bottle: (A) Alpa bottle; (B) Beta bottle. (Photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.)

A sampler, such as the D-77 sampler (fig. 12), can be used for depth-integrating sample collection. This sampler is made of aluminum or bronze and has a built-in cap and nozzle that can be sterilized and will collect a 3-L sample. A depth-integrating sampler designed specifically for collecting phytoplankton is described in Fee (1976). This sampler is a modification of the Van Dorn-type water-sampling bottle and has release mechanisms to clamp the sample-inflow and air-escape hoses. The sample-inflow hose goes to the bottom of the sampler, and the air-escape hose to the bottom of the cap. The sampler is lowered to the desired depth, a messenger is released, and the release of the two hoses starts the sampler. For stream sampling, the equal-transit method developed by Guy and Norman (1970) is useful. In this method, the standard suspended-sediment sampler is used to collect samples at a number of equally spaced verticals in the cross section. Samples collected in each vertical are composited into a single sample that has been discharge-weighted and is representative of the entire cross section.

Advantages of depth-integrating samplers include: (1) Quantitative samples can be collected that include nannoplankton and ultraplankton; (2) samples of a known volume can be obtained; (3) these samplers provide the only means of collecting a truly representative sample of phytoplankton within a water column or in a stream cross section; and (4) many are light and can be used without auxiliary equipment. However, sample collection may be time consuming using some of these samplers, and some are heavy and do require auxiliary equipment. In addition, these samplers may not be adequate for use during high flow.

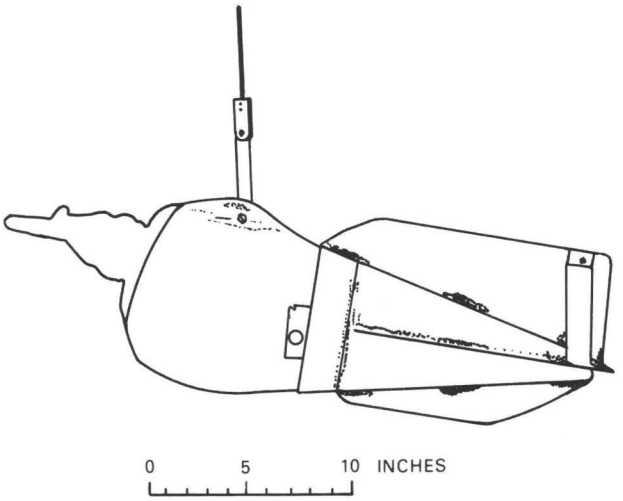


Figure 12.--D-77 depth-integrating sampler. (Sketch based on photograph courtesy of St. Anthony Falls Hydraulic Laboratory, Minneapolis, Minn.)

Plankton nets have been used widely as sampling devices in phytoplankton investigations because they enable filtration of a large volume of water; however, nets selectively retain only the largest phytoplankton cells. Margalef (1969) assumed that only 10 percent of all algal cells are retained by nets having a mesh size of 40 μm. However, phytoplankton collection using nets may be appropriate for qualitative studies of large planktonic algae. Most qualitative samplers are cone-shaped nets that are towed slowly from a bridle and that funnel trapped material into a bucket (fig. 13). Nets come in a variety of mesh size, have openings ranging from 0.5 μm to 5 mm, and usually are constructed of woven synthetic filaments (monofilament nylon or polyester) that resist chemicals and have stable mesh geometry. Nets can be towed vertically, horizontally, or obliquely to collect integrated samples. Closing nets, such as the Birge sampler (Welch, 1948), can be lowered to a selected position, activated, and then closed by messenger to sample only at a specific depth. Advantages of nets include: (1) They provide a simple means of collecting qualitative samples of macroplankton, netplankton, and some nannoplankton; (2) they can be adapted with a flowmeter for collecting semiquantitative samples; (3) the mesh size can be chosen, within limits, to collect planktonic algae of selected sizes; (4) large species are collected; and (5) nets are relatively inexpensive and easy to operate from a small boat. Disadvantages include: (1) They do not collect quantitative samples; (2) they exclude ultraplankton and some nannoplankton (these forms often constitute a majority of phytoplankton biomass); (3) they are not suitable for collection in very shallow water or water having large algal populations; and (4) clogging by vascular plants, detritus, and dense populations of algae can be a problem, particularly with fine-mesh nets.

Pumps can be used to collect qualitative or quantitative samples of phytoplankton (Aron, 1958; Fee, 1976; Schemel and Dedini, 1979). The basic design consists of a centrifugal (impeller) or reciprocating (piston or diaphragm) pump connected to a hose that is lowered to the sampling depth, a base, and a collecting net and bucket. The centrifugal pumps probably are least damaging to algae. Quantitative samples can be collected by measuring the flow rate of the pumped stream using either a volume register or a calibrated container. Advantages of pumps include: (1) Quantitative samples of macroplankton, netplankton, and some nannoplankton can be collected quickly; (2) discrete samples from known depths can be collected; (3) the sampling hose can be moved during sampling to collect a depth-integrated sample; and (4) the pumps can be used in shallow water. In addition, pumps are good for point samples but may induce erroneous respiration and productivity values. Disadvantages include: (1) Pumps usually are bulky, expensive, and require an electrical source; and (2) they may break algal chains and colonies, or physiologically stress planktonic algae.

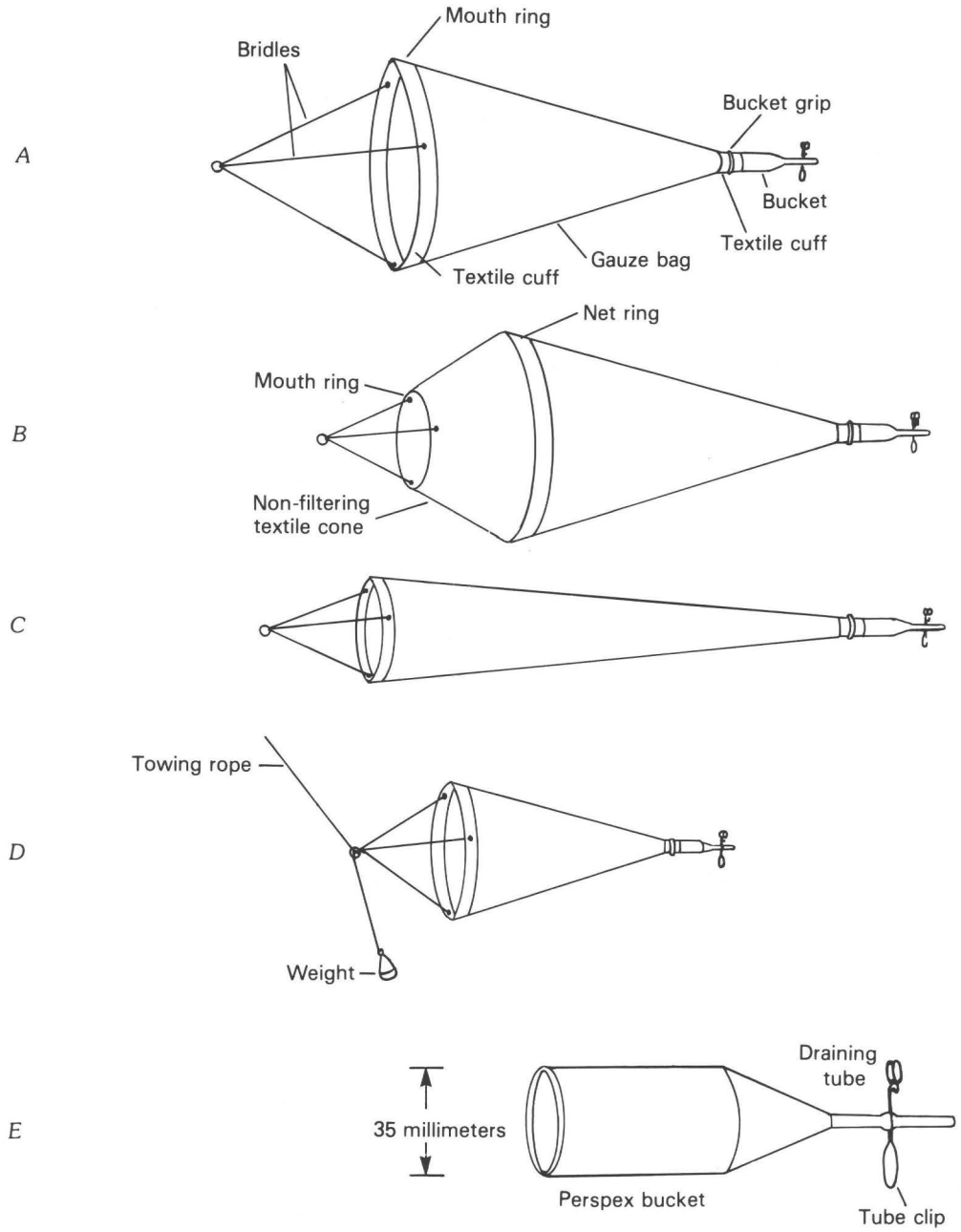


Figure 13.--Phytoplankton sampling nets and accessories: (A) Standard net. The length of standard nets normally is 2 to 3 times the mouth diameter. (B) Fine-mesh net that has decreased mouth diameter. A tapering nonfiltering textile sleeve is inserted between the large net ring and the smaller mouth ring. (C) Extra long, fine-mesh standard net. (D) Standard net attached to the towing rope, and a weight in front of the mouth. (E) Plankton-collecting bucket made of clear perspex material. Diameter of the bucket is 30 to 100 millimeters (here 35 millimeters); length of the cylindrical part is 50 to 200 millimeters (here 65 millimeters). The bucket is attached to the net tail by textile tape or a specially made metal grip (from Sournia, 1978; reproduced by permission of UNESCO).

Precision

The precision of estimated phytoplankton cell densities is essential for comparing estimated population densities in different samples; however, calculation of the exact precision of population estimates is difficult for two reasons. First, accurate statistical analysis requires knowledge of the frequency distribution of algal cells in nature, in aliquots of samples, and in counting chambers. Second, most sampling programs involve multiple stages of subsampling (for example, onsite population ⟶ sample ⟶ aliquot ⟶ microscopic field). Each stage of subsampling adds a new component of variability to the data (Venrick, 1978). If the distribution of phytoplankton cells is random (that is, conforms to a Poisson distribution), then the precision of cell counts can be estimated from the formulas in the following paragraphs. Departures from a random distribution are common, usually because of clumping or aggregation, and can be determined using the chi-squared test (Lund and others, 1958). Assuming that phytoplankton cells are not densely aggregated in counting chambers, the following procedures can provide reasonable estimates of counting precision (Venrick, 1978).

If phytoplankton are counted in $\underline{n}$ random microscopic fields of only one aliquot from one sample, then the precision of only the mean number of cells in that one aliquot can be estimated. This may not represent the overall precision of a multilevel sampling program, and it certainly overestimates the precision of population estimates when phytoplankton are spatially heterogeneous. When the number of cells enumerated per chamber is small (less than 50), the confidence limits for a count can be estimated using figure 14. If more than 50 cells are enumerated per chamber, Venrick (1978) suggests using the normal approximation, where confidence limits around the total count (at the 1-α level of significance) are indicated by

$$\Sigma\underline{x} \pm \underline{z}\alpha \sqrt{\Sigma\underline{x}} \quad ,$$

where $\Sigma\underline{x}$ is the total count of cells; and
$\underline{z}\alpha$ is the normal variate (tabulated in most statistics texts).

Precision increases in proportion to the square root of the total number of cells counted, as listed in table 12. This table can be used to determine the number of cells that should be enumerated for a desired level of precision. For example, if 100 cells are enumerated, we can say with 95-percent certainty that the true count does not vary from the mean estimated count by more than 20 percent. Enumeration of 400 cells ensures a precision that is within 10 percent of the mean count.

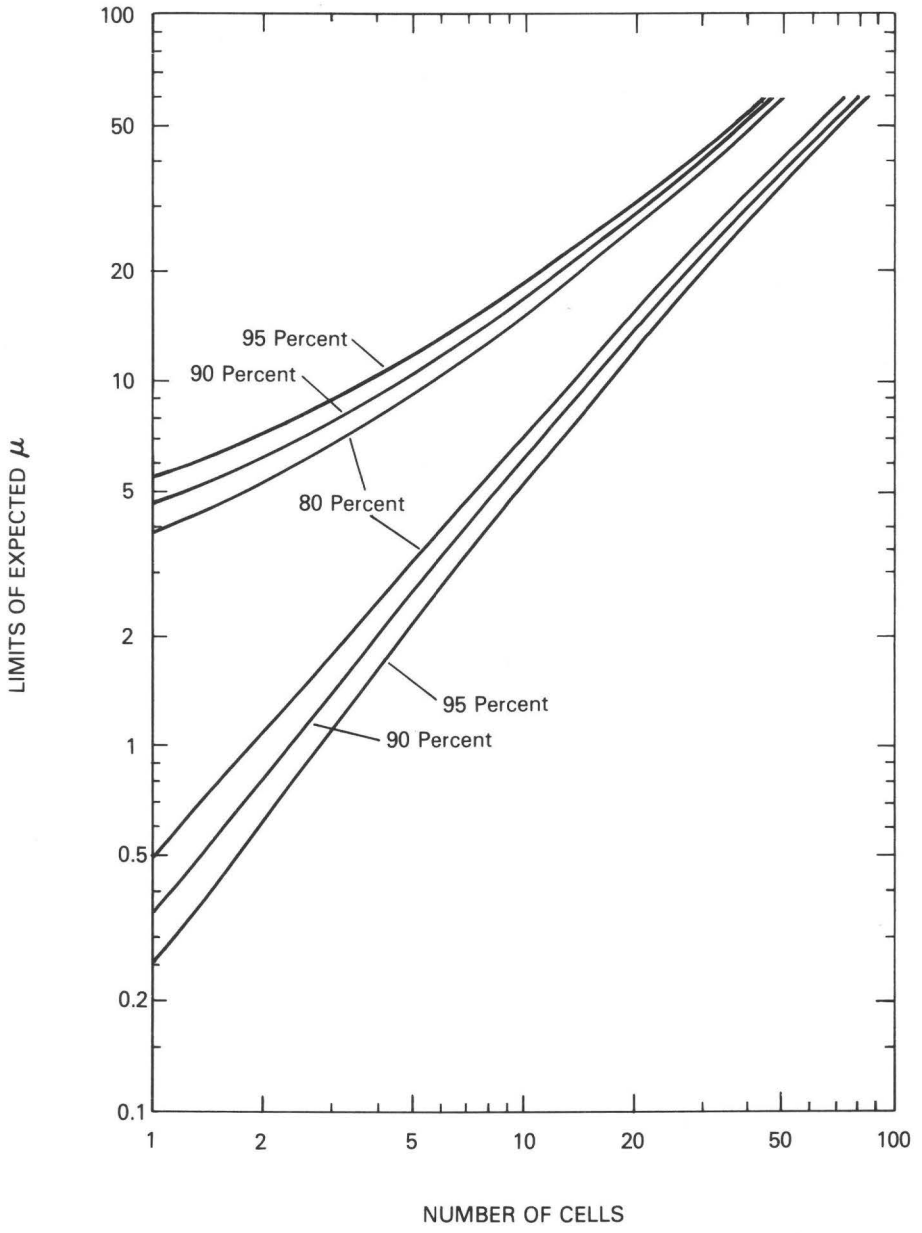


Figure 14.--Limits of expectation of phytoplankton population means, based on single estimates of abundance from a Poisson distribution, at three levels of significance: 95, 90, and 80 percent (from Sournia, 1978; reproduced by permission of UNESCO).

In the instance where replicate chambers are enumerated from one or more aliquots from one or more samples, total variance of counts from all subsampling stages can be estimated. Venrick (1978) recommends use of the studentized normal variate (t) when the mean number of counts per chamber $\bar{x}$ ($\bar{x} = \Sigma x/N$) is greater than 50. Confidence limits around the mean thus are

$$\bar{x} = t\alpha,\ N\text{-}1\ \sqrt{\bar{x}/N}\ ,$$

where N is the number of chambers enumerated.

Table 12.--Approximate 95-percent confidence limits for the number of cells counted, assuming a random distribution (from Lund and others, 1958)

[Precision is the maximum expected departure from the count, expressed as a percentage of the count]

Number of cells counted	95-percent confidence limit[1]	Precision (percent of the count)
4	0-8	±100
16	8-24	±50
25	15-35	±40
100	80-120	±20
400	360-440	±10
1,600	1,520-1,680	±5

[1]For some colonies, the confidence limits in terms of number of cells can be calculated by finding the confidence limits for the complete count of phytoplankton, and then multiplying these by the mean number of cells per colony in these same phytoplankton (Lund and others, 1958).

References Cited

Aron, W., 1958, The use of a large capacity portable pump for plankton sampling with notes on plankton patchiness: Monographs on Marine Research, v. 16, no. 2, p. 158-173.

Banse, K., 1974, A review of methods used for quantitative phytoplankton studies--Final report of SCOR working group 33: Paris, UNESCO Technical Papers in Marine Science 18, 27 p.

Fee, E. J., 1976, The vertical and seasonal distribution of chlorophyll in lakes of the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario--Implications for primary production estimates: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 767-783.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Lewis, W. M., Jr., and Saunders, J. F., III, 1979, Two new integrating samplers for zooplankton, phytoplankton, and water chemistry: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 85, p. 244-249.

Lund, J. W. G., 1949, Studies on Asterionella, I--The origin and nature of the cells producing seasonal maxima: Ecology, v. 37, no. 2, p. 389-419.

Lund, J. W. G., Kipling, C., and LeCren, E. D., 1958, The inverted microscope method of estimating algal numbers, and the statistical basis of estimation by counting: Hydrobiologia, v. 11, no. 2, p. 143-170.

Margalef, R., 1969, Counting, in Vollenweider, R. A., Talling, J. F., and Westlake, D. F., eds., A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments, including a chapter on bacteria: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, p. 7-14.

Morris, I., 1967, An introduction to the algae: London, Hutchinson and Co., Ltd., 189 p.
Rodhe, W., Vollenweider, R. A., and Nauwerck, A., 1958, The primary production and standing stock of phytoplankton, in Buzzati-Traverso, A. A., ed., Perspectives in marine biology: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 299-322.
Schemel, L. E., and Dedini, L. A., 1979, A continuous water sampling and multi-parameter measurement system for estuaries: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 79-273, 91 p.
Schröder, R., 1969, Ein Summierender Wasserschöpfer: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 66, p. 241-243.
Sournia, Alain, ed., 1978, Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, 337 p.
Strathman, R. P., 1967, Estimating the organic carbon content of phytoplankton from cell volume or plasma volume: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 3, p. 411-418.
Venrick, E. L., 1978, How many cells to count?, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 167-180.
Welch, P. S., 1948, Limnological methods: Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 381 p.
Wetzel, R. G., 1975, Limnology: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 743 p.
Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Counting-Cell Method
(B-1505-85)

Parameter and Code:
Phytoplankton, total (cells/mL): 60050

Aliquots from phytoplankton samples that previously may have been concentrated or diluted are placed in one of four different counting cells and then examined under a conventional light microscope. Each counting cell is appropriate for a specific range of cell sizes. The Sedgwick-Rafter cell is most appropriate for enumerating macroplankton and netplankton; the Palmer-Maloney cell is appropriate for nannoplankton; and the Hemacytometer and Petroff-Hausser cells are most efficient for enumerating ultraplankton. Efficient counting schemes may require use of two different counting-cell types to ensure inclusion of both large and small phytoplankton.

The counting-cell method is one of several procedures for determining the concentration of phytoplankton. The method is performed easily and provides reasonably reproducible data when used with a calibrated microscope equipped with an eyepiece measuring device, such as the Whipple ocular micrometer (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

The counting-cell method is much less time consuming than the membrane-filter method. The disadvantage of the method is that the Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell, for example, does not provide for use of a high-power microscope objective. However, the kinds of phytoplankton present in a sample may be determined by high-power magnification prior to using this counting cell.

The Sedgwick-Rafter cell is too thick to use with high-power microscope objectives. Observation of fine structure necessary for identification of some phytoplankton thus is not possible. Furthermore, counting of individual cells, especially filamentous species, is limited. Thinner walled counting cells, which can be used with high-power objectives, are available commercially. Most common is the biomedical hemacytometer, a single piece of thermal- and shock-resistant glass that has an H-shaped trough forming two counting areas. Raised supports hold a cover glass the proper distance above the counting areas. Most hemacytometers have a slight recession on the underside of the chamber to decrease the possibility of accidentally scratching the viewing area and have a thin, metallized deposit on the ruled area to enhance contrast. The primary disadvantage of the hemacytometer, in contrast to the Sedgwick-Rafter cell, for phytoplankton enumeration is that counts are more time consuming, and large cells are not distributed evenly.

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

An aliquot of a thoroughly mixed phytoplankton sample is placed in a counting cell (chamber) and examined microscopically. The number of algal cells present in random fields is counted. The density of phytoplankton in the sample, as cells per milliliter, is calculated.

3. Interferences

The enumeration and identification of phytoplankton is impaired by large concentrations of suspended sediment or detritus that obscure micro-organisms. Previously used sample bottles and counting cells must be scrubbed thoroughly to remove adherent diatoms and other materials.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, that has an automatic tare.

4.2 Centrifuge, either swing-out or fixed-head cup-type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, 15- to 50-mL conical or 100-mL pear-shaped centrifuge tubes and simple siphoning or suction device to remove excess fluid after centrifugation.

4.3 Counting cells for conventional microscope.

4.3.1 Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell (fig. 15A) and cover glass, 50×20×1 mm.

4.3.2 Palmer-Maloney cell (fig. 15B), and 22-mm no. 1½ cover glass.

4.3.3 Hemacytometer (fig. 15C), 0.1 mm deep, having Improved Neubauer ruling, and cover glasses.

4.3.4 Petroff-Hausser cell (fig. 15D), 0.02 mm deep, having Improved Neubauer ruling.

4.4 Microscope, either conventional light microscope or equivalent. Bright field condensor and objectives are required, and phase contrast is desirable, particularly for taxonomic examination. A series of objectives needs to be available (10X, 20X, and 40X), and 100X phase-contrast oil-immersion objectives need to be available for examination of ultraplankton. The microscope needs to be equipped with a movable mechanical stage that has vernier scales.

4.5 Pipet, Pasteur, 1 mL, disposable.

4.6 Sample containers, glass or graduated polyethylene bottles and screwcaps, 100 mL to 1 L.

4.7 Stage micrometer, 2-mm scale divided into 200×0.01-mm units mounted on 25×75-mm slide.

4.8 Water-sampling bottle, or nets. Depth-integrated samplers are discussed in Guy and Norman (1970) and in Wetzel and Likens, (1979).

4.9 Whipple disc placed in one ocular of the microscope.

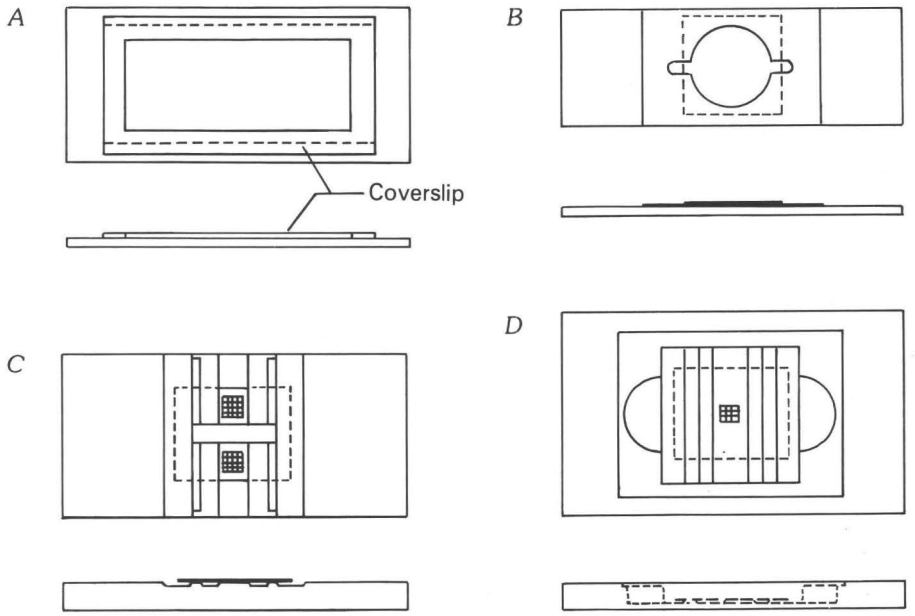


Figure 15.--Phytoplankton counting cells: (A) Sedgwick-Rafter; (B) Palmer-Maloney; (C) Hemacytometer; and (D) Petroff-Hausser (from Sournia, 1978; reproduced by permission of UNESCO).

5. Reagents

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Ethyl alcohol, 90 percent, for cleaning counting slides.

5.5 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40 percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL cupric sulfate solution.

5.6 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use, and store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

6. Analysis

Phytoplankton samples need to be examined under two different magnifications: low power (80X to 200X) to ensure inclusion of large, usually rare, species; and high power (200X to 1,000X, using oil immersion, if possible) to

facilitate identification and to ensure inclusion of ultraplankton. Phytoplankton in the entire slide mount often can be counted using low magnification, but random fields need to be selected at high magnification until a sufficient number of units (cells, filaments, chains, or colonies) have been enumerated for the desired level of precision. Use of a Whipple disc in one ocular will demarcate the microscopic field into a defined, easily viewed grid of 100 squares. When making the counts, enumerate only forms that lie completely inside the grid and those that intersect two of the outer grid borders. If a large number of colonies or filaments appear within the field, determine the average number of cells in an average-size colony or filament and multiply by the number of colonies or filaments present. Count only viable cells, those having protoplasm or pigments. Identify all forms to some predetermined taxonomic level (species level is preferred); count and describe unidentifiable cells.

The volume of original, unconcentrated sample to be examined will vary, depending on sediment content and density of phytoplankton; the volume commonly will range between 25 mL (for eutrophic water or water that has large suspended-sediment concentrations) and 100 mL (for oligotrophic water). Net samples may not require further concentration.

6.1 A variety of counting cells, as well as a conventional light microscope, have been used to enumerate phytoplankton samples. The four types described here (fig. 15) vary in the volume of sample they hold and in the depth of the sample chamber. Therefore, each is suited to a particular size and abundance of planktonic algae. The smaller cells are ruled to enable easy calculation of cell density from tallies within the chamber grid. The Sedgwick-Rafter cell (McAlice, 1971) has a rectangular chamber 1 mm deep that holds 1 mL. The Palmer-Maloney cell (Palmer and Maloney, 1954) has a circular chamber 0.4 mm deep that holds 0.1 mL. Hemacytometers, having Improved Neubauer ruling (Guillard, 1973), are 0.1 mm deep and have two counting grids composed of nine 1-mm squares (sample volume thus is 0.0018 mL). The Petroff-Hausser cell is 0.02 mm deep, has one chamber that has Improved Neubauer ruling, and holds 0.00018 mL; it is designed for cells of bacterial dimension.

6.2 If phytoplankton abundance is sufficiently great to impede enumeration, dilute samples (serially, if necessary) using distilled water. More often, samples collected using a water-sampling bottle must be concentrated to ensure a sufficient density of phytoplankton on counting cells to enable statistically reliable estimation of population abundance. Concentrate samples by settling or centrifuging.

6.3 Allow the sample to settle in the sample container for 4 hours per centimeter of depth to be settled. After settling, weigh the sample container on an automatic tare balance.

6.4 Carefully siphon the supernatant to avoid disturbance of the settled material. Place sample container and remaining sample on balance and weigh. The decrease in weight (in grams) is equivalent to the number of milliliters of supernatant removed. Use the same method to obtain the volume of concentrate. Use centrifugation to concentrate either live or preserved samples.

Using a swing-out or fixed-angle cup-type centrifuge, spin balance samples in 15- to 50-mL conical tubes at about 1,500 r/min (200 × gravity) for 20 to 30 minutes. Siphon a measured volume of supernatant and then disperse the phytoplankton concentrate in the remaining volume of water.

6.5 Use of the Sedgwick-Rafter and Palmer-Maloney cells is similar. With the counting cell on a flat surface, place a no. 1½ cover glass across the cell. Thoroughly mix the sample, remove a 1-mL (0.1 mL for Palmer-Maloney) aliquot using a large-bore Pasteur pipet and transfer the aliquot to the counting cell. Place the cover glass over the counting cell and allow the phytoplankton to settle. Carefully place the cell on the mechanical stage of a calibrated microscope, and enumerate phytoplankton as described in 6. Because neither of these counting cells is ruled, enumeration is facilitated by use of a Whipple disc.

6.6 To fill a hemacytometer, place a clean cover glass onto the counting-chamber supporting ribs. Using a smooth-tipped pipet, place a drop of homogenized sample in the V groove of the metal surface at the edge of the cover glass. The sample will be drawn rapidly into the space between the cover glass and the ruled area of the cell. Any overflow will draw phytoplankton into the moat, and the chamber will have to be cleaned and refilled. Allow phytoplankton to settle and examine the ruled counting area using low power (80X to 200X) to ensure an even distribution of phytoplankton over the grid. Count using high power (200X to 1,000X) and tally cells in a sufficient number of grid squares to ensure the desired level of precision.

6.7 Wash all counting cells using 90-percent ethyl alcohol or phosphate-free detergent and then distilled water.

7. Calculations

The following procedure will provide estimates of phytoplankton population density from tallied counts of algal cells from subsamples enumerated on microscopic slides or counting cells.

7.1 If the sample has been collected by net or if a bottle sample has been either diluted or concentrated by centrifugation-siphoning, calculate the concentration factor, $\underline{c}$ (volume of water represented by a volume of processed sample). The factor $\underline{f}$ corrects for the volume of preservative added:

$$\underline{f} = \frac{\text{Volume of water collected + volume of preservative added}}{\text{Volume of water collected}} ;$$

$$\text{Net sample } \underline{c} = \frac{\text{Volume of water passed through the net}}{\text{Volume of preserved sample}} \times \underline{f} \text{ ; and}$$

$$\text{Bottle sample } \underline{c} = \frac{\text{Volume of water collected}}{\text{Final volume of concentrated or diluted sample}} \times \underline{f} .$$

7.2 For ruled counting cells, calculate the area, $\underline{a}$ (square millimeters), represented by one microscopic field (or Whipple disc grid) using a stage micrometer. This needs to be done for each magnification used for enumeration. For example, if enumeration is done using a Whipple disc at 125X, $\underline{a}$ = 0.49 mm^2.

7.3 For unruled counting cells, calculate the area, $\underline{A}$ (square millimeters), that the sample covers on the counting cell or membrane filter. For the Sedgwick-Rafter cell, $\underline{A}$ = 1,000 mm^2; for the Palmer-Maloney cell, $\underline{A}$ = 250 mm^2.

7.4 Sum the total number of units, $\underline{T}$ (cells, colonies, or filaments × number of cells per colony or filament), tallied within $\underline{n}$ microscopic fields:

$$\underline{T} = \sum_{\underline{i}=1}^{\underline{n}} \underline{x}_{\underline{i}} ,$$

where $\underline{x}_{\underline{i}}$ is total number of units counted in field $\underline{i}$.

7.5 For unruled counting cells, calculate the total volume, v (milliliters), of the original sample represented by $\underline{n}$ microscopic fields:

$$\underline{v} = \underline{c} \times \underline{n} \times \underline{a}/\underline{A} \times \underline{V} ,$$

where $\underline{V}$ is the volume (milliliters), of preserved sample that was settled, filtered, or placed directly into a counting cell.

7.6 For ruled counting cells (hemacytometer), calculate the total volume, $\underline{v}$ (milliliters), of original sample represented by $\underline{n}$ 1-mm squares of the hemacytometer:

$$\underline{v} = \underline{c} \times \underline{n} \times 0.0001,$$

where the volume of sample represented by one square is 0.0001 mL.

7.7 Calculate the population density, $\underline{D}$ (cells per milliliter), of phytoplankton in the original sample:

$$\underline{D} = \underline{T}/\underline{v} .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report phytoplankton density to two significant figures.

9. Precision

See "Precision" subsection in the "Phytoplankton" section.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Guillard, R. R. L., 1973, Division rates, in Stein, J. R., ed., Handbook of phycological methods, culture methods, and growth measurements: London, Cambridge University Press, p. 289-311.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

McAlice, B. J., 1971, Phytoplankton sampling with the Sedgwick-Rafter cell: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 1, p. 19-28.

Palmer, C. M., and Maloney, T. E., 1954, A new counting slide for nannoplankton: American Association of Limnology and Oceanography Special Publication 21, p. 1-7.

Sournia, Alain, ed., 1978, Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, 337 p.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Inverted-Microscope Method
(B-1520-85)

Parameter and Code:
Phytoplankton, total (cells/mL): 60050

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

The inverted-microscope method enables the observation of the phytoplankton in an aliquot of water at high-power magnification without disrupting or crushing delicate phytoplankton. Phytoplankton are concentrated by settling to the bottom of a vertical-tube sedimentation apparatus (Utermohl, 1958; Lovegrove, 1960; Hasle, 1978). Lund and others (1958) reported that all known phytoplankton can be settled. After settling, an aliquot of phytoplankton sample is poured into a phytoplankton counting cell or sedimentation apparatus (fig. 16). The phytoplankton settle onto a microscope cover glass that forms the bottom of the sedimentation apparatus, and the settled phytoplankton are observed from beneath, using an inverted microscope. Because this method enables use of the high-powered dry and oil-immersion objectives on the microscope, ultraplankton can be identified and enumerated.

3. Interferences

The enumeration and identification of phytoplankton is impaired by large concentrations of suspended sediment or detritus that obscure micro-organisms. Previously used sample bottles and counting cells must be scrubbed thoroughly to remove adherent diatoms and other material. Convection currents and air bubbles in the sedimentation tube can interfere with settling of phytoplankton.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, that has an automatic tare.

4.2 Cover glass, 22-mm diameter, no. 1 and no. 1½.

4.3 Inverted microscope.

4.4 Pipet, serological, 1 mL.

4.5 Plankton counting cell, 26×76-mm glass slide that has a 12-mm circular hole, covered by cementing no. 1½ cover glass to slide, and a no. 1½ cover glass for top of cell.

4.6 Rubber cement, for attaching cover glass to the counting cell.

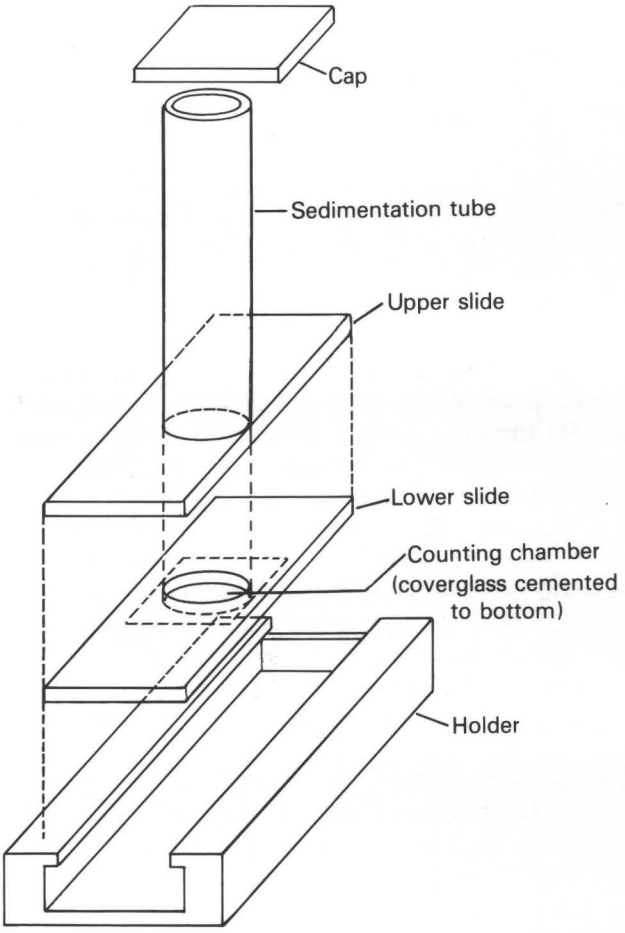


Figure 16.--Phytoplankton counting cell and sedimentation apparatus (modified from Lovegrove, 1960).

4.7 Sample containers, glass or graduated polyethylene bottles and screwcaps, 100 mL to 1 L.

4.8 Sedimentation apparatus, of the type described by Lovegrove (1960) and Hasle (1978), consisting of a sedimentation tube that connects to a counting cell and a bottom cover glass (fig. 16).

4.9 Stage micrometer, 2-mm scale divided into 200×0.01-mm units, mounted on 25×75-mm slide.

4.10 Water-sampling bottle, or nets. Depth-integrated samplers are discussed in Guy and Norman (1970) and in Wetzel and Likens (1979).

4.11 Whipple disc, placed in one ocular of the microscope.

5. Reagents

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40 percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL cupric sulfate solution.

5.5 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use; store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

6. Analysis

Phytoplankton samples need to be examined using two different magnifications: low power (80X to 200X) to ensure inclusion of large, usually rare, species; and high power (200X to 1,000X, using oil immersion, if possible) to facilitate identification and to ensure inclusion of ultraplankton. Phytoplankton in the entire slide mount often can be counted using low magnification, but random fields need to be selected at high magnification until a sufficient number of units (cells, filaments, chains, or colonies) have been enumerated for the desired level of precision. Use of a Whipple disc in one ocular will demarcate the microscopic field into a defined, easily viewed grid of 100 squares. When making the counts, enumerate only forms that lie completely inside the grid and those that intersect two of the outer grid borders. If a large number of colonies or filaments appear within the field, determine the average number of cells in an average-size colony or filament and multiply by the number of colonies or filaments present. Count only viable cells, those having protoplasm or pigments. Identify all forms to some predetermined taxonomic level (species is preferrable); count and describe unidentifiable cells.

The volume of original, unconcentrated sample to be examined will vary, depending on sediment content and density of phytoplankton; the volume commonly will range between 25 mL (for eutrophic water or water that has large suspended-sediment concentration) and 100 mL or more (for oligotrophic water). Net samples may not require further concentration.

6.1 If using the sedimentation apparatus (fig. 16), proceed to 6.5. If using the plankton counting cell, proceed as follows. If concentration is necessary, allow the sample to settle undisturbed in the sample container for 4 hours per centimeter of depth to be settled. After settling, weigh the sample container on an automatic balance.

6.2 Carefully siphon the supernatant to avoid disturbance of the settled material. Place sample container and remaining sample on the balance and weigh. The decrease in weight (in grams) is equivalent to the number of milliliters of supernatant removed. Use the same method to obtain the volume of concentrate.

6.3 Mix the concentrated sample well (but not vigorously) and pipet an appropriate volume into each of two plankton counting cells. Slide cover glass into place.

6.4 Place the plankton counting cell on the mechanical stage of a calibrated microscope. Proceed to 6.10.

6.5 To prepare the sedimentation apparatus, cement a no. 1 cover glass to the bottom of the lower slide to form the bottom of the counting cell (fig. 16). When dry, remove the excess rubber cement from the inside of the counting cell using a knife.

6.6 Test for leaks. Coat the underside of the upper slide (fig. 16) with vacuum grease and press onto the lower slide to form a watertight seal. Assemble the sedimentation apparatus and fill with distilled water so the meniscus bulges slightly above the top of the sedimentation tube. Slide the cap over the top to seal the tube. Let stand overnight and check for water loss in the morning.

6.7 If no leaks are detected, thoroughly mix a sample by inverting it at least 40 times, and then fill the sedimentation apparatus and apply the cap as described in 6.6 (Note 1). Allow 4 hours settling time per 1 cm of sedimentation-tube length. The volume of sample is dependent on the density of phytoplankton. In oligotrophic water, 100 mL or more of sample may be required; in eutrophic water, 25 mL or less of sample may be sufficient. The 25-mL volume is most commonly used. Dilute the samples if necessary.

Note 1: Air bubbles on the sides of the sedimentation tube can be prevented if the water sample and the sedimentation apparatus are at the same temperature when the sample is added. The apparatus needs to be maintained at a constant temperature to avoid convection currents, which can interfere with settling.

6.8 After settling, isolate the phytoplankton in the counting cell from the remainder of the sedimentation apparatus. To separate the sedimentation tube and upper slide from the lower slide and counting cell (fig. 16), move the sedimentation tube to one side, dividing the water column. Remove the tube cap and siphon or pipet off the supernatant. Remove the empty sedimentation tube.

6.9 Remove the lower slide that has the counting cell from the holder (fig. 16). Place the cap over the top of the counting cell to form a closed cell. If an air bubble remains under the cap, move it to one side of the cell and carefully add distilled water to fill the void. Replace the tube cap and put the slide on the inverted microscope.

6.10 Three basic procedures exist for microscopically enumerating and identifying concentrated phytoplankton samples. Although specific materials and methods vary between these procedures, the general counting procedure is identical.

7. Calculations

The following procedure will provide estimates of phytoplankton population density from tallied counts of phytoplankton cells from subsamples enumerated on microscopic slides or counting cells.

7.1 If the sample has been collected by net or if a bottle sample has been either diluted or concentrated by centrifugation-siphoning, calculate the concentration factor, $\underline{c}$ (volume of water represented by a volume of processed sample). The factor $\underline{f}$ corrects for the volume of preservative added:

$$\underline{f} = \frac{\text{Volume of water collected + volume of preservative added}}{\text{Volume of water collected}} ;$$

$$\text{Net sample } \underline{c} = \frac{\text{Volume of water passed through the net}}{\text{Volume of preserved sample}} \times \underline{f} \text{ ; and}$$

$$\text{Bottle sample } \underline{c} = \frac{\text{Volume of water collected}}{\text{Final volume of concentrated or diluted sample}} \times \underline{f} .$$

7.2 For ruled counting cells, calculate the area, $\underline{a}$ (square millimeters), represented by one microscopic field (or Whipple disc grid) using a stage micrometer. This needs to be done for each magnification used for enumeration. For example, if enumeration is done using a Whipple disc at 125X, $\underline{a} = 0.49$ mm^2.

7.3 For inverted-microscope counting cells that have a bottom plate that has a diameter of 25 mm, the area is $\underline{A} = 491$ mm^2.

7.4 Sum the total number of units, $\underline{T}$ (cells, colonies, or filaments × number of cells per colony or filament), tallied within $\underline{n}$ microscopic fields:

$$\underline{T} = \sum_{\underline{i}=1}^{\underline{n}} \underline{x}_{\underline{i}} ,$$

where $\underline{x}_{\underline{i}}$ is total number of units counted in field $\underline{i}$.

7.5 For unruled counting cells, calculate the total volume, $\underline{v}$ (milliliters), of the original sample represented by $\underline{n}$ microscopic fields:

$$\underline{v} = \underline{c} \times \underline{n} \times \underline{a}/\underline{A} \times \underline{V} ,$$

where $\underline{V}$ is the volume (milliliters), of preserved sample that was settled, filtered, or placed directly into a counting cell.

7.6 Calculate the population density, $\underline{D}$ (cells per milliliter), of phytoplankton in the original sample:

$$\underline{D} = \underline{T}/\underline{v}$$

8. Reporting of results

Report phytoplankton density to two significant figures.

9. Precision

See "Precision" subsection in the "Phytoplankton" section.

10. References cited

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hasle, G. R., 1978, The inverted-microscope method, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 88-96.

Lovegrove, T., 1960, An improved form of sedimentation apparatus for use with an inverted microscope: Journal du Conseil Permanent International pour l' Exploration de la Mer, v. 25, p. 279-284.

Lund, J. W. G., Kipling, C., and LeCren, E. D., 1958, The inverted microscope method of estimating algal numbers, and the statistical basis of estimation by counting: Hydrobiologia, v. 11, no. 2, p. 143-170.

Utermohl, H., 1958, Zur Vervollkommnung der Quantitativen Phytoplankton-Methodik: Mittelung Internationale Vereinigung für Theoretische und Angewande Limnologie, v. 9, p. 1-38.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Permanent-Slide Method for Planktonic Diatoms
(B-1580-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

This method enables preparation of permanent mounts using a minimum of time and equipment. Numerous alternative methods for clearing diatom frustules (cell walls) and mounting exist in the literature. Alternative methods for clearing include nitric acid digestion of tissue on the slide (Knudsen, 1966), sulfuric acid and potassium permanganate (Hasle and Fryxell, 1970), hydrochloric acid (HCl) (Cupp, 1943), and potassium permanganate and HCl (Hasle, 1978). Hydrogen peroxide and potassium permanganate (Von der Webb, 1953), hydrogen peroxide and ultraviolet light (Swift, 1967), and hydrogen peroxide after mild heating (Wong, 1975) also have been used for tissue digestion. The reader is referred to the original papers for the details of these procedures.

1. Applications

This qualitative method is suitable for all water. Advantages of the method are that a permanent mount is prepared, and clearing of the cells enhances observation of frustule detail. The method, therefore, is important in the taxonomic study of diatoms.

2. Summary of method

The diatoms in a sample are concentrated, the cells are cleared, and a permanent mount is prepared. The mount is examined microscopically, and the number of diatom taxa is calculated from strip counts.

3. Interferences

3.1 Inorganic particulate matter, including salt crystals, interferes with mount preparation but can be decreased by sample washing.

3.2 The method does not distinguish living from dead diatoms.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, that has an automatic tare.

4.2 Centrifuge, either swing-out or fixed-head cup-type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, 15- to 50-mL conical or 100-mL pear-shaped centrifuge tubes, and simple siphoning or suction device to remove excess fluid after centrifugation.

4.3 Cover glasses 18×18 or 22×22 mm, no. 1½, and microscope slides, glass, 76×22 mm.

4.4 Forceps, curved tip.

4.5 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL, and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.6 Hotplate, thermostatically controlled to 538 °C. It is convenient to have a second hotplate for operation at about 93 to 121 °C as described in 6.8.

4.7 Microscope, conventional light microscope, or equivalent. Bright field condensor and objectives are required, and phase contrast is desirable, particularly for taxonomic examination. A series of objectives needs to be available (10X, 20X, and 40X), and 100X phase-contrast oil-immersion objectives need to be available for examination of smaller sized diatoms. The microscope needs to be equipped with a movable mechanical stage that has vernier scales.

4.8 Pipets, 1-mL or 10-mL capacity, sterile.

4.9 Sample containers, glass or graduated polyethylene bottles and screwcaps, 100 mL to 1 L.

4.10 Water-sampling bottle, or nets. Depth-integrated samplers are discussed in Guy and Norman (1970) and in Wetzel and Likens (1979).

4.11 Whipple disc, placed in one ocular of the microscope.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40 percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL cupric sulfate solution.

5.5 Immersion oil. Cargille's nondrying type A.

5.6 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use; store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

5.7 Mounting medium (table 13). Generally, mounting media should have a refractive index different than that of diatom frustules. Diatom frustules have a refractive index of approximately 1.15 (Reid, 1978).

Table 13.--Synthetic mounting media in general use for permanent mount of planktonic diatoms

[Adapted from Reid, 1978; reproduced by permission of UNESCO; --, not available]

Media	Refractive index, n	Solvent	Other information
Aroclor	1.63	Xylene.	Good for diatoms.
Clearax	1.67	Xylene, acetone.	Good for diatoms.
Clearmount	1.51	Xylene, benzene, toluene, alcohol, dioxan, and other solvents.	Conserves stains.
Euparal	1.48	Xylene, alcohol.	Mixture of natural and synthetic resins; can be used immediately after 95-percent alcohol application; intensifies hematoxylin stains.
Hyrax	1.63	Xylene, benzene, toluene.	Expensive; good for diatoms (Hanna, 1930).
Naphrax	1.72	Xylene, toluene, acetone.	Good for diatoms (Fleming, 1943, 1954).
Permount	--	Toluene.	Conserves stains: does not yellow.
Pleurax	1.75	Alcohol.	Good for delicate diatoms. Procedure for mixing in Hanna (1949).

6. Analysis

6.1 If the sample contains great numbers of phytoplankton, as typically occurs in eutrophic water, dilute the sample. To dilute, thoroughly mix 50 mL sample with 50 mL distilled water (1:1 dilution) and proceed to 6.2. If microscopic examination reveals a concentration of phytoplankton still too numerous to count, thoroughly mix 50 mL 1:1 dilution with 50 mL distilled water (1:4 dilution). Make additional dilutions as appropriate.

6.2 If concentration is necessary, allow the sample to settle undisturbed in the sample container for 4 hours per centimeter of depth to be settled. After settling, weigh the sample container on an automatic tare balance.

6.3 Carefully siphon the supernatant to avoid disturbance of the settled material. Place sample container and remaining sample on balance and weigh. The decrease in weight (in grams) is equivalent to the number of milliliters of supernatant removed. Use the same method to obtain the volume of concentrate.

6.4 If the sample was collected from seawater or saline lakes, wash the sample, using distilled water, at least three times to ensure that the permanent mounts are not obscured by salt crystals. Add about 10 mL distilled water to the concentrate in the centrifuge tube, gently shake the tube to suspend the residue, fill the tube with distilled water, and centrifuge for 20 minutes. Decant the supernatant fluid and repeat the washing process two more times.

6.5 Place two or three drops of the concentrate on each of three or four cover glasses.

6.6 With the concentrate side up, place the cover glass on a hotplate and heat, slowly at first to prevent splattering, to about 538 °C (a higher temperature will melt diatom valves) for 30 minutes.

6.7 Remove cover glass from the hotplate and cool.

6.8 Place a drop of mounting medium (table 13) on a microscope slide and heat at about 93 to 121 °C for 3 to 4 minutes.

6.9 Invert the cover glass, concentrate side down, on the heated medium. Apply slight pressure to the cover glass (for example, with a pencil eraser) until visible air bubbles dissappear. Remove slide from hotplate and allow to cool. If bubbles still are present under the cover glass, heat the slide and gently apply additional pressure to the cover glass. Label slide to identify sample.

6.10 Examine the slide using the 1,000X objective (oil immersion). Count and identify diatom taxa found in several lateral strips the width of the Whipple disc. Identify and tabulate 200 to 300 diatom cells, if possible. Generally, at least 100 individuals of the most common species should be enumerated. Ignore frustule fragments. Thin-walled forms, such as

Rhizosolenia eriensis and Melosira crenulata, may be difficult to observe when using this method (Weber, 1966, p. 3). If a microscope that has a mechanical stage is used, recording of the x and y coordinates of lateral strips or individual cells enables investigators to later recheck and verify identification (Wong, 1975).

7. Calculations

$$\text{Percent occurrence of each species} = \frac{\text{Number of diatoms of a given species}}{\text{Total number of diatoms tabulated}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report percentage composition of diatoms to the nearest whole number. Report taxa and number of diatoms per taxa.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Cupp, E. E., 1943, Marine plankton diatoms of the west coast of North America: University of California at La Jolla, Bulletin of the Scripps Institute of Oceanography, v. 5, p. 1-238.

Fleming, W., 1943, Synthetic mounting medium of high refractive index: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 63, p. 34-37.

_____1954, Naphrax, a synthetic mounting medium of high refractive index--New and improved methods of preparation: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 74, p. 42-44.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hanna, G. G., 1930, Hynax, a new mounting medium for diatoms: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 50, p. 424-426.

_____1949, A synthetic resin which has unusual properties: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 69, p. 25-28.

Hasle, G. R., 1978, Diatoms, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 136-142.

Hasle, G. R., and Fryxell, G., 1970, Diatoms--Cleaning and mounting for light and electron microscopy: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 89, p. 469-474.

Knudsen, J., 1966, Biological techniques: New York, Harper and Row, 525 p.

Reid, F. M., 1978, Permanent slides, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 115-118.

Swift, Elijan, 1967, Cleaning diatom frustules with ultraviolet radiation and peroxide: Phycologia, v. 6, p. 161-163.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Von der Webb, 1953, A new method for concentrating and cleaning diatoms and other organisms: International Association Theoretical and Applied Limnology Proceedings, v. 1, p. 276-277.

Weber, C. I., 1966, A guide to the common diatoms at water pollution surveillance system stations: Cincinnati, Ohio, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Water Pollution Surveillance, 98 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Wong, R. L., 1975, Diatom flora of the phytoplankton of San Francisco Bay: San Francisco, San Francisco State University, M.S. thesis, 144 p.

ZOOPLANKTON

Introduction

The zooplankton are the animal part of the plankton. In general, they predominantly are composed of free-living, nonphotosynthetic protozoa, rotatoria, and crustacea. They are found in a variety of aquatic habitats, although usually they are absent or occur in small numbers in rapid streams. Zooplankton are important contributors to aquatic ecosystem metabolism because they are grazers of phytoplankton and bacteria and are important predators. Fish and certain invertebrate groups also use zooplankton as a food source. Zooplankton, therefore, can have a substantial effect on the structure and functioning of aquatic ecosystems.

Zooplankton characteristically have patchy distributions in aquatic ecosystems. They are rarely distributed randomly or uniformly. Additionally, vertical differences in zooplankton abundance on a daily and seasonal basis commonly are observed and are caused by the diurnal vertical migration of certain groups of zooplankton in response to changes in illumination. The fact that zooplankton are heterogeneous in their areal and vertical distribution must be considered in any investigation of the zooplankton. No single method of sampling can sample conclusively and accurately the entire zooplankton community.

Collection

There are several methods available for the collection of zooplankton. These methods are grouped into two categories based, in part, on the size of the zooplankton being collected. Zooplankton smaller than 200 µm are considered microzooplankton; this includes protozoa and small rotifers (Tranter and Fraser, 1968; Tonolli, 1971). They are readily collected by water-sampling bottles, water cores or tubes, and water pumps, followed by concentration of the sample onsite or in the laboratory. Collection also is facilitated by the use of plankton traps. Larger zooplankton, including the crustacea and larger rotifers, can be collected using various equipment that filter the zooplankton from the water through a net (Tonolli, 1971). These devices include unmetered tow nets (Wisconsin- or Birge-type), metered tow nets (Clarke-Bumpus sampler), and plankton traps (Schindler-Patalas trap).

There are several types of net mesh and sizes available for use in net sampling devices. The choice of mesh size and net design depends on the abundance of the zooplankton and the towing speed of the net. Nets of 202-µm mesh generally are used during U.S. Geological Survey studies. Smaller net sizes can be used for the purpose of collecting microzooplankton; however, clogging becomes an important factor using mesh sizes less than 65 µm (Steedman, 1976). Although the collector need not be restricted to the 202-µm mesh size, the mesh size used needs to be reported when presenting zooplankton results.

Detailed collection methods are discussed in Tranter and Fraser (1968), Schwoerbel (1970, p. 37-52), Edmondson and Winberg (1971, p. 1-20), Lind (1979, p. 100-115), and Wetzel and Likens (1979, p. 161-166). The study objectives need to be considered when selecting appropriate methods of collection. However, to ensure maximum correlation of results, the sample sites and methods used for zooplankton need to correspond as closely as possible to those selected for other biological, microbiological, and chemical sampling.

Water-sampling bottles can be used to collect a sample representative of the zooplankton density at a particular depth in ponds, lakes, reservoirs, estuaries, and deep rivers. This method is appropriate for collection when information on the vertical distribution of all zooplankton (including microzooplankton) is required. Water-sampling bottles that enable collection, cause minimal disturbance of water passage into the bottle, and minimize avoidance reactions by the zooplankton are desirable (Tonolli, 1971). Van Dorn-type water-sampling bottles, or equivalent, are an adequate collection device for zooplankton.

Depth-integrating samplers are used to collect a sample representative of the entire flow of a stream (Guy and Norman, 1970; Goerlitz and Brown, 1972). For small streams, a depth-integrated sample, or a point sample, at a single transverse position located at the centroid of flow may be adequate. Depth-integrating samplers are discussed in Guy and Norman (1970).

Following collection, the contents from the water-sampling bottle or depth-integrating samplers are poured through an appropriate monofilament screen cloth (202 μm could be used, but it will enable microzooplankton to pass through), which retains the zooplankton for identification and enumeration or for biomass determinations. The advantage of water-sampling-bottle collection is negated by filtering the zooplankton through an inappropriate screen cloth that damages them or through a mesh size that lets microzooplankton pass through (Tonolli, 1971).

A sampling tube or water core can be used when information about the vertical distribution of all zooplankton (including microzooplankton) is not required. One limitation of this method is that good swimmers can avoid capture. This collection device consists of a weighted thin-walled rubber or plastic tube, having a closing device for collection of a relatively large vertical column of water and its associated zooplankton.

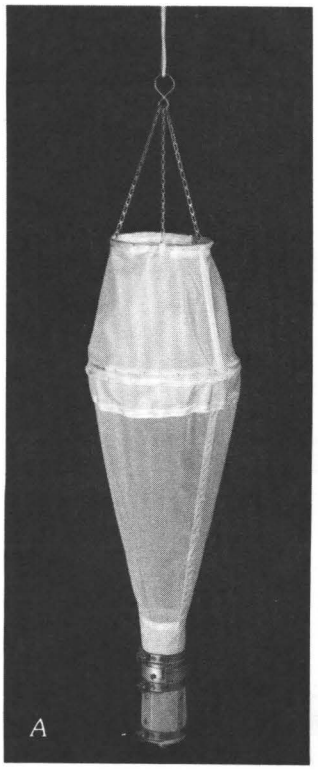
To collect a sample, the flexible tube is lowered to the desired depth. The sampling core is retrieved by pulling on a rope that is connected between two rings about 10 cm apart at the base of the tube. Pulling on the rope closes the tube. The advantage of this method is that the entire water column can be sampled using a relatively simple device (Tonolli, 1971, p. 4). Following collection, the contents are filtered through an appropriate mesh-size monofilament screen cloth (less than or equal to 202 μm), which retains the zooplankton for identification and enumeration or for biomass determination.

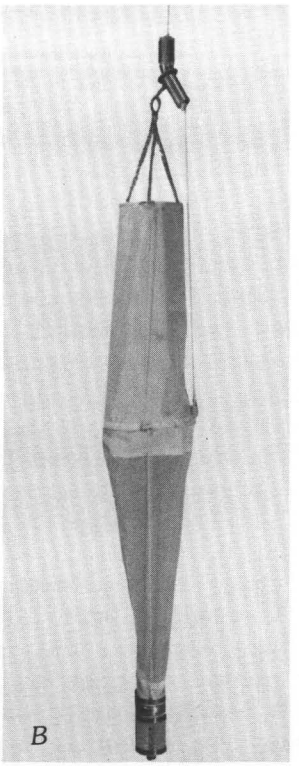
The water-pump method has the advantage of easily collecting large volumes of water from various depths. However, the problem of avoidance by larger zooplankton may be encountered (Tonolli, 1971). A hand pump or electric pump is attached to a relatively large diameter tube, which in turn is weighted at the bottom. The tube is lowered to a preselected depth and flushed with a volume of water three times the tube's volume to eliminate water that entered the tube during lowering. A known quantity of water then is pumped and filtered through an appropriate mesh-size monofilament screen cloth (less than or equal to 202 μm), which retains the zooplankton for identification and enumeration or for biomass determination.

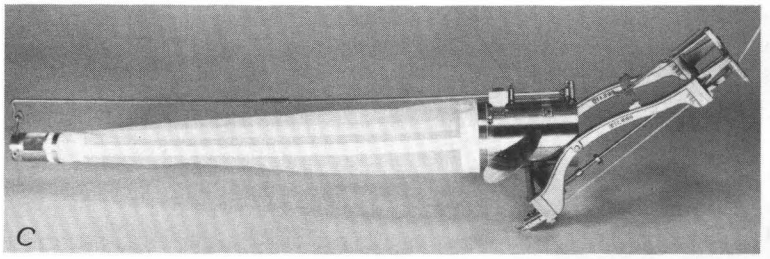
Unmetered plankton nets are useful in qualitative investigations of the zooplankton when complete quantitative data are not required. It is a fairly simple technique that permits relative comparisons of zooplankton communities (Tonolli, 1971). The entire water column is sampled easily by using plankton nets in vertical hauls. Wisconsin-type (open) (fig. 17A) and Birge-type (closed) (fig. 17B) plankton nets are examples of the nets suitable for this method. The zooplankton are collected by lowering the net to a known depth and raising it at a constant speed to the surface. Wisconsin-type plankton nets may become clogged and lose sampling efficiency during long retrieval. Birge-type plankton nets that can be closed at a preselected depth by dropping a messenger are advantageous for these conditions. In general, a large ratio of filtering surface to mouth-opening area decreases clogging. Therefore, long nets are more efficient than short nets. After retrieval, the filtering cone then is cleared of zooplankton by rapidly lowering and raising the net in the water, without submerging the net opening, and then bringing the net completely out of the water. Alternatively, the filtering cone of the plankton net can be cleared by repeated washing using water. These procedures concentrate the zooplankton in the removable plankton bucket, located at the bottom of the net. The zooplankton are washed from the plankton bucket into a sample container for identification and enumeration or filtered through an appropriate mesh-size monofilament screen cloth for biomass determination.

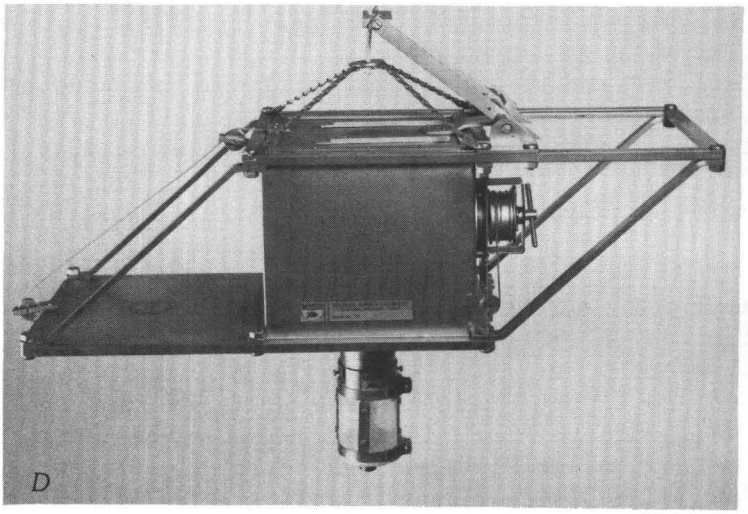
The volume of water (V) filtered through the Wisconsin- and Birge-type nets is calculated as $V = \pi r^2 d$, where r = radius of the mouth of the net and d = tow length through the water column (entire length of tow for the Wisconsin-type net and length of tow before closing for the Birge-type net). This assumes that the filtering efficiency of the net is 100 percent. The actual efficiency of the net generally will be less than 100 percent (Tonolli, 1971).

The Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler is a metered tow net that enables quantitative sampling of the zooplankton in either horizontal or vertical tows (fig. 17C). This device consists of a net and flowmeter mounted on a horizontal frame. The net is opened and closed using a messenger. By knowing the initial and final reading on the counter of the flowmeter, the volume of water that has passed through the net can be determined (Schwoerbel, 1970, p. 45; Tonolli, 1971, p. 6-12). Thus, the Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler has an advantage over the Wisconsin-type net or Birge-type net, because the exact volume of water passing through the net is known. However, clogging can become important when samples are collected from water that has dense zooplankton populations, because of the large volumes filtered by the Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler (Tonolli, 1971; Wetzel and Likens, 1979).









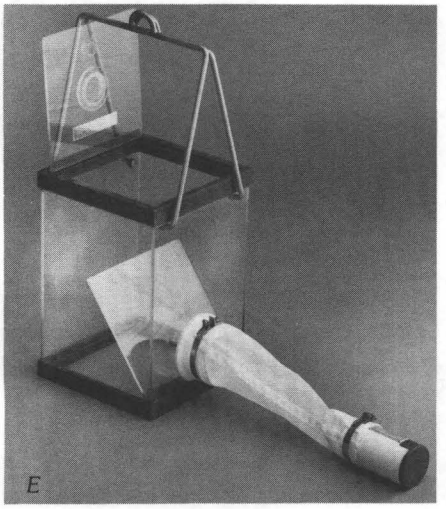


Figure 17.--Zooplankton collecting devices: (A) Wisconsin-type (open) plankton net; (B) Birge-type (closed) plankton net; (C) Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler; (D) Juday plankton trap; (E) Schindler-Patalas plankton trap. (Photographs courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.)

When collecting a sample, the initial reading of the flowmeter is recorded. The sampler is lowered to the selected depth, and the net is opened by dropping a messenger. After towing the sampler for a known interval of time or distance, the net is closed using another messenger, and the net is retrieved. The final reading on the flowmeter then is recorded. The net is washed, and the zooplankton are concentrated into the removable bucket. The zooplankton then are washed from the plankton bucket into a sample container for identification and enumeration or filtered through an appropriate mesh-size monofilament screen cloth for biomass determination.

For horizontal hauls, a moving boat is required. Also, a clinometer and cable depressor are necessary to ensure the haul is collected at a known depth. Further detailed discussion of the use of this device is presented by Tonolli (1971).

Plankton traps are used for point sample collection of the water column when information about the vertical distribution of the zooplankton is required. This method is suitable for capture of microzooplankton and larger zooplankton. There are two basic types of plankton traps, those requiring a messenger for closing [Juday trap, (fig. 17D)](Juday, 1916) and one that does not [Schindler-Patalas trap (fig. 17E)] (Schindler, 1969). The Juday trap is lowered to a predetermined depth and closed by a messenger. The trap then is retrieved, and the water drains through an attached plankton bucket, concentrating the zooplankton. The Schindler-Patalas trap, constructed using transparent Plexiglas, has two swinging lids that facilitate collection by lowering to a predetermined depth and then raising the trap to the water surface. A mesh-covered hole in the top lid enables the contents of the trap to be filtered through the attached net. The contents of the net are washed readily into the detachable plankton bucket (Schindler, 1969). Once the zooplankton have been concentrated in the plankton bucket of either the Juday trap or the Schindler-Patalas trap, the zooplankton are washed into a sample container for identification and enumeration or filtered through a 202-μm (or less, to include the microzooplankton) mesh-size monofilament screen for biomass determination. The advantages of the Schindler-Patalas trap are that it does not have a messenger activated tripping system, filtering occurs during raising, and it is less subject to the avoidance reactions by zooplankton encountered using water-bottle samplers, tow nets, and metal traps because it is transparent.

Samples collected for biomass determination on mesh-size monofilament screen cloth are handled as follows. Wash the screen cloth containing the zooplankton by dipping in distilled water several times, place in a plastic bag or other suitable sample container, and preserve onsite by freezing using dry ice. Keep frozen until gravimetric determinations can be made (Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, p. 57). Additional information about sample preparation onsite prior to biomass determination is presented in Beers (1976, p. 74-76).

Samples collected for identification and enumeration are narcotized using an appropriate agent. A simple method is the addition of a commercial soda water (10-15 percent of total sample volume) to the sample, resulting in carbon dioxide excess. Narcotization prevents contraction and distortion of the

zooplankton when fixed using preservative that enables ready identification in the preserved state (Steedman, 1976). Following narcotization, preserve the samples using neutralized formaldehyde (approximately 2-4 percent of total sample volume) solution (5 percent formalin). Add several drops of glycerin (approximately 5 percent of total sample volume) to the sample to prevent drying during storage. If samples collected for biomass determination cannot be kept frozen, preserve using 2 percent neutralized formaldehyde solution, but use the selected sample-preservation method consistently throughout the study.

For identification and enumeration and for biomass determinations, label the sample to indicate the volume of water filtered or to indicate the information needed to determine the volume. For example, record the length of a vertical net haul and the diameter of the net opening. Also, the date and site location should be included, the order of collection when replicate sampling is used, and collection device and mesh size of any screen cloth used.

References Cited

Beers, J. R., 1976, Determination of zooplankton biomass, in Steedman, H. F., ed., Zooplankton fixation and preservation: Paris, The UNESCO Press, p. 37-84.

Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, Recommended procedures for measuring the productivity of plankton standing crop and related oceanographic properties: Washington, D.C., National Academy of Sciences, 59 p.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.

Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Juday, C., 1916, Limnological apparatus: Transactions of Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 18, p. 566-592.

Lind, O. T., 1979, Handbook of common methods in limnology: St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., 199 p.

Schindler, D. W., 1969, Two useful devices for vertical plankton and water sampling: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 26, p. 1948-1955.

Schwoerbel, Jürgen, 1970, Methods of hydrobiology (freshwater biology): Oxford, London, and Toronto, Pergamon Press, Ltd., 200 p.

Steedman, H. F., 1976, Narcotizing agents and methods, in Steedman, H. F., ed., Zooplankton fixation and preservation: Paris, The UNESCO Press, p. 87-94.

Tonolli, V., 1971, Methods of collection--Zooplankton, in Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, p. 1-20.

Tranter, D. J., and Fraser, J. H., eds., 1968, Zooplankton sampling: Paris, The UNESCO Press, 174 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Counting-Cell Method
(B-2501-85)

Parameter and Code:
Zooplankton, total (organisms/m^3): 70946

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Samples of the zooplankton community are collected, preserved, and examined microscopically for numbers and types of zooplankton per unit volume of water sampled.

3. Interferences

Suspended materials in the water and abundant algae may interfere with the collection and microscopic examination of zooplankton.

4. Apparatus

Methods and equipment for the collection of zooplankton and their examination for identification and enumeration are described briefly in this section and are described in more detail in Welch (1948), Tranter and Fraser (1968), Schwoerbel (1970), Edmondson and Winberg (1971), Steedman (1976), Lind (1979), Wetzel and Likens (1979), and American Public Health Association and others (1985). Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Beaker, 250-mL capacity, for use as a mixing vessel for zooplankton samples.

4.2 Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler that has 202-μm mesh netting. An impeller at the net opening registers the volume of water filtered through the net. The Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler is used most often for horizontal tows, but it also may be used for vertical tows (fig. 17B).

4.3 Counting cells. A petri dish, half, that has etched grid on the bottom, is a convenient open counting cell. The construction of large volume counting cells is discussed in Edmondson (1971, p. 131). Open counting cells are used for counting subsample aliquots larger than 1 mL. Closed counting cells are used for smaller subsamples. Sedgwick-Rafter counting cells, 50×20×1 mm and cover glass are used in counting small samples. Small organisms (less than 10 μm) are identified more easily and counted using thinner counting cells, such as the Palmer-Maloney cell or standard medical hemacytometer (Edmondson, 1971).

4.4 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.5 Microscope, binocular, flat-field, zoom lens, and illuminator for the smaller zooplankton. For the larger zooplankton, a binocular wide-field dissecting microscope is adequate.

4.6 Nylon monofilament screen cloth, 202-μm mesh opening.

4.7 Piston or Hensen-Stempel pipet, 4-mm diameter or 5-mL capacity, for obtaining subsamples from zooplankton samples. A 1-mL Hensen-Stempel pipet is convenient for use with Sedgwick-Rafter counting cells.

4.8 Plankton nets, Wisconsin-type, open, or Birge-type, closing. The closing plankton nets have greater sampling flexibility in deep-water bodies because they can be closed at any selected depth (fig. 17A).

4.9 Plankton trap (Juday type), a 10-L closing box, attached plankton bucket that has 202-μm mesh openings and that has messenger closing (fig. 17C), or transparent Plexiglas type that does not require messenger closing [Schindler-Patalas type (fig. 17D)].

4.10 Sample containers, glass or plastic bottles, vials, or sealable plastic bags. However, bags are subject to leakage during prolonged storage.

4.11 Sampling tube or water core, a weighted thin-walled rubber or plastic tube that has a closing device for collecting a relatively large vertical column of water and its associated zooplankton (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971, p. 4).

4.12 Spatula, for stirring samples.

4.13 Water pump, and attached rubber or plastic hose. Water is pumped through a net having a mesh size of 202 μm to retain the zooplankton (Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, p. 48).

4.14 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

4.15 Whipple disc, placed in one ocular of the microscope.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Formaldehyde solution, 2 percent. Dilute 5 mL 37 to 40 percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 mL using distilled water (Note 1).

Note 1: Commercial formaldehyde solution is slightly acid and may be neutralized by maintaining a small deposit of sodium or calcium carbonate in the stock bottle.

5.4 Glycerin, used to prevent drying of stored zooplankton samples.

5.5 Narcotizing agent (soda water, Schweppes, Canada Dry, or equivalent).

6. Analysis

6.1 Empty the contents of the entire sample into a graduated cylinder and adjust the volume to some convenient value, such as 50, 100, or 200±5 mL, by adding preservative solution. Because of the difficulty in examining the zooplankton in formalin preservative, tap water also can be used.

6.2 Pour the suspension in the graduated cylinder into an appropriate size beaker. Stir the contents of the beaker irregularly using a spatula to produce a random distribution of the zooplankton in the beaker. Take a subsample from the beaker for counting.

6.3 Count the zooplankton as in 6.4 or 6.5. Use the taxonomic keys in Edmondson (1959), Needham and Needham (1962), and Pennak (1978) to identify the different taxa of zooplankton for qualitative analysis and for the calculations of percent species composition.

6.4 Closed counting-cell method--Sedgwick-Rafter method.

6.4.1 With the counting cell on a flat surface, place the cover glass across the cell. Take a subsample as described in 6.2 by removing a 1-mL aliquot using a Hensen-Stempel pipet and transfer the aliquot to the cell. As the cell fills, the cover glass often will rotate slowly and cover the inner part of the cell, but the cover glass must not float above the rim of the cell. Allow the cell to stand for 15 to 20 minutes so the contents will settle.

6.4.2 Carefully place the counting cell on the mechanical stage of a microscope calibrated using a Whipple disc. Count the entire contents of the cell at 100X magnification. Alternatively, count several horizontal transects where the percent of the total contents of the cell is determined by the use of the Whipple disc. Count at least two subsamples from the beaker using the cell. The Sedgwick-Rafter method is not suitable for some large zooplankton because they do not fit in the cell under a cover glass.

6.5 Open counting-cell method. In this method, the entire contents from the beaker are counted. Using the etched or painted guidelines on the bottom of the Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell, count the zooplankton in random sections to determine an average density. A binocular wide-field dissecting microscope is adequate to count the zooplankton. Take care not to disturb the placement of the zooplankton in the open cell when counting, or the counting process will have to be started again. Several drops of liquid detergent can be added

to the open-cell subsample to decrease surface tension and prevent floating of the zooplankton on the surface. The open counting-cell method enables easy access to the subsample contents to enable manipulation of individual zooplankton for easier identification or removal for closer examination using a binocular flatfield microscope.

6.6 If the sample is to be retained, proceed as follows: After counting of the sample has been completed, return all the sample to the beaker and allow to settle overnight. Remove enough of the supernatant liquid to enable the return of the sample contents to the original sample container. Add preservative to ensure the integrity of the sample.

7. Calculations

7.1 Sedgwick-Rafter method:

Total zooplankton per cubic meter

$$= \frac{(\text{Zooplankton per cell}) \times (\text{volume of sample, milliliters})}{\text{Volume of water sampled (liters)}}$$

$$\times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{L}}{\text{Cubic meters}} .$$

7.2 Open counting-cell method, section counts:

Total zooplankton per cubic meter

$$= \frac{\begin{array}{c}(\text{Average count per section}) \\ \times (\text{number of sections}) \\ \times [\text{total volume of concentrated sample (milliliters)}]\end{array}}{\begin{array}{c}[\text{Volume of counting cell (milliliters)} \\ \times (\text{volume of water sampled (liters)}]\end{array}}$$

$$\times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{L}}{\text{Cubic meters}} .$$

7.3 Percent taxon composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of zooplankton of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of zooplankton of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report zooplankton densities as total number of organisms per cubic meter to two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, Recommended procedures for measuring the productivity of plankton standing crop and related oceanographic properties: Washington, D.C., National Academy of Sciences, 59 p.

Edmondson, W. T., ed., 1959, Freshwater biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley and Sons, 1,248 p.

Edmondson, W. T., 1971, Methods for processing samples and developing data--Counting zooplankton samples, in Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, p. 127-169.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook, 17, 358 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Lind, O. T., 1979, Handbook of common methods in limnology: St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., 199 p.

Needham, J. G., and Needham, P. R., 1962, A guide to the study of freshwater biology (5th ed., revised): San Francisco, Holden-Day, Inc., 108 p.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Freshwater invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley and Sons, 803 p.

Schwoerbel, Jürgen., 1970, Methods of hydrobiology (freshwater biology): Oxford, London, and Toronto, Pergamon Press, Ltd., 200 p.

Steedman, H. F., ed., 1976, Zooplankton fixation and preservation: Paris, The UNESCO Press, 350 p.

Tranter, D. J., and Fraser, J. H., eds., 1968, Zooplankton sampling: Paris, The UNESCO Press, 174 p.

Welch, P. S., 1948, Limnological methods: Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 381 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

Gravimetric Method for Biomass
(B-2520-85)

Parameters and Codes:
Zooplankton, dry weight (g/m^3): 70947
Zooplankton, ash weight (g/m^3): 70948

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Samples of the zooplankton community are collected from known volumes of water. The dry weight and ash weight are determined, and the weight of ash-free matter, an estimate of organic weight per unit volume of the water sampled, is calculated.

3. Interferences

Suspended materials in the water may interfere with sample collection. Inorganic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry and ash weights. Nonliving organic matter, as well as living plant and bacteria material, in the sample will cause erroneously large dry and ash-free weights.

4. Apparatus

Methods and equipment for the collection of zooplankton for biomass determination have been described in the "Collection" subsection of the "Zooplankton" section and are presented in more detail in Tranter and Fraser (1968), Schwoerbel (1970), Steedman (1976), Wetzel and Likens (1979), and American Public Health Association and others (1985). Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.2 Beaker, 250-mL capacity, for use as a mixing vessel for zooplankton samples.

4.3 Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler that has 202-µm mesh netting. An impeller at the net opening registers the volume of water filtered through the net. The Clarke-Bumpus plankton sampler is used most often for horizontal tows, but it also may be used for vertical tows (fig. 17B).

4.4 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.5 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.6 Forceps, stainless steel, smooth tip, or tongs.

4.7 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.8 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.9 Nylon monofilament screen cloth, 202-µm (or appropriate size for collecting microzooplankton) mesh opening.

4.10 Piston or Hensen-Stempel pipet, 4-mm diameter or 5-mL capacity, for obtaining subsamples from zooplankton samples.

4.11 Plankton nets, Wisconsin-type, open, or Birge-type, closing. The closing plankton nets have greater sampling flexibility in deep-water bodies because they can be closed at any selected depth (fig. 17A).

4.12 Plankton trap (Juday type), a 10-L closing box, attached plankton bucket (202-µm mesh openings or appropriate size for collecting microzooplankton), and messenger closing (fig. 17C), or transparent Plexiglas type that does not require messenger closing [Schindler-Patalas type (fig. 17D)].

4.13 Porcelain crucibles.

4.14 Sample containers, glass or plastic bottles, vials, or sealable plastic bags. However, bags are subject to leakage during prolonged storage.

4.15 Sampling tube or water core, a weighted thin-walled rubber or plastic tube that has a closing device for collecting a relatively large vertical column of water and its associated zooplankton (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971, p. 4).

4.16 Spatula, for stirring samples.

4.17 Water pump, and attached rubber or plastic hose. Water is pumped through a net that has a mesh size of 202 µm to retain the zooplankton (Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, p. 48).

4.18 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Dry ice, for freezing zooplankton samples onsite for transport back to the laboratory.

6. Analysis

Detailed information about various biomass-determination methods are presented by Beers (1976) and Ruttner-Kolisko (1977). Biomass determination by gravimetric methods is presented in the following paragraphs. Determinations need to be made on replicate samples when available or at least two subsamples if only one sample is available.

6.1 Place the zooplankton sample in a graduated cylinder, and if necessary, add distilled water to make up to a known volume. Pour the suspension into a beaker. Stir the contents using a spatula to ensure random distribution of the zooplankton.

6.2 Obtain the tare weight of a crucible that has been heated at 500 °C for 20 minutes and cooled to room temperature in a desiccator.

6.3 Place a known volume, using a large Hensen-Stempel pipet or equivalent, of the zooplankton suspension into the tared crucible and dry to a constant weight in an oven at a temperature no higher than 105 °C. Cool the crucibles containing dried zooplankton to room temperature in a desiccator before weighing. Weigh as rapidly as possible to decrease moisture uptake by the dry residue. Use these values to calculate dry weight.

6.4 Place the crucible containing the dried residue in a muffle furnace at 500 °C for 1 hour. Cool to room temperature.

6.5 Moisten the ash using distilled water and again ovendry at 105 °C to a constant weight as in 6.3. Use these weight values to calculate ash weight.

7. Calculations

7.1 Entire sample used:

$$\text{Dry weight of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter)} = \frac{\text{Dry weight of residue and crucible (grams) - tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Volume of water sample (liters)}} \times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{L}}{\text{Cubic meters}}.$$

7.2 If subsample used:

$$\text{Dry weight of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter)} = \frac{\left(\text{Dry weight of residue and crucible and subsample residue (grams) - tare weight of crucible (grams)}\right) \times \frac{\text{Volume of suspension (liters)}}{\text{Volume of subsample (liters)}}}{\text{Volume of water sample (liters)}} \times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{L}}{\text{Cubic meters}}.$$

7.3 Ash weight of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Ash weight of residue and crucible (grams) - tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Volume of water sample (liters)}}$$

$$\times \frac{1{,}000\ \text{L}}{\text{Cubic meters}}$$

7.4 Ash-free, or organic weight, of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter) = dry weight of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter) - ash weight of zooplankton (grams per cubic meter).

8. Reporting of results

Report biomass of zooplankton to two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Beers, J. R., 1976, Determination of zooplankton biomass, in Steedman, H. F., ed., Zooplankton fixation and preservation: Paris, The UNESCO Press, p. 37-84.

Committee on Oceanography, Biological Methods Panel, 1969, Recommended procedures for measuring the productivity of plankton standing crop and related oceanographic properties: Washington, D.C., National Academy of Sciences, 59 p.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Ruttner-Kolisko, A., 1977, Suggestions for biomass calculation of plankton rotifers: Ergebnisse der Limnologie, v. 8, p. 71-76.

Schwoerbel, Jürgen., 1970, Methods of hydrobiology (freshwater biology): Oxford, London, and Toronto, Pergamon Press, Ltd., 200 p.

Steedman, H. F., ed., 1976, Zooplankton fixation and preservation: Paris, The UNESCO Press, 350 p.

Tranter, D. J., and Fraser, J. H., eds., 1968, Zooplankton sampling: Paris, The UNESCO Press, 174 p.

Wetzel, R. G., and Likens, G. E., 1979, Limnological analyses: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 357 p.

SESTON (Total Suspended Matter)

Introduction

The weight of suspended matter in water (seston) is an important measurement in ecological studies. For example, this value has been shown to correlate with optical properties (Jerlov, 1968) and with temporal and spatial changes in aquatic environments (Maciolek and Tunzi, 1968; Moss, 1970; Reed and Reed, 1970). For some analyses, the sample may be prefiltered through a 150- to 350-μm mesh to eliminate large particles before filtration. The particulate residue remaining in the sample after sieving is designated microseston.

Collection

The sample-collection method will be determined by the study objectives. In lakes, reservoirs, deep rivers, and estuaries, seston abundance may vary transversely and with depth (Patten and others, 1966). To collect a sample of the seston at a particular depth, use a water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type (fig. 11). To collect a sample representative of the entire flow of a stream, use a depth-integrating sampler (Guy and Norman, 1970; Goerlitz and Brown, 1972). For small streams, a depth-integrated sample or a point sample at a single transverse position located at the centroid of flow may be adequate. Study design, collection, and sampling statistics for streams, rivers, and lakes are described in Federal Working Group on Pest Management (1974).

Seston samples need to be filtered immediately after collection. Record the mesh size of prefilter, if used. Record the volume of water filtered. The filters need to be thoroughly dried or stored in tightly closed plastic petri dishes at 1 to 4 °C (do not freeze) until ovendried. Samples that cannot be filtered without delay need to be preserved using 40 mg mercury per liter. Preservation will stabilize the seston content of samples for at least 8 days. However, the results of analyses of preserved samples are not necessarily the same as those obtained by immediate filtration.

The method described in this chapter is the glass-fiber filter adaptation by Strickland and Parsons (1968) of the method developed by Banse and others (1963).

References Cited

Banse, Karl, Falls, C. P., and Hobson, L. A., 1963, A gravimetric method for determining suspended matter in sea water using millipore filters: Deep-Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts, v. 10, p. 639-642.

Federal Working Group on Pest Management, 1974, Guidelines on sampling and statistical methodologies for ambient pesticide monitoring: Washington, D.C., 59 p.

Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Jerlov, N. G., 1968, Optical oceanography: New York, American Elsevier Publishing Co., 194 p.

Maciolek, J. A., and Tunzi, M. G., 1968, Microseston dynamics in a simple Sierra Nevada lake-stream system: Ecology, v. 49, p. 60-75.

Moss, Brian, 1970, Seston composition in two freshwater pools: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 15, no. 4, p. 504-513.

Patten, B. C., Young, D. K., and Roberts, M. H., Jr., 1966, Vertical distribution and sinking characteristics of seston in the lower York River, Virginia: Chesapeake Science, v. 7, p. 20-29.

Reed, D. F., and Reed, E. B., 1970, Estimates of seston crops by filtration with glass fiber discs: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 27, p. 180-185.

Strickland, J. D. H., and Parsons, T. R., 1968, A practical handbook of seawater analysis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 167, 311 p.

Glass-Fiber Filter Method
(B-3401-85)

Parameters and Codes:
Seston, dry weight (mg/L): 71100
Seston, ash weight (mg/L): 71101

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

A known volume of water is prefiltered through a tared glass-fiber filter to remove the particulate matter. The increase in weight of the filter after drying at 105 °C is a measure of the dry weight of particulate matter in the sample. After ashing the residue at 500 °C, the difference between dry weight and ash weight is the weight of particulate organic matter in the sample.

3. Interferences

Although the method generally is free from interferences, bottles and sampling equipment need to be clean, and samples, filters, and funnels need to be protected from dust. Filtration needs to be at decreased pressure to avoid rupture and loss of cell contents of fragile organisms. Saline samples need to have the salts washed from the filter residues to prevent erroneous weight values.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aluminum foil, laboratory grade.

4.2 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.3 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.4 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.5 Filter flask, 1 L or 2 L. For onsite use, a polypropylene flask is appropriate.

4.6 Filter funnel, vacuum, 1.2-L capacity, stainless steel.

4.7 Forceps, stainless steel, smooth tip.

4.8 Glass filters, 47-mm diameter disks. For best results, all filters for a series of samples, including control filters, need to be from the same box and need to have a tare weight of 70- to 100-mg (±10 mg) weights.

4.9 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.10 Manostat that contains mercury and calibration equipment to regulate the filtration suction at not more than 300 to 350 mm of mercury when filtering using an aspirator or an electric vacuum pump.

4.11 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.12 Plastic petri dishes and covers for filter storage.

4.13 Sample containers, plastic bottles, 1- to 5-L capacity.

4.14 Vacuum pump, water-aspirator pump or an electric vacuum pump for laboratory use; a hand-operated vacuum pump and gauge for onsite use.

4.15 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water. Filter if in doubt about whether water is particle free.

5.2 Mercuric chloride solution, 1 mL = 40 mg mercury (Hg^{2+}). Dissolve 55 g mercuric chloride ($HgCl_2$) in distilled water and dilute to 1 L.

6. Analysis

6.1 Arrange the required number of glass filters (do not overlap) on the shiny side of aluminum foil and heat in a muffle furnace at 450 to 500 °C for 30 minutes. Do not allow the temperature to exceed 500 °C. This preparation hardens the filters and removes any organic matter. About 20 filters is a convenient number with which to work.

6.2 Use at least 10 percent of the filters as controls. For large batches, use every 10th filter as a control; for small batches, use a filter at the beginning and one at the end as controls. The treatment of control filters is identical to that of the test filters except that no water is filtered through them.

6.3 Cool and transfer all filters, including the controls, to a shallow container of distilled water for 5 minutes. Use about 100 mL water for each filter. Handle the filters very carefully using clean, smooth-tip forceps to avoid fraying the filters.

6.4 Using the forceps, transfer the filters to the shiny side of the aluminum foil after gently shaking off excess water. Dry the filters in an oven at 105 °C for 30 minutes. Cool to room temperature in a desiccator (Note 1).

Note 1: Because of the difficulty of marking glass filters, the individual filters should be accounted for throughout the remaining steps. The filters should be placed on the aluminum foil in a definite sequence and, whenever possible, each filter should be kept in a numbered plastic petri dish.

6.5 Weigh each filter to the nearest 0.1 mg as rapidly as possible, and record this initial (tare) weight value. Close the desiccator tightly after each removal. Store the tared filters in numbered plastic petri dishes until needed.

6.6 When a sample is to be filtered, place a tared filter, wrinkled surface upward, on a filter funnel. A small slip of aluminum foil under the edge of the filter facilitates removal of the wet filters.

6.7 When vacuum is applied, wet the filter using distilled water to seat the disk on the filter funnel.

6.8 Measure out a suitable quantity of thoroughly mixed sample into a graduated cylinder. Complete mixing of the sample is essential prior to measuring. Pour the sample into the filter funnel and filter using a manostat or other suitable method to keep vacuum to 300 to 350 mm mercury (about 6 psi).

6.9 Maintaining vacuum, wash the funnel and filter three times using 5- to 10-mL volumes of distilled water, allowing the filter to suck "dry" between each wash.

6.10 Disconnect the vacuum and, using smooth-tip forceps, place the wet filter on the shiny side of aluminum foil. Store the filters at 1 to 4 °C in numbered petri dishes at this stage, if necessary.

6.11 Dry the filters in an oven at 105 °C for 1 hour. Include at least two control filters from 6.5 in this drying step for each batch of sample filters.

6.12 Place the filters in a desiccator, cool, and reweigh each filter rapidly to the nearest 0.1 mg as in 6.5. Include the control filters from 6.11. Use these values to calculate dry weight.

6.13 Again place the filters that have dried residue and the control filters on the shiny side of aluminum foil and heat in a muffle furnace at 500 °C to constant weight. Heat at least 30 minutes, but some samples may require longer times. Cool and rewet the filters using distilled water to restore the water of hydration of clays and other minerals that may have been lost.

6.14 Place the filters in a desiccator and reweigh each filter rapidly to the nearest 0.1 mg as in 6.5. Include the control filters from 6.13. These values are used to calculate ash weight.

7. Calculations

7.1 Dry weight of seston (milligrams per liter)

$$= \frac{\text{Dry weight of filter and residue (milligrams)} - \text{tare weight of filter (milligrams)}}{\text{Volume of water sample (liters)} - \text{blank correction (milligrams)},}$$

where blank correction (milligrams) = mean weight of control filters, in milligrams (from 6.12) - mean weight of control filters, in milligrams (from 6.5). The blank correction value may be positive or negative but should not exceed about 0.5 mg.

7.2 Ash weight of seston (milligrams per liter)

$$= \frac{\text{Ash weight of filter and residue (milligrams)} - \text{tare weight of filter (milligrams)}}{\text{Volume of water sample (liters)} - \text{blank correction (milligrams)},}$$

where blank correction (milligrams) = mean weight of control filters, in milligrams (from 6.14) - mean weight of control filters, in milligrams (from 6.5). The blank correction value may be positive or negative but should not exceed about 0.5 mg.

7.3 Ash-free or organic weight of seston (milligrams per liter) = dry weight of seston (milligrams per liter) - ash weight of seston (milligrams per liter).

8. Reporting of results

Report seston as follows: less than 1 mg/L, one significant figure; 1 mg/L or greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

PERIPHYTON

Introduction

Periphyton literally refers to aquatic plants growing around (on) solid surfaces. European investigators originated the term about 1924 to describe organisms growing on artificial substrates in water (Cooke, 1956). Recently, the term "periphyton" has been extended to include the entire community of micro-organisms that live attached to or on solid submerged surfaces, generally above the depth of light extinction (Young, 1945; Sladecek and Sladeckova, 1964; Wetzel, 1964). The term encompasses not only algae but associated bacteria, fungi, protozoans, rotifers, and other small organisms. Although some of the latter are more accurately benthos, they are invariably sampled as part of the community by most methods. Thus, the methods of periphyton estimation, which follow, include both autotrophic and heterotrophic components of the periphyton unless otherwise stated. Periphyton is synonymous with the term "Aufwuchs," as described by Ruttner (1963): "* * * all those organisms that are firmly attached to a substratum but do not penetrate into it." The complexity of the periphyton community has spawned an equally complex terminology based on substrate classification, and the reader is referred to Weitzel (1979) for a more complete account.

Collection

Most analyses of the periphyton community have been adopted from long-established methods of phytoplankton analyses. The attached benthic nature of periphyton, however, presents special collection problems that directly affect the success of various estimates. In fact, problems related to sampling are the principal sources of error in most methods. Major sampling problems include adherence of the periphyton to mineral substrates and the patchiness of their distribution, particularly in lotic systems. Gravel substrates, even those which seem smooth and uniform, actually have a complex and irregular texture. Methods have been developed for collecting periphyton from natural substrates (Douglas, 1958; Ertl, 1971; Stockner and Armstrong, 1971), which usually are restricted to taxonomic studies or community-structure analysis. However, biomass and production estimates are derived more commonly from artificial substrates (Nielson, 1953; Grzenda and Brehmer, 1960; Maciolek and Kennedy, 1964; Neal and others, 1967; Peters and others, 1968; Tilley and Haushild, 1975a, b; Busch, 1978; Clark and others, 1979; Hoffman and Horne, 1980). The decision to use natural or artificial substrates should be considered carefully based on the study objectives developed prior to beginning onsite investigations.

Careful sampling of natural substrates is likely to yield more complete information on species composition because irregularities of the microhabitat will be incorporated into the sample. Inability to remove tissue efficiently from natural substrates, however, may produce a large underestimate of biomass. Artificial substrates enable more efficient collecting of a large number of samples and partially overcome the problem of adherence. Lack of microhabitat diversity, however, may affect patterns of colonization and biomass accumulation. Artificial substrates standardize the physical environment in studies where surface uniformity is an important consideration.

Once the decision about substrate type has been made, the inherent patchiness of periphyton distribution still needs to be considered. Because periphyton colonization is affected by numerous variables (light, depth, current velocity, and substrate texture), variability on natural and artificial substrates generally is large. Tilley and Haushild (1975a,b) reported that 21 glass microscope slides exposed for 2 weeks at a single site in the Duwamish River, Wash., had chlorophyll concentrations ranging from 1.33 to 2.81 mg/m^2 and a mean of 1.97 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 0.74 mg/m^2. Twenty-two slides exposed for 3 weeks at a single site in the Duwamish River had chlorophyll concentrations ranging from 1.89 to 4.86 mg/m^2 and a mean of 3.44 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 1.44 mg/m^2. Similarly, Pryfogle and Lowe (1979) reported differences in periphyton cell counts as large as an order of magnitude between adjacent stones in Tymochtee Creek, Ohio.

Effort always should be made to minimize possible variance by sampling habitats that are representative of the site and needs to include depth, current velocity, and canopy cover. If specific habitats are selected for comparative studies (pools, riffles), care should be taken to duplicate this habitat type at all sites, and the habitat type should be reported as well as the results. Unless care is taken to standardize the habitat, the results will indicate differences in substrate placement and collection, rather than differences in water quality.

Sufficient colonization time is another important consideration, especially for studies assessing species composition, because incubated substrates may undergo algal succession (Busch, 1978). If there is sufficient colonization time, species composition on artificial substrates generally is similar to the natural community (Patrick and others, 1954; Castenholz, 1960; Weitzel and others, 1979; Hoffman and Horne, 1980), but large differences in biomass or chlorophyll concentrations may be measured (Grzenda and Brehmer, 1960; Castenholz, 1961; Sladeckova, 1962; Pieczynska and Spodniewska, 1963; Weitzel, 1979). Proper colonization time will depend on season, water temperature, light, and nutrient availability, and other factors. Neal and others (1967) reported that maximum accumulation of periphyton biomass on polyethylene strips occurred in about 2 weeks. Patrick and others (1954) reported a 2-week colonization period also maximized the number of species. For most circumstances, colonization period should be at least 14 days, but this will vary and must be determined for each season and water type.

Other mechanisms for overcoming the problems of patchiness are to increase the number of samples or to have larger composite samples representing a diversity of habitats at a single site. Vandalism is a common problem, so substrates need to be placed away from frequently visited areas.

Sampling from Natural Substrates

Natural submerged substrates commonly contain periphyton, and a known area can be sampled quantitatively. If the area is unknown, periphyton scraped from natural substrates may be used for species identification and for determination of relative abundance. Several devices for removing periphyton from a known area of natural substrates are shown in figure 18. The instrument used by Douglas (1958) consists of a broad-necked polyethylene bottle that has the bottom removed (fig. 18A). The neck of the bottle is held tightly against the surface to be sampled, and the periphyton inside the enclosed area is dislodged from the substrate using a stiff nylon brush. The loose periphyton is removed from the bottle using a pipet. Ertl's (1971) device consists of two concentric metal or plastic cylinders separated by spacers (fig. 18B). The space between the cylinders is filled with modeling clay, and the sampler is pressed firmly against the substrate to be sampled. Using a blunt stick or metal rod, the clay is forced down onto the substrate to isolate the sampling area of the inner circle. The periphyton within the inner circle is dislodged using a stiff brush and removed using a pipet. Stockner and Armstrong (1971) sampled periphyton using a plastic hypodermic syringe that has a toothbrush attached to the end of the syringe piston (fig. 18C). The barrel of the syringe is held tightly against the substrate, and the piston is pushed in until the brush contacts the periphyton. The piston then is rotated several times to dislodge the periphyton and then is withdrawn pulling the periphyton up with it. A glass plate is placed immediately under the end of the barrel and the syringe inverted. Four small holes at the base of the syringe enable free movement of water when procuring the sample.

Sampling from Artificial Substrates

Suitable artificial substrates are attached to supports and placed in a stream or lake (figs. 19, 20). The substrates must be submerged but may be near the surface or at any appropriate depth. In lakes, substrates commonly are suspended at several depths (fig. 19A, B, C) to provide a more realistic representation of the periphyton community. Substrates should be oriented similarly at all sites because settling of organic and inorganic detritus may increase depending on the orientation of the substrate (Castenholz, 1960; Liaw and MacCrimmon, 1978). Vertical orientation is preferred because it decreases the settling problem. In lakes and streams, substrates may be attached to natural objects, such as submerged trees, stumps (fig. 19D), logs or boulders, or they may be attached to stakes driven into the bottom (fig. 20A). Floating samplers also may be used (fig. 20B), but care should be taken to allow for overestimation when water levels vary. The sampler should be secured so it will not drift into any obstruction or become beached. In extremely shallow streams, it may be necessary to construct a weir to guarantee sufficient water to float the sampler. If such a weir is constructed, data from the sample should be compared only with data obtained from comparably placed samplers. A floating sampler should not be used for any area in which there is intermittent flow for any period during the exposure time.

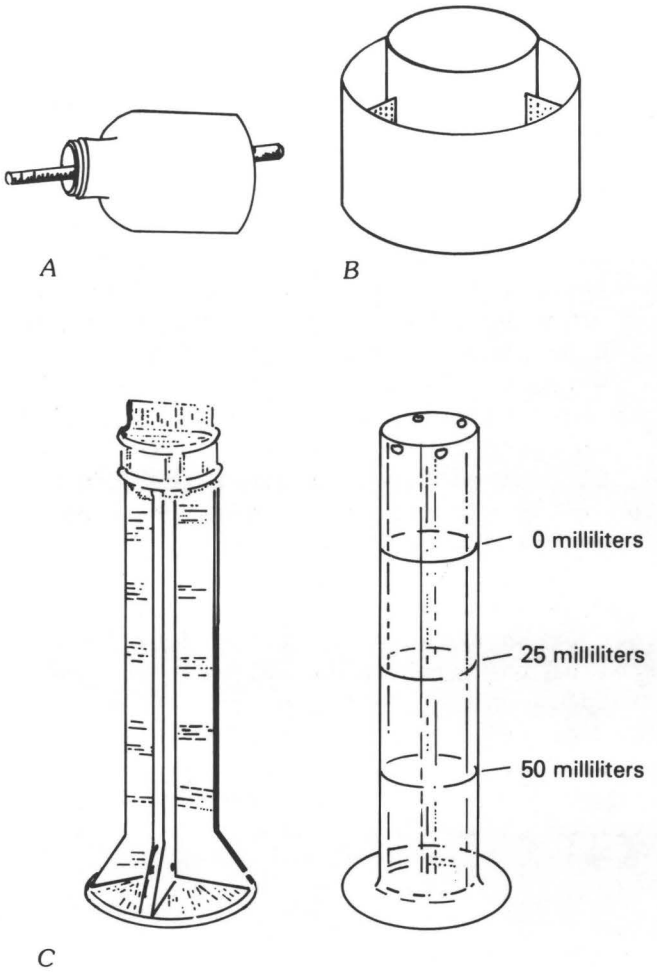


Figure 18.--Devices for collecting periphyton from natural substrates: (A) Brush and polyethylene-bottle device (modified from Douglas, 1958, p. 297; reproduced by permission of Duke University Press, Durham, N.C.). (B) Plastic or metal cylinder device (redrawn from Ertl, 1971, p. 576). (C) Plastic hypodermic syringe device (modified from Stockner and Armstrong, 1971, p. 218).

The artificial substrates should be placed in lighting conditions that typify the streams, rivers, or lakes being studied. For example, if most of the stream is shaded, an area that receives a great deal of sunlight should not be selected as being representative. In general, substrates collected from similar lighting conditions should be compared; but, depending on the study objective, this is not a requirement.

To ensure a continuous period of uniform colonization time of the artificial substrate, the substrate should be examined, periodically if possible, for any evidence of fouling or mechanical damage. If the substrate has been fouled or beached, the data for that sampling period should not be compared with data from any other substrate that has free, continuous, and uninterrupted exposure to the aquatic environment.

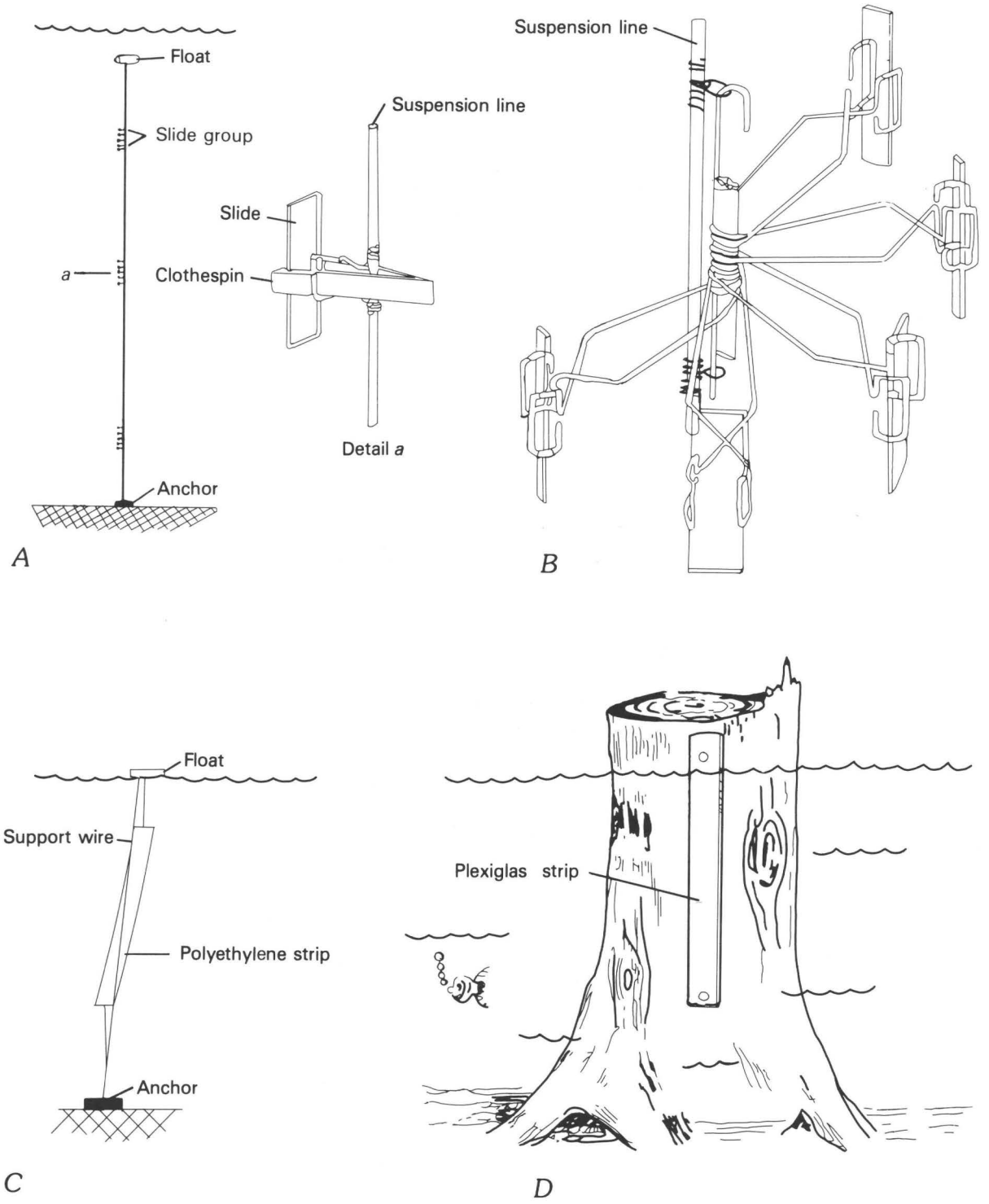
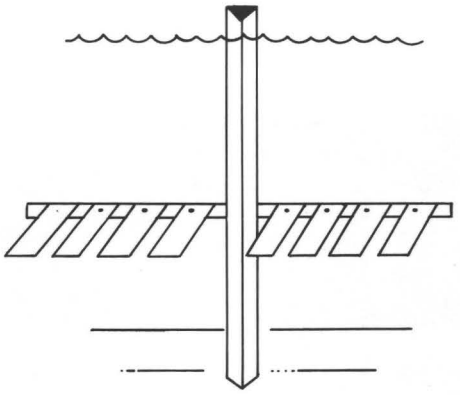
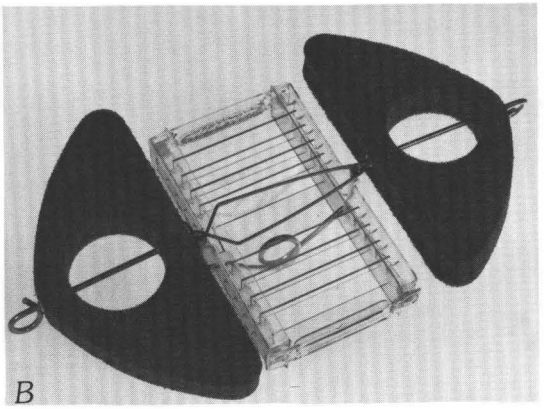


Figure 19.--Artificial-substrate sampling devices for periphyton: (A) Microscope slide-suspension device made from spring clothespins (from Nielson, 1953, p. 99). (B) Microscope slide-suspension device made from test-tube clamps (from Maciolek and Kennedy, 1964). (C) Polyethylene strip device. (D) Plexiglas strip attached to submerged object.



A



B

Figure 20.--Artificial-substrate sampling devices for periphyton: (A) Plexiglas plates attached to support (from Peters and others, 1968, p. 12). (B) Floating sampler, Periphytometer (photograph courtesy of Design Alliance, Inc., Cincinnati, Ohio).

The length of time required for colonization of the substrates by periphyton will depend on other environmental factors as well as water quality. Colonization times will vary and must be determined for each season and water type. The colonization period should be sufficiently long to enable the development of a microbial community large enough for measurement and, at the same time, avoid so much growth that sloughing would occur. Test samplers can be placed prior to the actual monitoring period to determine the most desirable colonization time for the prevailing (that is, seasonal and environmental) conditions. Suggested colonization periods for fresh to brackish water, mesotrophic to eutrophic, within the thermal range of 15 to 35 °C, is 14 days. Colonization periods during low productivity (that is, lack of nutrients or low temperature) or very high productivity may, by experience, be adjusted for the onsite conditions. Colonization periods should be identical for all sites in the entire study area.

After sufficient colonization of periphyton, indicated by visible green or brown growth, remove artificial substrates from the water. Periphyton may be scraped from the substrate onsite or in the laboratory, using razor blades, glass slides, or stiff brushes.

If the sample is to be examined within 2 or 3 hours after collection, no special treatment is necessary. A periphyton sample may be maintained at 3 to 4 °C for 24 hours, but for extended storage prior to identification and enumeration, preserve as follows: To each 100 mL of water and sample, add about 3 mL 40-percent formaldehyde solution (100 percent formalin), 0.5 mL 20-percent detergent solution, and 5 to 6 drops cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) solution (21 g $CuSO_4$ in 100 mL distilled water). This preservative maintains cell coloration and is effective indefinitely.

Many biologists consider Lugol's solution plus acetic acid to be the best algal preservative. The solution is prepared by dissolving 10 g iodine crystals and 20 g potassium iodide in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use (Vollenweider, 1974). Store in an amber glass bottle. Lugol's solution is effective for at least 1 year (Weber, 1968); it facilitates sedimentation of cells and maintains fragile cell structures, such as flagella. If Lugol's solution is used as the preservative, add 1 mL of solution to each 100 mL of water that has been added to the scraped periphyton sample. Store preserved samples in the dark, preferably in amber glass bottles.

For periphyton biomass determinations, freeze the sample if ovendrying cannot be started immediately. Storage should not exceed 2 weeks.

References Cited

Busch, David, 1978, Successional changes associated with benthic assemblages in experimental streams: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 91 p.

Castenholz, R. W., 1960, Seasonal changes in the attached algae of freshwater and saline lakes in the Lower Grand Coulee, Washington: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 1, p. 1-28.

_____ 1961, An evaluation of a submerged glass method for estimating production of attached algae: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 14, p. 155-159.

Clark, J. R., Dickson, K. L., and Cairns, John, Jr., 1979, Estimating Aufwuchs biomass, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 116-141.

Cooke, W. B., 1956, Colonization of artificial bare areas by micro-organisms: Botanical Review, v. 22, p. 613-638.

Douglas, Barbara, 1958, The ecology of the attached diatoms and other algae in a small stony stream: Ecology, v. 46, p. 295-322.

Ertl, Milan, 1971, A quantitative method of sampling periphyton from rough substrates: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 3, p. 576-577.

Grzenda, A. F., and Brehmer, M. L., 1960, A quantitative method for the collection and measurement of stream periphyton: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 2, p. 190-194.

Hoffman, R. W., and Horne, A. J., 1980, On site flume studies for the assessment of effluent impacts on stream Aufwuchs communities, in Giesy, J. P., Jr., ed., Microcosms in ecological research: Ecological Symposium, 6th, Savannah, Ga., 1978, Proceedings: Augusta, Ga., DOE Symposium Series, v. 52, p. 610-624.

Liaw, W., and MacCrimmon, H., 1978, Assessing changes in biomass of river bed periphyton: International Revve Gesellshaff Hydrobiolie, v. 63, no. 2, p. 155-171.

Maciolek, J. A., and Kennedy, H. D., 1964, Spatial variation in periphyton production in a mountain lake at fall overturn: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 15, p. 386-393.

Neal, E. C., Patten, B. C., and DePoe, C. E., 1967, Periphyton growth on artificial substrates in a radioactively contaminated lake: Ecology, v. 48, p. 918-924.

Nielson, R. S., 1953, Apparatus and methods for the collection of attached materials in lakes: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 15, p. 87-89.

Patrick, Ruth, Holm, M. H., and Wallace, J. H., 1954, A new method for determining the pattern of diatom flora: Notulae Naturae of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia 259, 12 p.

Peters, J. C., Ball, R. C., and Kevern, N. R., 1968, An evaluation of artificial substrates for measuring periphyton production: Michigan State University Technical Report 1, Red Cedar River Series, 70 p.

Pieczynska, E., and Spodniewska, I., 1963, Occurrence and colonization of periphyton organisms in accordance with the type of substrate: Ekologia Polska, Seria A., v. 11, p. 533-545.

Pryfogle, P. A., and Lowe, R. L., 1979, Sampling and interpretation of epilithic lotic diatom communities, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 77-89.

Ruttner, Franz, 1963, Fundamentals of limnology: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 295 p.

Sladecek, Vladimir, and Sladeckova, Alena, 1964, Determination of periphyton production by means of the glass slide method: Hydrobiologia, v. 23, no. 1, p. 125-158.

Sladeckova, Alena, 1962, Limnological investigation methods for the periphyton (Aufwuchs) community: Botanical Review, v. 28, p. 286-350.

Stockner, J. G., and Armstrong, F. A. J., 1971, Periphyton of the experimental lakes area, northwestern Ontario: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 215-229.

Tilley, L. J., and Haushild, W. L., 1975a, Net primary productivity of periphytic algae in the intertidal zone, Duwamish River estuary, Washington: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 3, no. 3, p. 253-259.

_____ 1975b, Use of productivity of periphyton to estimate water quality: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 47, no. 8, p. 2157-2171.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Weber, C. I., 1968, The preservation of phytoplankton grab samples: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society , v. 87, p. 70-71.

Weitzel, R. L., 1979, Periphyton measurements and applications, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 1-33.

Weitzel, R. L., Sanocki, S. L., and Holecek, H., 1979, Sample replication of periphyton collected from artificial substrates, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 91-115.

Wetzel, R. G., 1964, A comparative study of the primary productivity of higher aquatic plants, periphyton and phytoplankton in a large, shallow lake: Internationale Revue de Gestamten Hydrobiologie v. 49, p. 1-61.

Young, D. W., 1945, A limnological investigation of periphyton in Douglas Lake, Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 64, p. 1-20.

Sedgwick-Rafter Method
(B-3501-85)

Parameter and Code:
Periphyton, total (cells/mm^2): 70945

1. Applications

The method quantifies the plant (autotrophic) part of the periphyton. It is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Samples of the periphyton community are collected, preserved, and examined microscopically for types and numbers of algae. The periphyton samples may be from natural or artificial substrates, but the dimensions of the sample area must be known.

3. Interferences

3.1 Suspended or deposited sediment may interfere with collection procedures and with microscopic examination.

3.2 Strong adherence of periphyton to natural and artificial substrates may result in an underestimate of cell numbers per unit area.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates, glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a sample of periphyton from natural substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.3 Microscope, conventional light microscope, or equivalent. Bright field condensor and objectives are required, and phase contrast is desirable, particularly for taxonomic examination. A series of objectives needs to be available (10X, 20X, and 40X), and 100X oil-immersion phase-contrast objectives need to be available for examination of ultraplankton. The microscope needs to be equipped with a movable mechanical stage that has vernier scales.

4.4 Pipet, transfer, 1 mL, large bore.

4.5 Sample containers, glass or plastic, suitable for the types and sizes of samples. Sturdy plastic bags are useful containers for artificial substrates or for pieces of natural substrate.

4.6 Scraping devices, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides are useful for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.7 Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell, 50×20×1 mm, and cover glass.

4.8 Whipple disc, placed in one ocular of the microscope.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL of cupric sulfate solution.

5.5 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use; store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

6. Analysis

6.1 Remove periphyton from selected substrates for a representative sample. Document the type of habitat sampled.

6.2 Adjust the scraped periphyton sample to some convenient volume of suspension, such as 50 or 100±5 mL by adding preservative solution. If used to compare community composition between bodies of water or stream reaches, habitat type and substrate should be as identical as possible.

6.3 Place the Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell on a flat surface, and place the cover glass diagonally across the cell. Thoroughly mix the sample, remove a 1-mL aliquot using a large-bore pipet, and transfer the aliquot to the Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell. As the counting cell fills, the cover glass often rotates slowly and covers the inner part of the cell, but the cover glass must not float above the rim of the cell. Allow the counting cell to stand for 15 to 20 minutes until organisms settle.

6.4 Carefully place the Sedgwick-Rafter counting cell on the mechanical stage of a calibrated microscope. Because the method assumes a homogeneous distribution of periphyton, check quickly using low power for obviously uneven

distributions. If distribution appears reasonably uniform at 200X magnification, count the total number of algal cells enclosed by the Whipple disc. Consider any cell in the grid or touching two intersecting borders of the grid as being enclosed by the grid, but do not count those cells touching the opposite borders. Count and record the total number of cells in each of 20 random fields. When a 10X eyepiece and 20X objective are used, assume the total of the Whipple grid to be 0.5 mm on a side.

6.5 Some periphyton, particularly some blue-green algae, may not settle but, instead, may rise to the surface at the underside of the cover glass. When counting random fields, therefore, enumerate and record the total number of cells in the vertical column within the grid of the Whipple disc. Tabulate the number and lengths of trichomes of blue-green algae in each grid and determine the average number of cells per unit length of trichome. Consider empty diatom frustules as nonliving and do not include in calculations. Count frustules containing any part of a protoplast as having been living at the time of collection.

7. Calculations

7.1 Calibration factor = $$\frac{1{,}000 \text{ mm}^2}{\text{Area of Whipple grid at 200X magnification (square millimeters)}}$$.

7.2 Periphyton cells per milliliter of suspended scraping

$$= \frac{\text{Total cell count} \times \text{calibration factor}}{\text{Number of random fields x 1 mL}}$$.

7.3 Total periphyton cells per square millimeter of surface

$$= \frac{\text{Cells per milliliter of suspended scraping} \times \text{total volume of scrapings (millilters)}}{\text{Area of scraped surface (square millimeters)}}$$.

8. Reporting of results

Report periphyton density to two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Additional Reading

McAlice, B. J., 1971, Phytoplankton sampling with the Sedgwick-Rafter cell: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 1, p. 19-28.

Gravimetric Method for Biomass
(B-3520-85)

Parameters and Codes:
Periphyton, biomass, dry weight, total (g/m^2): 00573
Periphyton, biomass, ash weight (g/m^2): 00572

Gravimetric measurements are instantaneous; that is, they measure biomass at a moment in time in a community that is constantly changing. Because of large variability in biomass within a site, and because of control of periphyton growth by numerous physical (light, current velocity, storm frequency), chemical (nutrient regime), and biological (grazing) factors, comparisons between sites are impossible using casual sampling. To be used successfully, the gravimetric method should be employed with a specific objective in mind. To make comparisons between sites, samples should be collected from environments as nearly identical as possible. Application, as a mechanism to approximate the rate of biomass accumulation (net periphyton community productivity), is more valuable than a single estimate of biomass. The latter determination generally is done by incubating clean natural or artificial substrates in as nearly identical conditions as possible, and sampling on several dates for 2 to 4 weeks, or by incubating fresh substrates for specific periods (2-4 weeks) during different seasons (Castenholz, 1960; Sladecek and Sladeckova, 1964; Lyford and Gregory, 1975; Liaw and MacCrimmon, 1978; Rodgers and others, 1979). The equal and simultaneous time periods should be reported with the data.

1. Applications

The method quantifies all organic mass, autotrophic and heterotrophic, living and dead, associated with the periphyton community. Gravimetric determinations are suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Samples of the periphyton community are collected from known areas of natural or artificial substrates. The dry weight and ash weight are determined.

3. Interferences

3.1 Inorganic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry and ash weights.

3.2 Dead periphyton and organic detritus that settles on the substrate will cause an overestimate of living biomass.

3.3 Natural variability generally is large for biomass and may cause a problem when the method is used for comparison.

3.4 When used as an index of production of the net periphyton community, grazing can result in an underestimate, and detrital settling will result in an overestimate of production.

3.5 Colonization rates vary depending on orientation of substrates (horizontal or vertical) because orientation affects the settling of organic and inorganic detritus. Vertical orientation is preferred because it decreases the settling problem (Castenholz, 1960; Liaw and MacCrimmon, 1978).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates, glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.3 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a sample of periphyton from natural substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.4 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.5 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.6 Filtration apparatus, non-metallic, and has a vacuum.

4.7 Forceps, stainless steel, smooth tip, or tongs.

4.8 Glass filters, 47-mm diameter disks.

4.9 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.10 Porcelain crucibles.

4.11 Sample containers, glass or plastic, suitable for the types and sizes of samples. Sturdy plastic bags are useful containers for artificial substrates or for pieces of natural substrate. Do not use glass containers for samples to be frozen.

4.12 Scraping devices, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides are useful for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

5. Reagents

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

6. Analysis

6.1 Calculate the tare weight of a crucible containing a glass-fiber filter. Heat at 500 °C for about 20 minutes, cool to room temperature in a desiccator, and weigh to the nearest 0.1 mg.

6.2 Filter the water and the scrapings from the periphyton strip in the sample bottle through the tared glass-fiber filter. Place filter in crucible and dry at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool crucibles containing dried periphyton to room temperature in a desiccator before weighing. Weigh as rapidly as possible to decrease moisture uptake by the dried residue. Use these weight values to calculate dry weight.

6.3 Place the crucible containing the dried residue in a muffle furnace at 500 °C for 1 to 4 hours. Cool to room temperature.

6.4 Moisten the periphyton ash using distilled water and again ovendry at 105 °C to constant weight as described in 6.2. Use these weight values to calculate ash weight.

7. Calculations

7.1 Dry weight of periphyton (grams per square meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Dry weight of crucible and residue (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Area of scraped surface (square meters)}} .$$

7.2 Ash weight of periphyton (grams per square meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Ash weight of crucible and residue (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Area of scraped surface (square meters)}} .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report periphyton biomass to three significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Castenholz, R. W., 1960, Seasonal changes in the attached algae of freshwater and saline lakes in the Lower Grand Coulee, Washington: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 1, p. 1-28.

Liaw, W., and MacCrimmon, H., 1978, Assessing changes in biomass of riverbed periphyton: International Revue Gesellshaff Hydrobiolie, v. 63, no. 2, p. 155-171.

Lyford, J. H., and Gregory, S. V., 1975, The dynamics and structure of periphyton communities in three Cascade Mountain streams: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 19, p. 1610-1616.

Rodgers, J. H., Jr., Dickson, K. L., and Cairns, John, Jr., 1979, A review and analysis of some methods used to measure functional aspects of periphyton, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 142-167.

Sladecek, Vladimir, and Sladeckova, Alena, 1964, Determination of periphyton production by means of the glass slide method: Hydrobiologia, v. 23, no. 1, p. 125-158.

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Permanent-Slide Method for Periphytic Diatoms
(B-3540-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

This procedure enables preparation of permanent mounts using a minimum of time and equipment. Numerous alternative methods for clearing diatom frustules (cell walls) and mounting exist in the literature. Alternative methods for clearing include nitric acid digestion of tissue on the slide (Knudsen, 1966), sulfuric acid and potassium permanganate (Hasle and Fryxell, 1970), hydrochloric acid (HCl) (Cupp, 1943), and potassium permanganate and HCl (Hasle, 1978). Hydrogen peroxide and potassium permanganate (Von der Webb, 1953), hydrogen peroxide and ultraviolet light (Swift, 1967), and hydrogen peroxide after mild heating (Wong, 1975) also have been used for tissue digestion. The reader is referred to the original papers for the details of these procedures.

1. Applications

This qualitative method is suitable for all water. Advantages of the method are that a permanent mount is prepared, and clearing of the cells enhances observation of frustule detail. The method, therefore, is important in the taxonomic study of diatoms.

2. Summary of method

The diatoms in a sample are concentrated, the cells are cleared, and a permanent mount is prepared. The mount is examined microscopically, and the number of diatom taxa is calculated from strip counts.

3. Interferences

3.1 Inorganic particulate matter, including salt crystals, interferes with mount preparation but can be decreased by sample washing.

3.2 The method does not distinguish living from dead diatoms. At certain seasons, particularly during low flow, more than one-half the cells may be dead (Pryfogle and Lowe, 1979). As a result, permanent mounts may provide an inaccurate estimate of community composition.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates, glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 Balance, that has an automatic tare.

4.3 Centrifuge, either swing-out type or fixed-head cup type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, 15- to 50-mL conical 100-mL pear-shaped centrifuge tubes, and simple siphoning or suction device to remove excess fluid after centrifugation.

4.4 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a sample of periphyton from natural substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.5 Cover glasses, 18×18 or 22×22 mm, no. 1½, and microscope slides, glass, 76×25 mm.

4.6 Forceps, curved tip.

4.7 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.8 Hotplate, thermostatically controlled to 538 °C. It is convenient to have a second hotplate for operation at about 93 to 121 °C as described in 6.10.

4.9 Microscope, conventional light microscope, or equivalent. Bright field condensor and objectives are required, and phase contrast is desirable, particularly for taxonomic examination. A series of objectives needs to be available (10X, 20X, and 40X), and 100X phase-contrast oil-immersion objectives need to be available for examination of ultraplankton. The microscope needs to be equipped with a movable mechanical stage that has vernier scales.

4.10 Pipets, 1-mL or 10-mL capacity, sterile.

4.11 Sample containers, glass or plastic, suitable for the types and sizes of samples. Sturdy plastic bags are useful containers for artificial substrates or for pieces of natural substrates.

4.12 Scraping devices, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides are useful for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.13 Whipple disc, placed in one ocular of the microscope.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL cupric sulfate solution.

5.5 Immersion oil, Cargille's nondrying type A.

5.6 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use; store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

5.7 Mounting medium (table 13). Generally, mounting media should have a refractive index different than that of diatom frustules. Diatom frustules have a refractive index of approximately 1.15 (Reid, 1978).

6. Analysis

6.1 Remove the periphyton from the substrate using a suitable device.

6.2 By vigorous shaking, thoroughly disperse the periphyton in about 100 mL of preservative, or distilled water if working with unpreserved material.

6.3 If the sample contains great numbers of periphyton, as typically occurs in eutrophic water, dilute the sample. To dilute, thoroughly mix 50 mL sample with 50 mL distilled water (1:1 dilution) and proceed to 6.4. If microscopic examination reveals a concentration of periphyton still too numerous to count, thoroughly mix 50 mL 1:1 dilution with 50 mL distilled water (1:4 dilution). Make additional dilutions as appropriate.

6.4 If concentration is necessary, allow the sample to settle undisturbed in the sample container for 4 hours per centimeter of depth to be settled. After settling, weigh the sample container on an automatic tare balance.

6.5 Carefully siphon the supernatant to avoid disturbance of the settled material. Place sample container and remaining sample on balance and weigh. The decrease in weight (in grams) is equivalent to the number of milliliters of supernatant removed. Use the same method to obtain the volume of concentrate.

6.6 If the sample was collected from seawater or saline lakes, wash the periphyton, using distilled water, at least three times to ensure that the permanent mounts are not obscured by salt crystals. Add about 10 mL distilled water to the concentrate in the centrifuge tube, gently shake the tube to suspend the residue, fill the tube with distilled water, and centrifuge for 20 minutes. Decant the supernatant fluid and repeat the washing process two more times.

6.7 Place two or three drops of the concentrate on each of three or four cover glasses.

6.8 With the concentrate side up, place the cover glass on a hotplate and heat, slowly at first to prevent splattering, to about 538 °C (a higher temperature will melt diatom valves) for 30 minutes.

6.9 Remove cover glass from the hotplate and cool.

6.10 Place a drop of mounting medium (table 13) on a microscope slide and heat at about 93 to 121 °C for 3 to 4 minutes.

6.11 Invert the cover glass, concentrate side down, on the heated medium. Apply slight pressure to the cover glass (for example, with a pencil eraser) until visible air bubbles disappear. Remove slide from hotplate and allow to cool. If bubbles still are present under the cover glass, heat the slide and gently apply additional pressure to the cover glass. Label the slide to identify sample.

6.12 Examine the slide using the 100X objective (oil immersion). Count and identify all diatom taxa found in several lateral strips the width of the Whipple disc. Identify and tabulate 200 to 300 diatom cells, if possible. Generally, at least 100 individuals of the most common species should be enumerated. Ignore frustule fragments. Thin-walled forms, such as Rhizosolenia eriensis and Melosira crenulata, may be difficult to observe when using this method (Weber, 1966, p. 3). If a microscope that has a mechanical stage is used, recording of the x and y coordinates of lateral strips or individual cells enables investigators to later recheck and verify identification (Wong, 1975).

7. Calculations

Percent occurrence of each species

$$= \frac{\text{Number of diatoms of a given species}}{\text{Total number of diatoms tabulated}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report percentage composition of diatoms to the nearest whole number. Report taxa and number of organisms per taxa.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Cupp, E. E., 1943, Marine plankton diatoms of the west coast of North America: Bulletin of the Scripps Institute of Oceanography, University of California at La Jolla, v. 5, p. 1-238.

Hasle, G. R., 1978, Diatoms, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 136-142.

Hasle, G. R., and Fryxell, G., 1970, Diatoms--Cleaning and mounting for light and electron microscopy: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 89, p. 469-474.

Knudsen, J., 1966, Biological techniques: New York, Harper and Row, 525 p.

Pryfogle, P. A., and Lowe, R. L., 1979, Sampling and interpretation of epilithic lotic diatom communities, in Weitzel, R. L., ed., Methods and measurements of periphyton communities--A review: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 690, p. 77-89.

Reid, F. M., 1978, Permanent slides, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 115-118.

Swift, Elijan, 1967, Cleaning diatom frustules with ultraviolet radiation and peroxide: Phycologia, v. 6, p. 161-163.

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Von Der Webb, 1953, A new method for concentrating and cleaning diatoms and other organisms: International Association Theoretical and Applied Limnology Proceedings, v. 1, p. 276-277.

Weber, C. I., 1966, A guide to the common diatoms at water pollution surveillance system stations: Cincinnati, Ohio, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Water Pollution Surveillance, 98 p.

Wong, R. L., 1975, Diatom flora of the phytoplankton of San Francisco Bay: San Francisco, San Francisco State University, M.S. thesis, 144 p.

Inverted-Microscope Method for the Identification and Enumeration of Periphytic Diatoms (B-3545-85)

Parameter and Code:
Diatoms, total, periphyton (number/mm^2): 81804

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water. The diatoms are cleared, making identification of species possible. Reliable quantitative enumeration is possible after the diatoms are separated from one another and from extracellular organic matter.

2. Summary of method

Periphytic diatoms are collected by scraping them from their substrate. Organic components, including gelatinous stalks and matrices and cellular components in the diatoms, are decomposed by oxidation. The diatoms in a sample are concentrated, and a permanent mount is prepared from a 0.1-mL aliquot. The mount is examined microscopically for the purpose of identification and tabulation, and the cleared diatoms are placed in a counting cell for enumeration.

3. Interferences

Large quantities of sediment associated with the periphyton may obscure the diatoms in the counting cell. Sediment and other particulate matter, including salt crystals and carbonaceous residues, interfere with slide-mount preparation.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates, glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substances.

4.2 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a sample of periphyton from natural substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.3 Counting cell, 26×76-mm glass slide that has 12-mm circular hole, covered by cementing no. 1½ cover glass to slide, and no. 1½ cover glass for top of cell.

4.4 Cover glasses, 18×18 or 22×22 mm, no. 1½, and microscope slides, glass, 76×25 mm.

4.5 Graduated cylinders, plastic, of sufficient capacity (100 and 500 mL and 1 L are convenient sizes) for measuring known volumes of water samples.

4.6 Hotplate, thermostatically controlled for operation at about 93 to 121 °C.

4.7 Inverted microscope.

4.8 Microspatula, 0.1 g.

4.9 Sample containers, glass or plastic, suitable for the types and sizes of samples. Sturdy plastic bags are useful containers for artificial substrates or for pieces of natural substrates.

4.10 Scraping devices, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides are useful for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.11 Vial, 10 mL, glass, disposable (for reference sample).

4.12 Water aspirator.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde cupric sulfate solution. Mix 1 L 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde containing 10 to 15 percent methyl alcohol with 1 mL of cupric sulfate solution.

5.5 Hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2), 30 percent.

5.6 Immersion oil, Cargille's nondrying type A.

5.7 Lugol's solution plus acetic acid. Dissolve 10 g iodine (I_2) crystals and 20 g potassium iodide (KI) in 200 mL distilled water. Add 20 mL glacial acetic acid a few days prior to use; store in an amber glass bottle (Vollenweider, 1974).

5.8 Mounting medium (table 13). Generally, mounting media should have a refractive index different than that of diatom frustules. Diatom frustules have a refractive index of approximately 1.15 (Reid, 1978).

5.9 Potassium dichromate ($K_2Cr_2O_7$) or ammonium persulfate [$(NH_4)_2S_2O_8$].

6. Analysis

6.1 Place the scraped periphyton sample in a graduated cylinder (100-500 mL).

6.2 If formaldehyde solution perservatives have been added, wash (Note 1) the sample by filling the cylinder, to capacity, with distilled water and allow the periphyton to settle at a minimum rate of 2 hours per centimeter of depth. Although centrifugation accelerates sedimentation, it may damage fragile diatoms and, therefore, is not recommended. To determine when settling is complete, periodically examine the supernatant microscopically using the inverted microscope and the counting cells. When settling is completed, aspirate all but 5 to 10 percent of the supernatant, being careful not to disturb the sedimented material. Repeat the entire procedure several times.

Note 1: The washing procedure is important because samples concentrated for diatom analysis commonly contain dissolved materials, such as salts, preservatives, and detergents, that will leave interfering residues on a permanent-slide mount. Certain preservatives, such as formaldehyde solution, will produce extremely exothermic reactions when hydrogen peroxide is added.

6.3 To the rinsed, concentrated sample, add hydrogen peroxide in a volume approximately five times the concentrate volume and allow the sample to stand for 7 days. Ultraviolet radiation is an effective catalyst for hastening the oxidation process. Do not proceed to step 6.5 until all hydrogen peroxide has been reduced, as evidenced by the cessation of bubble formation.

6.4 If large quantities of extracellular organic matter are present, add a microspatula (approximately 0.1 g) of potassium dichromate (or ammonium persulfate) to the mixture inside a fume hood. This will initiate an exothermic reaction. After the reaction is completed (5-10 minutes), the potassium dichromate solution will change from purple to gold.

6.5 Fill the graduated cylinder with distilled water. Allow the mixture to stand for a minimum of 2 hours per centimeter of depth so that the cleared periphyton will settle to the bottom. Aspirate the mixture, carefully removing and discarding the liquid without disturbing the sediment on the bottom of the cylinder. Repeat this procedure until the supernatant is colorless.

6.6 Mix the concentrated sample well (but not vigorously), and place a small quantity onto each of three cover glasses and spread.

6.7 Place the cover glasses, concentrate side up, on a warm hotplate to increase the evaporation rate, but not enough to boil. Evaporate to dryness.

6.8 Using a glass rod, place several drops of mounting medium, diluted according to manufacturer's instructions, in the center of the cover glass. Commercially available mounting medium (table 13) ensures easily handled permanent mounts for examination during oil immersion. Medium that has high index of refraction (1.65+) is best for mounting diatoms. The greater the index of refraction, the greater the contrast of the microscopic image. Diatoms have a refractive index of about 1.15 and are invisible in medium of similar index.

6.9 Heat the cover glasses slowly, increasing the temperature until all the diluting solvent has been evaporated from the mounting medium. Cool and place the cover glass (concentrate side down) on the center of the slide, and reheat slowly until the medium has flowed to the edges of the cover glass. Remove from source of heat and cool. Ring the cover glass for permanence, if desired.

6.10 Examine the slides at 1,000X magnification (oil immersion) using a compound binocular microscope, and identify the diatom taxa.

6.11 If sediment does not interfere with the identification, adjust the volume of the concentrate in step 6.5 to obtain a frustule count of 5 to 10 frustules per field. Record this adjusted volume as the total (or final) volume. Mix the sample concentrate well (but not vigorously), and pipet sample into each of 10 counting cells. Slide cover glasses into place immediately.

6.12 Place the counting cell on the mechanical stage of a calibrated inverted microscope. Count and identify the diatoms in at least 50 randomly chosen fields at 300 to 500X magnification. Count a minimum of 100 diatom frustules, 300 to 500 if possible, distributing the count among cells using five fields per cell (Woelkerling and others, 1976). If broken or separated frustules are observed, count full half frustules (complete valves) and tabulate accordingly. If taxa that are not on the compiled taxa list are observed, identify them at 800 to 1,000X magnification.

7. Calculations

7.1 Diatoms per milliliter of suspended scraping

$$= \frac{\text{Total count}}{\text{(Number of fields) (chamber depth, in centimeters) (field area, in square centimeters)}} .$$

7.2 Total diatoms per square millimeter of surface

$$= \frac{\text{(Diatoms per milliliter of suspended scraping) (total volume of scraping, in milliliters)}}{\text{(Area of scraped surface, in square millimeters)}} .$$

7.3 Percent occurrence of each species

$$= \frac{\text{Number of diatoms of a given species}}{\text{Total number of diatoms tabulated}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report diatom counts to two significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

Reid, F. M., 1978, Permanent slides, in Sournia, Alain, ed., Phytoplankton manual: Paris, UNESCO, Monographs on Oceanographic Methodology 6, p. 115-118.

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Woelkerling, W. J., Kowal, R. R., and Gough, S. B., 1976, Sedgwick-Rafter cell counts--A procedural analysis: Hydrobiologia, v. 48, no. 2, p. 95-107.

MACROPHYTES

Introduction

Macrophytes include vascular plants, bryophytes, and algae that can be seen without magnification. The aquatic macrophytes referenced in this text are nonwoody macrophytes commonly found in wetlands or deep-water habitats (Cowardin and others, 1979). The characteristic vascular plant forms found in aquatic habitats are: (1) Emergent rooted aquatics, (2) floating-leaved rooted aquatics, (3) submersed rooted aquatics, and (4) free-floating aquatics. Some of these plants may form marginal mats or floating islands.

Bryophytes, the mosses and liverworts, generally are less conspicuous than the vascular plants. In swiftly flowing water, they generally grow attached to submerged or partly submerged rocks. In quiet water, mosses and liverworts may be attached to submerged rocks and mud substrata alone or may be among rooted vascular plants.

Algae are plants that lack true roots, stems, and leaves. They include the smallest of chlorophyll-bearing plants that consist of a single cell (commonly found in the phytoplankton or periphyton) as well as marine representatives ranging to several tens of meters in length. Freshwater species of algae occur as individual plants, colonies, or patches attached to rocks in flowing water. Such plants may be gray, green, blue-green, or olive, and may be slimy to the touch, such as Batrachospermum; or, they may be green and have a coarse filamentous structure and profuse lateral branching, such as Cladophora. In slow flowing or quiet water, algae that have stemlike and leaflike structures frequently are found. These plants commonly have a glistening or translucent appearance (Nitella), or they may be encrusted with lime, which gives rise to the common name stonewort (Chara). All of these types of algae also may be found in brackish coastal water or saline inland water.

Distribution and growth of aquatic macrophytes depend on depth of water, illumination, nutrient availability, water quality, substrate, and water velocity. Sometimes the rooted vascular plants are arranged in zones corresponding to successively greater water depths. The predominant vegetation in each deeper zone is composed of species more tolerant of water depth or decreasing illumination. These zones may be greatly compressed in turbid water. The processes of erosion and deposition and the resultant substrate composition partially control the extent to which plant zones develop. Free-floating aquatic plants may occur anywhere on the water surface; their distribution is controlled by water velocity and wind. The growth of aquatic macrophytes is related to the availability of nutrients. In some bodies of water, nutrient enrichment results in excessive growth of macrophytes that may become a major nuisance and may constitute an important water-quality problem. However, long-term nutrient enrichment may alter the macrophyte-phytoplankton-nutrient balance and may produce changes in species composition or to a decline in populations of aquatic macrophytes (Haslam, 1978). Tissue analysis of plants may provide information for evaluating nutrient supplies in natural water (Gerloff and Krombholz, 1966), for determining nutrient requirements for particular plant species (Fitzgerald, 1969), or for studying bioaccumulation of trace metals (Mayes and others, 1977).

Collection

Samples of macrophytes are collected by hand or with grappling hooks, rakes, oyster tongs, or dredges. Entire plants should be collected, including flowers and seeds, if present, and roots and rhizomes or tubers, if possible. During floral surveys, all habitats should be sampled in an effort to collect common and rare species. For some investigations, the relative abundance of plant species in the study area should be noted. For quantitative studies, a uniform sampling system for plant collection should be devised to provide some measure of abundance and productivity.

Plants to be placed in a herbarium or preserved for identification or further study should be pressed and mounted using standard techniques. Place emergent rooted aquatics and free-floating or floating-leaved rooted aquatics that have large coarse leaves (Nymphaea, or Pistia, for example) in a plant press for preservation. Use paper toweling or other absorbent material to soak up as much moisture from the specimens as possible before preparing them for the press. Carefully arrange each plant on one-half of a folded sheet of newspaper. Bend stems and leaves where necessary, but keep the plants as flat and as widely spread as possible. Label each plant for location collected, date collected, and species, if known. Fold the other one-half of the newspaper over each flattened plant, sandwich between two botanical driers, and place in a plant press. Many sheets that contain specimens may be added to the press, but each preparation must be separated by a botanical drier. Tie or strap the press securely.

Replace the damp botanical driers frequently (daily or weekly, depending on water content of plant material) until all plant parts are completely dry. This replacement is necessary if plant specimens are to be preserved satisfactorily. Plants being pressed should be kept cool to help control spoilage of the wet material, unless the press containing the plants is placed in a botanical drying rack to hasten drying using artificial heat. Before proceeding with the heat method of drying macrophytes, read the techniques described by Lawrence (1960, p. 241-243).

Submersed rooted aquatics, especially those with fine strap-like or dissected leaves, are limp and fragile and should not be handled in air. The same is true for algae. Wash thoroughly to remove epiphytes and debris, and float the specimen in water in a flat tray or sink. Arrange plant, slip mounting sheet under it, and remove from water, or drain water and allow plant to settle on paper. Good-quality herbarium paper can be used, or the plant can be floated on other paper and subsequently mounted on a herbarium sheet. For species that have emergent flowers (for example, Utricularia), remove flowering parts prior to floating and press separately by standard method. Place paper and plant on one-half of a folded sheet of newspaper and place a sheet of waxed paper directly on top of plant material. Fold the other one-half of the newspaper over the plant, sandwich between two botanical driers, and place in a plant press. Use of a drying rack and artificial heat is recommended.

Duckweed (Lemnaceae) should be floated onto index cards and placed between newspaper sheets in the plant press. The upper and lower sides of these plants should be visible when arranged on the index cards. When dry, the specimens will fall off the card and should be placed in a packet or mounted on a herbarium sheet.

After drying, glue or cloth tape should be used to affix specimens to herbarium paper. Packets of flowers, seeds, or small, delicate specimens should be mounted on the sheet with the remainder of the plant. Many algae have a natural muscilagenous coating that serves as a natural glue when dried.

Preserve small specimens of vascular plants and bryophytes in 70-percent ethyl alcohol, 2-percent solution of formalin, 2-percent oxyquinoline, or 8-hydroxyquinoline sulfate solution. Add a volume of preservative at least equal to the volume of plant material to ensure adequate preservation. Although this preservation is adequate for macrophytes in general, freshwater algae should be preserved as follows: to each 100 mL of sample, add about 3 mL 100-percent formalin (37- to 40-percent formaldehyde solution), 0.5 mL 20-percent detergent solution, and 5 to 6 drops cupric sulfate solution. For marine or brackish-water algae, use 4- to 5-percent final formalin solution made with the water in which the plant was collected. For large marine species, for example, Laminaria, use a mixture containing 10 percent phenol, 30 percent alcohol, 30 percent glycerine, and 30 percent water (Taylor, 1957). This will maintain flexibility and prevent specimens from becoming brittle.

References Cited

Cowardin, L. M., Carter, Virginia, Golet, F. C., and LaRoe, E. T., 1979, Classification of wetlands and deep-water habitats of the United States: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, FWS/OBS-79/31, 103 p.

Fitzgerald, G. P., 1969, Field and laboratory evaluations of bioassays for nitrogen and phosphorus with algae and aquatic weeds: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 14, no. 2, p. 206-212.

Gerloff, G. C., and Krombholz, P. H., 1966, Tissue analysis as a measure of nutrient availability for the growth of angiosperm aquatic plants: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 11, no. 4, p. 529-537.

Haslam, S. M., 1978, River plants--The macrophytic vegetation of watercourses: New York, Cambridge University Press, 396 p.

Lawrence, G. H. M., 1960, Taxonomy of vascular plants: New York, Macmillan, 823 p.

Mayes, R. A., McIntosh, A. W., and Anderson, V. L., 1977, Uptake of cadmium and lead by a rooted aquatic macrophyte (Elodea canadensis): Ecology, v. 58, p. 1176-1180.

Taylor, W. R., 1957, Marine algae of the northeastern coast of North America (2d ed.): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan Press, p. 10-20.

Floral Survey (Qualitative Method)
(B-4501-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Specimens from each habitat are collected and identified using appropriate references and taxonomic keys. Specimens are preserved or pressed and mounted for herbarium collection or further study.

3. Interferences

Missing or incompletely developed plant parts (flowers, seeds, or other parts) or improperly preserved plant material may make identification of a specimen difficult.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Botanical driers. These driers are absorbent pads, measuring approximately 30×46 cm, for use in plant presses. When preserving submersed aquatics, artificial heat is needed with driers.

4.2 Collecting equipment, appropriate to the objectives of the study, the type of substrate, and the depth of water. Examples of suitable equipment are:

4.2.1 Dredge.

4.2.2 Oyster tongs that have steel blades welded across teeth and small cord attached across opening to control size of sample (Sincock and others, 1965; Kerwin and others, 1976; Carter and Haramis, 1980).

4.2.3 Plant grappling hook. A simple grappling hook may be fabricated by binding the shanks of several hooks from wire coathangers together using light-weight wire. Make a loop on an extra-long shank for attaching a line.

4.2.4 Steel garden rake.

4.3 Microscope, binocular, wide-field, dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.4 Newspaper stock, folded to about 29×42 cm.

4.5 Plant press.

4.6 Sample containers, wide-mouth glass or plastic jars and leakproof caps or sealable plastic bags.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent.

5.5 Formaldehyde solution, 37 to 40 percent (formalin, 100 percent).

5.6 Oxyquinoline or 8-hydroxyquinoline sulfate, 2 percent. Dissolve 2 g 8-hydroxyquinoline sulfate in 50 mL distilled water and dilute to 100 mL. This preservative is used as a general substitute for either alcohol or formaldehyde solution for preserving macrophytes (Swingle, 1930; Lawrence, 1960, p. 255). This preservative lacks most of the objectionable features of formaldehyde solution and particularly is useful onsite because small envelopes or capsules of measured quantities of powder may be mixed with water as needed (Moore, 1950).

6. Analysis

Identify plant specimens using an appropriate taxonomic key, such as Muenscher (1944), Smith (1950), Conrad (1956), Wood (1967), Radford and others (1968), Fassett (1969), Britton and Brown (1970), Fernald (1970), Hotchkiss (1972), Correll and Correll (1975), and Beal (1977). A stereoscopic microscope may be required.

7. Calculations

None required.

8. Reporting of results

List the taxa of macrophytes identified.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Beal, E. D., 1977, A manual of marsh and aquatic vascular plants of North Carolina with habitat data: North Carolina Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 247, 298 p.

Britton, N. L., and Brown, Addison, 1970, An illustrated flora of the northern United States and Canada (2d ed.): New York, Dover Publications, Inc., v. 1, 680 p.; v. 2, 735 p.; v. 3, 637 p.

Carter, Virginia, and Haramis, G. M., 1980, Distribution and abundance of submersed aquatic vegetation in the tidal Potomac River--Implications to waterfowl: Atlantic Naturalist, v. 33, p. 14-19.

Conrad, H. S., 1956, How to know the mosses and liverworts: Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 226 p.

Correll, D. S., and Correll, H. B., 1975, Aquatic and wetland plants of southwestern United States: Stanford, Stanford University Press, v. 1, 846 p.; v. 2, 920 p.

Fassett, N. C., 1969, A manual of aquatic plants: Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 405 p.

Fernald, M. L., 1970, Gray's manual of botany (8th ed.): New York, D. Van Nostrand Co., 1,632 p.

Hotchkiss, Neil, 1972, Common marsh, underwater and floating-leaved plants of the United States and Canada: New York, Dover Publications, Inc., 124 p.

Kerwin, J. A., Munro, R. E., and Peterson, W. W. A., 1976, Distribution and abundance of aquatic vegetation in the upper Chesapeake Bay, in Chesapeake Research Consortium, Inc., The effects of tropical storm Agnes on the Chesapeake Bay estuarine system: Baltimore, Johns Hopkins University Press, p. 393-400.

Lawrence, G. H. M., 1960, Taxonomy of vascular plants: New York, Macmillan, 823 p.

Moore, H. E., Jr., 1950, A substitute for formaldehyde and alcohol in plant collecting: Rhodora, v. 52, p. 123-124.

Muenscher, W. C., 1944, Aquatic plants of the United States: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 374 p.

Radford, A. E., Ahles, H. E., and Bell, C. R., 1968, Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 1,183 p.

Sincock, J. L., and others, 1965, Back Bay--Currituck Sound data report, v. 1-- Introduction and vegetation studies: Currituck, N.C., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service unpublished report, 84 p.

Smith, G. M., 1950, The fresh-water algae of the United States: New York, McGraw-Hill, 719 p.

Swingle, C. F., 1930, Oxyquinoline sulphate as a preservative for plant tissues: Botanical Gazette, v. 90, p. 333-334.

Wood, R. D., 1967, Charophytes of North America: West Kingston, R.I., Stellas' Printing, 72 p.

Distribution and Abundance (Quantitative Method) (B-4520-85)

Parameter and Code:
Macrophytes, total (number/m^2): 70944

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

The distribution of macrophytes is determined onsite and plotted on a map of the study area. The size of the subareas inhabited by different kinds of macrophytes or the size of the vegetated area can be determined by planimetry or dot grid if desired. Transect, grid, or quadrat sampling schemes are developed, and floral composition and relative abundance (percent cover, density, frequency of occurrence) are established.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as depth of water, may interfere with determination of macrophyte distribution and abundance. Missing or incompletely developed plant parts (flowers, seeds, or other parts) or improperly preserved plant material may make identification of a specimen difficult.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aerial photographs at appropriate scales. Color infrared photographs are best for emergent rooted, floating-leaved rooted, or free-floating aquatic macrophytes; natural color or black-and-white photographs are preferred for submersed rooted aquatic macrophytes (Carter, 1977). Existing photographs can be obtained by contacting the National Cartographic Information Center (NCIC) in Reston, Va., or the EROS Data Center (EDC) in Sioux Falls, S. Dak.

4.2 Base map at appropriate scale. Scale-stable base maps may be obtained from the Water Resources Division Publications Office at standard scales (for example, 1:24,000, 1:250,000, 1:1,000,000).

4.3 Botanical driers. These driers are absorbent pads, measuring approximately 30×46 cm, for use in plant presses. When preserving submersed aquatics, artificial heat is needed with driers.

4.4 Collecting equipment, appropriate to the objectives of the study, the type of substrate, and the depth of water. Examples of suitable equipment are:

4.4.1 Dredge.

4.4.2 Oyster tongs that have steel blades welded across teeth and small cord attached across opening to control size of sample (Sincock and others, 1965; Kerwin and others, 1976; Carter and Haramis, 1980).

4.4.3 Plant grappling hook. A simple grappling hook may be fabricated by binding the shanks of several hooks from wire coathangers together using light-weight wire. Make a loop on an extra-long shank for attaching a line.

4.4.4 Steel garden rake.

4.5 Microscope, binocular, wide-field, dissecting-type, and fluorescent lamp.

4.6 Newspaper stock, folded to about 29×42 cm.

4.7 Plant press.

4.8 Polar planimeter, or dot grid at appropriate scale.

4.9 Sample containers, wide-mouth glass or plastic jars and leakproof caps or sealable plastic bags.

4.10 Surveying or other equipment, suitable for developing transect, grid, and quadrat sampling schemes (Cox, 1967; Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg, 1974).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Cupric sulfate solution, saturated. Dissolve 21 g cupric sulfate ($CuSO_4$) in 100 mL distilled water.

5.2 Detergent solution, 20 percent. Dilute 20 mL liquid detergent, phosphate free, to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Ethyl alcohol, 70 percent.

5.5 Formaldehyde solution, 37 to 40 percent (formalin, 100 percent).

5.6 Oxyquinoline or 8-hydroxyquinoline sulfate, 2 percent. Dissolve 2 g 8-hydroxyquinoline sulfate in 50 mL distilled water and dilute to 100 mL. This preservative is recommended as a general substitute for either alcohol or formaldehyde solution for preserving macrophytes (Swingle, 1930; Lawrence, 1960, p. 255). This preservative lacks most of the objectionable features of formaldehyde solution and particularly is useful onsite because small envelopes or capsules of measured quantity of powder may be mixed with water as needed (Moore, 1950).

6. Analysis

6.1 Identify plant specimens using an appropriate taxonomic key, such as Muenscher (1944), Smith (1950), Conrad (1956), Wood (1967), Radford and others (1968), Fassett (1969), Britton and Brown (1970), Fernald (1970), Hotchkiss (1972), Correll and Correll (1975), and Beal (1977). A stereoscopic microscope may be required.

6.2 Determine the mappable units (discrete vegetative communities, associations, or homogeneous stands) and choose the appropriate scale for mapping (Kuchler, 1967). This determination should be made after onsite observations and identification of mappable units using aerial photographs when available.

6.3 Determine the major floristic components of each map unit by onsite observation and sampling. If abundance is included, calculate percent cover, density, or frequency of occurrence, or all three, from transect or quadrat samples (Cox, 1967; Mueller-Dombois and Ellenberg, 1974).

6.4 Outline map units on map base or overlay material. Map legend or explanation should clearly identify each map unit and its symbol or color. Map also should include a scale and north arrow or latitude-longitude tick marks.

6.5 Determine the area (in square meters or square kilometers) covered by each vegetative community, association, or homogeneous stand, using a polar planimeter or dot grid.

7. Calculations

7.1 Percent cover

$$= \frac{\text{Area covered by community, association, or homogeneous stand (square meters or square kilometers)}}{\text{Total area (square meters or square kilometers)}} \times 100 .$$

7.2 Density

$$= \frac{\text{Number of individual plants}}{\text{Area sampled (square meters or square kilometers)}} .$$

7.3 Frequency of occurrence

$$= \frac{\text{Number of plots in which species occurs}}{\text{Total number of plots sampled}} .$$

8. Reporting of results

8.1 List the taxa of macrophytes identified.

8.2 The map shows distribution. Report the percent cover, density, or frequency of occurrence for each community, association, or homogeneous stand.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Beal, E. D., 1977, A manual of marsh and aquatic vascular plants of North Carolina with habitat data: North Carolina Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 247, 298 p.

Britton, N. L., and Brown, Addison, 1970, An illustrated flora of the northern United States and Canada (2d ed.): New York, Dover Publications, Inc., v. 1, 680 p.; v. 2, 735 p.; v. 3, 637 p.

Carter, Virginia, 1977, Coastal wetlands--Role of remote sensing, in Coastal zone '78 [Symposium on Technical, Environmental, Socioeconomic, and Regulatory Aspects of Coastal Zone Management, San Francisco, 1978, Proceedings]: New York, American Society of Civil Engineers, p. 1261-1283.

Carter, Virginia, and Haramis, G. M., 1980, Distribution and abundance of submersed aquatic vegetation in the tidal Potomac River--Implications to waterfowl: Atlantic Naturalist, v. 33, p. 14-19.

Conrad, H. S., 1956, How to know the mosses and liverworts: Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 226 p.

Correll, D. S., and Correll, H. B., 1975, Aquatic and wetland plants of southwestern United States: Stanford, Stanford University Press, v. 1, 846 p.; v. 2, 920 p.

Cox, G. W., 1967, Laboratory manual of general ecology: Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 165 p.

Fassett, N. C., 1969, A manual of aquatic plants: Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 405 p.

Fernald, M. L., 1970, Gray's manual of botany (8th ed.): New York, D. Van Nostrand Co., 1,632 p.

Hotchkiss, Neil, 1972, Common marsh, underwater and floating-leaved plants of the United States and Canada: New York, Dover Publications, Inc., 124 p.

Kerwin, J. A., Munro, R. E., and Peterson, W. W. A., 1976, Distribution and abundance of aquatic vegetation in the upper Chesapeake Bay, in Chesapeake Research Consortium, Inc., The effects of tropical storm Agnes on the Chesapeake Bay estuarine system: Baltimore, Johns Hopkins University Press, p. 393-400.

Kuchler, A. W., 1967, Vegetation mapping: New York, Ronald Press Co., 472 p.

Lawrence, G. H. M., 1960, Taxonomy of vascular plants: New York, Macmillan, 823 p.

Moore, H. E., Jr., 1950, A substitute for formaldehyde and alcohol in plant collecting: Rhodora, v. 52, p. 123-124.

Mueller-Dombois, Dieter, and Ellenberg, Heinz, 1974, Aims and methods of vegetation ecology: New York, John Wiley and Sons, 547 p.

Muenscher, W. C., 1944, Aquatic plants of the United States: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 374 p.
Radford, A. E., Ahles, H. E., and Bell, C. R., 1968, Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 1,183 p.
Sincock, J. L., and others, 1965, Back Bay--Currituck Sound data report, v. 1--Introduction and vegetation studies: Currituck, N.C., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service unpublished report, 84 p.
Smith, G. M., 1950, The fresh-water algae of the United States: New York, McGraw-Hill, 719 p.
Swingle, C. F., 1930, Oxyquinoline sulphate as a preservative for plant tissues: Botanical Gazette, v. 90, p. 333-334.
Wood, R. D., 1967, Charophytes of North America: West Kingston, R.I., Stellas' Printing, 72 p.

BENTHIC INVERTEBRATES

Introduction

The invertebrate animals inhabiting the bottom of lakes and streams and other water bodies perform essential consumer functions in aquatic ecosystems and serve as food for fish and other vertebrates including man. They are the most frequently used biological indicators of environmental quality. These organisms have the advantages of relatively large size, which facilitates identification; limited mobility, which restricts them to a particular environment; and a lifespan of months or years, which enables adaptation to conditions that have existed for a long period of time. Moreover, many benthic invertebrates inhabit specific types of environments that, if changed, result in changes in the composition of the benthic community (Hynes, 1970). In general, a varied benthic fauna, without excessively large numbers of any one group, is considered to be characteristic of good quality water. As conditions change (for example, in the presence of organic pollution), the number of species decreases, but the number of individuals of the remaining species may increase. Toxic pollutants may eliminate all benthic invertebrates. Thus, knowledge of the kinds and abundance of benthic invertebrates helps to indicate water-quality trends in the aquatic environment. The extensive literature about interpretation of benthic-invertebrate data and water quality has been reviewed by Hynes (1960, 1970), Warren (1971), Cairns and Dickson (1973), Hart and Fuller (1974), and Hellawell (1978).

Collection

Benthic invertebrates vary in size, and there is no clear distinction between the smallest benthic forms and the largest micro-organisms. Bottom-living invertebrates that are visible to the unaided eye commonly are included with the benthos. Because many early studies of the benthic invertebrates emphasized the quantity available for fishfood, the U.S. Standard no. 30 sieve (0.595-µm mesh openings), which retains most of the biomass, came into use (Davis, 1938; Welch, 1948). The no. 30 sieve also has been used in water-quality investigations, and the American Public Health Association and others (1985) states that the bottom-living invertebrates collected for study, termed "macroinvertebrates," are those which are retained on a no. 30 sieve.

The mesh openings of sampling nets and sieves ideally should be selected based on the needs of a particular study. If the mesh size is so large that the smaller invertebrates pass through the net, erroneous conclusions about life cycles or biomass result (Hynes, 1970). Mesh that is too fine clogs rapidly, resulting in loss of invertebrates by backwash. The results of sampling using a coarse and a fine net on the catch of different sizes of a particular benthic species are not easily predictable (Macan, 1963, p. 281). Jónasson (1955, 1958) reports that the diameter of the head determines whether or not a dipteran larva will pass through a given mesh. His data indicated a 640-percent increase in the number of invertebrates in lake samples as the sieve size decreased from 600 to 200 µm. Other investigators have reported similar results from various aquatic environments. Significant differences between retention of total individuals and total taxa in U.S. Standard no. 30 and no. 60 sieves were reported for reservoir silt substrates (Mason and others, 1975). Schwoerbel (1970) concluded that "* * * in quantitative

studies of the bottom, especially in problems of population dynamics in which immature larvae are of importance, a mesh size of less than 200 µm must be used, and in other respects the mesh width must be carefully adapted to the size of the animals selected." In a study of stream benthic sampling, Mundie (1971) reported that the younger (hence smaller) stages of invertebrates tend to predominate in a natural community. He concluded that even a mesh of 116 µm could enable 50 percent of the fauna to pass through, if the community contained large numbers of chironomid larvae and mayfly and stonefly nymphs. Mundie estimated that a net of 200- to 250-µm mesh would enable 70 to 80 percent of the fauna to pass through, but it still would be adequate for many purposes, such as general faunistic surveys and the estimation of biomass.

For these reasons, the U.S. Geological Survey has adopted the U.S. Standard no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) for retaining benthic-invertebrates collected as part of its water-quality investigations. Nets are to be 210±2-µm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth that has 35- to 44-percent open area. For uses requiring more rapid filtration, large-capacity screen cloth, made of 209-µm nylon monofilament, that has 56-percent open area may be used. These mesh sizes are small enough to retain many of the immature stages of the benthic invertebrates and, yet, are practical to use in flowing water. Special studies may require the use of the no. 30 sieve or other mesh sizes appropriate to the objectives. The size of mesh used always should be reported.

The mud usually should be washed from the sample, and this often results in prolonged immersion of the hands in water. During cold weather, wearing long-gauntlet rubber gloves can make this more bearable. To wash mud from the samples, put small quantities into a no. 70 or other appropriate sieve and agitate it gently ensuring that the mesh is submerged in the water. Washing samples by pouring water through the sieve must be done slowly to avoid forcing small invertebrates through the mesh.

Four methods for benthic-invertebrate sampling are described based on the type of sampling, and three methods for preparation of microscopic mounts needed for taxonomic identification of specific benthic groups are described. Recommended sampling equipment are listed in the "Apparatus" section for the first four methods. For additional information on benthic-invertebrate sampling methods, refer to Welch (1948), Hedgpeth (1957, p. 61-86), Macan (1958), Albrecht (1959), Barnes (1959), Needham and Needham (1962), Cummins (1962, 1966, 1975), Hynes (1964, 1970), Southwood (1966), Schwoerbel (1970), Edmondson and Winberg (1971), Holme and McIntyre (1971), Cairns and Dickson (1973), Weber (1973), Elliott and Tullett (1978), Hellawell (1978), Elliott and others (1980), Elliott and Drake (1981a,b), Cairns (1982), and American Public Health Association and others (1985).

Faunal Surveys

Qualitative faunal surveys determine the taxa present and may estimate the relative abundance of each taxon at each site. Because collection of rare taxa at each site is important, sampling should include a large area of bottom and as many habitats as feasible. Use of several collection methods at each site can increase the total number of taxa in the samples (Allan, 1975; Slack and others, 1976). Moreover, evidence indicates that the larger the sample

collected for qualitative analysis, the greater the number of taxa (Elliott and Drake, 1981b). A faunal survey of a large sampling area, such as a lake or river, usually precedes a quantitative investigation but may be an end in itself (Elliott, 1971a).

There is no universally accepted method for sampling benthic invertebrates. However, no habitat should be overlooked if the objective is to obtain a representative collection of the benthic invertebrates, and different habitats may require different collection methods. The success of the method will depend on the experience and skill of the collector. Sampling should include specimens from rocks, plant beds, logs and brush, clumps of decaying leaves, and deposits of mud, sand, and organic detritus. In streams, areas of fast current, slow current, backwater, near the banks, and in deeper parts should be sampled. Rocks may be lifted by hand and examined for invertebrates as the surface dries. Tufts of algae and moss should be collected and examined for animals. Invertebrates may be dislodged from floating vegetation or rooted plants using a dip net, or samples of the plants may be collected using grappling hooks or rakes and then the invertebrates removed. Methods for collecting plants are described in the "Macrophytes" section. More elaborate methods for sampling invertebrates living in or on plants involve enclosing a unit volume of the vegetation and surrounding water in a bag or box from which the invertebrates subsequently are removed (Welch, 1948; Gerking, 1957). Additional information on sampling is given in the "References Cited" at the back of this section.

Two types of collection devices are described: those using netting to concentrate the invertebrates dislodged from the substrate and those involving removal of the substrate. However, any collection method, including quantitative or hand methods, may be used for qualitative collection of benthic invertebrates.

Dip or hand net

The dip or hand net is the most useful general implement for collecting benthic invertebrates in wadable water and invertebrates living among floating plants in deeper water. The net can be used in water containing large concentrations of suspended sediment and among plants or large boulders to depths of 1 m or more. Macan (1958) described a method of working slowly upstream lifting rocks and holding the net to catch invertebrates swept into it. Clinging invertebrates were dislodged from rocks by vigorously swirling the rocks in the mouth of the net. Alternatively, the net may be held against the bottom, and the area immediately upstream disturbed by the hands or feet, enabling the current to carry invertebrates into the net. In still water, the net can be scraped rapidly along the bottom to catch easily dislodged invertebrates, or it can be swept through plant beds, probed into piles of brush, or used as a scoop to sample mud, silt, and deposits of leaves or other detritus. Additional information about dip-net sampling is given in the "Numerical Assessment" subsection.

Empty the net frequently either into a shallow, white tray, if the sample is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each sample.

Dredges

As described by Hynes (1970, p. 237), dredges are instruments that are pulled across or through the bottom sediment and grabs are instruments that bite into the bottom from above. Grabs are considered to be quantitative sampling devices and are described in the "Distribution and Abundance" subsection.

Qualitative samples of benthic invertebrates from deep or swift rivers usually are collected using a dredge (Elliott and Drake, 1981b) (figs. 21, 22). The design varies, but often, large rocks are excluded whereas the smaller particles and the benthic invertebrates are retained in a mesh bag. The dredges developed by Usinger and Needham (1956) and Fast (1968) are examples. Dredges are lowered from a boat or bridge or even thrown from a high bank then pulled upstream along the bottom so the leading edge digs into and disturbs the sediment. The current from the flow of the stream plus the forward motion of the dredge carries invertebrates into the net. In still or slowly moving water, dredges should be pulled by a powered boat to prevent loss of active benthic invertebrates.

Figure 21.--Biological dredge (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

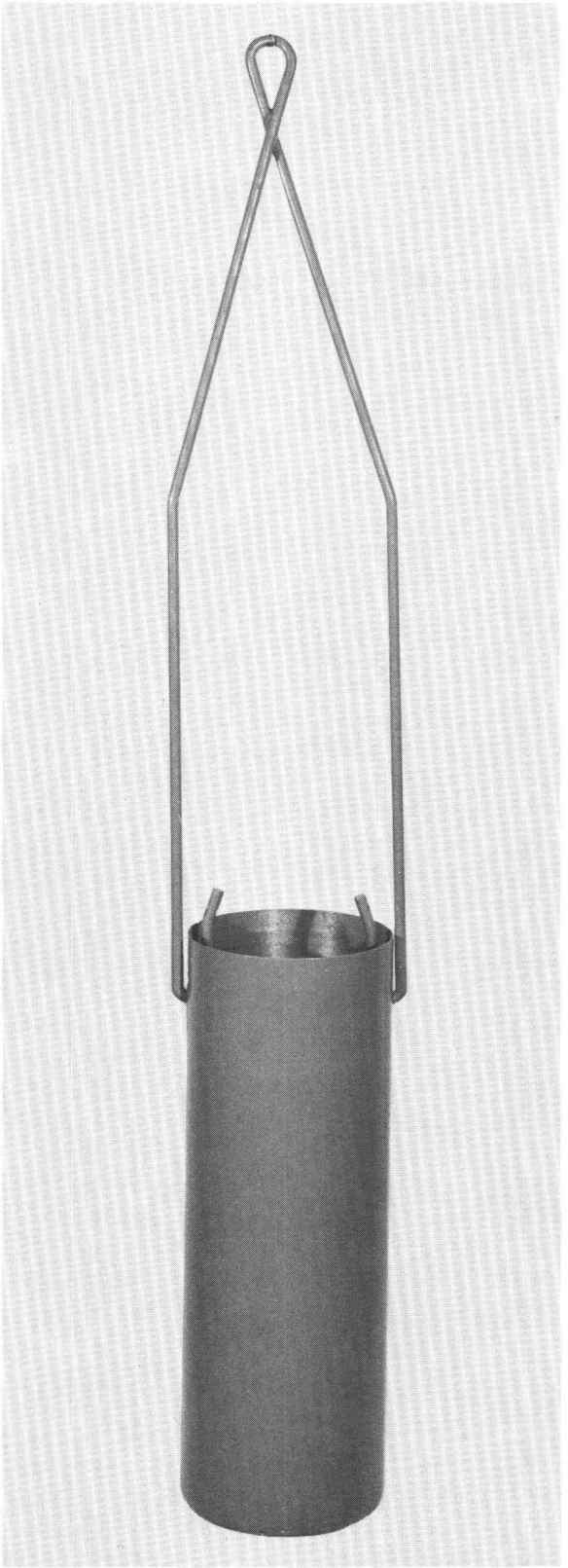


Figure 22.--Pipe dredge (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

Elliott and Drake (1981b) compared four light-weight dredges for river sampling. Because of the variability between sampling units in the same sample, there was a lack of precision in estimates of the mean number of individuals indicating that the dredges are not suitable for quantitative sampling. Considerable variation also existed in their effectiveness as qualitative samplers for estimating the total number of taxa per sample. The largest efficiencies for a small sample (n=5) were for the medium (greater than 57 percent) and large (greater than 76 percent) dredges (called Naturalist's dredges) similar in design to that shown in figure 22. The mouth of the medium dredge was 45×17 cm and for the large version was 59×20 cm. Greater penetration depth into the substratum (range in modal particle sizes was 1-2 mm, 64-128 mm, and 128-256 mm) accounted for the superior performance of the Naturalist's dredges compared to the other types tested.

After collection, empty the dredge into a shallow tray or bucket, if the collection is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

Numerical Assessment

Relative or semiquantitative surveys are conducted to compare benthic communities or populations at a specific site for different sampling times or at different sites for the same sampling time. That is, the objective is to make within- or between-site comparisons. Accurate measurements of the total benthos are not obtained, nor are the estimates of relative abundance of each species in the samples necessarily reliable. Sampling effort is limited and, if using artificial substrates, may be restricted to a small area at each site. Because different sampling methods will produce different results, the methods and sampling areas should be as uniform as possible throughout a study.

The statistical principles of benthic-invertebrate sampling are discussed by Elliott (1971a). The first requirement is a clear definition of the objectives of the study and the area to be sampled. The frequency of sampling may range from weekly, in detailed studies, to once a year, in general studies. When artificial substrates are used, sufficient time must be allowed for invertebrate colonization. Two sampling procedures using a dip net, one procedure involving collection of individual rocks, and three procedures using artificial substrates are described in the following subsections.

Dip or hand net

A dip or hand net is a mesh bag mounted on a metal rim that has an attached handle. It is a simple, effective sampling device for water less than 1 m deep and even may be effective in deeper water for sampling plant beds and other near-surface habitats. The dip net used in a standardized way will provide a numerical assessment of the differences between sampling sites in wadable water. Two general approaches are used, one in which the collector sweeps the net through the major aquatic habitats (Slack and others, 1976; Armitage and others, 1981) and one in which the net is held stationary while

the substratum is disturbed with the feet (Hynes, 1961; Morgan and Egglishaw, 1965; Frost and others, 1971; Armitage and others, 1974). The latter method is restricted to streams. The collecting approach used and the effort expended will depend on the size and variability of the sampling area and on the study objectives. Using the moving-net method, the most abundant species may be sampled adequately within 5 or 10 minutes by an experienced biologist. In a river study, Armitage and others (1981) reported that a 3-minute dip-net sample collected about 62 percent of the families and 50 percent of the species that were collected during an 18-minute sample. Slack and others (1976) reported that a 45-minute dip-net sample contained the largest percentage of taxa (78 percent) and the second largest percentage of individuals (41 percent) in a comparison of three collecting methods. Generally, collecting continues for at least 30 minutes in streams as much as 15 m wide and continues for an additional 30 minutes for each 15-m increase in width. Macan (1958) described a method of working slowly upstream, lifting rocks, and holding the net to catch invertebrates swept into it; clinging invertebrates were dislodged from rocks by vigorously swirling the rocks in the mouth of the net. In still water, the net can be scraped rapidly along the bottom to catch easily dislodged invertebrates, or it can be swept through beds of attached or floating plants, probed into piles of brush, or used as a scoop to sample mud, silt, and deposits of leaves or other detritus. The collecting effort and technique must be kept as uniform as possible during a particular study. Empty the dip net frequently to avoid clogging the mesh, which can cause a backwash that would result in loss of sample.

A rapid and versatile method for sampling consists of holding the flat side of a D- or triangular-shaped dip net firmly against the streambed, facing upstream and disturbing the stream bottom for a definite distance (about 0.5 m) just upstream from the net by vigorously kicking three or four times into the bed in an upstream direction (Hynes, 1961; Morgan and Egglishaw, 1965). A proportion of the dislodged invertebrates and detritus will be carried into the net by the current; the kicks should be separated by several seconds to enable this to occur. The method can be used for a variety of substrates from sand to rocks that have a diameter of 45 to 60 cm in weedbeds, or on bedrock using the boot as a scraper. The method has been evaluated by Frost and others (1971) and Armitage and others (1974). The minimum procedure, modified from Morgan and Egglishaw (1965), is to take three (four-kick) samples in a reach of stream: one in a riffle, one in a pool, and one in a position where conditions are intermediate between the other two sites. The minimum-procedure sites should not be near the banks and should be representative of the habitat; that is, select eroding areas in riffles and depositing areas in pools. Sampling may be increased or modified depending on the physical characteristics of the habitat and the study objectives, but it is important that the technique and net design be uniform throughout a study. Empty the dip net, after each series of kickings, into a shallow tray or bucket, if the collection is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

Individual rocks

Because many benthic invertebrates from shallow streams or rocky shores of lakes live on or beneath rocks, a sampling method that involves lifting individual rocks and collecting the associated invertebrates was developed (Macan, 1958; Schwoerbel, 1970). The method consists of three procedures: selection of rocks, collection of rocks, and reporting of results. Because the number of benthic invertebrates per unit of rock area may vary with rock size (Lium, 1974), rocks of similar size should be collected for samples that are to be compared. In gravel-bed streams studied by Lium (1974), greatest invertebrate densities occurred on rocks between 45- and 90-mm mean diameter. As with other methods, the study objectives are decisive in selection of the sampling method and its application. Depending on the objectives, sampling may comprise 10, 20, or more individual rocks from a single habitat (for example, riffles) or from each of several habitats (for example, pools and riffles). Statistical techniques may be used to ensure random collection of rocks from each habitat.

The simplest collection procedure is to pick a rock at random, lift it gently off the substratum, quickly enclose the rock in a net of appropriate mesh size, and lift the net, rock, and associated invertebrates out of the water. This procedure is repeated until the desired number of rocks has been collected. A better method for rock collection is using the Lium sampler (fig. 23), which was designed to catch invertebrates that wash off a rock as it is lifted from the streambed. With the sampler opening facing upstream, approach the selected rock from the downstream side. Place the hood of the sampler over the rock, and press down to compress the flexible base against the streambed. The flexible base minimizes losses from around the edges of the sampler, and the hood minimizes outwash of invertebrates during rock removal. Invertebrates that are dislodged as the rock is lifted are carried by the current into the screen. Remove invertebrates trapped on the screen by inverting the sampler and washing them into a bucket. During each method of rock collection, scrub each rock thoroughly in a bucket of water using a soft-bristle brush to remove clinging invertebrates. Pour the contents of the bucket through a U.S. Standard no. 70 sieve. Empty the sieve into a shallow, white tray, if the sample is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

If the results are to be reported as areal units, rock sizes must be determined. To report the population in terms of the projected area of rock, measure and record the two longest straight-line dimensions of each rock (A and B axes), in millimeters. To report the population in terms of total rock surface, measure each rock, in millimeters, across the B or intermediate axis (Leopold, 1970; Lium, 1974). The B axis, or breadth, is distinguished from the major axis (A, or length) and the minor axis (C, or width).

Figure 23.--Lium sampler.

Artificial substrates

An artificial substrate is defined by Cairns (1982) "* * * as a device placed in an aquatic ecosystem to study colonization by indigenous organisms. Although the device may be unnatural in composition, location, or both, most of the biological processes that occur on it appear to be quite similar to those occurring on natural substrates." Many types of standardized, reproducible surfaces are used as collection devices for colonization by benthic invertebrates (Beak and others, 1973; Hellawell, 1978; Cairns, 1982). The uniform shape and texture of artificial substrates greatly simplifies sampling when correctly used. Standardized sampling is especially desirable when the results from different investigators or from different environments are to be compared.

Artificial substrates have been used to investigate various problems in benthic population and community ecology, including organism-substrate relations, community structure and distribution, and island colonization. Artificial substrates also have been widely used in marine fouling studies and for sampling benthic invertebrates in stream-quality programs. Generally, the objectives are: (1) To determine the composition of the resident benthic community, (2) to collect representative and reproducible samples of benthic invertebrates for areal or temporal comparisons, or (3) to determine rates of species or biomass accrual.

Selection of an artificial substrate sampler and its method of exposure are determined by study objectives and the nature of the environment. Rosenberg and Resh (1982) distinguish between representative artificial substrates (RAS) and standardized artificial substrates (SAS). RAS are samplers that closely resemble the natural substrate over, on, or within which they are placed, such as a basket filled with rocks similar in size distribution to the natural stream bottom. SAS are samplers that differ from the natural substrate of the habitat in which they are placed, such as a multiple-plate sampler. If the objective is to relate the quality of flowing water to the composition of the benthic community, off-bottom exposure may be preferred. Suspension of the samplers within the water column eliminates the effects of bottom conditions that can mask the effects of water composition that serves as a control on benthic community structure (Mason and others, 1973). If the objective is to sample the resident fauna or to evaluate the effects of sediment properties on invertebrate communities, bottom exposure is necessary (Voshell and Simmons, 1977). Before deciding on an artificial-substrate method, onsite tests should be made to compare the relative effectiveness of different samplers and exposures in the habitat to be studied.

Colonization of artificial substrates, reported as biomass or numbers of individuals or species, normally increases rapidly at first then reaches a relatively stable or fluctuating equilibrium level (Rosenberg and Resh, 1982). Colonization rate and biomass vary seasonally, such as being slower in winter than in summer. For monitoring purposes, samplers should be retrieved during the equilibrium phase. The time required to reach equilibrium in 20 studies summarized by Rosenberg and Resh (1982) ranged from 3 to 49 days, but for most studies did not exceed 30 days. Until the colonization process is better understood, preliminary onsite tests should be made to determine optimum exposures for each study.

It is important to prevent losses of invertebrates during sampler retrieval. Many invertebrates leave artificial substrates as soon as they are disturbed. Rabini and Gibbs (1978) reported large losses of invertebrates from barbecue-basket samplers during removal by divers, and McDaniel (1974) reported some loss of invertebrates when retrieving multiple-plate samplers from deep water. Voshell and Simmons (1977) maintained that loss of invertebrates during sample collection and sampler retrieval was a factor contributing to variability among bottom samples in a reservoir. When retrieving a sampler from shallow water, approach from downstream and enclose the entire sampler in a net of appropriate mesh size to catch invertebrates that would be lost when the sampler is lifted from the water. Artificial substrates exposed in deep water should be designed to retain invertebrates that drop off the sampler during retrieval. When retrieved, empty or disassemble the sampler into a tub partially filled with water. Scrub all parts using a

soft-bristle brush to remove clinging invertebrates. Pour the contents of the tub through a sieve of appropriate mesh size and add the invertebrates detached from the sampler during recovery. The sampler also may be placed into a container of preservative and transported to the laboratory for cleaning. Cleaned samplers may be reused unless there is reason to believe that contamination by toxicants or oils has occurred (Weber, 1973). Do not reuse rocks or hardboard plates that have been exposed to preservative.

Multiple-plate sampler.--This sampler is a jumbo modification (Fullner, 1971) (fig. 24) and is the smallest and most adaptable of the artificial-substrate devices. These samplers are relatively inconspicuous by virtue of size and color, and the modest cost enables replication to further enhance the chances of recovery in small bodies of water where the samplers might be subject to vandalism. Attach multiple-plate samplers to floats, structures, weights, or rods driven into the streambed or lakebed. Install three samplers so they will remain submerged, and leave them to be colonized for the experimentally determined exposure period or for 4 to 5 weeks. Record the exposure time, which should be consistent among sites during a study.

The samplers may be installed in pools or riffles and on the bottom or suspended above it, but the macrohabitat should be as uniform as possible at all sites during a study. Usually samplers are installed on the bottom in riffles as much as 1 m deep. Make the collections as representative of the

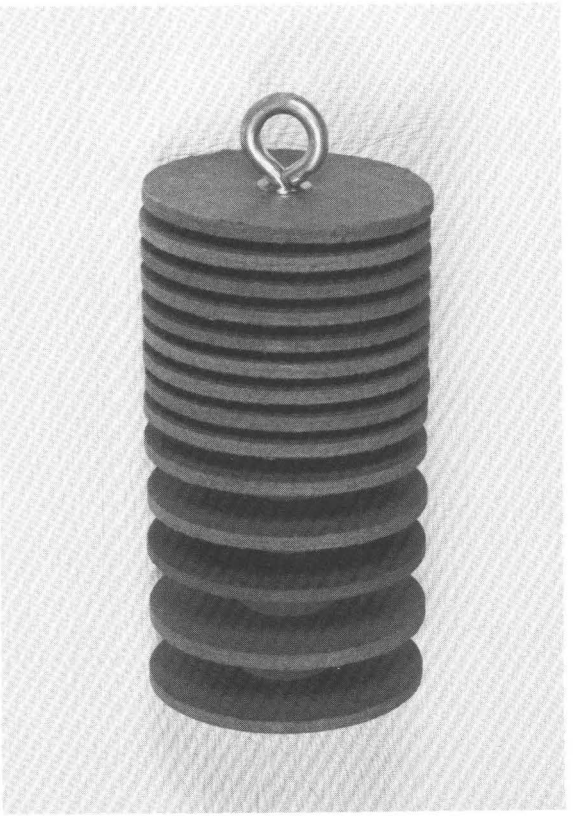


Figure 24.--Jumbo multiple-plate artificial-substrate sampler (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

reach as possible by ensuring that the samplers are in eroding areas that are not close to the bank. In streams as much as a few meters in width, install the devices about midstream; in wider streams, install the devices about one-quarter of the total width from the nearest bank. In larger rivers or in lakes, the samplers usually are suspended from floats (fig. 25). When a float is used to suspend more than one sampler and the samples are to be kept separate, enclose each sampler in a retrieval net (fig. 26) to avoid loss of invertebrates when retrieving. It is necessary to reach into the water and gently pull a retrieval net over each sampler, securing the net by tightening the drawstring just above the top of the eyebolt that holds the sampler to the float rod. Enclose all multiple-plate samplers on the float before proceeding with substrate removal. When all the nets are in place, detach the samplers from the float. If only one sampler is used or if the results of multiple samplers are to be pooled, a dip net of appropriate size and mesh may be used to enclose the sampler(s) during recovery.

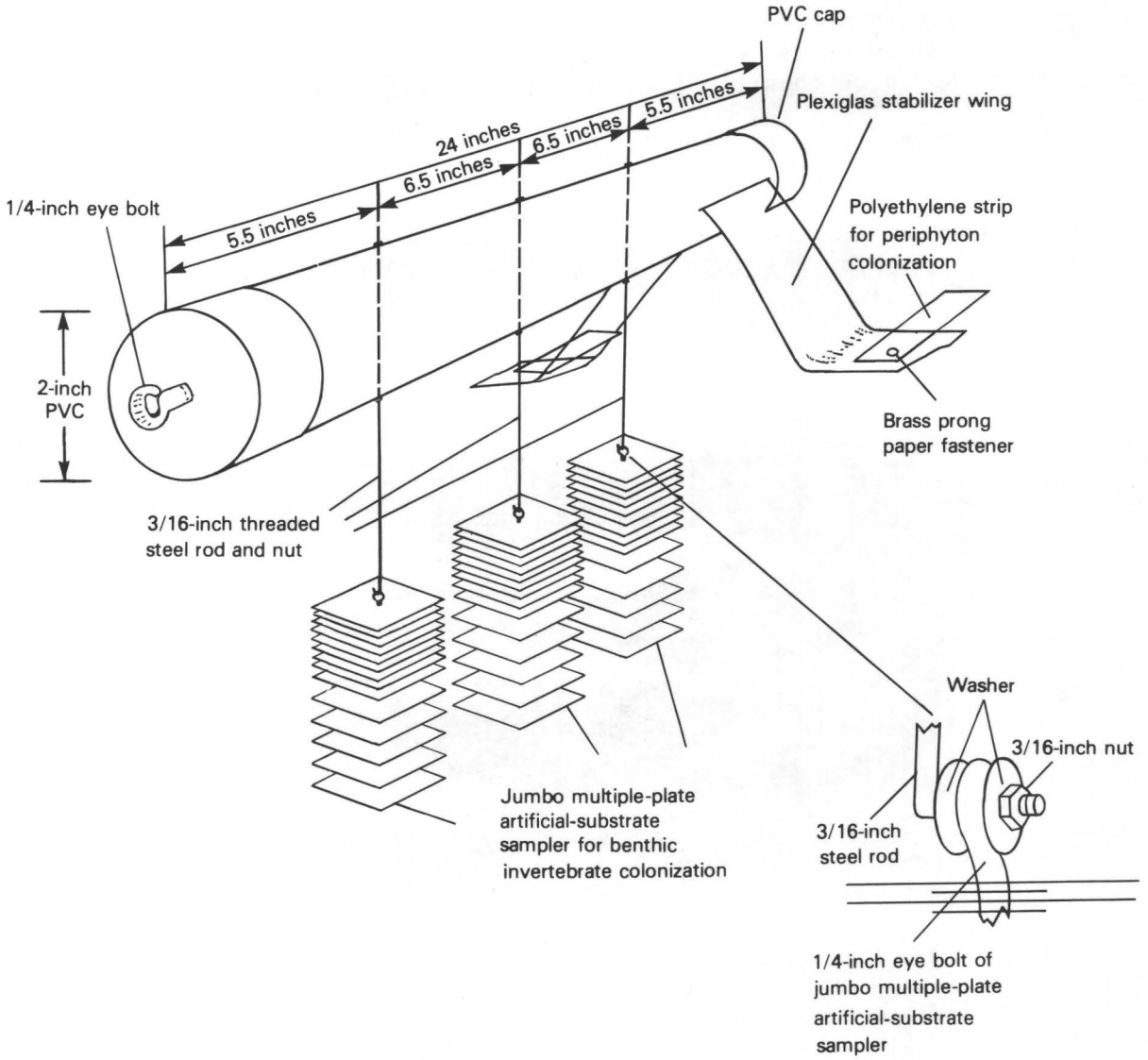


Figure 25.--Float for artificial substrates.

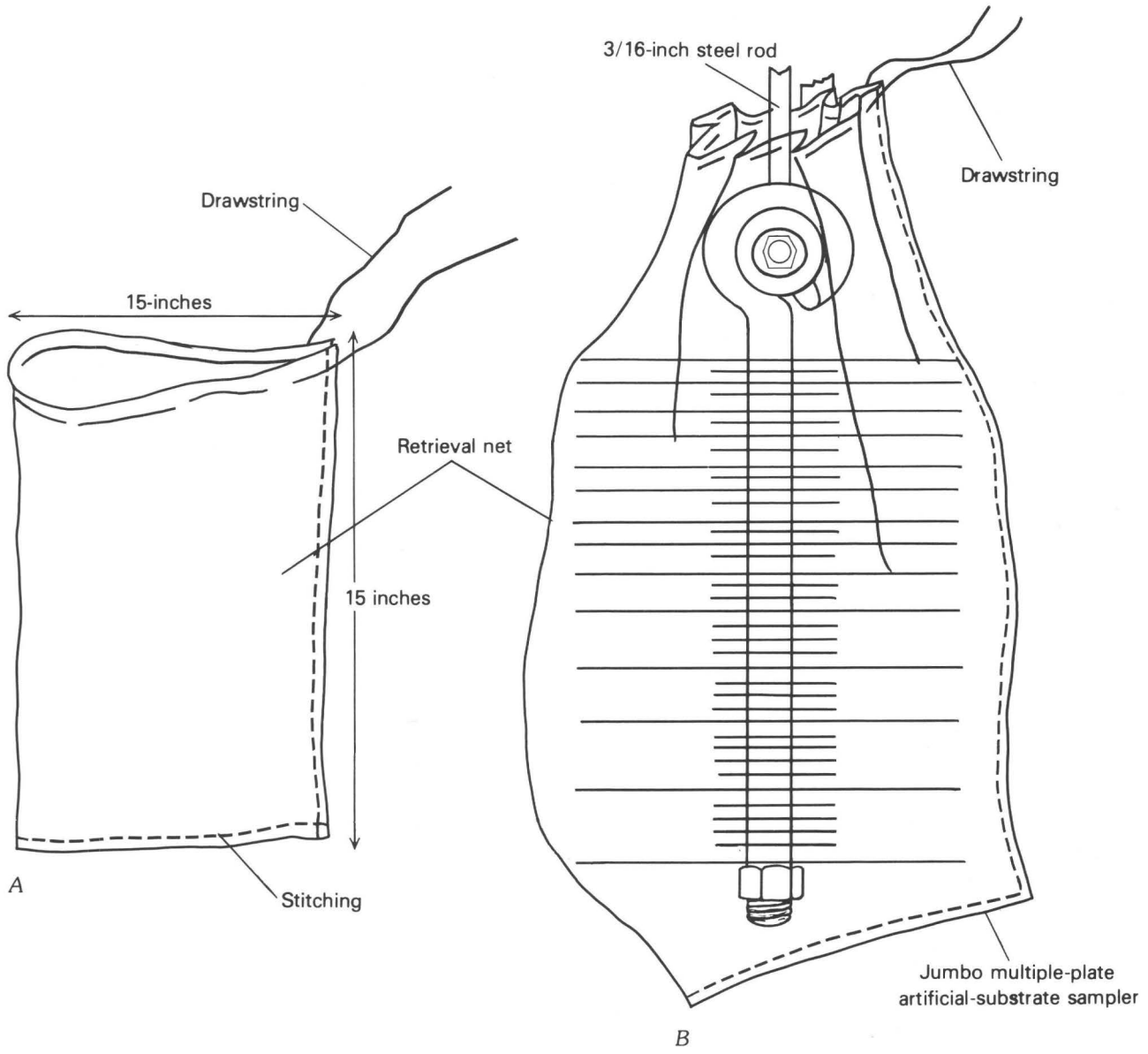


Figure 26.--Retrieval net.

Barbecue-basket sampler.--This sampler (fig. 27) is adapted for use in lakes and large rivers. Fill the basket with 30 rocks, 5 to 7.5 cm in diameter, and secure the sampler door using wire or small cable clamps. The rocks used to fill a series of samplers should be of the same general size, shape, and composition and should be cleaned by scrubbing with a brush before use. Angular limestone commonly is used in barbecue-basket samplers, although spheres of porcelain or concrete provide a more uniform substrate (Jacobi, 1971). Coniferous tree bark has been used as a lightweight substitute for rocks (Bergersen and Galat, 1975; Newlon and Rabe, 1977).

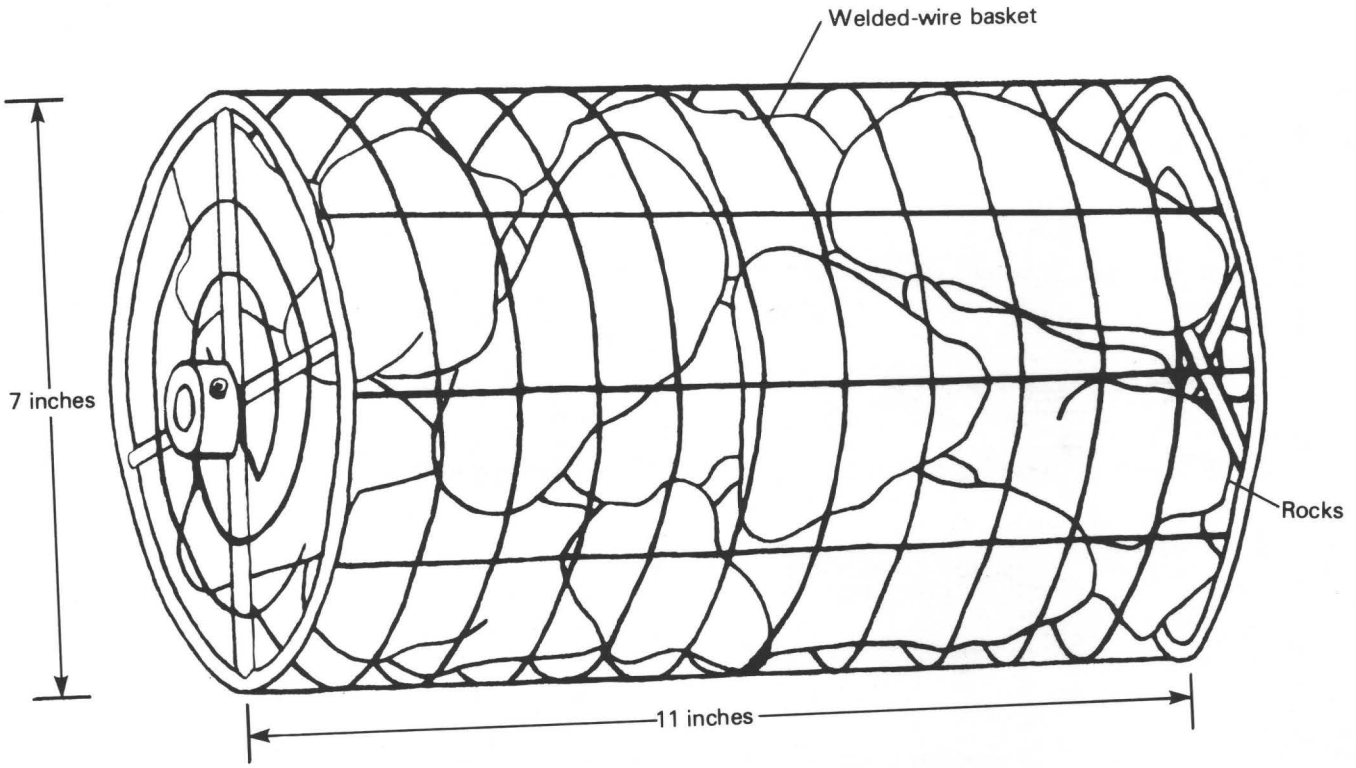


Figure 27.--Barbecue-basket artificial-substrate sampler.

If possible, suspend three samplers at a depth of 0.3 m below the surface for the experimentally determined exposure period or for 4 to 5 weeks. In environments of variable depth, suspend the samplers from a float. Barbecue-basket samplers also may be installed on the bottom in shallow or deep water, but the macrohabitat, depth, and exposure period must be uniform throughout a given study. Samplers must be protected from loss of invertebrates during retrieval. Samplers exposed in deep water may be enclosed in a retrieval net and brought to the surface by divers, or a net can be mounted on a rectangular frame so the net collapses on the natural substrate during colonization, but lifts to enclose the basket during retrieval.

Collapsible-basket sampler.--This sampler (fig. 28) is used if the objective is to compare sampler catches with the population of a surrounding rocky substrate. The basket can be loaded with materials simulating the natural bed on which it lies. This sampler is useful for lakes, shallow streams, or for deep, swift rivers. The sampler consists of a collapsible basket holding gravel or rocks and is surrounded by a nylon netting bag of appropriate mesh. A rim around the top helps retain the gravel. When lowered to the bottom, the basket collapses to form an area of gravel that is subsequently colonized. When raised off the bottom, the basket extends to its original hemispherical shape, and the surrounding net bag prevents loss of invertebrates during retrieval.

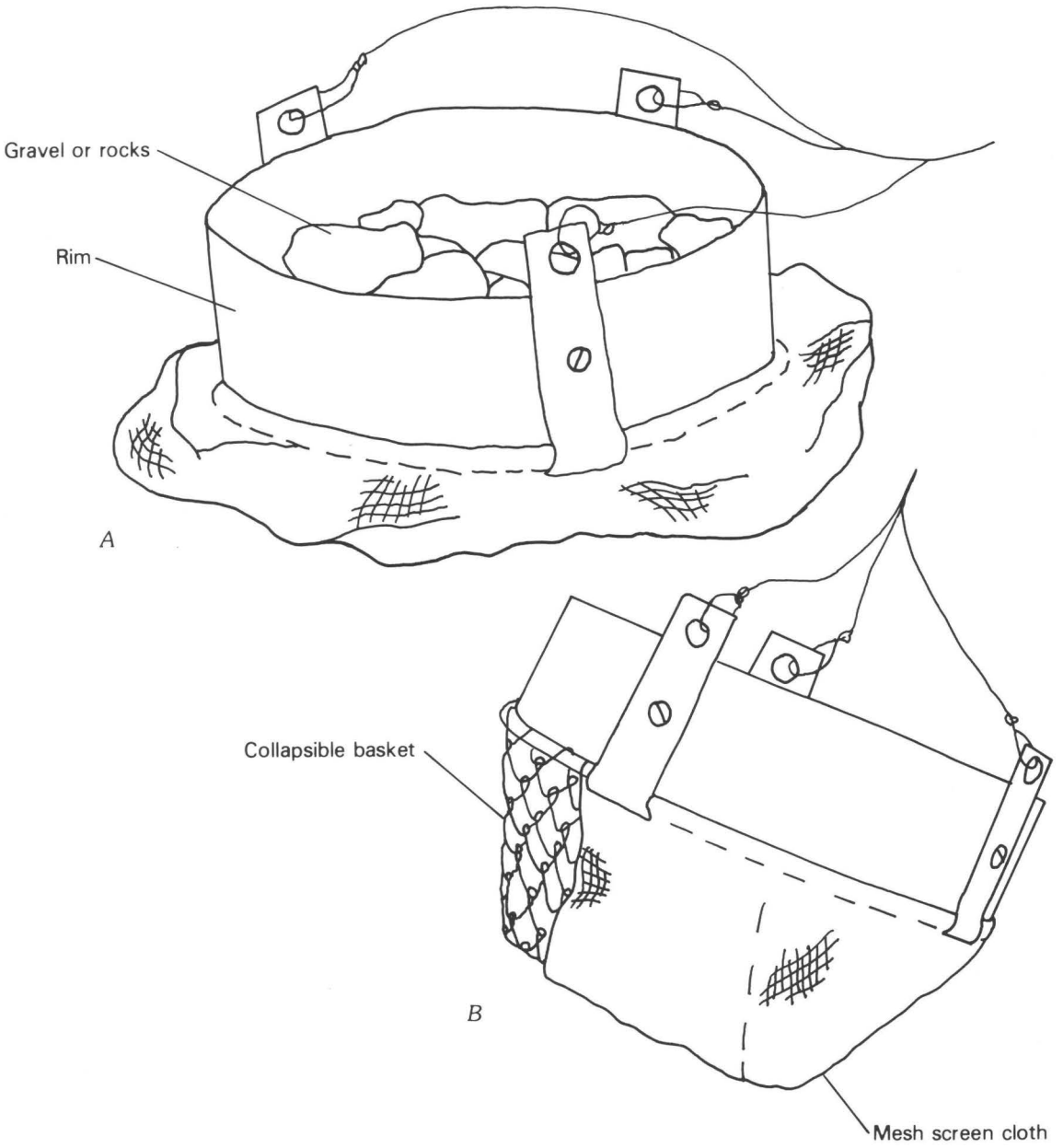


Figure 28.--Collapsible-basket artificial-substrate sampler: (A) Resting on streambed. (B) Being retrieved. (Redrawn from Bull, 1968.)

Expose the samplers in uniform macrohabitats at all sites during a study. If possible, install three samplers in a riffle in shallow streams. Make the collections as representative of the reach as possible by ensuring that the samplers are not close to the bank. In streams as much as a few meters in width, install the devices about midstream; in larger streams, install the devices about one-quarter of the total width from the nearest bank. Currents occasionally hinder the collapse of the sampler, but this can be overcome by connecting a strong rubberband to one side of the basket rim, extending it under the bottom of the wire basket, and attaching it to the other side of the

rim (Bull, 1968). The samplers are stable on the bottom at velocities as much as 0.9 m/s, but recovery often is easier if a line or light chain connects the sampler to an inconspicuous anchorage. At velocities greater than 0.9 m/s, the samplers should be anchored.

Distribution and Abundance

Absolute quantitative surveys are used to determine the numbers or biomass per unit area of streambed or lakebed and indicate changes in space and time. This type of sampling requires the greatest effort and, in many environments, the objectives cannot be achieved. Because all methods are somewhat selective, comparisons of the benthic invertebrates between sites or sampling dates should be based on uniform sampling methods.

The statistical principles of benthic-invertebrate sampling are discussed by Elliott (1971a). The first requirement is a clear definition of the objectives of the study and the area to be sampled.

When a knowledge of numbers or biomass per unit area is required, the major considerations are: (1) The size of the sampling units, (2) the number of sampling units in each sample, and (3) the location of sampling units in the sampling area. In general, the smaller the sampling units used, the more accurate and representative will be the results. Practical factors, such as particle size, will set a lower limit to the sampling-unit dimensions. Large numbers of sampling units in the total sample (greater than 50) are preferable, but usually impractical because of the labor involved in collection and analysis. The size of small samples can be calculated with a specified degree of precision (Elliott, 1971a, p. 128-131). The sampling units usually are randomly located in the sampling area, and all the available sites in the area must have an equal chance for selection. Stratified random sampling is preferable to simple random sampling.

A complete and accurate estimate of the numbers of all species in a large area of bottom often is impossible. Therefore, "* * * most quantitative investigations are restricted to a study of a small number of species in a large area, or a larger number of species in a small area * * *" (Elliott, 1971a, p. 127). This means that if the study objective is to compare the number and abundance of species at several sites or on different sampling dates, numbers or biomass per unit area may be needed only for a particular type of homogeneous substrate. However, the area of the substrate sampled must be clearly defined.

The literature about the quantitative study of benthic invertebrates in flowing water was reviewed by Hynes (1970) who concluded that quantitative data about the benthic invertebrates are extremely difficult to obtain and are, at best, very rough estimates. Nevertheless, if three or more samples are collected, a general idea of the abundance of the more common species can be obtained. Sampling in a long transect line, which parallels some obvious environmental gradient, such as from shallow to deep water, provides a greater probability that most species will be collected at least once (Elliott, 1971a, p. 127).

Sampling frequency must be based on study objectives. Waters (1969a) and Cummins (1975) emphasized that sampling for the estimation of benthic invertebrate production should be done during the period of maximum change in growth and survivorship. For populations having typical survivorship and maximum mortality during the early instars and having approximately exponential growth curves, initial sampling should be at short intervals and later sampling at decreased frequency. For a complete faunal study, short-interval sampling, weekly, or less, should be done during periods when most of the species are in early age classes. In the temperate zone, this period generally is late spring and late fall (Cummins, 1975).

Quantitative studies require the collection from the sampling unit of all benthic invertebrates within the selected size range. The area of the sampling unit is defined by the area of the sampling device, but the depth to which sampling should extend into the sediments remains a problem. The vertical distribution of invertebrates in soft sediments (Lenz, 1931; Cole, 1953; Ford, 1962; Brinkhurst and others, 1969) and in coarse sediment (Coleman and Hynes, 1970; Mundie, 1971; Bishop, 1973) has been studied. As a guide to the depth of sampling, Cummins (1975) proposed measuring the oxygen profile in the sediment to determine the depth of the oxygenated zone (Ericksen, 1963) or sampling at least to a depth at which the sediment seems anaerobic; 0.01 to 0.1 m in fine, homogeneous sediment and 0.1 to 0.3 m in coarse, heterogeneous sediment.

Brinkhurst (1967) listed the following theoretical specifications for a quantitative sampler:

1. Depth of penetration. Invertebrates are found deep in the sediment, and a true measurement of total standing crop or proportional representation of species requires that the sampler collect sediment from the surface to a depth of at least 20 cm.

2. Bite. The bite of a sampler should be deep enough so all depths are sampled equally in any one attempt. The bite characteristics should enable accurate estimation of the surface area that was sampled.

3. Closing mechanism. Complete closure is required, or some of the sample will be lost. The closing mechanism should be powerful enough to shear through twigs and other obstructions.

4. Internal pressure. The descent of a sampler should not cause a pressure wave that will disturb the topmost sediment or give a directional signal to invertebrates capable of retreating from the sample area.

Although a corer that is completely open during descent satisfies many of the theoretical requirements in still water, no sampler presently available satisfies all requirements, especially for rocky sediment and flowing water. One problem is that any solid object, such as a corer or box, lowered into a stream deflects the current downward and scours the bottom where the sample is to be collected (Macan, 1958). The devices listed in the following sections are those most commonly used or those that seem to be best suited to the work of the U.S. Geological Survey.

Box, drum, or stream-bottom fauna sampler

The box, drum, or stream-bottom fauna sampler (fig. 29), depending on its design, is used by pushing the bottom edge downward to seal a compressible edge or by rotating a cylinder back and forth into the substratum. In the latter design, teeth dig into the bed, and a flange of metal and foam rubber or plastic also isolates the enclosed area. In flowing water, mesh panels in the sides of the sampler decrease scour as it approaches the bottom. To remove the invertebrates from the sample area, begin by placing the large rocks into a bucket of water. Thoroughly disturb the remaining sediment by digging and stirring as deeply as possible using a garden trowel or fork, then stir the water vigorously using a small dip net to strain suspended material from the liquid. Some samplers have an attached bag net into which suspended invertebrates are carried by the current. Others require repeated sweeps. Empty the dip net into the bucket and continue the process until no additional invertebrates are collected. More sediment from the enclosed area may need to be removed as digging and stirring proceed. Remove the large rocks from the bucket and discard after scrubbing using a soft bristle brush. Pour the contents of the bucket through a U.S. Standard no. 70 sieve. Transfer the concentrated sample to a shallow, white tray, if the sample is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

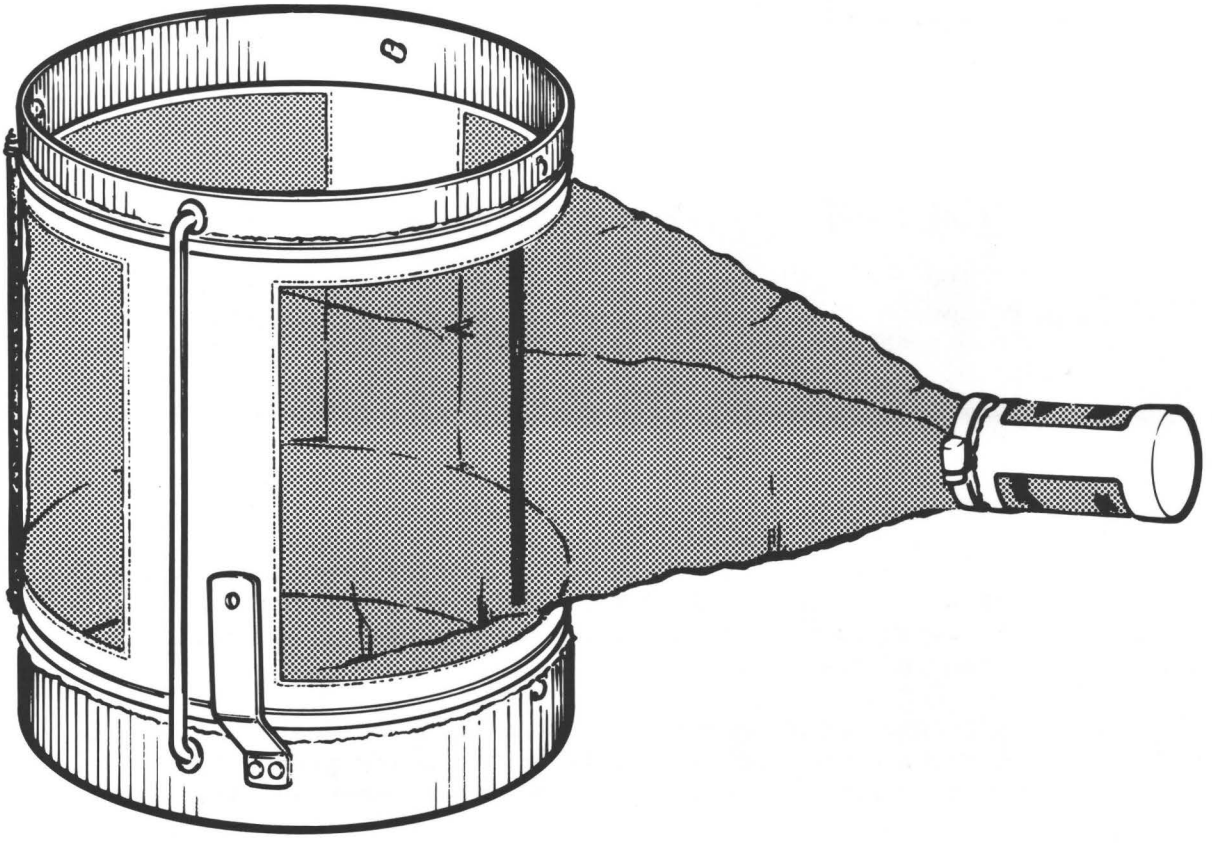


Figure 29.--Box, drum, or stream-bottom fauna sampler (sketch courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp., El Cajon, Calif.).

Surber sampler

Press the bottom edge of the Surber sampler (fig. 30), or one of the modified samplers, firmly against the substrate to isolate the enclosed area as completely as possible. These samplers depend on the current to carry invertebrates into an attached net bag. Slack (1955) enclosed the sides and front of a Surber sampler with wire mesh and, in slowly moving water, used a rectangular fabric-covered paddle to produce a flow sufficient to sweep benthic invertebrates into the net. To remove the invertebrates from the area enclosed by the sampler, lift the larger rocks and scrub them into the mouth of the net. Thoroughly disturb the remaining sediment by repeatedly digging and stirring as deeply as possible, allowing the current to sweep the invertebrates and lighter detritus into the bag net. It is important, but difficult in practice, to avoid contamination of the sample by material from outside of the enclosed area. Empty the contents of the bag net into a shallow, white tray, if the sample is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

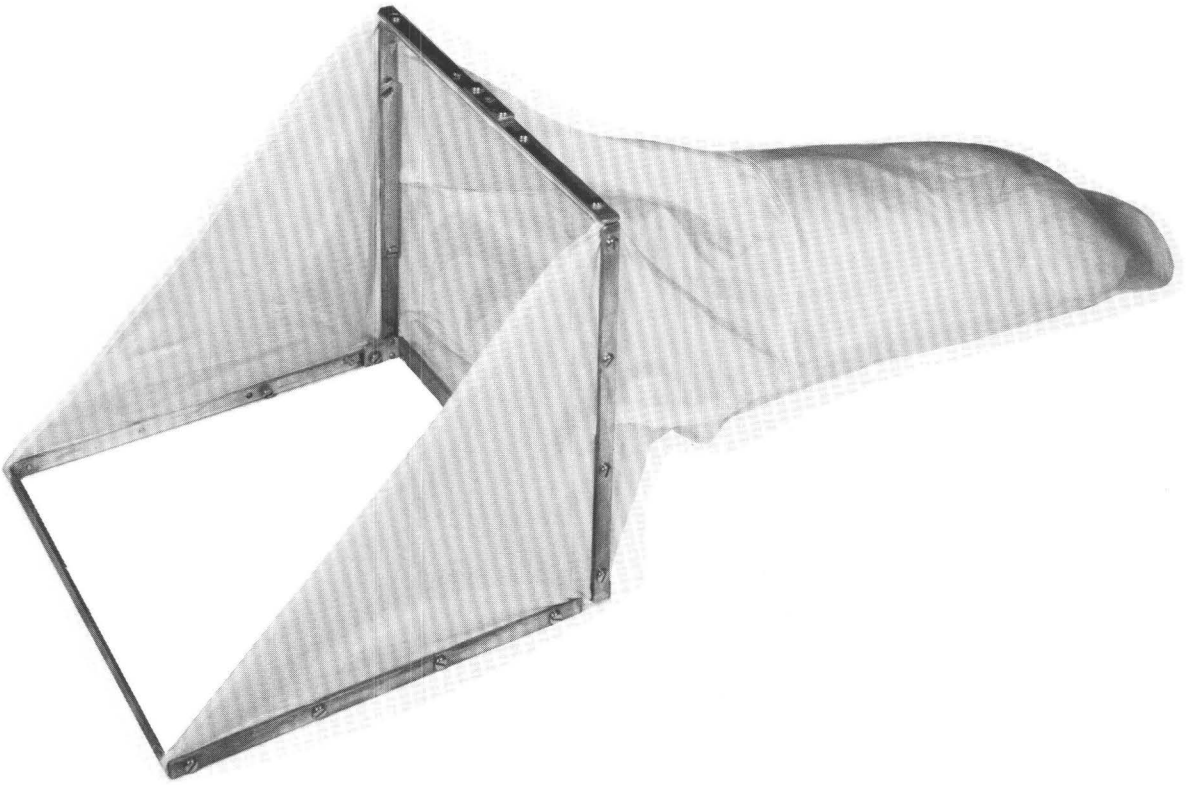


Figure 30.--Surber sampler (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

Ekman grab

The preferred sampler for mud, silt, or fine sand is the Ekman grab (fig. 31). In shallow water, the sampler is operated manually, usually mounted on a pole. The Ekman grab can be used in this way to sample fairly hard sediment because the operator can force the sampler shut by exerting additional pressure on the upper edge of each jaw. In deep water, the sampler is lowered to the bottom, allowed to settle into the sediment, and then closed by dropping a messenger down the line.

In a tank and onsite comparison of seven grabs, Elliott and Drake (1981a) reported that the pole-operated Ekman grab performed well on a predominantly muddy bottom (particle size 0.004-0.06 mm) where the mean depth of penetration into the bottom was greater than 5 cm. In fine gravel of modal size (2-4 mm), efficiencies in terms of numbers per square meter were 54 percent, and the depth of penetration was less than 5 cm. The grab did not perform satisfactorily on a predominantly gravel bottom that had some rocks larger than 16 mm.

At the water surface, the sampler jaws are opened and the contents emptied into a tub, a large sieve, or a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

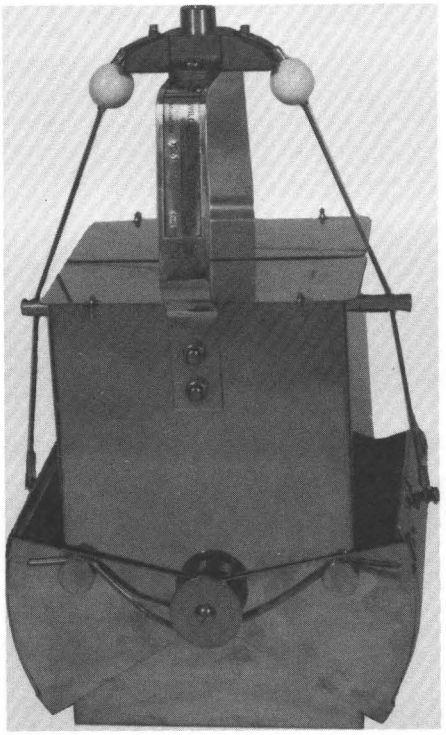


Figure 31.--Ekman grab, tall design (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

Ponar and Van Veen grabs

Ponar and Van Veen grabs (figs. 32, 33) are heavy samplers that should be operated using a winch. They generally are used for deep-water sampling in gravel, hard sand, and clay, as well as in soft sediment. These instruments close on contact with the bottom; but, to operate effectively, they must bite vertically. This requirement poses little problem in lakes, but in river work, bottom sampling is especially difficult. When used from a drifting boat, the grab sometimes can be lowered nearly to the bottom, then dropped suddenly so it makes contact in an upright position.

In a tank and onsite comparison of seven grabs, Elliott and Drake (1981a) reported that the Ponar performed well on a predominantly muddy bottom (particle size 0.004-0.06 mm) where the mean depth of penetration into the mud was greater than 5 cm. In fine gravel of modal size (2-4 mm), and where the mean depth of penetration was greater than 5 cm, efficiencies in terms of numbers per square meter were 94 percent for the unweighted Ponar and 93 percent for the weighted Ponar. The only grab to operate adequately on a gravel bottom that had some rocks greater than 16 mm was the weighted Ponar.

In a tank and onsite comparison of seven grabs, Elliott and Drake (1981a) reported that the Van Veen grab had an efficiency of 71 percent in terms of numbers per square meter on a fine-gravel bottom (modal size 2-4 mm). The mean depth of penetration was greater than 5 cm. However, the Ekman and Ponar grabs performed better than the Van Veen grab on a predominantly muddy bottom.

Empty the sampler into a tub, and if mud is present, wash it from the sample. Pour the contents of the tub through a U.S. Standard no. 70 sieve. Transfer the concentrated sample to a shallow, white tray, if the sample is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection.

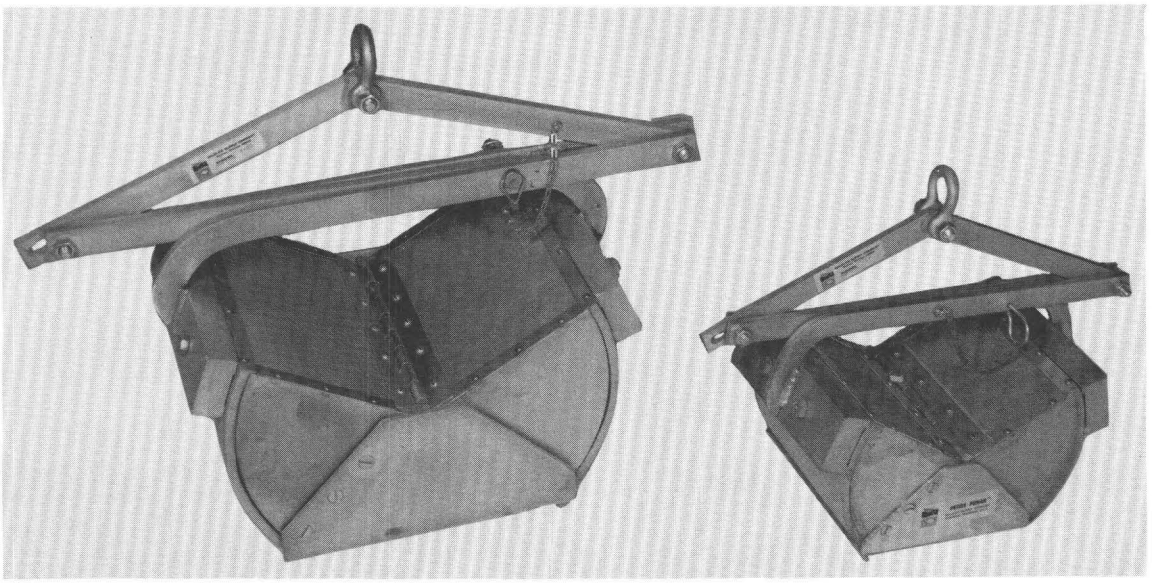


Figure 32.--Ponar grab (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).

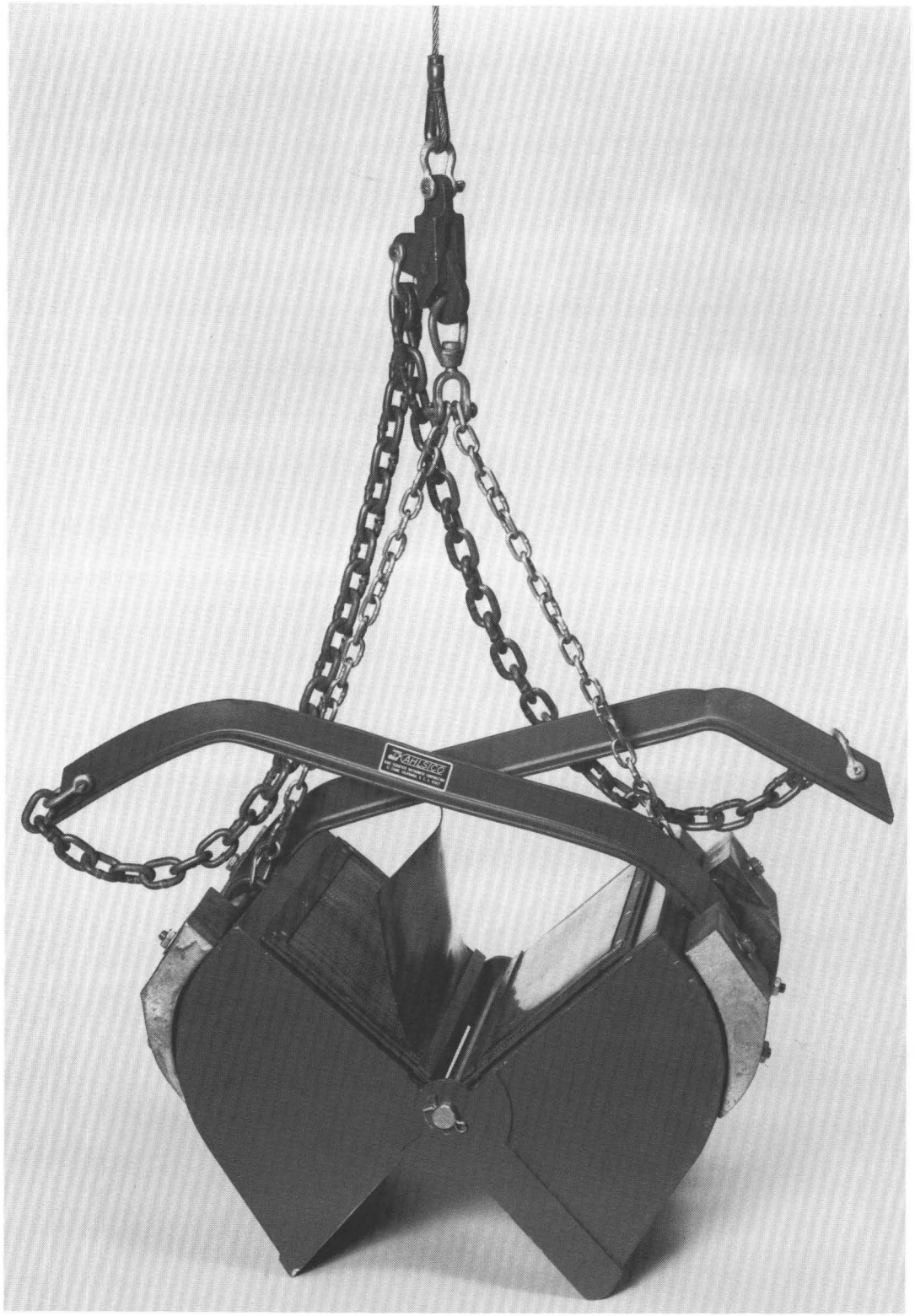


Figure 33.--Van Veen grab (photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp., El Cajon, Calif.).

Corers

These devices are used when an undisturbed sample of sediment is required. They are suitable especially for clay, silt, or sand bottom, and are used more widely in lakes than in streams. Hand corers designed for manual operation can be used in shallow water as much as several meters in depth. Deeper water requires devices such as the K.B.-type or Phleger corer (fig. 34), which depend on gravity to drive them into the sediment. All corers have been designed to retain the sample as the instrument is withdrawn from the sediment and returned to the surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions for operating corers. Depending on the study objectives, sections of the core can be extruded and preserved separately, or the entire core may be retained in the tube. Intact cores are best preserved by freezing, but the sample can be sieved, labeled, and preserved.

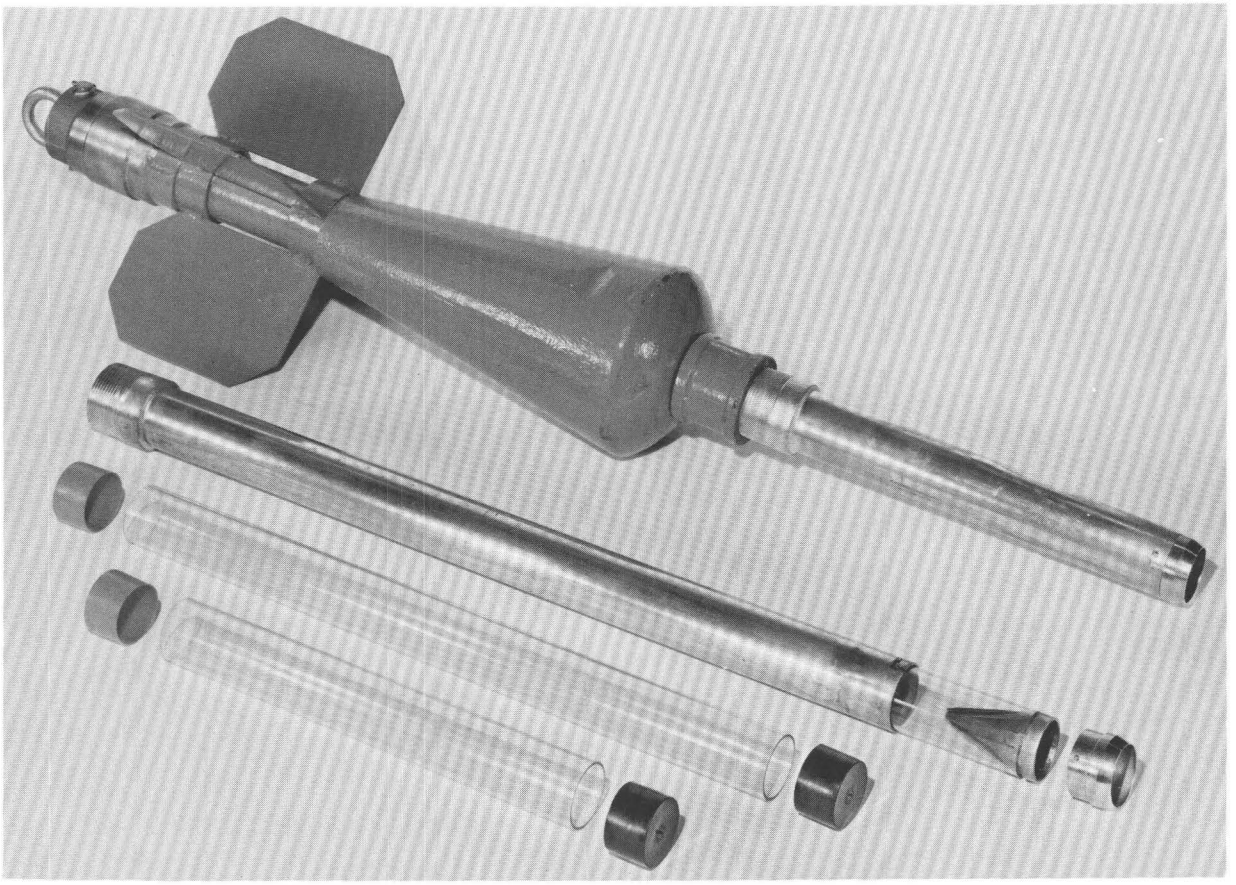


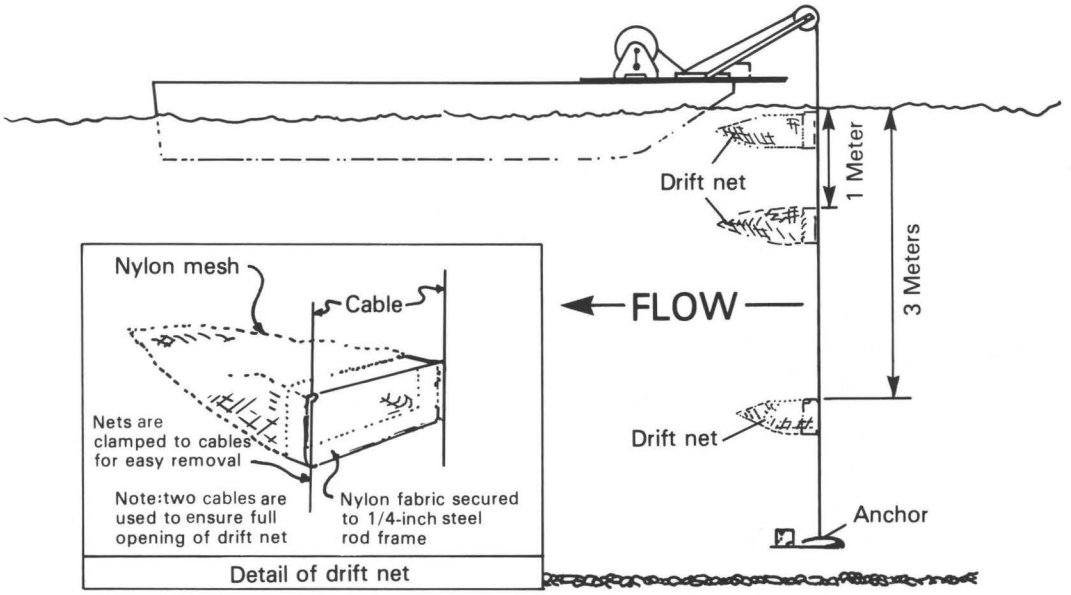
Figure 34.--Phleger corer (photograph courtesy of Kahl Scientific Instrument Corp., El Cajon, Calif.).

Invertebrate Drift

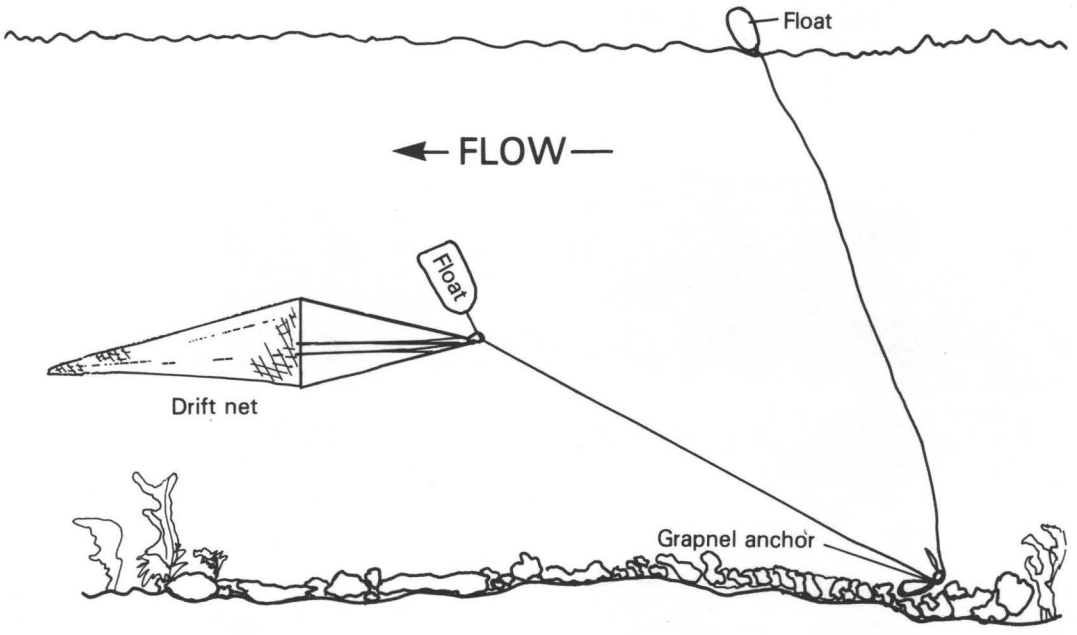
Studies have indicated that many kinds of benthic invertebrates become entrained in streamflow and that the resulting downstream drift of invertebrates is a regular feature of running water (Waters, 1969b, 1972; Müller, 1974). Because drifting invertebrates come from a variety of habitats, drift samples contain a relatively large variety of taxa (Waters, 1961; Larimore, 1974; Slack and others, 1976). The rate of invertebrate drift is affected by many factors, including light intensity, time of day, season of the year, stream discharge, and weather. The relation of invertebrate drift to water quality has been reported by Coutant (1964), Besch (1966), Wojtalik and Waters (1970), Wilson and Bright (1973), and Larimore (1974). Collections should be made upstream from any artificial disturbance of the streambed or banks. The distance that invertebrates drift varies with different species and with environmental conditions. Estimates of drift distances range from less than 1 m to more than 100 m (Hemsen, 1956; Waters, 1965; McLay, 1970), although McLay (1970) and Elliott (1971b) reported an exponential upstream decrease in the number of benthic invertebrates in the drift. Drift collections for impact assessment should be made; however, the fact that clean-water invertebrate species can be carried into stressed areas where they cannot survive needs to be emphasized.

Methods and equipment for collecting invertebrate drift are described by Elliott (1970). Drift samplers vary from simple nets to elaborate battery-powered devices capable of automatically collecting up to eight timed samples. A simple net of 210±2-μm or other appropriate mesh size on a square or rectangular frame is sufficient for making invertebrate drift collections (fig. 35). In shallow water, anchor the net with the opening upstream by driving steel rods into the streambed. Two types of deep-water exposures are shown in figure 36. Study objectives will determine the location, type, and duration of net exposure. Nets anchored downstream from riffles will catch more invertebrates than those downstream from pools, and the greater the volume of flow through the net, the larger the collection. The vertical position of drift nets in the water column is determined by water depth and study objectives. In water as much as 1 m deep, a mid-depth position commonly is used for a single drift net. Nets may be stacked, one above the other, to sample the entire water column from surface to bottom (Waters, 1969a). If the net opening is in contact with the stream bottom, nondrifting invertebrates may be collected. If the net opening extends above the water surface, the collection will include maximum numbers of floating adults, pupae, exuviae, and terrestrial species. If only aquatic invertebrates and life stages are of interest, the top of the net should be under water. In deep rivers, the net(s) may be near the stream bottom or near the surface, but the technique should be uniform if comparable collections are required. Because drift rates are faster at night than during the day, drift data are needed for at least 24 hours and collection periods commonly are 30 minutes, or 1-, 2-, or 3-hours, although collecting sometimes can last as much as 8 hours using properly designed nets. At the end of the collecting period, empty each net into a separate shallow, white tray, if the collection is to be sorted onsite, or into a wide-mouth container for transporting to the laboratory. Label and preserve each collection. Invertebrate drift can be collected as an adjunct to a faunal survey to determine drift density or to determine drift rate. Collection methods will vary depending on the study objectives.

Figure 35.--Stream drift nets (photograph courtesy of Wildlife Supply Co., Saginaw, Mich.).



A



B

Figure 36.--Methods of exposing drift nets in deep rivers: (A) From an anchored boat (from Ferreira and Hoffman, 1978). (B) Float-supported net (from J. L. Barker, U.S. Geological Survey, written, commun., 1982).

Drift density

The nets, location, and exposure periods described in the preceding section are suitable for determination of invertebrate drift density (the quantity of invertebrates per unit volume of water) when the volume of water passing through the net during the collection period is known. Water volume can be determined from an average of the speed of the current measured in the mouth of the net at the beginning and the end of the collection period, multiplied by the area of the net opening and the length of the exposure period. A digital flowmeter mounted in the net opening can be used to determine the cumulative volume of water passing through the drift net. Drift density usually is assumed to be fairly uniform in the cross section at a given time (Waters, 1972), and results from a single drift net are assumed to be adequate. This can be checked by collecting using two or more nets exposed simultaneously at different points in the cross section.

Drift rate

The drift-density procedures also are suitable for determination of invertebrate drift rate (the quantity of invertebrates passing a given point per unit of time). Drift rate can be calculated from drift density if stream discharge is known. When drift density and discharge values are available for a 24-hour period, the total daily drift rate per instantaneous discharge or per total daily discharge can be calculated.

Sample Preparation

Samples for which only biomass will be determined need to be frozen, preferably freeze-dried, as soon as possible after collection. Samples for taxonomic determination need to be preserved in alcohol or formaldehyde. (Use of alcohol for preserving samples for biomass determinations will result in small values because of extraction of alcohol-soluble substances from the invertebrates.) To ensure adequate preservation of benthic-invertebrate collections, fill containers no more than one-half full with the sample so a volume of preservative can be added at least equal to the volume of organic material, including detritus. Preserve the invertebrates or the unsorted samples in 70-percent ethyl alcohol, 70-percent isopropyl alcohol, or 4-percent formaldehyde solution. If formaldehyde is used, replace with alcohol prior to identification and enumeration. Containers should be filled to the top to avoid excessive sloshing and damage to delicate specimens. If unsorted samples are to be stored for more than a few weeks, the preservative should be drained after 1 week and replaced with fresh preservative.

Label samples indicating the location, habitat, date and time of collection (local standard time) for drift collections, name of collector, and sample preparation (type of preservative, mesh size of sieves or nets, or other treatment). Soft black pencil may be used onsite, but use a water-proof carbon ink for permanent labels. Place labels inside the sample containers so they are visible from the outside, or place duplicate labels inside and outside the containers. Secure jar lids using tape to prevent loosening and subsequent loss of preservative by evaporation. This is especially important if samples are to be shipped or stored for more than a few weeks.

Sample Sorting

A requirement of all benthic-invertebrate methods is to separate the invertebrates from sediment and detritus in the samples. The following general apparatus, reagents, and procedures for sample sorting apply to all methods in this section.

Apparatus

A.1 Dishes, glass, petri, or Syracuse watchglasses.

A.2 Forceps that have fine or rounded points. Forceps that have fine points are useful for handling small invertebrates. Forceps that have rounded points are less likely to tear netting or puncture the mesh of sieves or other sampling equipment.

A.3 Hydrometer, plain form, range 1.000 to 1.220.

A.4 Ink, waterproof.

A.5 Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

A.6 Microscope, stereoscopic variable power, 7X to 30X, and microscope illuminator.

A.7 Pipet, wide-bore.

A.8 Scoops, fine-mesh, made in various sizes and shapes, as needed, from pieces of brass or stainless-steel wire mesh attached to a handle. A convenient handle for the scoops is an X-Acto knife handle, or equivalent.

A.9 Sieves, U.S. Standard, 20-cm diameter, and mesh size appropriate to the study objectives. The no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) has been adopted for retaining benthic invertebrates collected as part of the water-quality programs of the U.S. Geological Survey. Sieves that have smaller or larger mesh may be more suitable for some studies. The no. 18 sieve (1,000-µm mesh opening) is useful for removing large rocks and sticks from samples. Stainless-steel mesh is recommended for all sieves because of its greater durability compared to brass.

A.10 Subsampler jar (Hynes, 1970, p. 244). Divide the bottom of a screw-topped jar into equal quadrants about 2 cm deep by embedding thin cardboard or plastic in paraffin.

A.11 Tape, plastic, or paraffin for sealing jar and vial lids.

A.12 Trays, white enamel. Useful sizes are 30×19×5 cm and 42×26×6 cm.

A.13 Vials that have poly seal screw lids. Convenient sizes are 7.5-, 15-, and 22-mL capacity.

Reagents

R.1 Rose Bengal biological stain.

R.2 Sucrose solution, specific gravity 1.12, for density separation of invertebrates from the debris in benthic samples. Dissolve 360 g granulated sugar per liter of water.

Procedure

P.1 If the study objectives require determination only of the most abundant benthic invertebrates, sorting often can be completed onsite. Wash the sample gently in a sieve of appropriate mesh size to remove mud and fine detritus. Pick the invertebrates directly from the sampled material; or, to enhance visibility of small invertebrates, cover the sample with water in a white enamel tray and stir repeatedly while removing the invertebrates using forceps or scoops.

P.2 Generally, sorting must be done in the laboratory. Pour small quantities of the sample into a shallow dish, covering the material with water, and scan the dish under low-power magnification (7X to 10X). Remove the invertebrates from the debris using forceps, fine-mesh scoops, or wide-bore pipets.

The sorting process is very time consuming for many types of collections. The optional steps described in the following paragraphs may be used to speed the work when the study objectives require complete analysis.

P.3 Density separation (optional). This step consists of treating the sample with a solution of such density that most of the invertebrates will float, and most of the unwanted detritus will sink. The recommended method employs a sucrose solution that has a specific gravity of 1.12 (Anderson, 1959; Lackey and May, 1971).

Drain the sample in a no. 70 or other appropriate sieve, discard the liquid, and transfer the residue to a white enamel tray. Flood the material in the tray with the sugar solution, and stir so the material is evenly spread over the bottom. Remove invertebrates quickly from the surface of the liquid using forceps, fine-mesh scoops, or wide-bore pipets. After removing all visible invertebrates, stir the material and remove any other invertebrates that appear. Pour the sugar solution through the sieve and cover the residue in the tray with water. Examine as described in P.2 looking carefully for oligochaete worms, for aquatic mites, and for heavier invertebrates, such as mollusks and caddisfly larvae. After this examination, pour the water through the sieve and repeat the sucrose treatment. Few invertebrates should be found but, if large numbers are seen, soak the sample in water and again treat with the sugar solution. Reuse the sugar solution by adjusting the specific gravity to 1.12 as determined using a hydrometer. However, the solution spoils rapidly and should not be stored for more than a few days.

P.4 Differential staining (optional). Separation of invertebrates, especially transparent forms, from detritus in the samples is facilitated by staining them red using 200 mg/L of Rose Bengal added to the preservative solution. Expose the invertebrates to the stain for at least 24 hours before examination. Prolonged contact with the stain may result in uptake of the red color by algae and plant detritus. If necessary to restore natural coloration for identification, remove the stain from the invertebrates by placing them in 95-percent ethyl alcohol (Mason and Yevich, 1967). A counterstaining technique in which Rose Bengal or Lugol's solution is counterstained with chlorazol black may be used to provide a definite color contrast between invertebrates and detritus (Williams and Williams, 1974).

P.5 Subsampling (optional). Some benthic samples are so large, or contain such large numbers of invertebrates, that sorting or counting the entire sample is impractical. Remove the larger invertebrates and pieces of detritus from the entire sample. Transfer the remainder of the sample to a screw-topped subsampler jar and add 70-percent alcohol to a depth of 10 to 12 cm. Close the jar and invert several times to mix thoroughly, then wait until the invertebrates have settled. Remove the contents of any two opposite quadrants using a wide-bore pipet to obtain one-half of the original sample. Repeat the process on one-half of the sample if further subsampling is required before sorting and counting.

References Cited

Albrecht, M. L., 1959, Die quantitative untersuchung der bodenfauna fliessender gewässer (undersuchungsmethoden und arbeitsergebnisse): Zeitschrift Furfischerei, v. 8, p. 481-550.

Allan, J. D., 1975, The distributional ecology and diversity of benthic insects in Cement Creek, Colorado: Ecology, v. 56, p. 1040-1053.

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Anderson, R. O., 1959, A modified flotation technique for sorting bottom fauna samplers: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 4, p. 223-225.

Armitage, P. D., Machale, A. M., and Crisp, D. C., 1974, A survey of stream invertebrates in the Cow Green basin (upper Teesdale) before inundation: Freshwater Biology, v. 4, p. 369-398.

Armitage, P. D., Furse, M. T., Wright, J. F., and Moss, D., 1981, An appraisal of pond-net samples for biological monitoring of lotic macroinvertebrates: Water Research (U.K.), v. 15, p. 679-689.

Barnes, H., 1959, Apparatus and methods of oceanography: New York, Interscience Publication, 341 p.

Beak, T. W., Griffing, T. C., and Appleby, A. G., 1973, Use of artificial substrate samplers to assess water pollution, in Cairns, John, Jr., and Dickson, K. L., eds., Biological methods for the assessment of water quality: American Society for Testing and Materials Technical Publication 528, p. 227-241.

Bergersen, E. P., and Galat, D. L., 1975, Coniferous tree bark--A lightweight substitute for limestone rock in barbeque basket macroinvertebrate samplers: Water Research (U.K.), v. 9, p. 729-731.

Besch, W., 1966, Driftnetz methode und biologische Fliess-wasseruntersuchung: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 16, p. 669-678.
Bishop, J. E., 1973, Observations on the vertical distribution of the benthos in a Malaysian stream: Freshwater Biology, v. 3, p. 147-156.
Brinkhurst, R. O., 1967, Sampling the benthos: Toronto, University of Toronto, Great Lakes Institute, PR 32, 6 p.
Brinkhurst, R. O., Chua, K. E., and Batoosingh, E., 1969, Modifications in sampling procedures as applied to studies on the bacteria and tubificid oligochaetes inhabiting aquatic sediments: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 26, p. 2,581-2,593.
Bull, C. J., 1968, A bottom fauna sampler for use in stony streams: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 30, p. 119-120.
Cairns, John, Jr., ed., 1982, Artificial substrates: Ann Arbor, Mich., Ann Arbor Science, 279 p.
Cairns, John, Jr., and Dickson, K. L., eds., 1973, Biological methods for the assessment of water quality: American Society for Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication 528, 256 p.
Cole, G. A., 1953, Notes on the vertical distribution of organisms in the profundal sediments of Douglas Lake, Michigan: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, p. 252-256.
Coleman, M. J., and Hynes, H. B. N., 1970, The vertical distribution of the invertebrate fauna in the bed of a stream: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 15, no. 1, p. 31-40.
Coutant, C. C., 1964, Insecticide sevin--Effect of aerial spraying on drift of stream insects: Science, v. 146, p. 420-421.
Cummins, K. W., 1962, An evaluation of some techniques for the collection and analysis of benthic samples with special emphasis on lotic waters: American Midland Naturalist, v. 67, p. 477-504.
_____1966, A review of stream ecology with special emphasis on organism-substrate relationships, in Cummins, K. W., Tryon, C. A., and Hartman, R. T., eds., Organism-substrate relationships in streams: Pittsburgh, University of Pittsburgh Special Publication no. 4, p. 2-51.
_____1975, Macroinvertebrates, in Whitton, B. A., ed., River ecology: Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, p. 170-198.
Davis, H. S., 1938, Instructions for conducting stream and lake surveys: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Circular 36, 55 p.
Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.
Elliott, J. M., 1970, Methods of sampling invertebrate drift in running water: Annales de Limnologie, v. 6, p. 133-159.
_____1971a, Some methods for the statistical analysis of samples of benthic invertebrates: Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication 25, 144 p.
_____1971b, The distances travelled by drifting invertebrates in a Lake District stream: Oecologia (Berlin), v. 6, p. 350-379.
Elliott, J. M., and Drake, C. M., 1981a, A comparative study of seven grabs used for sampling benthic macroinvertebrates in rivers: Freshwater Biology, v. 11, p. 99-120.
_____1981b, A comparative study of four dredges used for sampling benthic macroinvertebrates in rivers: Freshwater Biology, v. 11, p. 245-261.

Elliott, J. M., Drake, C. M., and Tullett, P. A., 1980, The choice of a suitable sampler for benthic macroinvertebrates in deep rivers: Pollution Report of the Department of the Environment, United Kingdom, v. 8, p. 36-44.

Elliott, J. M., and Tullett, P. A., 1978, A bibliography of samplers for benthic invertebrates: Occasional Publications of the Freshwater Biological Association 4, 61 p.

Eriksen, C. H., 1963, A method for obtaining interstitial water from shallow aquatic substrates and determining the oxygen concentration: Ecology, v. 44, p. 191-193.

Fast, A. W., 1968, A drag dredge: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 30, p. 57-61.

Ferreira, R. F., and Hoffman, R. J., 1978, Observations of water quality in the mixed reach below the confluence of the Sacramento and Feather Rivers, California, August and November 1975: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Resources Investigations 77-91, 39 p.

Ford, J. B., 1962, The vertical distribution of larval Chironomidae (Diptera) in the mud of a stream: Hydrobiologia, v. 19, no. 3, p. 262-272.

Frost, S., Huni, A., and Kershaw, W. E., 1971, Evaluation of a kicking technique for sampling stream bottom fauna: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, p. 167-173.

Fullner, R. W., 1971, A comparison of macroinvertebrates collected by basket and modified multiple-plate samplers: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 43, no. 3, pt. 1, p. 494-499.

Gerking, S. D., 1957, A method of sampling the littoral macrofauna and its application: Ecology, v. 38, p. 219-226.

Hart, C. W., Jr., and Fuller, S. L. H., eds., 1974, Pollution ecology of freshwater invertebrates: New York, Academic Press, 389 p.

Hedgpeth, J. W., ed., 1957, Treatise on marine ecology and paleoecology, v. 1--Ecology: Geological Society of America Memoir 67, 1,296 p.

Hellawell, J. M., 1978, Biological surveillance of rivers: Stevenage, England, Water Research Centre, 332 p.

Hemsen, J., 1956, Die organismische Drift in Fliessgewässern: Osterrichifche Fischerei, v. 9, p. 81-83.

Holme, N. A., and McIntyre, A. D., eds., 1971, Methods for the study of marine benthos: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 16, 346 p.

Hynes, H. B. N., 1960, The biology of polluted waters: Liverpool, Liverpool University Press, 202 p.

_____ 1961, The invertebrate fauna of a Welsh mountain stream: Archives Hydrobiology, v. 57, p. 344-388.

_____1964, The interpretation of biological data with reference to water quality: U.S. Public Health Service Publication 999-AP-15, p. 289-298.

_____1970, The ecology of running waters: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 555 p.

Jacobi, G. Z., 1971, A quantitative artificial substrate sampler for benthic macroinvertebrates: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 100, p. 136-138.

Jónasson, P. M., 1955, The efficiency of sieving techniques for sampling freshwater bottom fauna: Oikos, v. 6, p. 183-207.

_____1958, The mesh factor in sieving techniques: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 13, p. 860-866.

Lackey, R. T., and May, B. E., 1971, Use of sugar flotation and dye to sort benthic samples: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 100, p. 794-797.
Larimore, R. W., 1974, Stream drift as an indication of water quality: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 103, p. 507-517.
Lenz, F., 1931, Untersuchungen über die Vertikalverteilund der Bodenfauna im Tiefensediment von Seen. Ein neuer Bodengreifer mit Zerteilungsvorrichtung: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 5, p. 232-260.
Leopold, L. B., 1970, An improved method for size and distribution of stream bed gravel: Water Resources Research, v. 6, p. 1357-1366.
Lium, B. W., 1974, Some aspects of aquatic insect populations of pools and riffles in gravel bed streams in western United States: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 2, no. 3, p. 379-384.
Macan, T. T., 1958, Methods of sampling the bottom fauna in stony streams: Mitteilungen Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, no. 8, p. 1-21.
_____1963, Freshwater ecology: New York, John Wiley and Sons, 338 p.
Mason, W. T., Jr., Lewis, P. A., and Hudson, P. L., 1975, The influence of sieve mesh size selectivity on benthic invertebrate indices of eutrophication: Verhandlung Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, v. 19, p. 1550-1561.
Mason, W. T., Jr., Weber, C. I., Lewis, P. A., and Julian, E. C., 1973, Factors affecting the performance of basket and multiplate macroinvertebrate samplers: Freshwater Biology, v. 3., p. 409-436.
Mason, W. T., Jr., and Yevish, P. P., 1967, The use of Phloxine B and Rose Bengal stains to facilitate sorting benthic samples: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 86, p. 221-223.
McDaniel, M. D., 1974, Design and preliminary evaluation of an improved artificial substrate sampler for aquatic macroinvertebrates: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 36, p. 23-25.
McLay, Colin, 1970, A theory concerning the distance travelled by animals entering the drift of a stream: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 27, p. 359-370.
Morgan, N. C., and Egglishaw, H. J., 1965, A survey of the bottom fauna of streams in the Scottish Highlands, Part 1--Composition of the fauna: Hydrobiologia, v. 25, no. 1, p. 181-211.
Müller, Karl, 1974, Stream drift as a chronobiological phenomenon in running water ecosystems: Annual Review of Ecology and Systematics, v. 5, p. 309-323.
Mundie, J. H., 1971, Sampling benthos and substrate materials, down to 50 microns in size, in shallow streams: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 849-860.
Needham, J. G., and Needham, P. R., 1962, A guide to the study of fresh-water biology (5th ed., revised): San Francisco, Holden-Day, Inc., 108 p.
Newlon, T. A., and Rabe, F. W., 1977, Comparison of macroinvertebrate samplers and the relationship of environmental factors to biomass and diversity variability in a small watershed: Moscow, University of Idaho, Idaho Water Resources Research Institute, Research Technical Completion Report Project A-049-IDA, 26 p.
Rabini, C. F., and Gibbs, K. E., 1978, Comparison of two methods used by divers for sampling benthic invertebrates in deep rivers: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 35, p. 332-336.

Rosenberg, D. M., and Resh, V. H., 1982, The use of artificial substrates in the study of freshwater benthic macroinvertebrates, in Cairns, John, Jr., ed., Artificial substrates: Ann Arbor, Mich., Ann Arbor Science, p. 175-235.

Schwoerbel, Jürgen, 1970, Methods of hydrobiology (freshwater biology): Oxford, London, and Toronto, Pergamon Press, Ltd., 200 p.

Slack, K. V., 1955, A study of the factors affecting stream productivity by the comparative method: Bloomington, Indiana University, Investigations of Indiana Lakes and Streams, v. 4, p. 3-47.

Slack, K. V., Nauman, J. W., and Tilley, L. J., 1976, Evaluation of three collecting methods for a reconnaissance of stream benthic invertebrates: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 4, no. 4, p. 491-495.

Southwood, T. R. E., 1966, Ecological methods with particular reference to the study of insect populations: London, Chapman and Hall, 391 p.

Usinger, R. L., and Needham, P. R., 1956, A drag-type riffle-bottom sampler: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 18, p. 42-44.

Voshell, J. R., Jr., and Simmons, G. M., Jr., 1977, An evaluation of artificial substrates for sampling macrobenthos in reservoirs: Hydrobiologia, v. 53, p. 257-269.

Warren, C. E., 1971, Biology and water pollution control: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 434 p.

Waters, T. F., 1961, Standing crop and drift of stream bottom organisms: Ecology, v. 42, p. 532-537.

_____1965, Interpretation of invertebrate drift in streams: Ecology, v. 46, p. 327-334.

_____1969a, The turnover ratio in production ecology of freshwater invertebrates: American Naturalist, v. 103, p. 173-185.

_____1969b, Invertebrate drift-ecology and significance to stream fishes, in Northcote, T. G., ed., Symposium on salmon and trout in streams: Vancouver, University of British Columbia, p. 121-134.

_____1972, The drift of stream insects: Annual Review of Entomology, v. 17, p. 253-272.

Weber, C. I., ed., 1973, Biological field and laboratory methods for measuring the quality of surface waters and effluents: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Series EPA-670/4-73-001, 19 p.

Welch, P. S., 1948, Limnological methods: Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 381 p.

Williams, D. D., and Williams, N. E., 1974, A counterstaining technique for use in sorting benthic samples: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 19, no. 1, p. 152-154.

Wilson, R. S., and Bright, P. L., 1973, The use of chironomid pupal exuvia for characterizing streams: Freshwater Biology, v. 3, p. 283-302.

Wojtalik, T. A., and Waters, T. F., 1970, Some effects of heated water on the drift of two species of stream invertebrates: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society , v. 99, p. 782-788.

Faunal Survey (Qualitative Method)
(B-5001-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

1. Applications

The method is applicable to all water.

2. Summary of method

Benthic invertebrates are collected by hand, dip net, dredge, or any other procedure appropriate to the environmental conditions and to the objectives of the study. The sampling equipment described in the following methods may be used to ensure that all habitats are sampled. Unsorted samples, usually containing varying quantities of sand, gravel, and plant detritus, are preserved onsite. In the laboratory, the benthic invertebrates are sorted from the extraneous material, identified, and counted. Results are reported as numbers of different kinds of benthic invertebrates (taxa) and the relative abundance of each taxon at different sites or times.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity and depth of water, may interfere with sample collection. Most samples contain relatively large quantities of sediment and plant debris from which the benthic invertebrates must be sorted.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Biological dredge (fig. 21). The design depends on environmental conditions and study requirements.

4.2 Dip or hand nets are made in various shapes and sizes, are sturdy in design, and have a flat side for pressing the net closely against the streambed. Commercial nets are available in various materials and mesh sizes. The desired material and mesh opening should be specified when ordering. Dip nets for general use in the U.S. Geological Survey should have bags of 210±2-µm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives.

4.3 Forceps that have fine or rounded points. Forceps that have fine points are useful for handling small invertebrates. Forceps that have rounded points are less likely to tear netting or puncture the mesh of sieves or other sampling equipment. Forceps are less likely to be lost onsite if marked with bright paint or colored tape.

4.4 Gloves, waterproof, Trapper's, shoulder length.

4.5 Ink, waterproof.

4.6 Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.7 Microscope, stereoscopic variable power, 7X to 30X, and microscope illuminator. A compound microscope of at least 200X magnification also is useful for taxonomic work.

4.8 Pipe dredge (fig. 22). This simple device, or a modification, is useful for collection of benthic invertebrates in swift, rocky rivers. Commercial dredges weigh 25 kg, but smaller and lighter versions can be made for special purposes. For collecting benthos, the dredge may be constructed without a bottom and with a sturdy mesh bag secured over the rear opening by a hose clamp.

4.9 Sample containers, plastic or glass, and plastic lids, for transporting unsorted samples to the laboratory. Wide-mouth jars of 120-, 240-, and 475-mL capacity are useful sizes. Sealable plastic bags also may be used for temporary storage of benthic-invertebrate samples.

4.10 Sieves, U.S. Standard, 20-cm diameter, and mesh size appropriate to the study objectives. The no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) has been selected for retaining benthic invertebrates collected as part of the water-quality programs of the U.S. Geological Survey. Sieves that have smaller or larger mesh may be more suitable for some studies. The no. 18 sieve (1,000-µm mesh opening) is useful for removing large rocks and sticks from samples. Stainless-steel mesh is recommended for all sieves because of its greater durability compared to brass.

4.11 Tape, plastic, or paraffin for sealing jar and vial lids.

4.12 Vials that have plastic poly seal screw lids. Convenient sizes are 7.5-, 15-, and 22-mL capacity.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Glycerin.

5.3 Preservative solutions. Invertebrate samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol, 70-percent isopropyl alcohol, or 4-percent formaldehyde. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.3.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.3.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.3.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3.4 Formaldehyde. Dilute 10 mL 37- to 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

Identify and count the benthic invertebrates in the sample according to taxonomic categories. The degree of identification required (species level is desirable) varies depending on the objectives of the study. A stereoscopic microscope is required; and, for some groups, dissections or microscopic mounts are needed to observe key characteristics. Appropriate reference books (Part 3, "Selected Taxonomic References" section of this report) should be available. The different categories of invertebrates can be placed in separate vials of 70-percent ethyl or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol, and can be labeled with the name of the invertebrate and the identification number, date, and origin of the sample. Add a few drops of glycerin or use the ethyl alcohol-glycerin preservative, and seal vial caps if the specimens are to be stored.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample is sorted or counted, project the results from the subsample to the number of specimens in the total sample:

$$\text{Total number of benthic invertebrates of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report the number of taxa present, the percent composition of each taxon in the sample, and the type of sampling method(s) used.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

None.

Numerical Assessment (Relative or Semiquantitative Method) (B-5020-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Invertebrates, benthic, wet weight (g/m^2):	70940
Invertebrates, benthic, dry weight (g/m^2):	70941
Invertebrates, benthic, ash weight (g/m^2):	70942
Invertebrates, benthic, total ($organisms/m^2$):	70943

This method assumes that the objective is to compare the kinds and relative abundances of taxa in samples from several sites or on different sampling dates. The differences between samples are assumed to be directly proportional to differences between the sites or dates. The artificial-substrate method is recommended when collections must be made by persons inexperienced in biology. The procedures described in the "Distribution and Abundance (Quantitative Method)" section also are applicable to sample collection from homogeneous substrates.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to all water and especially is useful for indicating water-quality trends or differences between sites.

2. Summary of method

Benthic invertebrates are collected using uniform procedures throughout a wide area or collected from small, homogeneous areas at sites that are to be compared. Sampling methods include collecting samples, using a dip net, in a standardized manner or for a definite period of time, collecting samples from individual rocks, and using artificial substrates. Unsorted samples, usually containing varying quantities of sand, gravel, and plant detritus, are preserved onsite. In the laboratory, the benthic invertebrates are sorted from the extraneous material, identified, and counted. Biomass is determined if appropriate to the study objectives. Results are reported as numbers of different kinds of benthic invertebrates (taxa) and relative abundance of each taxon for the total collection or for a particular habitat or artificial substrate. Biomass is reported as wet, dry, ash, or ash-free weight.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity, depth of water, and large rocks, may interfere with sampling in natural substrates. In these places, artificial substrates may provide adequate samples. However, because all sampling methods are selective, all the collections for a particular study must be done in a uniform way. Most samples contain sediment and plant debris from which the invertebrates must be separated. Losses of artificial-substrate samplers to environmental hazards or vandalism may preclude their use at some sites.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial-substrate float, consisting of a 0.6-m length of polyvinylchloride (PVC) tubing that has a 5-cm inside diameter (ID) and ends sealed (fig. 25). Two clear Plexiglas stabilizer fins are attached near one end and an eyebolt at the other end. One to three multiple-plate samplers are suspended on rods below the float to a depth of 0.3 m measured from the water surface to the midpoint of each sampler.

4.2 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.3 Barbecue-basket artificial-substrate sampler (Mason and others, 1967), a cylindrical, welded-wire basket, about 18 cm in diameter and 28 cm long. The basket is filled with 30 rocks, 5 to 8 cm in diameter, or with porcelain spheres that provide interstices for invertebrate colonization and weight for stability (fig. 27). The basket may be placed on the bottom, or it may be suspended above the bottom from a fixed structure or a surface float. A suitable float is a 19-L metal container filled with polyurethane foam.

4.4 Brush, soft-bristle, for scrubbing invertebrates from rocks.

4.5 Collapsible-basket artificial-substrate sampler (Bull, 1968), consisting of a commercially manufactured basket of coiled wire, bolted to a metal or plastic rim made from 38×3.3 mm stock (fig. 28). The basket is filled with gravel or rock and is covered by a bag of 210±2-μm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives. The basket collapses when lowered onto the streambed but assumes its original shape when raised. The surrounding net prevents escape of invertebrates.

4.6 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.7 Dip or hand nets are made in various shapes and sizes, are sturdy in design, and have a flat side for pressing the net closely against the streambed. Commercial nets are available in various materials and mesh sizes. The desired material and mesh opening should be specified when ordering. Dip nets for general use in the U.S. Geological Survey should have bags of 210±2-μm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives.

4.8 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.9 Forceps that have fine or rounded points. Forceps that have fine points are useful for handling small invertebrates. Forceps that have rounded points are less likely to tear netting or puncture the mesh of sieves or other sampling equipment. Forceps are less likely to be lost onsite if marked with bright paint or colored tape.

4.10 Gloves, waterproof, Trapper's, shoulder length.

4.11 Ink, waterproof.

4.12 Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.13 Lium sampler for individual rocks (Lium, 1974; fig. 23). The sampler consists of a 16-gauge sheet metal hood and an attached conical screen of 210-µm stainless-steel mesh. The base of the hood is padded with flexible foam rubber encased in nylon. The overall dimensions of the sampler are 65 cm long and 45 cm high, including the handle and a base area of 929 cm^2.

4.14 Microscope, stereoscopic variable power, 7X to 30X, and microscope illuminator. A compound microscope of at least 200X magnification also is useful for taxonomic work.

4.15 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.16 Multiple-plate artificial-substrate sampler, jumbo modification (Fullner, 1971). The sampler consists of fourteen 7.6-cm square or circular plates of 3.3-mm thick tempered hardboard separated by one or more 2.54-cm square or circular spacers of the same material (fig. 24). Plates 1 to 9 are separated by a single hardboard spacer, plates 9 and 10 are separated by two spacers, plates 10 to 12 are separated by three spacers, and plates 12 to 14 are separated by four spacers. The plates and spacers are held together by a 6.4-mm diameter by 20-cm eyebolt that passes through a hole drilled in the center of each piece.

4.17 Porcelain crucibles.

4.18 Retrieval net for multiple-plate sampler (fig. 26). It is a rectangular bag made from a 38-cm square of 210±2-µm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives. The screen-cloth square is folded in half and stitched along two sides. A nylon drawstring serves to secure the top of the net around the eyebolt of the sampler.

4.19 Sample containers, plastic or glass, and plastic lids, for transporting unsorted samples to the laboratory. Wide-mouth jars of 120-, 240-, and 475-mL capacity are useful sizes. Sealable plastic bags also may be used for temporary storage of benthic-invertebrate samples.

4.20 Sieves, U.S. Standard, 20-cm diameter, and mesh size appropriate to the study objectives. The no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) has been selected for retaining benthic invertebrates collected as part of the water-quality programs of the U.S. Geological Survey. Sieves that have smaller or larger mesh may be more suitable for some studies. The no. 18 sieve (1,000-µm mesh opening) is useful for removing large rocks and sticks from samples. Stainless-steel mesh is recommended for all sieves because of its greater durability compared to brass.

4.21 Tub or bucket for washing samples or sampling equipment onsite.

4.22 Vials that have plastic poly seal screw lids. Convenient sizes are 7.5-, 15-, and 22-mL capacity.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Glycerin.

5.3 Preservative solutions. Invertebrate samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol, 70-percent isopropyl alcohol, or 4-percent formaldehyde. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.3.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.3.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.3.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.3.4 Formaldehyde. Dilute 10 mL 37- to 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

6.1 Identify and count the benthic invertebrates in the sample according to taxonomic categories. The degree of identification required (species level is desirable) varies depending on the objectives of the study. A stereoscopic microscope is required; and, for some groups, dissections or microscopic mounts are needed to observe key characteristics. Appropriate reference books (Part 3, "Selected Taxonomic References" section of this report) should be available. The different categories of invertebrates can be placed in separate vials of 70-percent ethyl or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol and can be labeled with the name of the invertebrate and the identification number, date, and origin of the sample. Add a few drops of glycerin or use the ethyl alcohol-glycerin preservative, and seal vial caps if the specimens are to be stored.

6.2 The biomass of benthic invertebrates, expressed as wet, dry, ash, or ash-free weight, is best determined from samples that were frozen immediately after collection. Biomass determined from alcohol-preserved samples is much less satisfactory (Howmiller, 1972; Stanford, 1973; Donald and Patterson, 1977).

Although generally determined from a total sample, biomass may be determined for an individual taxon. Cases or houses, such as caddisfly larval cases, must be removed from the sample, but shells of mollusks and crustaceans can remain in the sample. If shelled animals constitute 50 percent of the total weight, their weights may be reported separately if only wet weight is

required. Separation of the shelled animals is not necessary if wet, dry, and ash weights are to be determined because the ash weight will include the weight of the shells.

6.3 To determine wet weight, remove external water from the invertebrates by blotting for 1 minute on filter paper. Subdivide clumps of invertebrates, but do not separate individuals during blotting. Weigh to 0.1 mg. An alternative method for removing excess liquid is the centrifuge method described by Stanford (1973).

6.4 To determine dry weight, place the invertebrates in a tared porcelain crucible, and dry in an oven at 105 °C to constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg. Lower drying temperatures (60 °C) sometimes are used when there is danger of erroneously small values resulting from volatilization or decomposition of fats (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971).

6.5 To determine ash weight, heat the crucible and sample at 500 °C in a muffle furnace to constant weight. Allow at least 1 hour, but some samples will require longer times. Cool and rewet the ash using distilled water to restore the water of hydration of clays and other minerals that may have been lost. Dry at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample is sorted or counted, project the results from the subsample to the number of specimens in the total sample:

$$\text{Total number of benthic invertebrates of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

7.3 Wet weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per sample)

$$= \frac{\text{Wet weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Number of samples}} .$$

7.4 Dry weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per sample)

$$= \frac{\text{Dry weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Number of samples}} .$$

7.5 Ash weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per sample)

$$= \frac{\text{Ash weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Number of samples}} .$$

7.6 Ash-free weight (loss on ignition) of benthic invertebrates (grams per sample)

= Dry weight (grams per sample) - ash weight (grams per sample) .

7.7 Results of sampling from individual rocks are expressed as benthic invertebrates per projected area (aspect) of rock or per total rock surface:

Benthic invertebrates per square meter of projected rock surface

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates collected from rock}}{\text{Length of longest axis of rock (millimeters)} \times \text{length of intermediate axis of rock (millimeters)}} \times 10^6 ;$$

Benthic invertebrates per square centimeter of total rock surface

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates collected from rock}}{\pi\,[\text{length of intermediate axis of rock (millimeters)}]^2} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

8.1 Report the number of taxa present, the percentage composition of each taxon in the sample, and the type of sampling method(s) used. Report biomass to two significant figures.

8.2 Report results in terms of the total sample collected at each sampling site, in a particular habitat, or from the artificial-substrate sampler(s).

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Bull, C. J., 1968, A bottom fauna sampler for use in stony streams: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 30, p. 119-120.

Donald, G. L., and Patterson, C. G., 1977, Effect of preservation on wet weight biomass of Chironomidae larvae: Hydrobiologia, v. 53, no. 1, p. 75-80.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.

Fullner, R. W., 1971, A comparison of macroinvertebrates collected by basket and modified multiple-plate samplers: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 43, no. 3, pt. 1, p. 494-499.

Howmiller, R. P., 1972, Effects of preservatives on weights of some common macrobenthic invertebrates: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 101, p. 743-746.

Lium, B. W., 1974, Some aspects of aquatic insect populations of pools and riffles in gravel bed streams in western United States: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 2, no. 3, p. 379-384.

Mason, W. T., Jr., Anderson, J. B., and Morrison, G. E., 1967, A limestone-filled, artificial substrate sampler-float unit for collecting macroinvertebrates in large streams: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 29, p. 74.

Stanford, J. A., 1973, A centrifuge method for determining live weights of aquatic insect larvae, with a note on weight loss in preservative: Ecology, v. 54, p. 449-451.

Distribution and Abundance (Quantitative Method)
(B-5040-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Invertebrates, benthic, wet weight (g/m^2):	70940
Invertebrates, benthic, dry weight (g/m^2):	70941
Invertebrates, benthic, ash weight (g/m^2):	70942
Invertebrates, benthic, total ($organisms/m^2$):	70943

1. Applications

This method is used in studies of biological productivity of benthic-invertebrate populations or communities. It is applicable to all natural water.

2. Summary of method

Benthic invertebrates are collected from a defined area using a suitable procedure for removing samples of a known size. A sufficient number of samples is desired to ensure that most of the taxa present are included. Unsorted samples, usually containing varying quantities of sand, gravel, and plant detritus, are preserved onsite. In the laboratory, the benthic invertebrates are separated from the extraneous material, identified, and counted or weighed. Results are reported as numbers of different kinds of benthic invertebrates (taxa) and numbers of individuals in each taxon per unit area of bottom. Biomass is reported as wet, dry, ash, or ash-free weight per unit area of bottom.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity, depth of water, and large rocks, may interfere with sampling. Most samples contain relatively large quantities of sediment and plant debris from which the invertebrates must be separated. The principal interference with quantitative sampling, however, is the heterogeneity of aquatic habitats and the temporal and spatial variability of the benthic-invertebrate populations (Hynes, 1970).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.2 Box, drum, or stream-bottom fauna sampler (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971, p. 69). This is a strong, metal cylinder open at the top and bottom that can be pushed into the sediment to isolate a definite area. The bottom of the cylinder may have a compressible edge to seal against the irregularities of the bed, or the edge may have triangular teeth about 4 cm long, which cut into the bed as the sampler is rotated. Cylindrical samplers can be lengths of stovepipe or 30-cm-diameter aluminum irrigation pipe (Weber, 1973), or they can be constructed to enclose any convenient area as defined by the study objectives and the size of the bed materials. A sample area of 900 to 1,000 cm^2 is common. The maximum practical height for the box is about

75 cm because the collector must be able to reach the bottom with the hands. One of various modifications of the solid cylinder is shown in figure 29. Other modifications are described by Welch (1948), Gerking (1957), Macan (1958), and Waters and Knapp (1961). Depending on the degree of resistance offered to water flow, these devices decrease the tendency for the sampler to cause scour as it approaches the bottom of a stream. Netting should be 210±2-μm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives.

4.3 Brush, soft-bristle, small dip net of appropriate mesh opening, and a garden trowel or small digging fork are needed for removing the invertebrates from the substrate enclosed by several of the samplers.

4.4 Corer, K.B.-type (fig. 34), or equivalent. Extra weights are available to increase the depth of penetration, and when so used, a winch may be required. These corers have been designed so water passes through during descent but are closed during ascent to prevent loss of sample. In shallow water, a hand corer may be used.

4.5 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.6 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.7 Ekman grab, preferably the tall design (fig. 31), 15×15 cm square, 23 to 30 cm tall. Extra weights are available to increase the depth of penetration. In deep water, the grab is tripped using a messenger; whereas, in shallow water, the Ekman grab may be operated using a handle.

4.8 Forceps that have fine or rounded points. Forceps that have fine points are useful for handling small invertebrates. Forceps that have rounded points are less likely to tear netting or puncture the mesh of sieves or other sampling equipment. Forceps are less likely to be lost onsite if marked with bright paint or colored tape.

4.9 Gloves, waterproof, Trapper's, shoulder length.

4.10 Ink, waterproof.

4.11 Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.12 Microscope, stereoscopic variable power, 7X to 30X, and microscope illuminator. A compound microscope of at least 200X magnification also is useful for taxonomic work.

4.13 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.14 Ponar grab (fig. 32), or screen-top sediment sampler. These grabs trip on contact with the bottom and have been designed so water passes through to lessen the shock wave (Flannagan, 1970; Hudson, 1970). Word and others (1976) reported improved performance when the fixed panels were replaced by hinged screen panels. Accessory weights may be used, and these grabs should be operated with a winch. When empty, the grab is about 23 kg without weights and about 32 kg with weights.

4.15 Porcelain crucibles.

4.16 Sample containers, plastic or glass, and plastic lids, for transporting unsorted samples to the laboratory. Wide-mouth jars of 120-, 240-, and 475-mL capacity are useful sizes. Sealable plastic bags also may be used for temporary storage of benthic-invertebrate samples.

4.17 Sieves, U.S. Standard, 20-cm diameter, and mesh size appropriate to the study objectives. The no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) has been selected for retaining benthic invertebrates collected as part of the water-quality programs of the U.S. Geological Survey. Sieves that have smaller or larger mesh may be more suitable for some studies. The no. 18 sieve (1,000-µm mesh opening) is useful for removing large rocks and sticks from samples. Stainless-steel mesh is recommended for all sieves because of its greater durability compared to brass.

4.18 Surber sampler (fig. 30). This sampler commonly has been used in stream studies, although the enclosed box-type samplers, such as the portable invertebrate box sampler are preferred, if available. Modifications of the surber sampler (Waters and Knapp, 1961; Withers and Benson, 1962; Mundie, 1971) eliminated many deficiencies of the original design. Netting used in the construction or operation of these samplers should be 210±2-µm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives.

4.19 Tape, plastic, or paraffin for sealing jar and vial lids.

4.20 Tub or bucket for washing samples or sampling equipment onsite.

4.21 Van Veen grab (fig. 33), weighs 48 kg and may be loaded with additional weights. The grab has a capacity of 40 L and samples an area of 1,500 cm^2. Screened panels enable water to flow through during descent to lessen the shock wave on the bottom. Rubber flaps cover the screened openings to prevent sediment washout during recovery.

4.22 Vials that have plastic poly seal screw lids. Convenient sizes are 7.5-, 15-, and 22-mL capacity.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Glycerin.

5.3 Preservative solutions. Invertebrate samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol. Formaldehyde solution is not recommended. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.3.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.3.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.3.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

6.1 Identify and count the benthic invertebrates in the sample according to taxonomic categories. The degree of identification required (species level is desirable) varies depending on the objectives of the study. A stereoscopic microscope is required; and, for some groups, dissections or microscopic mounts may be needed to observe key characteristics. Appropriate reference books (Part 3, "Selected Taxonomic References" section of this report) should be available. The different categories of invertebrates can be placed in separate vials of 70-percent ethyl or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol and can be labeled with the name of the invertebrate and the identification number, date, and origin of the sample. Add a few drops of glycerin or use the ethyl alcohol-glycerin preservative, and seal vial caps if the specimens are to be stored.

6.2 The biomass of benthic invertebrates, expressed as wet, dry, ash, or ash-free weight, is best determined from samples that were frozen immediately after collection. Biomass determined from alcohol-preserved samples is much less satisfactory (Howmiller, 1972; Stanford, 1973; Donald and Patterson, 1977).

Although generally determined from the total sample, biomass may be determined for an individual taxon. Cases or houses, such as caddisfly larval cases, must be removed from the sample, but shells of mollusks and crustaceans can remain in the sample. If shelled animals constitute 50 percent of the total weight, their weights may be reported separately if only wet weight is required. Separation of the shelled animals is not necessary if wet, dry, and ash weights are to be determined because the ash weight will include the weight of the shells.

6.3 To determine wet weight, remove external water from the invertebrates by blotting for 1 minute on filter paper. Subdivide large clumps of invertebrates, but do not separate individuals during blotting. Weigh to 0.1 mg. An alternative method for removing excess liquid is the centrifuge method described by Stanford (1973).

6.4 To determine dry weight, place the invertebrates in a tared porcelain crucible, and dry in an oven at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg. Lower drying temperatures (60 °C) sometimes are used when there is danger of erroneously small values resulting from volatilization or decomposition of fats (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971).

6.5 To determine ash weight, heat the crucible and sample at 500 °C in a muffle furnace to a constant weight. Allow at least 1 hour, but some samples will require longer times. Cool and rewet the ash using distilled water to restore the water of hydration of clays and other minerals that may have been lost. Dry at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample is sorted or counted project the results from the subsample to the number of specimens in the total sample:

Total number of benthic invertebrates of a particular taxon in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Number of benthic invertebrates per square meter

$$= \frac{\text{Number of benthic invertebrates in all samples}}{\text{Area of sampler (square meters)} \times \text{number of samples}} .$$

7.3 Wet weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per square meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Wet weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Area of sampler (square meters)} \times \text{number of samples}} .$$

7.4 Dry weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per square meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Dry weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Area of sampler (square meters)} \times \text{number of samples}} .$$

7.5 Ash weight of benthic invertebrates (grams per square meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Ash weight of benthic invertebrates in all samples} + \text{weight of crucible (grams)} - \text{tare weight of crucible (grams)}}{\text{Area of sampler (square meters)} \times \text{number of samples}} .$$

7.6 Ash-free weight (loss on ignition) of benthic invertebrates (grams per square meter)

= Dry weight (grams per square meter) - ash weight (grams per square meter) .

8. Reporting of results

8.1 Report as follows: Less than 100 benthic invertebrates per square meter, nearest whole number; 100 benthic invertebrates or more, two significant figures. Report biomass to two significant figures.

8.2 Report results in terms of a unit area of the habitat sampled.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Donald, G. L., and Patterson, C. G., 1977, Effect of preservation on wet weight biomass of Chironomidae larvae: Hydrobiologia, v. 53, no. 1, p. 75-80.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.

Flanagan, J. F., 1970, Efficiencies of various grabs and corers in sampling freshwater benthos: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 27, p. 1691-1700.

Gerking, S. D., 1957, A method of sampling the littoral microfauna and its application: Ecology, v. 38, p. 219-226.

Howmiller, R. P., 1972, Effects of preservatives on weights of some common macrobenthic invertebrates: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 101, p. 743-746.

Hudson, P. L., 1970, Quantitative sampling with three benthic dredges: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 99, p. 603-607.

Hynes, H. B. N., 1970, The ecology of running waters: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 555 p.

Macan, T. T., 1958, Methods of sampling the bottom fauna in stony streams: Mitteilungen Internationale Vereinigung Limnologie, no. 8, p. 1-21.

Mundie, J. H., 1971, Sampling benthos and substrate materials, down to 50 microns in size, in shallow streams: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 849-860.

Stanford, J. A., 1973, A centrifuge method for determining live weights of aquatic insect larvae, with a note on weight loss in preservative: Ecology, v. 54, p. 449-451.

Waters, T. F., and Knapp, R. J., 1961, An improved bottom fauna sampler: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 90, p. 225-226.

Weber, C. I., ed., 1973, Biological field and laboratory methods for measuring the quality of surface waters and effluents: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Service EPA-670/4-73-001, 19 p.

Welch, P. S., 1948, Limnological methods: Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 381 p.

Withers, J. D., and Benson, Arnold, 1962, Evaluation of a modified Surber bottom fauna sampler: Proceedings of the West Virginia Academy of Science, v. 34, p. 16-20.

Word, J. Q., Kauwling, T. J., and Mearns, A. J., 1976, A comparative field study of benthic sampling devices used in southern California benthic surveys--A task report for EPA: Corvallis, Oreg., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA Grant R 801152, 79 p.

Invertebrate Drift
(B-5050-85)

Parameters and Codes: Not available

Because drifting invertebrates come from a variety of habitats, drift samples generally contain a large variety of taxa (Waters, 1961; Larimore, 1974; Slack and others, 1976). Benthic invertebrates respond to stresses of pollution, flood, drought, or insecticides by increased drifting; therefore, drift may be a useful indicator of water quality. Drift is a source of invertebrates for colonization of artificial-substrate samplers and for recolonization of depopulated areas of streams.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to all flowing water in which the velocity is at least 0.01 m/s.

2. Summary of method

Drifting invertebrates carried by flowing water are caught in a stationary net. Because the catch increases as the volume of water passing through the net increases, drift results are expressed as density (number of invertebrates or biomass per unit volume of water), as drift rate (number of invertebrates or biomass passing a sampling point in unit time), or as total daily drift rate (total number of invertebrates or biomass passing a given point in 24 hours).

3. Interferences

Drift nets may become clogged with ice, detritus, tree leaves, or sediment causing backflow and decreased sampling efficiency. If the opening of the net is in contact with the stream bottom, nondrifting invertebrates may be caught; if the opening extends above the surface, many adults and terrestrial invertebrates may be caught. Sufficient current must be present to carry the actively or passively drifting invertebrates into the net. If only naturally occurring drift rates are to be determined, nets should be installed upstream from disturbances caused by human activity, cattle, or other sources of artificially created invertebrate drift. Because drifting activity for many species varies greatly during a diel cycle, comparative collections should be made during similar time periods.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.2 Current meter, pygmy, or digital flowmeter.

4.3 Desiccator, containing silica gel or anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.4 Drift net (fig. 35) 30×30 cm, 15×30 cm, or 30×46 cm, that has anchor rods and clamps. Bag nets, 1 m or more in length, should have 210±2-µm mesh-opening nylon or polyester monofilament screen cloth, unless otherwise indicated by the study objectives. The percent open area of the netting should be as large as possible to facilitate flowthrough and decrease backflow. A net that is cylindrical for most of its length is less liable to clog than one that is tapered (Waters, 1969).

4.5 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.6 Forceps that have fine or rounded points. Forceps that have fine points are useful for handling small invertebrates. Forceps that have rounded points are less likely to tear netting or puncture the mesh of sieves or other sampling equipment. Forceps are less likely to be lost onsite if marked with bright paint or colored tape.

4.7 Ink, waterproof.

4.8 Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.9 Microscope, stereoscopic variable power, 7X to 30X, and microscope illuminator. A compound microscope of at least 200X magnification also is useful for taxonomic work.

4.10 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.11 Porcelain crucibles.

4.12 Sample containers, plastic or glass, and plastic lids, for transporting unsorted collections to the laboratory. Wide-mouth jars of 120-, 240-, and 475-mL capacity are useful sizes. Sealable plastic bags also may be used for temporary storage of benthic-invertebrate samples.

4.13 Sieves, U.S. Standard, 20-cm diameter, and mesh size appropriate to the study objectives. The no. 70 sieve (210-µm mesh opening) has been selected for retaining benthic invertebrates collected as part of the water-quality programs of the U.S. Geological Survey. Sieves that have smaller or larger mesh may be more suitable for some studies. The no. 18 sieve (1,000-µm mesh opening) is useful for removing large rocks and sticks from samples. Stainless-steel mesh is recommended for all sieves because of its greater durability compared to brass.

4.14 Tape, plastic, or paraffin for sealing jar and vial lids.

4.15 Vials that have plastic poly seal screw lids. Convenient sizes are 7.5-, 15-, and 22-mL capacity.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Glycerin.

5.3 Preservative solutions. Drift invertebrate samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.3.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.3.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.3.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

6.1 Identify and count the benthic invertebrates in the sample according to taxonomic categories. The degree of identification required (species level is desirable) varies depending on the objectives of the study. A stereoscopic microscope is required; and, for some groups, dissections or microscopic mounts are needed to observe key characteristics. Appropriate reference books (Part 3, "Selected Taxonomic References" section of this report) should be available. The different categories of invertebrates can be placed in separate vials of 70-percent ethyl or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol and can be labeled with the name of the invertebrate and the identification number, date, and origin of the sample. Add a few drops of glycerin or use the ethyl alcohol-glycerin preservative, and seal vial caps if the specimens are to be stored.

6.2 The biomass of drift invertebrates, expressed as wet, dry, ash, or ash-free weight, is best determined from samples that were frozen immediately after collection. Biomass determined from alcohol-preserved samples is much less satisfactory (Howmiller, 1972; Stanford, 1973; Donald and Patterson, 1977).

Although generally determined from the total sample, biomass may be determined for an individual taxon. Cases or houses, such as caddisfly larval cases, must be removed from the sample, but shells of mollusks and crustaceans can remain in the sample. If shelled animals constitute 50 percent of the total weight, their weights may be reported separately if only wet weight is required. Separation of the shelled animals is not necessary if wet, dry, and ash weights are to be determined because the ash weight will include the weight of the shells.

6.3 To determine wet weight, remove external water from the animals by blotting for 1 minute on filter paper. Subdivide large clumps of invertebrates, but do not separate individuals during blotting. Weigh to 0.1 mg. An alternative method of removing excess liquid is the centrifuge method described by Stanford (1973).

6.4 To determine dry weight, place the invertebrates in a tared porcelain crucible, and dry in an oven at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg. Lower drying temperatures (60 °C) sometimes are used when there is danger of erroneously small values resulting from volatilization or decomposition of fats (Edmondson and Winberg, 1971).

6.5 To determine ash weight, heat the crucible and sample at 500 °C in a muffle furnace to a constant weight. Allow at least 1 hour, but some samples will require longer times. Cool and rewet the ash using distilled water to restore the water of hydration of clays and other minerals that may have been lost. Dry at 105 °C to a constant weight. Cool in a desiccator and weigh to 0.1 mg.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample is sorted or counted, project the results from the subsample to the number of specimens in the total collection:

$$\text{Number of drift invertebrates of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of drift invertebrates of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of drift invertebrates of all taxa}} .$$

Weight calculations may be on a sample basis or a daily (24 hour) basis depending on the study objectives.

7.3 Wet weight of drift invertebrates (grams)

= Wet weight of drift invertebrates + crucible (grams)
- tare weight of crucible (grams) .

7.4 Dry weight of drift invertebrates (grams)

= Dry weight of drift invertebrates + crucible (grams)
- tare weight of crucible (grams) .

7.5 Ash weight of drift invertebrates (grams)

= Ash weight of drift invertebrates + crucible (grams)
- tare weight of crucible (grams) .

7.6 Ash-free weight (loss on ignition) of drift invertebrates (grams)

$$= \text{Dry weight (grams)} - \text{ash weight (grams)} .$$

Invertebrate drift density and rate may be expressed on a sample basis or a daily (24 hour) basis depending on the study objectives (Waters, 1969, 1972; Elliott, 1970).

7.7 Drift density (number or grams per cubic meter)

$$= \frac{\text{Quantity of drift invertebrates (number or grams)}}{\text{Volume of water sampled (cubic meters)}} .$$

7.8 Drift rate (number or grams per time)

$$= \frac{\text{Quantity of drift invertebrates (number or grams)}}{\text{Volume of water sampled (cubic meter)} \times \text{stream discharge (cubic meters per time)}} .$$

7.9 Total daily drift rate (number or grams per 24 hours)

$$= \frac{\text{Total daily quantity of drift invertebrates (number or grams)}}{\text{Volume of water sampled (cubic meters)} \times \text{total stream discharge (cubic meters per 24 hours)}} .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report drift quantity, taxa, and methods of collection for daylight samples. If sampling was done for 24 hours, report drift quantity and taxa per unit volume and time to indicate any periodicity that occurred. Describe methods of collection.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Donald, G. L., and Patterson, C. G., 1977, Effect of preservation on wet weight biomass of Chironomidae larvae: Hydrobiologia, v. 53, no. 1, p. 75-80.

Edmondson, W. T., and Winberg, G. G., eds., 1971, A manual on methods for the assessment of secondary productivity in fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 17, 358 p.

Elliott, J. M., 1970, Methods of sampling invertebrate drift in running water: Annales de Limnologie, v. 6, p. 133-159.

Howmiller, R. P., 1972, Effects of preservatives on weights of some common macrobenthic invertebrates: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 101, p. 743-746.

Larimore, R. W., 1974, Stream drift as an indication of water quality: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 103, p. 507-517.

Slack, K. V., Nauman, J. W., and Tilley, L. J., 1976, Evaluation of three collecting methods for a reconnaissance of stream benthic invertebrates: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 4, no. 4, p. 491-495.

Stanford, J. A., 1973, A centrifuge method for determining live weights of aquatic insect larvae, with a note on weight loss in preservative: Ecology, v. 54, p. 449-451.

Waters, T. F., 1961, Standing crop and drift of stream bottom organisms: Ecology, v. 42, p. 532-537.

Waters, T. F., 1969, Invertebrate drift-ecology and significance to stream fishes, in Northcote, T. G., ed., Symposium on salmon and trout in streams: Vancouver, University of British Columbia, p. 121-134.

_____1972, The drift of stream insects: Annual Review of Entomology, v. 17, p. 253-272.

Permanent-Slide Method for Larvae of Chironomidae
(B-5200-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

Chironomidae (midges) is a family of the insect Order Diptera (two-winged flies), and the immature stages are principally aquatic. The larvae, which are found in all kinds of water except the open ocean, make up a substantial part of most freshwater-invertebrate communities (Roback, 1957). They are important as a source of fishfood and are considered to be useful indicators of water quality. Chironomids are holometabolous (have complete metamorphosis). The larva, which is the feeding stage or most active phase of the chironomid life cycle, has a complete head capsule that is nonretractable within the thorax, and the mandibles are opposed (fig. 37). It has prolegs (not true insect legs) at both ends of the soft, wormlike body. The anterior prolegs are just behind the head capsule on the ventral side of the first thoracic segment and often are fused for their entire length. The posterior prolegs on the last abdominal segment are never fused. The larvae lack spiracles (respiratory openings in the abdominal walls). In some species, ventral gills, called blood gills, are just anterior to the posterior prolegs.

Some chironomid larvae move freely in water, but the larvae of many species live in tubes that they build from algae, fine sediment, and bits of plant debris bound or cemented together with a salivary secretion (fig. 38). Commonly, these structures have the appearance of sand tubes attached to rocks or other solid objects. Both ends of the tubes are open, and the larvae circulate water through them by undulating their bodies. The larvae feed on diatoms and other algae, organic detritus, microcrustaceans, and other midge larvae.

Adult chironomids are small, delicate, gnatlike, nonbiting flies (10 mm long) that are found in swarms by bodies of water, especially in the evening, and near lights at night. The life cycles of the insects are variable; some forms have only one generation every 2 years, while others have several generations during a year.

Identification of chironomid larvae is based mainly on the mouth parts that can be seen only through a microscope. The method described is a modification of procedures developed by Mason (1968, 1970) and Beck (1976) and is suitable for most chironomid larvae.

Some investigators, especially those who are working with chironomid systematics, dissect their larval specimens. They mount just the head capsules, and sometimes they dissect the head capsule and mount certain mouth parts separate from the head under one cover glass.

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all chironomid larvae.

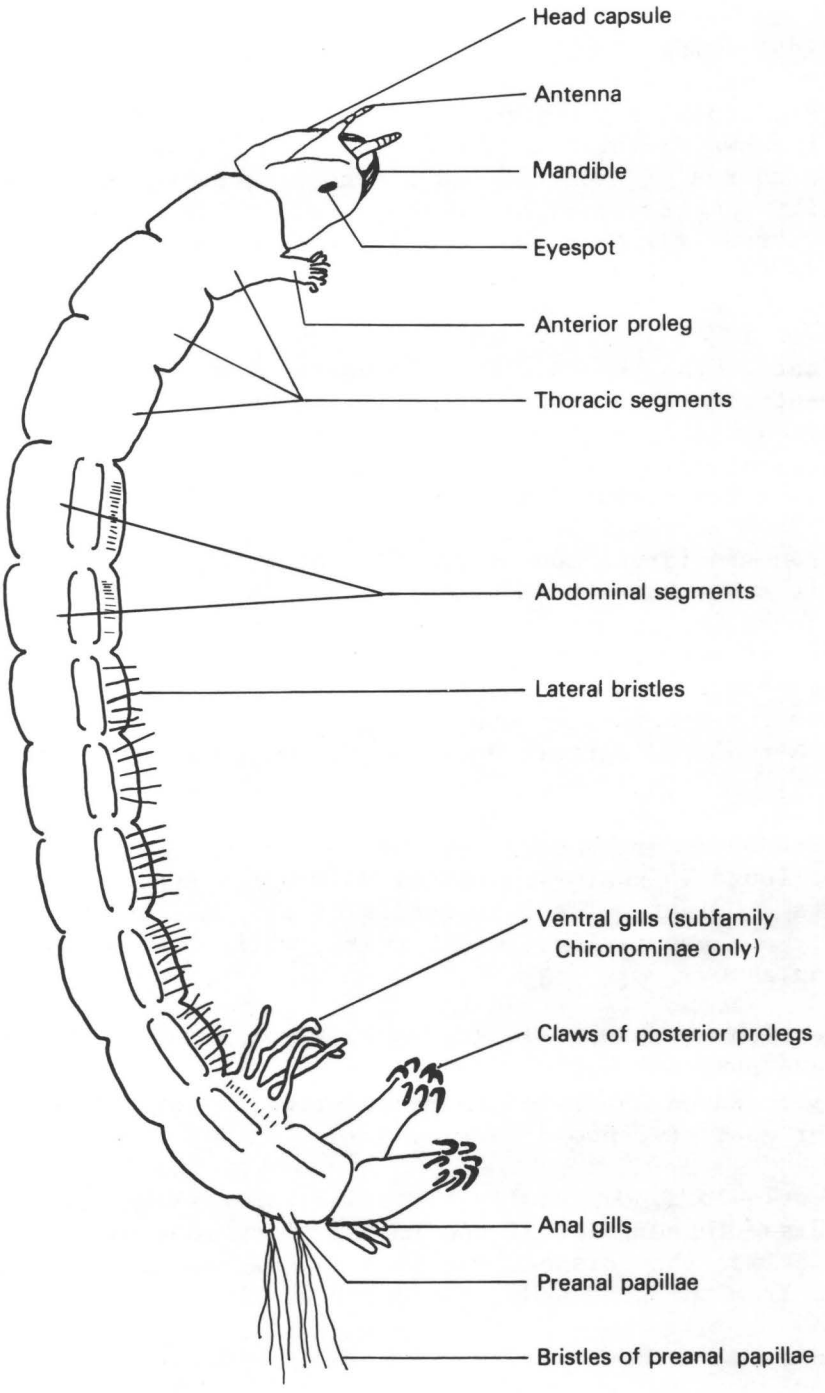


Figure 37.--Idealized external features of a larva of the Family Chironomidae. Features are from more than one subfamily.

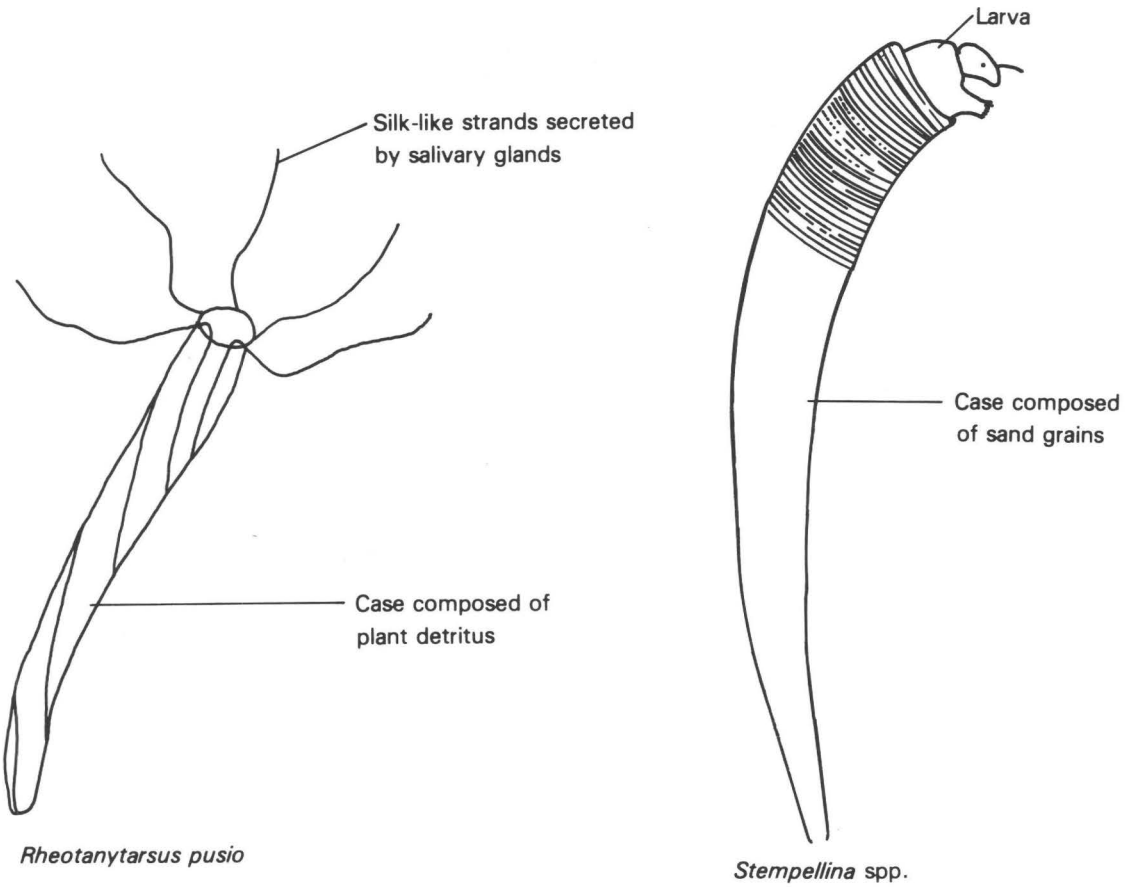


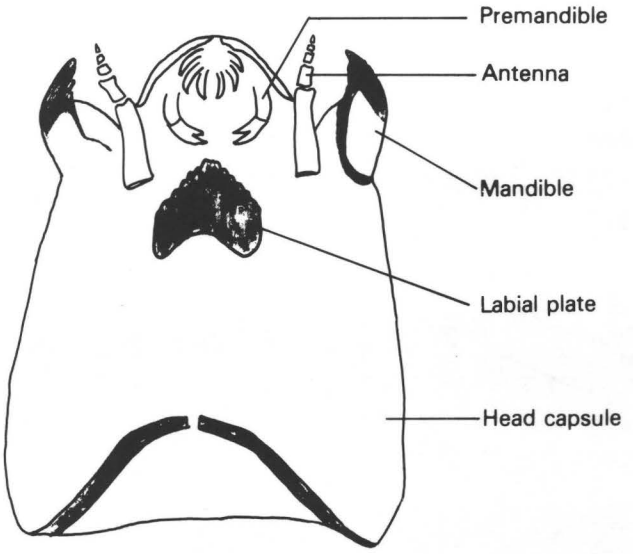
Figure 38.--Examples of tubes constructed by larvae of the Family Chironomidae.

2. Summary of method

Chironomidae larvae from a benthic-invertebrate sample are sorted into visually distinct groups. Representative specimens are heated in 10-percent potassium hydroxide solution to dissolve soft body tissues, placed ventral side up on a microscope slide in a mounting medium, and pressed under a cover glass. The mounted specimens are identified. The number of taxa and individuals in each taxon are tabulated and reported as a percentage of the benthic-invertebrate population or reported in other ways appropriate to the study objectives.

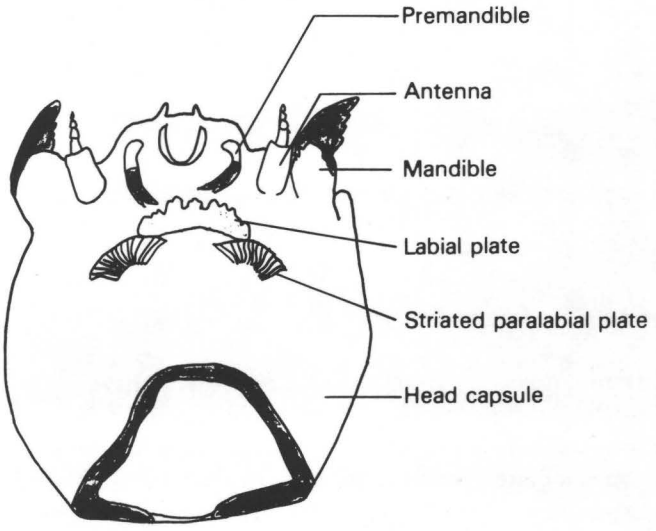
3. Interferences

Heating time is critical. If not heated long enough, the specimen may be too opaque for examination; if heated too long, the specimen will be too transparent and difficult to manipulate during mounting procedures. Sand and other material that cannot be removed by heating may be forced from the gut into the mouth when pressed, obscuring the mouth parts. Too much pressure during mounting may damage diagnostic features shown in figures 39 and 40.



Eukiefferiella spp.

Figure 39.--Ventral view of larval head capsule of the Subfamily Orthocladiinae, simplified.



Chironomus spp.

Figure 40.--Ventral view of larval head capsule of the Subfamily Chironominae, simplified. Notice that the left mandible is turned outward; changes in position of structures are common during mounting procedures.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Cover glasses, circular, no. 1 or 2, 12-mm diameter.

4.2 Crucibles, high-form, porcelain, 10-mL capacity.

4.3 Forceps, blunt curved tips, and microforceps, fine-tipped.

4.4 Hotplate, electric.

4.5 Labels for microscope slides. When many slides are prepared, information about the source of the sample can be typed on sheets of paper, photocopied and reduced one-half or two-thirds in size, cut out, and glued onto slides using white glue, or equivalent. Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.6 Marking pen, permanent, waterproof, for labeling slides.

4.7 Microscope, compound, preferably having differential interference contrast capable of 1,000X magnification.

4.8 Microscope slides, glass, precleaned, 25×75 mm.

4.9 Needles, pins, and probes for manipulating specimens under a stereomicroscope.

4.10 Ocular micrometer, graduated to 5 μm.

4.11 Spot plates, white porcelain.

4.12 Stereoscopic zoom microscope (dissecting), capable of 80X magnification.

4.13 Vials, 4 mL, and poly seal screw lids.

4.14 White glue.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetic acid, glacial.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Fingernail polish, clear.

5.4 Glycerin.

5.5 Mounting medium, CMC-10, or prepare medium as follows: In 50 mL distilled water, dissolve 30 g Gum arabic (amorphic), 200 g chloral hydrate, and 20 mL glycerin. Completely dissolve each solid ingredient before adding succeeding reagents. Filter final mixture through clean cheese cloth.

5.6 Potassium hydroxide solution, 10 percent. Dissolve 10 g potassium hydroxide (KOH) pellets in 100 mL distilled water.

5.7 Preservative solutions. Samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.7.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.7.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.7.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

Usually, time does not permit mounting all chironomids in a sample, so the results from a subsample are used to calculate the distribution of taxa and individuals in the original sample. The size of the subsample to be mounted for microscopic examination will depend on the size of the sample, the number of visually distinct groups, and the study objectives.

6.1 Using a stereoscopic microscope, separate the total sample into groups on the basis of general appearance and external features. Some morphological features most useful for separating specimens into groups are:

6.1.1 Body characteristics:

a. Length.
b. Color and color distribution.
c. Enlarged sections.
d. Presence or absence of blood gills.
e. Preanal papillae and bristles.

6.1.2 Head-capsule characteristics:

a. Length and width.
b. Color and darkened areas, such as mouth parts.
c. Number, shape, and arrangements of eyespots.
d. Shape and unusual appendages.

Individual depressions on porcelain spot plates are convenient compartments for separating the subsamples of larvae.

6.2 Randomly select representatives of each group for mounting. For small groups of 10 or fewer individuals, mount a subgroup of 5, or at least 50 percent. For larger groups, remove a subgroup by stratified random sampling and cluster or two-stage sampling. Store the unmounted specimens in vials of 70-percent ethyl alcohol containing one drop of glycerin.

6.3 Place subgroups in depressions of a spot plate filled with distilled water, and soak 10 minutes to remove the alcohol.

6.4 Transfer the subgroups to another spot plate or to crucibles containing 10-percent KOH (Note 1). Heat for 10 to 15 minutes or until the bodies are semitransparent and noticeably lighter in color. (CAUTION.--Excessive heating results in too much digestion of the soft parts, making the specimens too transparent and difficult to see and to manipulate). While heating, add distilled water to the KOH solution to compensate for evaporation.

Note 1: Use fresh KOH solution for each subgroup.

6.5 Transfer the specimens from the KOH solution to a clean spot plate of distilled water (Note 2) for at least 3 minutes to remove the KOH.

Note 2: Residual KOH can make the specimens too soft, thus interfering with the mounting medium. Instead of the water rinse, glacial acetic acid can be used to neutralize the KOH if residual KOH is a problem.

6.6 Transfer the specimens to another spot plate of 95-percent ethyl alcohol for 3 to 5 minutes. This treatment removes the water or acetic acid and makes the specimen crisp, which results in optimum distribution of mouth parts in the final preparation.

6.7 Place a small drop of mounting medium on a clean glass microscope slide. Position one specimen in the drop of medium, ventral side up, and if necessary, move the specimen using a dissecting needle and microforceps. Place a 12-mm diameter cover glass on the drop containing a specimen and, using a stereoscopic microscope, use the cover glass and the viscous mounting medium to roll, slide, or push each specimen so it lies flat, ventral side up. Apply additional pressure to spread the mouth parts. Allow preparation to dry for 1 week, keeping the slide horizontal (Note 3).

Note 3: With practice, this procedure can be effective for processing many specimens. Chironomids larger than the 12-mm cover glass should be cut in half and mounted under one or two cover glasses.

6.8 Specimens may dry after 2 or 3 years in the mounting medium unless the edges of the cover glass are sealed. To make the preparations more permanent, ring the slide by coating the edges of the cover glass and any exposed mounting medium with clear fingernail polish.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample of Chironomidae larvae is mounted and identified, project the results from those mounted to the total number of specimens:

$$\text{Total number of individuals of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of individuals of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of individuals of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report the number of taxa present, the number and percentage of individuals in each taxon in the sample, and the method of collection.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Beck, W. M., Jr., 1976, Biology of the larval chironomids: State of Florida, Department of Environmental Regulation Technical Series, v. 2, no. 1, 58 p.

Mason, W. T., Jr., 1968, An introduction to the identification of chironomid larvae: U.S. Department of the Interior, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Division of Pollution Surveillance, 89 p.

_____1970, Preparing adult Chironomidae for identification: U.S. Department of the Interior, Federal Water Quality Administration, Analytical Quality Control Laboratory Newsletter 6, p. 10.

Roback, S. S., 1957, The immature tendipedids of the Philadelphia area: Monographs of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia 9, 152 p.

Method for Identification of Immature Simuliidae (B-5220-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

Larvae and pupae of the insect Family Simuliidae (blackflies) commonly are abundant in swiftly flowing freshwater streams having cobble or gravel bottom. They occur in reaches that have smooth, relatively laminar flow as opposed to reaches that have pools, eddies, or turbulence (Hynes, 1970).

Simuliids are members of the insect Order Diptera (two-winged flies), and as adults can be a serious nuisance to man and animals, especially during the summer months when they emerge and swarm in great numbers. These humpbacked blackflies can inflict a stinging bite that may be followed by intense itching and sometimes bleeding. Severe attacks by blackflies have been known to cause the death of livestock from shock and loss of blood. Blackfly attacks also have been reported to cause a decrease in milk production at dairy farms. Some species of blackflies transmit human onchocerciasis, and other species transmit certain protozoan and other filarial organisms that cause diseases in birds.

Simuliids, like other dipterans, undergo complete metamorphosis (holometabolous). The adults are small and robust, usually dark-colored, and have broad wings, which have large anterior veins. An extensive taxonomic literature about the adults has been stimulated by the economic importance of blackflies. However, until recently, little research was done on the taxonomy of the immature forms.

The immature stages, larvae and pupae, are strictly aquatic. The pupae are enclosed in vaselike or slipperlike cases (fig. 41) attached to rocks, debris, or other solid objects. The pupae have a pair of conspicuous respiratory organs on the thorax and filaments numbering from 2 to 60 (fig. 42). The filaments protrude from the open end of the pupal case. Usually, a pair of prominent terminal hooks is on the last abdominal segment (fig. 42).

The larvae measure 3 to 15 mm in length and are attached to stones or other substrates. The larva is characterized by a soft body that is swollen posteriorly, a pair of mouth fans, one anterior proleg, and a posterior crochet ring composed of minute hooks (fig. 43) by which it adheres to the substrate. The larva moves in a looping manner by means of the posterior crochet ring and anterior proleg. A strand of sticky thread-like secretion (silk) from the head prevents the larva from being swept away by the current. The larval head capsule has many features used for identification. These include the arrangement of spots on the dorsal side, relative length and color of the antennae, shape of the occipital cleft located on the ventral surface (fig. 44), and the shape and tooth pattern of the submentum (fig. 44). The shape of the secondary mouth fan (fig. 45), used to filter food particles from the water, is an additional characteristic used for identification. The fan is exposed by grasping the larva firmly near the head, ventral side up, and lifting the primary fan up and out (Sommerman, 1953).

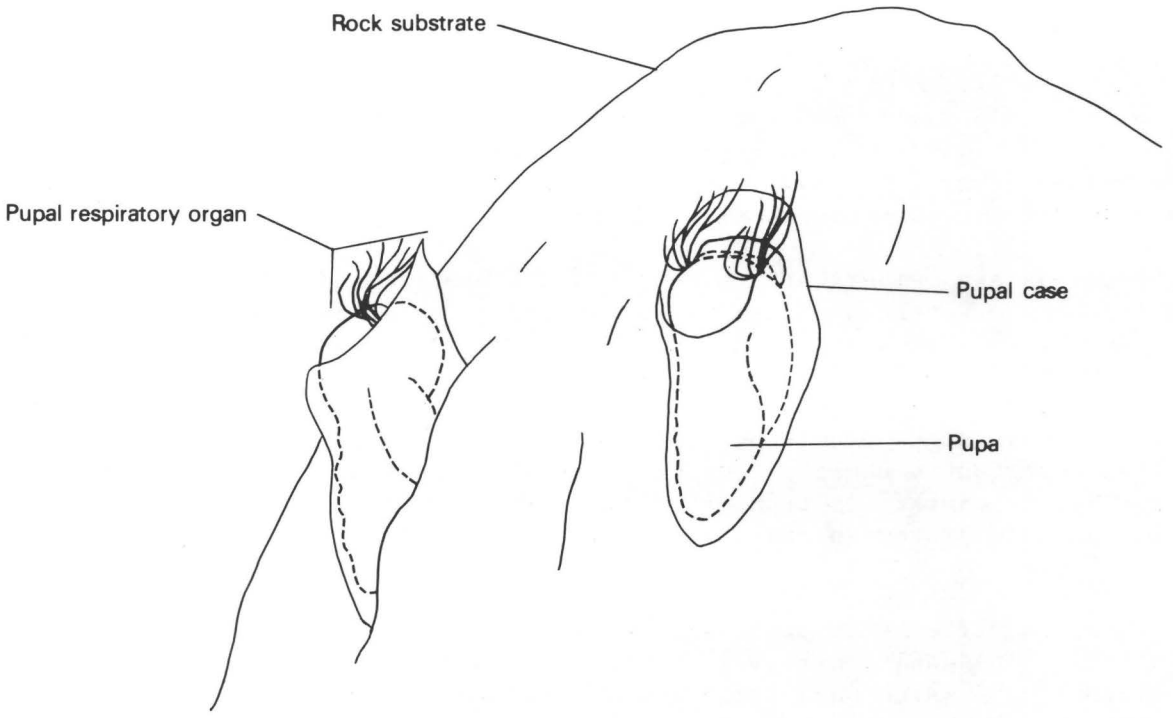


Figure 41.--One type of pupa of the Family Simuliidae enclosed in a slipperlike case attached to rocks in the water.

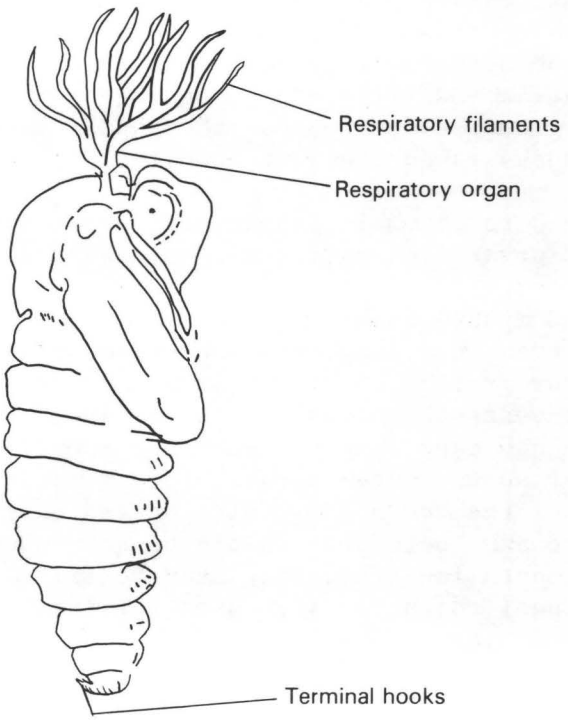


Figure 42.--Simplified features of a pupa of the Family Simuliidae, showing location and arrangement of the pupal respiratory filaments.

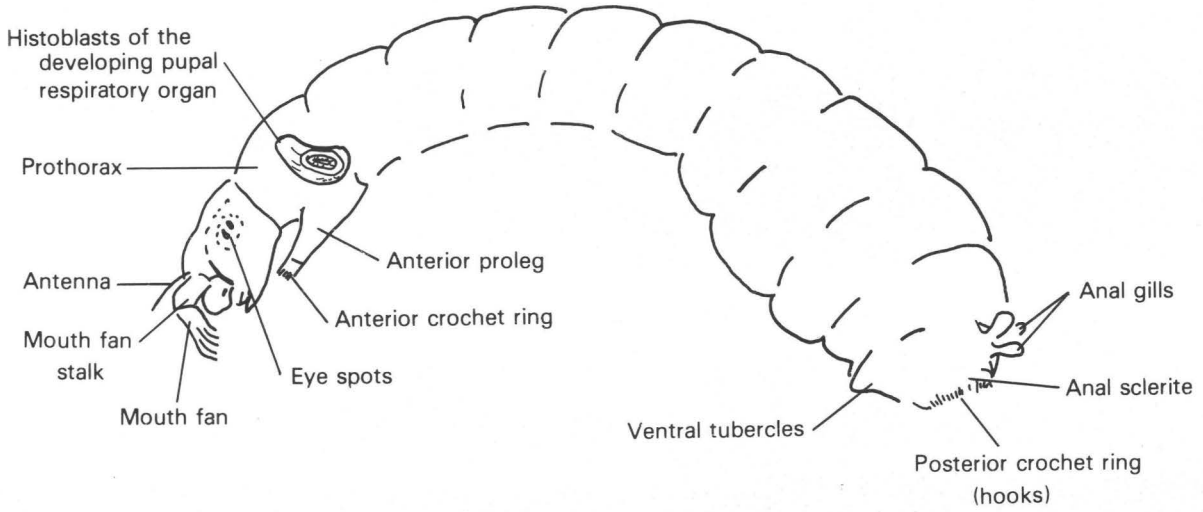


Figure 43.--Mature larva of the Family Simuliidae, simplified, showing most of the important external features needed for identification.

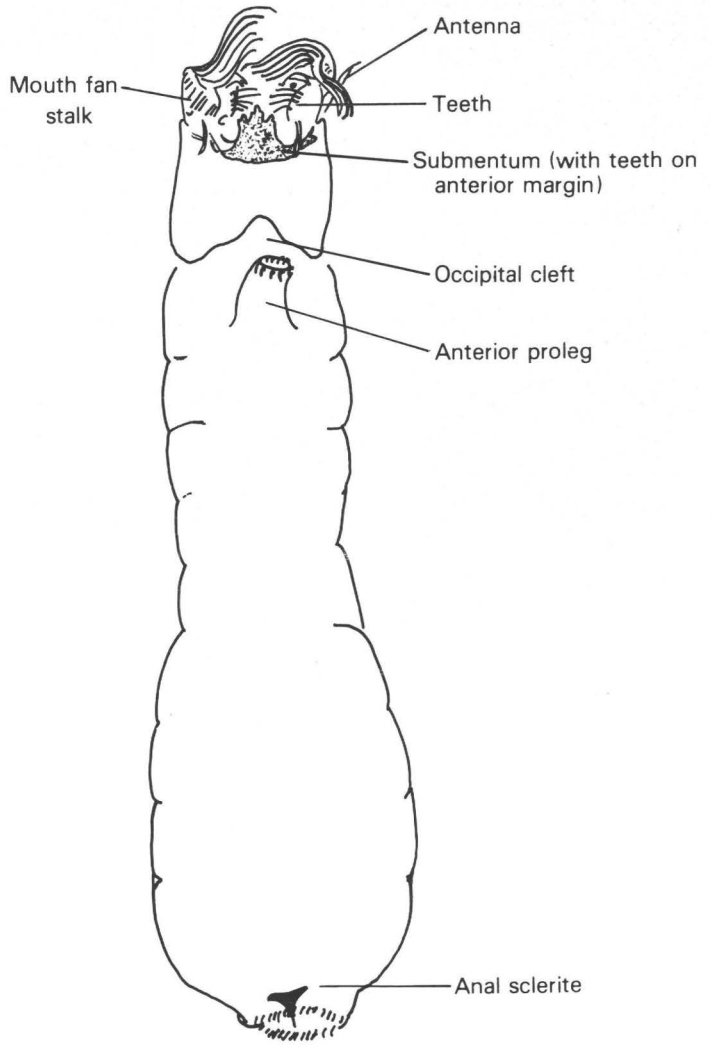


Figure 44.--A larva of the Family Simuliidae, simplified, showing the features that can be seen best after making a permanent mount.

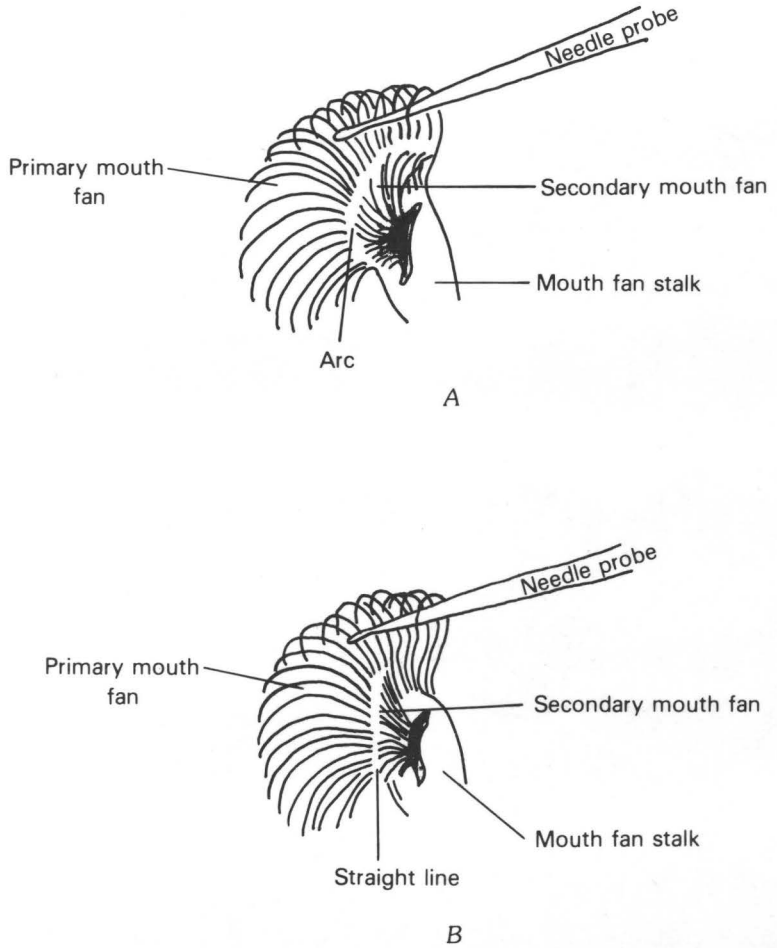


Figure 45.--Simuliidae larval mouth fans showing the two basic types of secondary fans, tips of the expanded secondary fan falling into: (A) an arc, and (B) a straight line.

On each side of the prothorax of a mature larva are histoblasts of the developing pupal respiratory organ (fig. 43). The number of filaments and their branching pattern are used for identification and to associate the larva with the pupa.

On the dorsal surface of the eighth abdominal segment are three simple or branched anal gills (fig. 43) that aid in respiration. These gills, which are useful for identifying genera, often are hidden in the rectal opening and may have to be exposed through dissection (Sommerman, 1953). In some genera, a pair of ventral tubercles is present just anterior to the posterior crochet ring (fig. 43).

Except for very small or mutilated specimens, most larvae and the pupae can be identified using a dissecting microscope without preparing a mount. Microscope slide mounts of the head region, however, are especially useful in identification of larvae to the species level.

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all immature Simuliidae.

2. Summary of method

The immature simuliids in a sample are examined and identified as precisely as possible without dissection or mounting. If necessary, dissection is performed and slide mounts are made. The taxa and numbers of individuals within each taxon are recorded and reported as a percentage of the total benthic-invertebrate population or reported in other ways appropriate to the study objectives.

3. Interferences

During slide preparation, overheating the larvae in 10-percent potassium hydroxide may result in brittleness, excessive transparency, or digestion of materials. The antennae are especially difficult to see if the specimen is overheated.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Cover glasses, circular, no. 1 or 2, 12-mm diameter.

4.2 Crucibles, high-form, porcelain, 10-mL capacity.

4.3 Forceps, blunt curved tips, and microforceps, fine-tipped.

4.4 Hotplate, electric.

4.5 Labels for microscope slides. When many slides are prepared, information about the source of the sample can be typed on sheets of paper, photocopied and reduced one-half or two-thirds in size, cut out, and glued onto slides using white glue, or equivalent. Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.6 Marking pen, permanent, waterproof, for labeling slides.

4.7 Microscope, compound, preferably having differential interference contrast capable of 1,000X magnification.

4.8 Microscope slides, glass, precleaned, 25×75 mm.

4.9 Needles for manipulating and dissecting specimens under stereomicroscope.

4.10 Ocular micrometer, graduated to 5 μm.

4.11 Stereoscopic zoom microscope (dissecting), capable of 80X magnification.

4.12 Vials, 4 mL, and poly seal screw lids.

4.13 Watchglass, Syracuse type.

4.14 White glue.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetic acid, glacial.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Fingernail polish, clear.

5.4 Glycerin.

5.5 Mounting medium, CMC-10, or prepare medium as follows: In 50 mL distilled water, dissolve 30 g Gum arabic (amorphic), 200 g chloral hydrate, and 20 mL glycerin. Completely dissolve each solid ingredient before adding succeeding reagents. Filter final mixture through clean cheese cloth.

5.6 Potassium hydroxide solution, 10 percent. Dissolve 10 g potassium hydroxide (KOH) pellets in 100 mL distilled water.

5.7 Preservative solutions. Samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.7.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.7.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.7.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

Usually, time does not permit mounting all the simuliids in a large sample, so the results from a subsample are used to calculate the distribution of taxa and number of individuals in the original sample. The size of the subsample for microscopic examination will depend on the size of the original sample, the number of visually distinct groups (see 6.2), and the study objectives.

6.1 Separate the pupae from the larvae and identify using a dissecting microscope. Identification of pupae is based primarily on the number and arrangement of respiratory filaments on the thorax. Slide mounts of pupae are not necessary because the filaments are clearly visible.

6.2 Using a dissecting microscope that has 7X or 20X magnification, separate the total larval group into subgroups on the basis of general external characteristics (for example, body color, presence or absence of ventral tubercles, color and length of antennae, size and shape of occipital cleft, and number and type of anal gills). Experience using taxonomic keys will aid in the selection of diagnostic characteristics for separating the subgroups.

6.3 Randomly select representatives of each subgroup for detailed microscopic examination and possible mounting. For small subgroups that have 10 or fewer individuals, select 5, or at least 50 percent. For larger subgroups, the subsampling should be by stratified random sampling and cluster or two-stage sampling. Store the remaining specimens in vials of 70-percent ethyl alcohol containing one or two drops of glycerin.

6.4 Place the selected larvae in a dish of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and examine using a stereoscopic microscope at a magnification of 10X to 70X. Identify the specimens using an appropriate taxonomic key. Examples of useful keys are Stone (1952), Sommerman (1953), Stone and Jamnback (1955), and Peterson (1970, 1978, and 1981).

6.5 In mature Simuliidae larvae, the histoblasts of the developing pupal respiratory filaments are well developed and can be used to identify the larvae with the pupal stage. The filaments are important key characteristics. Dissect them by piercing the integument around the entire filament, lift the filament, and cut it at the base. Record the number and pattern of the filament branches. Mount the filaments in a drop of mounting medium on a glass slide. Place a cover glass on the drop, and press firmly using a pair of curved-tip, blunt forceps.

If more information is needed to complete the larval identification, proceed to 6.6 through 6.10, which describe preparation of microscope slide mounts. Mounts facilitate identification of many small larvae by enabling the examination for submental teeth, mouth fan rays, and anal sclerites (fig. 45). Before mounting, be sure to record the important characteristics of the head specified in the keys, such as the anal gills, occipital cleft, ventral tubercles, and antennae, because they may be distorted when mounted.

6.6 Select eight larvae, and rinse each one in distilled water for 2 or 3 minutes. A Syracuse watchglass is a convenient vessel.

6.7 Place the larva in a high-form porcelain crucible containing 10-percent KOH, and heat on a hotplate for 8 to 15 minutes or until the body is noticeably lighter in color.

6.8 Rinse the larva in distilled water (Note 1) for 2 to 3 minutes, and rinse with 95-percent ethyl alcohol for at least 3 minutes to remove the residual water and KOH.

Note 1: Glacial acetic acid can be used to remove the KOH.

6.9 Place each larva in a drop of mounting medium on a clean glass slide and, using needles, position the specimen ventral side up. Place a circular cover glass on the preparation and press firmly using a pair of curved-tip, blunt forceps. Ensure that the larva remains ventral side up while pressing and that the antennae are clearly visible. Check the slide for clarity of diagnostic characteristics using a compound microscope. Allow preparation to dry for 1 week at room temperature, keeping the slide horizontal.

6.10 Specimens may dry after 2 or 3 years in the mounting medium unless the edges of the cover glass are sealed. To make the preparations more permanent, ring the slide by coating the edges of the cover glass and any exposed mounting medium with clear fingernail polish.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample of Simuliidae larvae is mounted and identified, project the results from the subsample to the total number of Simuliidae in the original sample:

$$\text{Total number of individuals of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of individuals of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}}.$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of individuals of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report the number of taxa present, the number and percentage of individuals in each taxon in the sample, and the method of collection.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Hynes, H. B. N., 1970, The ecology of running waters: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 555 p.

Peterson, B. V., 1970, The Prosimulium of Canada and Alaska: Memoirs of the Entomological Society of Canada, v. 69, 216 p.

_____1978, Simuliidae, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., 441 p.
_____1981, Simuliidae, in McAlpine, J. F., Peterson, B. V., Shewell, G. E., Teskey, H. J., Vockeroth, J. R., and Wood, D. M., coordinators, Manual of Nearctic Diptera: Ottawa, Canada Department of Agriculture Research Branch Monograph 27, v. 1, p. 355-392.
Sommerman, K. M., 1953, Identification of Alaskan blackfly larvae (Diptera, Simuliidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 55, p. 258-273.
Stone, Alan, 1952, The Simuliidae of Alaska: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 54, p. 69-96.
Stone, Alan, and Jamnback, H. A., 1955, The blackflies of New York: New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin 349, 144 p.

Permanent- and Semipermanent-Slide Method for Aquatic Acari (B-5240-85)

Parameter and Code: Not Applicable

Water mites of the Order Acarina are found worldwide in almost all types of aquatic habitats, from the hot springs of Yellowstone National Park to the cold tundra pools of Alaska, and from swift, turbulent mountain streams to quiet lakes and stagnant ponds. Most species live in freshwater, although a few are strictly marine. Some species are subterranean. The adults and nymphs generally are free-living and predaceous, while the larvae primarily are parasitic on the immature and adult stages of Diptera, Hemiptera, Odonata, Plecoptera, and other aquatic and semiaquatic insects. The larvae also are known to parasitize the gills of crabs and mussels.

Water mites have little economic significance other than being food for fishes, such as the brook and rainbow trout (Marshall, 1933); however, this little-known group of arthropods may have unrecognized economic importance as a biological control agent of mosquitoes and other biting insects. Uchida and Miyazaki (1935) reported that an Anopheles mosquito infested with five or more mites cannot be induced to bite, thus interrupting the life cycle that is dependent on a blood meal. Abdel-Malek (1948) reported that Aedes adults infested with water mites produced fewer eggs than uninfected individuals.

Water mites may prove important in water-quality studies because of their acute sensitivity to environmental stress (Young, 1969) and their species, and even generic, specificity for particular habitats. The water-mite fauna found in a cold mountain stream is distinctively different from the fauna of a pond or lake or the fauna of a hot spring.

A water mite has four stages in its life cycle--egg, larva, nymph, and adult. The larva, the smallest stage, has three pairs of legs instead of four pairs as in the nymph and the adult stages. The nymph is larger than the larva and commonly is brightly colored with shades of red and orange, especially in stillwater forms. Stream mites frequently are a dull brown or greenish brown.

The adult water mite is ovoid to globular in shape and has an unsegmented, fused cephalothorax and abdomen. The sexes are separate. The dorsum may be thin and leathery, or may have sclerotized plates (fig. 46). The legs have short bristles and long swimming hairs, particularly in the pond and lake forms. The nymph differs from the adult by having an incomplete genital field; that is, it lacks a genital opening and has fewer genital acetabula (fig. 46).

The anterior end of the body has the mouth region or gnathosoma (fig. 46), which sometimes is lengthened anteriorly into a rostrum. At the base of the gnathosoma are two pairs of mouth parts that are key characteristics for identification, a pair of chelicerae (mandibles) and a pair of palps. The palps consist of five segments--P_1 through P_5 (fig. 47)--that may have a number of setae and spines and terminate in simple or scissorlike claws.

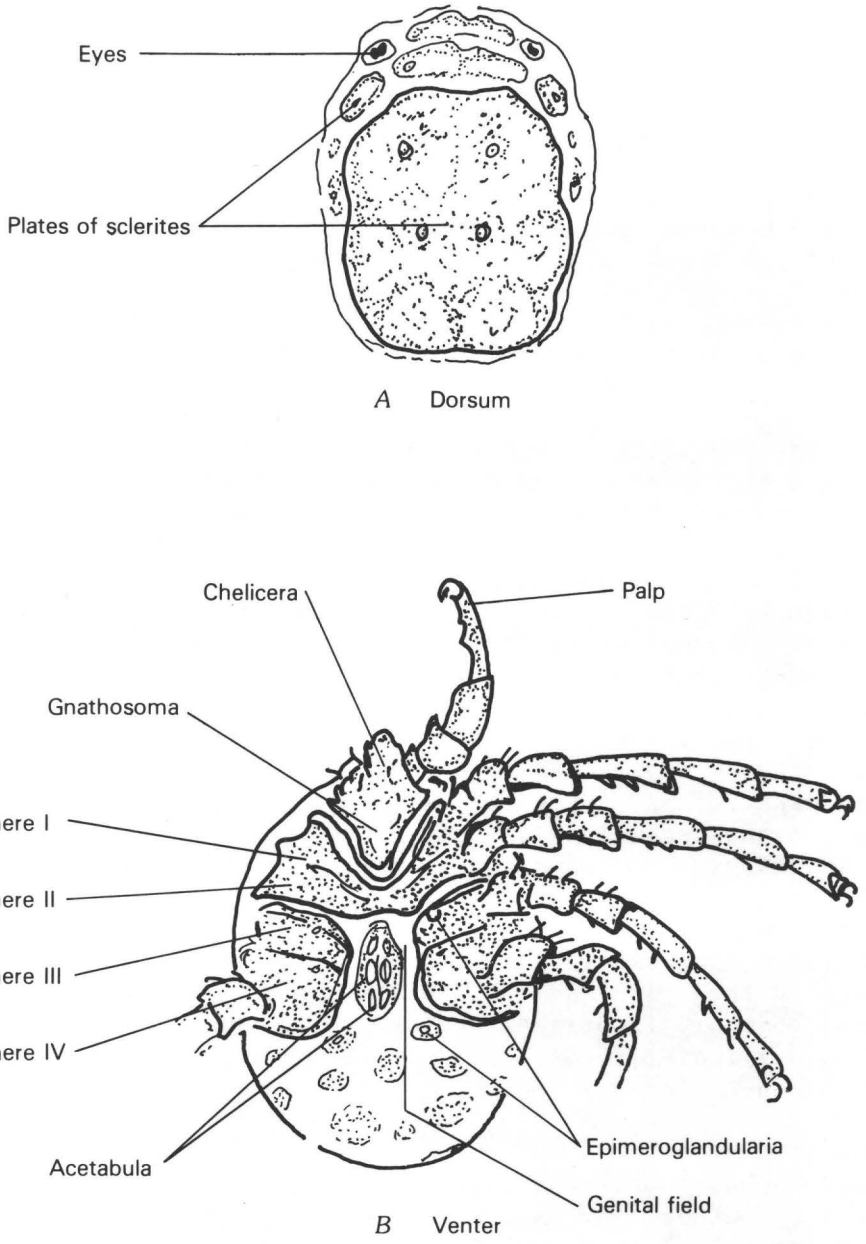


Figure 46.--Dorsal (A) and ventral (B) views of an adult water mite showing important morphological features used for identification.

The coxal parts of the legs, called epimeres (fig. 46), are on the underside or venter of the mite. There are four pairs of epimeres that vary in shape, position, and degree of fusion or separation. The genital field, consisting of a number of acetabula and a genital opening, is either between or behind the fourth epimere, or on the posterior margin of the venter.

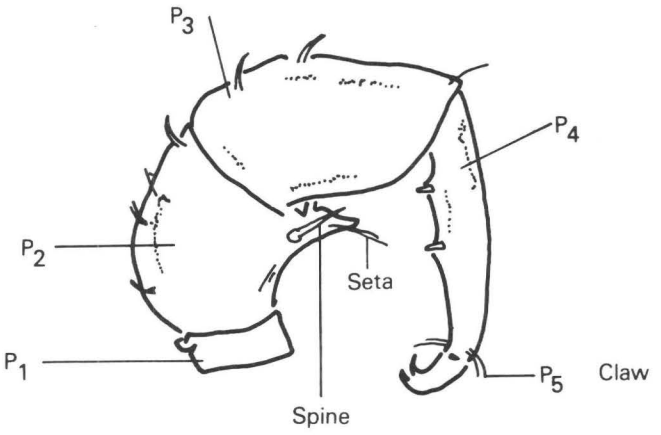


Figure 47.--Five-segmented palp (P_n) of a water mite.

Other diagnostic characteristics on the venter are three pairs of epimeroglandularia, each of which consists of a gland pore and a hair or seta. Epimeroglandularia I usually is found between epimere II and III, epimeroglandularia II is variable in position, but often is lateral to the genital opening, and epimeroglandularia III is behind epimere IV. The configuration of the epimeres, the number and arrangement of the acetabula in the genital field, and the relative position of the epimeroglandularia are important characteristics used in the identification of water mites.

Minimal information about water mites of streams exists. There are scattered descriptions of stream mites, but no single work exists that can be used for identifying them. In contrast, the water mites of ponds and lakes have been fairly well studied. Since the early 1900's, a few descriptive papers on North American water mites have appeared, particularly by researchers such as Marshall (1940, 1943), Cook (1954a,b, 1974), Crowell (1960), and Krantz (1975). Mitchell's (1954) checklist is a valuable source of information about reported American water-mite species and the relevant literature. To collect specifically for water mites, use the procedures described by Cook and Mitchell (1952).

To adequately identify water mites, mounts must be made for microscopic examination. The method described in this section is a modification of the double cover-glass glycerin method developed by Mitchell and Cook (1952) and Cook (1974).

1. Applications

This method is suitable for freshwater and marine mites, in the adult or nymph stage, that have been preserved in alcohol.

2. Summary of method

The water mites in a sample are dissected, cleared, and permanent-slide mounts are made for microscopic examination and identification. The kinds of taxa and the number of individuals in each taxon are recorded and reported as a percentage of the benthic-invertebrate population or reported in other ways appropriate to the study objectives.

3. Interferences

Failure to remove or digest the body contents of water mites will result in obscured mounts. Prolonged soaking in potassium hydroxide may damage the cuticle of mites. Unless the more time-consuming method is used, mounts will continue to clear and fade for a few days after slide preparation is complete, making specific identification difficult and sometimes impossible.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Cover glasses, circular, no. 1, 12 mm, and cover glasses, circular, no. 1, 22 mm.

4.2 Forceps, blunt curved tips, and microforceps, fine-tipped.

4.3 Hotplate, electric, or slide warmer.

4.4 Labels for microscope slides. When many slides are prepared, information about the source of the sample can be typed on sheets of paper, photocopied and reduced one-half or two-thirds in size, cut out, and glued onto slides using white glue, or equivalent. Labels, waterproof, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

4.5 Marking pen, permanent, waterproof.

4.6 Microscalpel, capable of dissecting a specimen, 0.75 mm in diameter. A no. 1 insect pin, mounted on a wooden applicator stick and shaped into a microscalpel using a fine hone or emery cloth and a dissecting microscope, is satisfactory (Cook, 1974).

4.7 Microscope, compound, preferably having differential interference contrast capable of 1,000X magnification.

4.8 Microscope slides, glass, precleaned, 25×75 mm.

4.9 Needles, pins, or probes for manipulating specimens under a stereo-microscope.

4.10 Oven.

4.11 Spot plates, white porcelain.

4.12 Stereoscopic zoom microscope (dissecting), 30X to 70X magnification.

4.13 Vials, 4 mL, and poly seal screw lids.

4.14 Watchglass, Syracuse-type.

4.15 White glue.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Canada balsam, grade A.

5.2 Corrosive lactophenol. Add 50 mL lactic acid to 25 mL distilled water. Add 25 g phenol crystals and dissolve completely.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Fingernail polish, clear.

5.5 Glycerin.

5.6 Glycerin jelly. Melt jelly in a dropper bottle or vial emersed in a beaker of hot water. Heat water just enough to liquefy the jelly.

5.7 Mounting medium, CMC-10, or prepare medium as follows: In 50 mL distilled water, dissolve 30 g Gum arabic (amorphic), 200 g chloral hydrate, and 20 mL glycerin. Completely dissolve each solid ingredient before adding succeeding reagents. Filter final mixture through clean cheese cloth.

5.8 Potassium hydroxide solution, 10 percent. Dissolve 10 g potassium hydroxide (KOH) pellets in 100 mL distilled water.

5.9 Preservative solutions. Samples may be preserved in 70-percent ethyl alcohol or 70-percent isopropyl alcohol. A mixture of 70-percent ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin is preferred for permanent storage. Prepare as follows:

5.9.1 Ethyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 95 mL using distilled water.

5.9.2 Ethyl alcohol and 5-percent glycerin. Dilute 70 mL 95-percent alcohol to 100 mL using 25 mL distilled water and 5 mL glycerin.

5.9.3 Isopropyl alcohol. Dilute 70 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

For samples containing few water mites, prepare mounts of all individuals. If the numbers are large, separate the mites into distinct groups (see 6.1) and take a subsample of each group (see 6.2). Use the results from the subsample to calculate the distribution of taxa and individuals in the original sample.

6.1 Using a dissecting microscope with 30X to 70X magnification, separate the water mites in a sample into groups on the basis of general external characteristics. Important characteristics include color, texture of the dorsum (for example, covered by a shield, small sclerites, or leathery), epimere configuration, number and arrangement of the acetabula, and position of the genital field (fig. 46).

6.2 Proceed to 6.3 if all water mites will be mounted. In large samples, randomly select representatives of each group for mounting on slides for microscopic examination. Subsampling should be done by stratified random sampling and cluster or two-stage sampling. Store remaining mites in vials of 70-percent ethyl alcohol containing one or two drops of glycerin.

6.3 Place the specimen to be examined in a watchglass containing 70-percent ethyl alcohol. Using a dissecting microscope, microscalpel, and fine-tipped microforceps, separate the dorsum from the venter, leaving a small section of the lateral body wall intact (fig. 48). The intact body wall prevents body parts and appendages from being lost. In large specimens from which the body contents can be removed using the tip of a needle, omit 6.4 and 6.5 for clearing, and proceed to 6.6 or 6.20. If the specimen is too small for dissection, pierce the body wall in the posterio-lateral area to facilitate the clearing process.

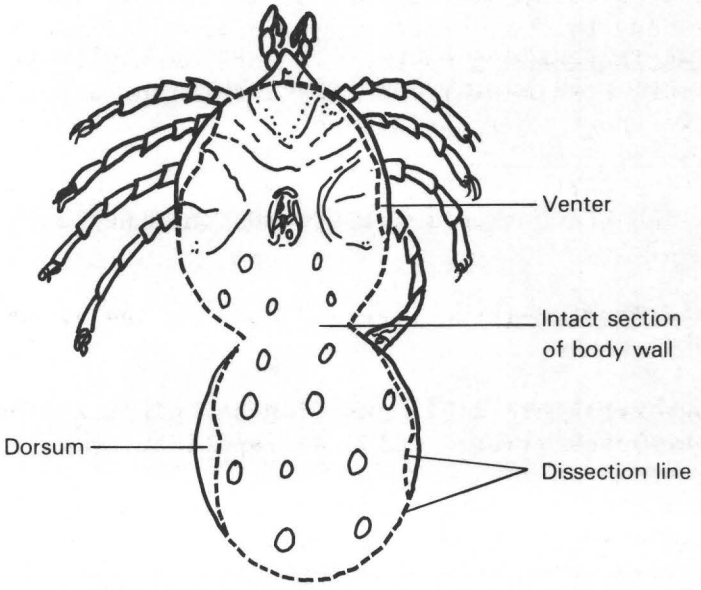


Figure 48.--A water mite showing the dorsum separated from the venter, leaving a small section of the lateral body wall intact (see 6.3).

6.4 Clear the specimen for 24 to 48 hours in a vial containing the corrosive lactophenol. Prolonged clearing has minimal damaging effect. If the specimen has a particularly hard cuticle, clear in 10-percent KOH for 1 to 2 hours. Care must be taken to avoid damage to the cuticle by prolonged soaking in KOH.

6.5 Remove the lactophenol or KOH corrosive by rinsing the specimen in three to four changes of distilled water (Note 1) followed by 70-percent ethyl alcohol.

Note 1: Two different methods of slide preparation are described based on the quality of the resulting mounts for taxonomic identification. The method described in 6.6 through 6.19 is more time consuming, but results in longer lasting slides suitable for species identification. The quicker, optional method described in 6.20 through 6.22 results in slides adequate for identification to family or genus. Selection of the method should be based on study objectives.

6.6 Transfer the specimen to glycerin. With weakly sclerotized specimens, distortion sometimes occurs when transferring directly to glycerin. For such specimens, proceed to 6.7 and 6.8.

6.7 Transfer the specimen to a depression in a spot plate containing two or three drops of alcohol-glycerin solution.

6.8 Place the spot plate and water mite in an oven at 55 °C for 30 to 40 minutes to evaporate the alcohol, leaving the mite in the glycerin.

6.9 Lift the specimen from the glycerin using the tip of a needle, and place on a 12-mm diameter circular cover glass.

6.10 Using a dissecting microscope, microforceps, and needle, separate the palps from the body by dissecting one palp from the gnathosoma or by removing the entire gnathosoma and palps. The dorsum may be severed from the venter. In very small specimens for which dissection is difficult, leave the specimen intact with the venter facing upward.

6.11 Arrange the parts on the cover glass so the original exterior surface of the venter and the dorsum faces upward, and the palps can be viewed as shown in figure 47.

6.12 Place a drop of melted glycerin jelly on the 12-mm cover glass and specimen.

6.13 Move the parts into final position and place a 22-mm circular cover glass on the smaller cover glass, jelly, and specimen.

6.14 Press large cover glass gently using curved-tip, blunt forceps to spread jelly evenly to edges of smaller cover glass, turn preparation over with smaller cover glass up, and continue pressing smaller cover glass enabling excess glycerin jelly to ooze from the edges.

6.15 Set preparation aside for at least 15 minutes to allow the glycerin jelly to set.

6.16 Place one drop of Canada balsam on a clean glass microscope slide, and place the double cover-glass preparation, 12-mm cover glass down, on the drop of balsam (fig. 49). Press lightly. If bubbles are present in the balsam under the cover glass, they may be removed by warming the slide preparation at 45 °C on a hotplate or on a slide warmer.

6.17 Label slide, using waterproof ink, and record the date, site, method of collection, identification number, or other information pertinent to the study.

6.18 Identify water mites using a compound microscope and appropriate taxonomic keys. Examples of keys for the nonspecialist are Newell (1959), Cook (1974), and Pennak (1978).

6.19 Allow slides to air-dry for at least 2 months before storing on edge.

6.20 Optional method. Place the specimen in a small drop of mounting medium on a clean glass microscope slide. Using a dissecting microscope, microforceps, and needle, dissect the specimen and arrange the parts as in 6.10 and 6.11. Ensure that the parts are pushed well into the medium and against the slide to prevent them from drifting away when the cover glass is applied.

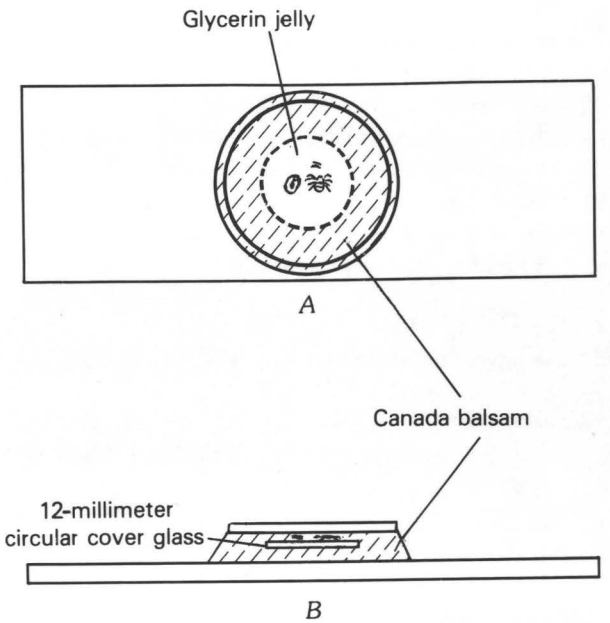


Figure 49.--Top (A) and side (B) views of the double cover-glass technique for mounting aquatic Acari (modified from Mitchell and Cook, 1952).

6.21 Place a 12-mm circular cover glass on the drop of mounting medium containing the specimen, and press cover glass gently using curved-tip, blunt forceps. Allow preparation to dry for 1 week at room temperature, keeping the slide horizontal.

6.22 Specimens may dry after 2 or 3 years in the mounting medium unless the edges of the cover glass are sealed. To make the preparations more permanent, ring the slide by coating the edges of the cover glass and any exposed mounting medium with clear fingernail polish.

7. Calculations

7.1 When only part of the total sample of Acari is mounted and identified, project the results from those mounted to the total number of specimens:

$$\text{Total number of individuals of a particular taxon in sample} = \frac{\text{Number of individuals of the taxon in subsample}}{\text{Fraction of total sample in subsample}} .$$

7.2 Percent composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of individuals of a particular taxon}}{\text{Total number of individuals of all taxa}} \times 100 .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report the number of taxa present, the number and percentage of individuals in each taxon in the sample, and the method of collection.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

Abdel-Malek, A. A., 1948, The biology of Aedes trivittatus: Journal of Economic Entomology, v. 41, p. 951-954.

Cook, D. R., 1954a, Preliminary list of Arrenuri of Michigan, Part I--The subgenus Arrenurus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, p. 39-58.

_____1954b, Preliminary list of Arrenuri of Michigan, Part II--The subgenus Megaluracarus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, p. 367-380.

_____1974, Water mite genera and subgenera: Memoirs of the American Entomological Institute 21, 860 p.

Cook, D. R., and Mitchell, R. D., 1952, Notes on collecting water-mites: Turtox News, v. 30, p. 122-125.

Crowell, R. M., 1960, The taxonomy, distribution and developmental stages of Ohio water mites: Bulletin of Ohio Biological Surveillance, v. 1, no. 2, p. 1-57.

Krantz, G. W., 1975, A manual of Acarology: Corvallis, Oregon State University Book Stores, Inc., 335 p.

Marshall, Ruth, 1933, Water mites from Wyoming as fish food: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 52, p. 34-41.

_____1940, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part VI: Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 34, p. 135-165.

_____1943, Hydracarina from California, Part II: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, p. 404-415.

Mitchell, R. D., 1954, Checklist of North American water mites: Fieldiana--Zoology, v. 35, p. 29-70.

Mitchell, R. D., and Cook, D. R., 1952, The preservation and mounting of water mites: Turtox News, v. 30, p. 169-172.

Newell, I. M., 1959, Acari, in Edmondson, W. G., ed., 1959, Freshwater biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley and Sons, p. 1080-1116.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Freshwater invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley and Sons, 803 p.

Uchida, T., and Miyazaki, T., 1935, Life-history of a water-mite parasitic on Anopheles: Tokyo, Proceedings of the Imperial (Japan) Academy, v. 11, p. 73-76.

Young, W. C., 1969, Ecological distribution of Hydracarina in north-central Colorado: American Midland Naturalist, v. 82, p. 367-401.

AQUATIC VERTEBRATES

Introduction

In most aquatic ecosystems, fish are the most common vertebrates. Because they are dependent on lesser life forms for food, the health of a local fish population commonly is used as an index for water quality and for the health of other aquatic organisms. Fish, however, are mobile animals and may avoid undesirable water quality (Whitmore and others, 1960). Moreover, they may exist for relatively long periods of time without food.

Although the investigation of fish populations is not a major interest of the U.S. Geological Survey, such investigations may at times provide valuable information about the aquatic environment. For example, length-weight relations can be used to compare fish from several streams, and changes in species composition with time may reveal water-quality trends, such as increased enrichment or a temperature increase of a particular aquatic environment. Stomach analyses reveal the organisms on which the fish feed; this information is essential to understanding the aquatic ecosystem.

The presence of dead or dying fish is indicative of lethal environmental conditions, unless it is a postspawning mortality or a delayed mortality resulting from cellular buildup of toxic materials. Onsite personnel can acquire valuable information by observing and collecting distressed fish. Pathological and histological examination of such fish may disclose the cause of death; however, on-the-spot observations of existing conditions, such as color of the water, floating material, effluent discharge, and the immediate collection of a water sample, are vital for a true explanation of the mortality (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

In all States, some fish species and other aquatic vertebrates are protected by law, and the collection of others is regulated. Onsite personnel should ensure that they have complied with State laws before collecting samples of fish and other aquatic vertebrates. Hocutt (1978, p. 88) has prepared a listing, by specific year, for those States that require a permit or a license, or both, to collect fish. Czajka and Nickerson (1977) have prepared a similar list for the collection of reptiles and amphibians.

Although the methods described in this section are applicable to fish and other aquatic vertebrates, the emphasis generally will be on fish.

Collection

Collecting specimens for study requires a knowledge of the selectivity, limitations, and efficiency of the different types of sampling gear. Sampling gear and its use are discussed in Lagler (1956), Ramsey (1968), Weber (1973), Everhart and others (1975), Hocutt (1978), and American Public Health Association and others (1985).

Because of the nonrandom distribution of fish populations, the choice of sampling method, time of sampling, and frequency will depend on the objective of the particular investigation.

Active Sampling Gear

Active sampling gear, such as seines, trawls, electrofishing, chemical fishing, and hook and line, generally are less selective and commonly are preferred to passive techniques, such as gill, trap, hoop, and fyke nets.

If the data are to be used statistically (quantitatively), the method(s) of collection must be comparable numerically. Many fishery studies, for example, are concerned with determining yield biomass per unit area or estimating population densities in number per unit area based on a sample of the total population.

Ichthyocides (fish toxicants) provide the best method for collecting quantitative data; however, electrofishing often is the method of choice where chemicals cannot be used. While seines and other types of nets are basically qualitative gear, quantification of data is possible when the same experienced personnel do the collecting and all other factors are equal.

Seines

Seines consist of a length of strong netting material attached to a float line at the top and a heavily weighted lead line at the bottom. The ends of the seine are attached to a short stout pole or brail. If the net is large, hauling lines are attached to the top and bottom of the brail by a short bridle (fig. 50).

The sides, or wings, of the seine generally are of larger mesh than the middle, or bunt, part. The bunt may be in the form of a bag to confine the fish. Bag seines are most useful in ponds and lakes, and straight seines usually are used in streams and rivers. Small seines (50 ft or less) are adequate for capturing small fish. For capturing larger fish, especially in clear water, seines of 100 ft or more are necessary.

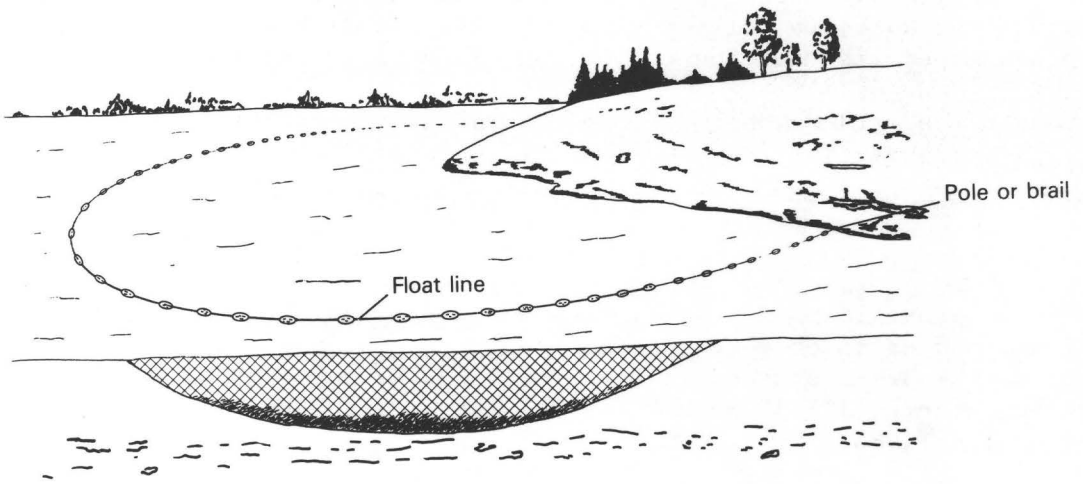


Figure 50.--Common haul seine (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

Bag seine.--The bag seine is most useful in small ponds or lakes but may be used in slow-flowing rivers. Select a shoreline section that is free of stumps and other obstructions. Secure or hold one end of the seine to the bank, and extend the seine into the water at right angles. Pull the extended end of the seine toward the bank so the seine forms the radius of a circle (Lagler, 1956, p. 8, fig. 2). With both ends of the seine beached, pull the remainder of the seine slowly into shore, keeping the lead line in contact with the bottom. Continue pulling until the opening of the bag reaches the shoreline. Remove the specimens, and process using the method selected based on the objectives of the study.

Straight seine.--Select a suitable area, usually a stream section having a smooth or relatively smooth bottom. Beginning at the downstream boundary of the area, pull the seine upstream into the current as rapidly as possible. Ensure that the bottom edge of the seine (lead line) is in contact with the stream bottom at all times. At the upstream boundary of the area, beach or bring the seine to the bank and quickly lift it from the water, forming a pocket in its center.

When using the larger seines in rivers and lakes, the usual method is to leave one end of the net, or hauling line, on shore while the net is played out by hand or boat perpendicular to the shore until the net is nearly extended. Direction then is changed (usually downstream) to lay out the remaining net parallel to the shore. When the net is fully extended, the end of the second haul line, or brail, is brought to the shore.

When fishing for pelagic or schooling species, one end of the net may be hauled first to form a hook against the shore. As soon as a school of fish enter the area, the second line is hauled. When fishing for nonschooling species, both ends of the net usually are hauled in at once.

With either type of net, be certain the lead line remains in contact with the bottom at all times. Continue pulling until the pocket, or bag, reaches the shoreline. Remove specimen(s) and process using the method selected based on the objective of the study.

Trawls

Trawls are specialized seines used in large, open-water areas where they are towed behind boats at sufficient speeds to overtake and enclose fish on the bottom or to collect schooling fish at various depths (figs. 51, 52). Beause of the size and weight of the equipment, trawls have limited usefulness in lakes and reservoirs. For more information, refer to Massman and others (1952), Rounsefell and Everhart (1953), and Dumont and Sundstrom (1961).

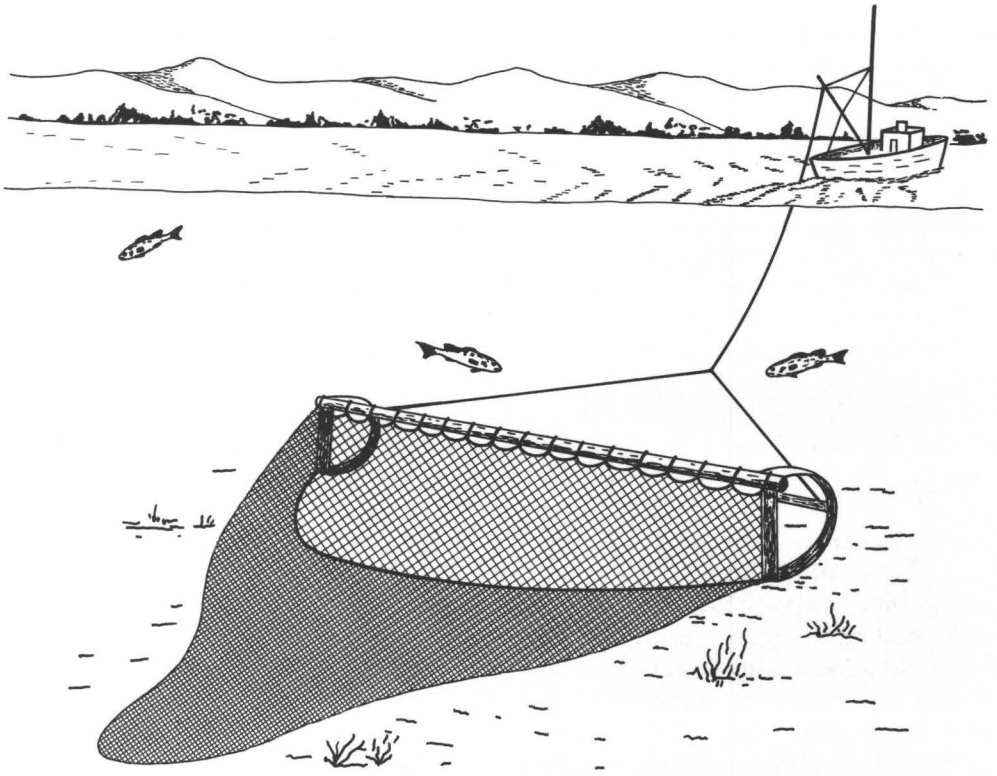


Figure 51.--Beam trawl (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

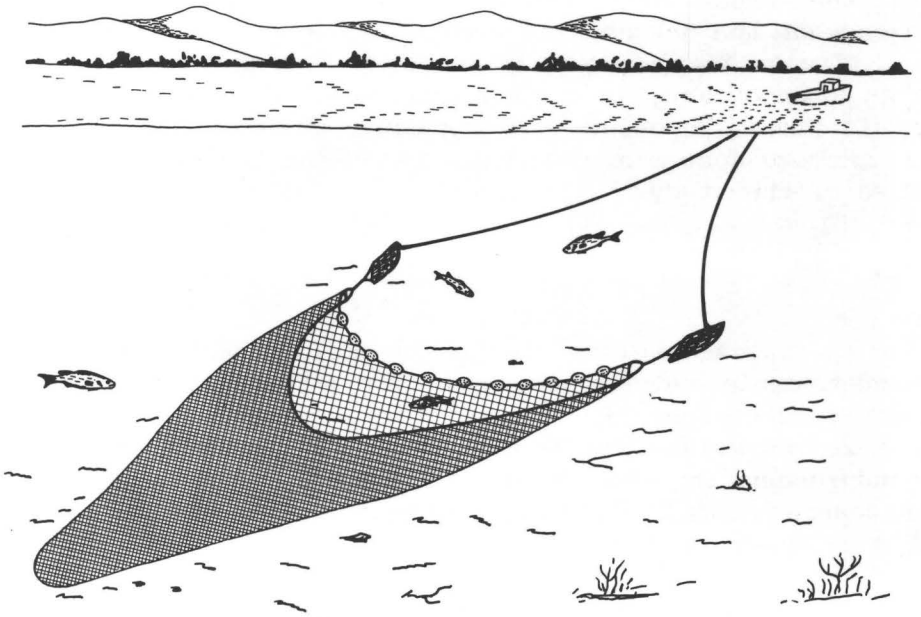


Figure 52.--Otter trawl (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

Electrofishing

Applying alternating or direct electrical current [at the specified (110 V ac or 220 V dc) output amperage] to water to induce subnarcosis or the temporary immobilization of fish is an efficient method of capturing fish. A pulsed direct current of 50 to 100 pulses per second, at the specified output amperage, includes electrotaxis of the fish and attracts it to the positive electrode, or anode, where it is netted (Sharpe and Burkhard, 1969). Alternating current is most useful in streams of very weak resistance.

Electrofishing can be hazardous and must be used with caution. All personnel engaged in electrofishing must wear protective rubber waders and low-voltage Trapper's gloves, and adhere strictly to safety precautions. Training of all crew members in first-aid for electrical shock and drowning is advisable. The method is best suited for small streams but is adaptable to lakes and slow-flowing rivers as described by Frankenberger (1960) and Sharpe (1964).

After selecting a suitable site, position the electrodes according to the manufacturer's instructions for the type of water being sampled. Electrofishing generally is done upstream from a natural barrier or block seine placed across the stream. Shock all areas that may have fish, such as brush, fallen trees, boulders, and undercut banks. When making population estimates, shock the same reach three or more times (Zippin, 1956). Capture efficiency varies with the species of fish, current velocity, turbidity, water conductivity, experience of personnel, and other variables (Cross and Stott, 1975). Friedman (1974) prepared a selected bibliography about the use of electrofishing that included the state of the art during 1974.

Captured fish should be placed in live cages for processing. When possible, identify specimens onsite, and release after processing. If onsite identification is not possible or only tentative, count the number of individuals in each taxa, and preserve about 20 representative specimens for laboratory examination. Processing of specimens will depend on study objectives but generally includes length, weight, sex, and scale samples for age-growth analysis. Lagler (1956) and Everhart and others (1975) are excellent sources for additional information about fishery science.

Ichthyocides

Ichthyocides, or fish toxicants, provide a good sampling method for making qualitative and quantitative studies of fish populations. Relative abundance, diversity, and biomass can be estimated more precisely using ichthyocides than using any other means. However, their use requires careful planning, and special permits from State conservation agencies usually are required.

Rotenone obtained as an emulsion, containing 5-percent active ingredient, is the most popular chemical because it is relatively safe to use, is not persistent in the environment, and is fairly easy to detoxify. A general review of the literature about ichthyocides was prepared by Lennon and others (1971) and about rotenone specifically by Schnick (1974).

Fish toxicants generally are used in areas such as small embayments of lakes and reservoirs or short reaches of streams or rivers. The concentration of active ingredient necessary to effect a good recovery of most fish is dependent on the species present and the alkalinity of the water. Alkaline water requires a larger concentration as do species of bullheads, carp, and eels. The successful use of rotenone is dependent on exposing the desired fish population to a lethal dose (generally 0.25 to 1 mg/L) for at least 15 minutes.

The use of rotenone in small streams is discussed by Lennon and Parker (1959) and Boccardy and Cooper (1963), in large rivers by Hocutt and others (1973), and in impoundment surveys by Eschmeyer (1939), Lambou (1959), and Bone (1970). Weber (1973) describes several methods of application.

To determine the quantity of rotenone to use, calculate the volume (acre-feet) of water to be treated. For lakes, the volume is simply the area times the mean depth, divided by 43,560 to obtain acre-feet. Because 1 acre-ft of water weighs 2,718,144 lb, an investigator would need approximately 2.7 lb of rotenone for a concentration of 1 (mg/L)/acre-ft. For streams, the quantity of rotenone is based on the cubic feet of water passing a point in the stream for the 15 minutes necessary for the exposure period. To calculate, multiply width times mean depth times velocity, which equals cubic feet of water per second. Cubic feet per second times 900 seconds (15 minutes) equals total cubic feet of water to treat. Total cubic feet divided by 43,560 equals acre-feet of water.

Potassium permanganate ($KMnO_4$) is used to detoxify the rotenone. To calculate the quantity of $KMnO_4$ necessary to detoxify the rotenone, calculate the weight of water treated and apply $KMnO_4$ at the same concentration that the rotenone was applied.

Hook and line

Although the method is too selective to be used for population studies, it is a useful technique for capturing small numbers of adult fish for metal or pesticide analyses when other methods are impractical.

Passive Sampling Gear

Gill nets and other entanglement and entrapment devices are used to passively sample fish communities in lakes, reservoirs, estuaries, and large slow-moving rivers. Gill nets hang vertically in the water and may be fished at the surface or at any depth. Because fish caught in the net die within a short period of time, the nets need to be checked at least once every 12 hours. Gill nets are set most successfully in the evening and recovered early the next morning. Gill nets generally are set perpendicular to the shoreline. Lackey (1968) and Jester (1977) describe the effective use of gill nets (fig. 53).

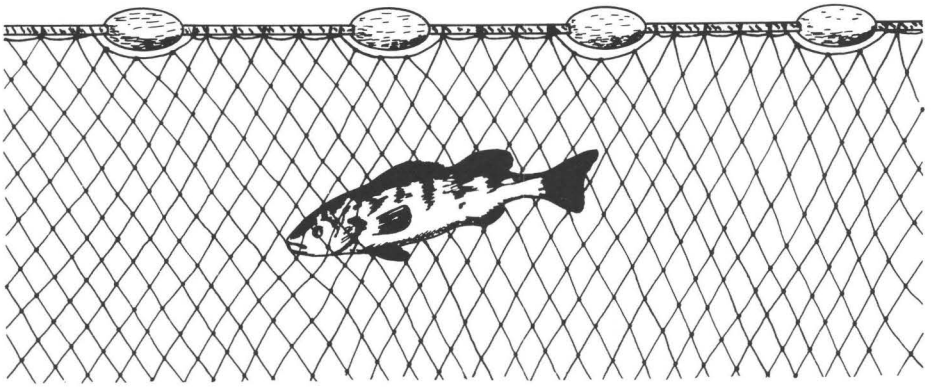


Figure 53.--Gill net (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

Drifting gill nets are set and fished the same way as stationary gill nets except they are allowed to drift with the current. Gill nets are selective in what they capture because of the size of the mesh of the net and because some species are more susceptible to nets than others (Berst, 1961).

Entrapment devices include a variety of nets and traps designed to lure and guide the fish through a series of funnels from which it cannot escape (Beamish, 1973; Yeh, 1977). The two most common devices are the hoop net (figs. 54, 55) and the trap net. These devices are easily set from a small boat. The nets are held in place by anchors or poles and are used in water less than 4 m deep. Fyke nets are a type of hoop net that has wings, or a lead, or both. They are used in lakes and reservoirs where fish movement is more random. Trap nets are similar to hoop nets except floats and weights instead of hoops are used to give the net shape. An adequate sample of fish often can be captured by using a combination of hoop and trap nets of various mesh sizes in the available habitat.

Investigation of Fish Kills

For investigation of fish kills, collect live or distressed specimens, if possible, because they are more suitable for pathological and histological examination. Specimens generally can be collected using a dip net. Specimens that have died recently are a second choice, but the fact that they were dead when collected should be noted clearly on the sample label. Collect about 0.5 kg of fish or other vertebrates and, if possible, about five individuals if the whole animal is to be ground for analysis. Collect a proportionally larger sample when individual tissues are to be analyzed. Generally, a sample of 5 kg will be adequate.

Collect specimens of the same type of organism as those affected from an area within the same body of water that had not been contaminated by the causative agent. These specimens should be handled separately. Collect 20 or more drops of blood from these specimens in a solvent-rinsed vial, seal with teflon or aluminum foil, cap, and freeze. Collection method will depend on the type of habitat to be sampled (Lagler, 1956).

Identify preserved specimens using the best available taxonomic keys or other appropriate means. Proper identification of species involved is necessary to assess the monetary loss due to the destruction of valuable fish and other animal life.

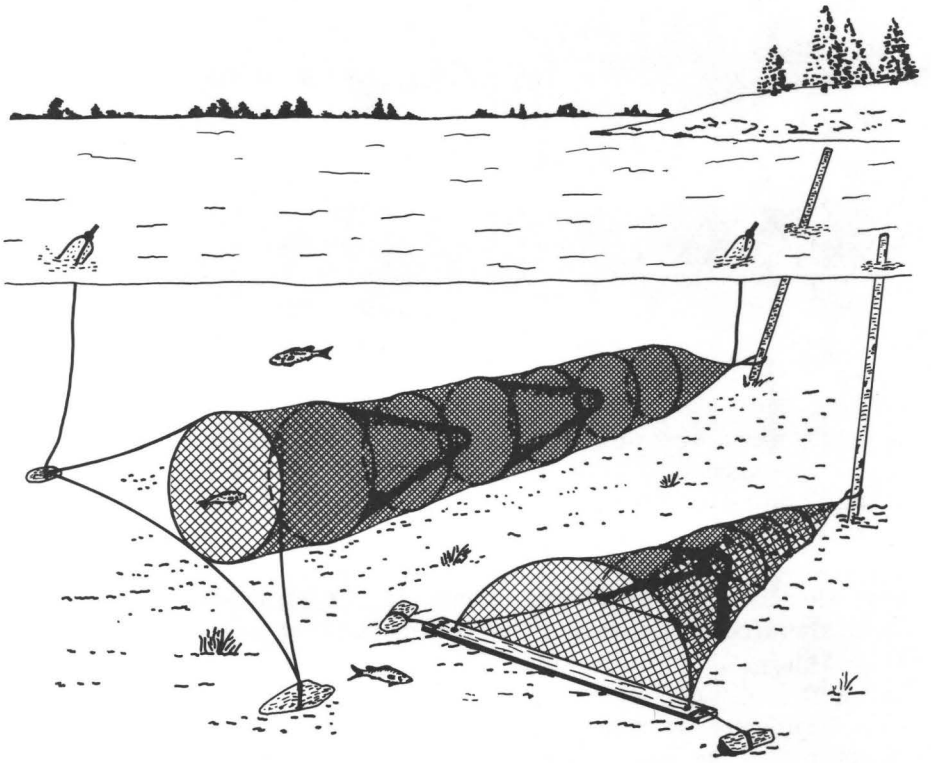


Figure 54.--Hoop net (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

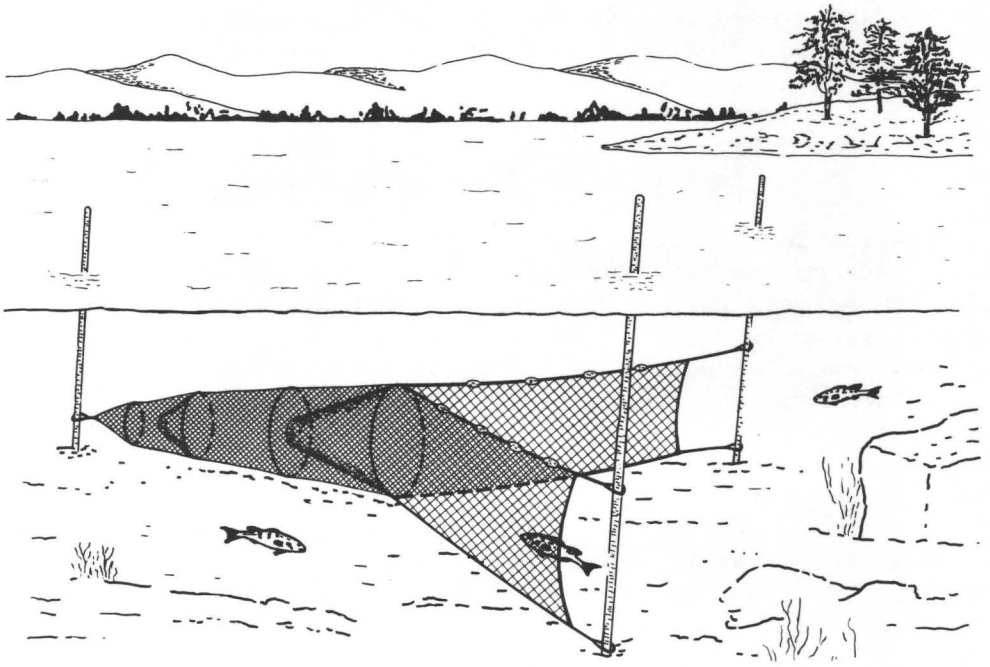


Figure 55.--Fyke net (modified from Dumont and Sundstrom, 1961).

Preparation and Storage

Package the fish in labeled polyethylene bags and freeze (Note 1). Samples may be packed in insulated cartons or chests and refrigerated using about 5 kg of dry ice per 5 to 8 kg of fish.

Note 1: Samples collected for polychlorinated biphenyl (PCB) or other organic-compound analysis should be stored in glass containers or wrapped in aluminum foil. If freezing facilities are not available, preserve the fish in ethyl alcohol (Cope, 1960; Wood, 1960).

Before placing in the preservative, slit each fish from the anus to the gills. Use at least five volumes of preservative for each volume of fish. To avoid contamination, package the fish collected dead separately from those that were collected alive. Labels placed in the same bag with wet fish may become illegible. Tie labels to the outside of the bag.

Estimate the intensity or degree of kill by counting the number of distressed or dead fish per unit length of shoreline, water-surface area, or number of fish passing a point per unit time. Record any factors at the site of the kill that will be useful in identifying the source of the kill. At a minimum, record the name and location of water, time, date, general characteristics of water (color, odor, and other characteristics), and present and previous weather conditions. Also, record name and telephone number of agency or individual reporting the kill, suspected causative agent(s), and suspected source(s).

Whenever possible, measure dissolved oxygen, temperature, pH, and specific conductance upstream and downstream from suspected source(s) of pollutant(s). Also, collect an adequate number of water samples (at least 1 L) upstream from and at the source(s) of suspected pollutant(s). The samples should be chilled to 4 °C.

References Cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Beamish, R. J., 1973, Design of the trap net with interchangeable parts for the capture of large and small fishes from varying depths: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 30, p. 587-590.

Berst, A. H., 1961, Selectivity and efficiency of experimental gill nets in South Bay and Georganian Bay of Lake Huron: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 90, p. 412-418.

Boccardy, J. A., and Cooper, E. L., 1963, The use of rotenone in surveying small streams: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 92, p. 307-310.

Bone, J. N., 1970, A method for dispensing rotenone emulsions: British Columbia Fish and Wildlife Branch, Fish Management Report 62, p. 1-3.

Cope, O. B., 1960, Collection and preservation of fish and other materials exposed to pesticides: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 22, p. 103-108.

Cross, D. G., and Stott, B., 1975, The effects of electric fishing on the subsequent capture of fish: Journal of Fisheries Biology, v. 7, no. 3, p. 349-357.

Czajka, A. F., and Nickerson, M. A., 1977, State regulations for collecting reptiles and amphibians in the fifty United States: Milwaukee Public Museum Special Publication in Biology and Geology 1, p. 1-79.

Dumont, W. H., and Sundstrom, G. T., 1961, Commercial fishing gear of the United States: Washington, D.C., U.S. Government Printing Office, Fish and Wildlife Circular 109, 61 p.

Eschmeyer, R. W., 1939, Analyses of the complete fish population from Howe Lake, Crawford County, Michigan: Papers of the Michigan Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 24, no. 2, p. 117-137.

Everhart, W. H., Eipper, A. W., and Youngs, W. D., 1975, Principles of fisheries science: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 288 p.

Frankenberger, L., 1960, Applications of a boat-rigged direct-current shocker on lakes and streams in west-central Wisconsin: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 22, p. 124-128.

Friedman, R., 1974, Electrofishing for population sampling--A selected bibliography: U.S. Department of the Interior, Office of Library Services, Bibliographic Serial 31, 13 p.

Hocutt, C. H., 1978, Fish, in Mason, W. T., Jr., ed., Methods for assessment and prediction of mineral mining impacts on aquatic communities--A review and analysis: U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service Report FWS/OBS-78/30, p. 80-103.

Hocutt, C. H., Hambrick, P. S., and Masnik, M. T., 1973, Rotenone methods in a large river system: Archives of Hydrobiology, v. 72, no. 2, p. 245-252.

Jester, D. B., 1977, Effects of color, mesh size, fishing in seasonal concentrations, and baiting on catch rates of fishes in gill nets: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 106, p. 43-56.

Lackey, R. T., 1968, Vertical gill nets for studying depth distribution of small fish: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 97, p. 296-299.

Lagler, K. R., 1956, Freshwater fishery biology (2d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 421 p.

Lambou, V. W., 1959, Blockoff net for taking fish population samples: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 21, p. 143-144.

Lennon, R. E., Hunn, J. B., Schnick, R. A., and Burress, R. M., 1971, Reclamation of ponds, lakes and streams with fish toxicant--A review: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, U.N. Report for Period 100:Fish-Technical Report 100, 9 p.

Lennon, R. E., and Parker, P. S., 1959, Reclamation of Indian and Abrams Creeks in Great Smokey Mountain National Park: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Special Scientific Report 306, 22 p.

Massman, W. H., Ladd, E. E., and McCutcheon, H. N., 1952, A surface trawl for sampling young fishes in tidal rivers: Transactions of the North American Wildlife Conference, no. 17, p. 386-392.

Ramsey, J. S., 1968, Freshwater fishes, in Parrish, F. K., and others, Water-quality indicative organisms (southeastern U.S.): Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. y-1 to y-15.

Rounsefell, G. A., and Everhart, W. H., 1953, Fishery science--Its methods and applications: New York, John Wiley and Sons, 444 p.

Schnick, R. A., 1974, A review of the literature on the use of rotenone in fisheries: La Crosse, Wis., Fish Control Laboratory, 130 p. [Available from U.S. Department of Commerce, National Technical Information Service, Springfield, VA 22161 as publication FWS-LR-74 15.]

Sharpe, F. P., 1964, An electrofishing boat with a variable-voltage pulsator for lake and reservoir studies: U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Circular 195, 6 p.

Sharpe, F. P., and Burkhard, W. T., 1969, A lightweight backpack high-voltage electrofishing suit: U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Resources Publication 78, 8 p.

Weber, C. I., ed., 1973, Biological field and laboratory methods for measuring the quality of surface waters and effluents: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Service EPA-670/4-73-001, 19 p.

Whitmore, C. M., Warren, C. E., and Doudoroff, Peter, 1960, Avoidance reactions of salmonid and centrarchid fishes to low oxygen concentration: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 89, p. 17-26.

Wood, E. M., 1960, Definitive diagnosis of fish mortalities: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 32, no. 9, p. 994-999.

Yeh, C. F., 1977, Relative selectivity of fishing gear used in a large reservoir in Texas: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 106, p. 309-313.

Zippin, Calvin, 1956, An evaluation of the removal method of estimating animal populations: Biometrics, v. 12, p. 163-189.

Faunal Survey (Qualitative Method)
(B-6001-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

1. Applications

The methods are applicable to all water.

2. Summary of method

Fish and other aquatic vertebrates are collected, preserved, and identified using appropriate taxonomic keys.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity, depth of water, and turbidity, may make collection difficult. Filamentous algae and macrophytes may interfere with the operation of nets and seines.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

Methods and equipment for the collection of fish are described by Lagler (1956), Needham and Needham (1962), Calhoun (1966), Weber (1973), Everhart and others (1975), Hocutt (1978), and American Public Health Association and others (1985). Hocutt (1978) also discussed methods and equipment for the collection of amphibians and reptiles. State conservation agencies, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and commercial fishermen are other sources of information for obtaining the proper collecting equipment. Weber (1973, p. 171) lists publications containing information about fishery sampling equipment.

4.1 Bag seine, about 25 to 50 ft × 6 or 8 ft. The mesh size should be 1/2 in. square for the wings and 1/4 in. square for the bag.

4.2 Dip net, about 15-in. bow, 45-in. handle, 18-in. depth knotless nylon net, and 3/8-in. square mesh.

4.3 Dissecting kit. Routine dissecting tools. Dissection of the fish for internal examination frequently is required.

4.4 Dissecting microscope, low power of about 7X and stronger, either rotary or stereozoom type of binocular microscope. A substage mirror is essential.

4.5 Divider, fine-pointed, or dial caliper, for measuring body proportions.

4.6 Electrofishing gear. The basic unit consists of a generator (110 V ac or 220 V dc), sufficient insulated electrical wire, and two or three electrodes.

4.7 Forceps, long, for removing specimens from jars, and fine-pointed forceps that meet at the tip, for proper grasping of fins of small fishes and for removal of pharyngeal teeth of small cyprinids.

4.8 Gill net, experimental, about 6×125 ft. Most nets are made in 25-ft panels joined into continuous lengths that have four to five panels of different mesh size. The mesh size should range from about 1/2 in. at one end to about 2 in. at the other end. When equipped with poly-foam float line and lead-core leadline, the nets are virtually tanglefree. Mesh combinations and hanging sequence may be varied to suit individual requirements.

4.9 Gloves, waterproof, low-voltage rubber, Trapper's, shoulder length, for use with electrofishing gear.

4.10 Light source that has very intense illumination. Many investigators favor a gooseneck lamp and a 100-W lightbulb; others favor the smaller lamps that project a concentrated beam of light. The important goal is to bring the light as close to the subject as possible.

4.11 Nylon-mesh cage, about 4×4×4 ft, and 1/4-in. mesh to hold fish after capture.

4.12 Rule, stainless steel, metric, and a divider for obtaining actual measurements.

4.13 Sample containers, plastic, wide-mouth jars, about 0.5-, 1-, and 2-L capacity. Lids should be of plastic if used for prolonged storage of preserved specimens.

4.14 Straight seine, 10×5 ft × 1/8-in. mesh, minnow type, and 25×6 ft × 1/4-in. square mesh.

4.15 Trawls, traps, and hoop nets, available through commercial fishing supply outlets.

4.16 Waders, chest-type, for use with electrofishing gear.

4.17 Waterproof ink.

4.18 Waterproof labels, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Alcohol, isopropyl, 40-percent solution. Dilute 40 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Formaldehyde solution, 4 percent. Dilute 10 mL 37- to 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.4 Household borax. Add about 3 g borax to 1 L 4-percent formaldehyde solution to prevent shrinkage of biological specimens.

6. Analysis

6.1 Preserve specimens in 4-percent formaldehyde solution (10-percent formalin) containing about 3 g borax per liter. Specimens more than 8 cm in length should be slit on the right side to ensure penetration of the preservative into the body cavity. After about a week in the formaldehyde solution, remove the specimens, wash thoroughly by several changes of tap water for at least 24 hours, and transfer the specimens to a 40-percent isopropyl alcohol solution. One change of alcohol is necessary to remove traces of formaldehyde before permanent preservation in 40-percent isopropyl alcohol solution (Needham and Needham, 1962).

6.2 Identify specimens using the best available taxonomic keys, such as Jordan and Everman (1890-1900) and Eddy (1978). Lagler (1956, p. 19-64) described the families of North American freshwater fish and listed local and regional publications about fish taxonomy. Weber (1973) also lists taxonomic references by region. Widely used regional fish keys include, for example, Schultz (1936), Hubbs and Lagler (1958), and Clemens and Wilby (1961). Examples of local keys are Simon (1946), Trautman (1957), and Cook (1959). The recognized common and scientific names of North America are reported in Bailey and others (1970). For the identification of other aquatic vertebrates, refer to Bishop (1947), Carr (1952), and Conant (1975).

6.3 When a tentative species identification has been made using a key, confirmation or rejection of the determination is based on: (1) A comparison with species characteristics listed in the key, (2) determination of correct geographic range, (3) comparison with photographs and drawings in various keys, and (4) identification by a specialist of individuals of questionable species.

7. Calculations

No calculations are necessary.

8. Reporting of results

Report the number of taxa and individuals of each taxon and the type of collection method used.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bailey, R. M., Fetch, J. E., Herald, E. S., Lachner, E. A., Lindsey, C. C., Robins, C. R., and Scott, W. B., 1970, A list of common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada (3d ed.): Washington, D.C., American Fisheries Society Special Publication 6, 150 p.

Bishop, S. C., 1947, Handbook of salamanders: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 555 p.

Calhoun, A., 1966, Inland fisheries management: Sacremento, California Department of Fish and Game, 546 p.

Carr, A. F., Jr., 1952, Handbook of turtles: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 542 p.

Clemens, W. A., and Wilby, B. V., 1961, Fishes of the Pacific Coast of Canada: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 68, 443 p.

Conant, Roger, 1975, A field guide to reptiles and amphibians of eastern and central North America (2d ed.): Boston, Houghton Mifflin Co., 429 p.

Cook, F. A., 1959, Fresh-water fishes in Mississippi: Jackson, Mississippi Game and Fish Commission, 239 p.

Eddy, Samuel, 1978, How to know the freshwater fishes (3d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 286 p.

Everhart, W. H., Eipper, A. W., and Youngs, W. D., 1975, Principles of fisheries science: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 288 p.

Hocutt, C. H., 1978, Fish, in Mason, W. T., Jr., ed., Methods for assessment and prediction of mineral mining impacts on aquatic communities--A review and analysis: U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service Report FWS/OBS-78/30, p. 80-103.

Hubbs, Carl, and Lagler, K. R., 1958, Fishes of the Great Lakes region (revised ed.): Bloomfield Hills, Mich., Cranbrook Institute of Science Bulletin 26, 186 p.

Jordan, D. S., and Everman, B. W., 1890-1900, The fishes of North and Middle America, a descriptive catalogue of the species of fishlike vertebrates found in the waters of North America, north of the Isthmus of Panama: U.S. National Museum Bulletin 48, 4 parts, 3,313 p.

Lagler, K. R., 1956, Freshwater fishery biology (2d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 421 p.

Needham, J. G., and Needham, P. R., 1962, A guide to the study of freshwater biology (5th ed., revised): San Francisco, Holden-Day, Inc., 108 p.

Schultz, L. P., 1936, Keys to the fishes of Washington, Oregon, and closely adjoining regions: Seattle, University of Washington Publication in Biology, v. 2, no. 4, p. 103-228.

Simon, J. R., 1946, Wyoming fishes: Cheyenne, Wyoming Game and Fish Department Bulletin 4, 129 p.

Trautman, M. B., 1957, The fishes of Ohio with illustrated keys: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, 683 p.

Weber, C. I., ed., 1973, Biological field and laboratory methods for measuring the quality of surface waters and effluents: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Service EPA-670/4-73-001, 19 p.

Life History (Quantitative Method)
(B-6020-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

1. Applications

The method is applicable to all water.

2. Summary of method

Fish and other aquatic vertebrates are collected and identified. Fish studies commonly include the number of specimens captured per unit area or unit time. The fish also may be measured, weighed, sexed, and aged to provide comparative information between populations in the same environment or between populations in different environments. Methods used in the study of fish and fish populations are described by Lagler (1956), Ricker (1971), and Everhart and others (1975). Methods for the direct and indirect enumeration of populations are described in this section.

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity, depth of water, and turbidity, may make collection difficult. Filamentous algae and macrophytes may interfere with the operation of nets and seines.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

Methods and equipment for the collection of fish are described by Lagler (1956), Needham and Needham (1962), Calhoun (1966), Weber (1973), Everhart and others (1975), Hocutt (1978), and American Public Health Association and others (1985). Hocutt (1978) also discussed methods and equipment for the collection of amphibians and reptiles. State conservation agencies, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and commercial fishermen are other sources of information for obtaining the proper collecting equipment. Weber (1973, p. 171) lists publications containing information about fishery sampling equipment.

4.1 Bag seine, about 25 to 50 ft × 6 or 8 ft. The mesh size should be 1/2-in. square for the wings and 1/4-in. square for the bag.

4.2 Balance, capable of weighing to at least 1 g.

4.3 Container, for holding anesthesia.

4.4 Dip net, about 15-in. bow, 45-in. handle, 18-in. depth knotless nylon net, and 3/8-in. square mesh.

4.5 Dissecting kit. Routine dissecting tools. Dissections of the fish for internal examination frequently is required.

4.6 Dissecting microscope, low power of about 7X and stronger, either rotary or stereozoom type of binocular microscope. A substage mirror is essential.

4.7 Divider, fine-pointed, or dial caliper, for measuring body proportions.

4.8 Electrofishing gear. The basic unit consists of a generator (110 V ac or 220 V dc), sufficient insulated electrical wire, and two or three electrodes.

4.9 Forceps, long, for removing specimens from jars, and fine-pointed forceps that meet at the tip, for proper grasping of fins of small fishes and for removal of pharyngeal teeth of small cyprinids.

4.10 Gill net, experimental, about 6×125 ft. Most nets are made in 25-ft panels joined into continuous lengths that have four to five panels of different mesh size. The mesh size should range from about 1/2 in. at one end to about 2 in. at the other end. When equipped with poly-foam float line and lead-core leadline, the nets are virtually tanglefree. Mesh combinations and hanging sequence may be varied to suit individual requirements.

4.11 Gloves, waterproof, low-voltage rubber, Trapper's, shoulder length, for use with electrofishing gear.

4.12 Light source that has very intense illumination. Many investigators favor a gooseneck lamp and a 100-W lightbulb; others favor smaller lamps that project a concentrated beam of light. The important goal is to bring the light as close to the subject as possible.

4.13 Measuring board, or similar apparatus. A metric ruler that has a piece of wood at a right angle to the zero end is an adequate measuring device.

4.14 Nylon-mesh cage, about 4×4×4 ft, and 1/4-in. mesh to hold fish after capture.

4.15 Rule, stainless steel, metric, and a divider for obtaining actual measurements.

4.16 Sample containers, plastic, wide-mouth jars, about 0.5-, 1-, and 2-L capacity. Lids should be of plastic if used for prolonged storage of preserved specimens.

4.17 Scalpel or knife that has small sharp blade.

4.18 Small envelopes, 2⅛×3⅛ in., and bond typing-paper inserts for scale samples.

4.19 Straight seine, 10×5 ft × 1/8-in. mesh minnow type, and 25×6 ft × 1/4-in. square mesh.

4.20 Trawls, traps, and hoop nets, available through commercial fishing supply outlets.

4.21 Vials or small bottles, for stomach-content samples.

4.22 Waders, chest-type, for use with electrofishing gear.

4.23 Waterproof ink.

4.24 Waterproof labels, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Alcohol, isopropyl, 40-percent solution. Dilute 40 mL concentrated isopropyl alcohol to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.2 Anesthesia, MS 222 (tricanemethane sulfonate). Prepare a stock solution by dissolving 1 g MS 222 in 500 mL distilled water. Dilute the stock solution 1 part to 6 parts using distilled water before use.

5.3 Distilled or deionized water.

5.4 Formaldehyde solution, 4 percent. Dilute 10 mL 37- to 40-percent aqueous formaldehyde solution (formalin) to 100 mL using distilled water.

5.5 Household borax. Add about 3 g borax to 1 L 4-percent formaldehyde solution to prevent shrinkage of biological specimens.

6. Analysis

6.1 Preserve specimens in 4-percent formaldehyde solution (10-percent formalin) containing about 3 g borax per liter. Specimens more than 8 cm in length should be slit on the right side to ensure penetration of the preservative into the body cavity. After about a week in the formaldehyde solution, remove the specimens, wash thoroughly by several changes of tap water for at least 24 hours, and transfer the specimens to a 40-percent isopropyl alcohol solution. One change of alcohol is necessary to remove traces of formaldehyde before permanent preservation in 40-percent isopropyl alcohol solution (Needham and Needham, 1962).

6.2 Identify specimens using the best available taxonomic keys, such as Jordan and Everman (1890-1900) and Eddy (1978). Lagler (1956, p. 19-64) described the families of North American freshwater fish and listed local and regional publications about fish taxonomy. Weber (1973) also lists taxonomic references by region. Widely used regional fish keys include, for example, Schultz (1936), Simon (1946), Trautman (1957), and Hubbs and Lagler (1958). The recognized common and scientific names of North American fish are given in Bailey and others (1970). For the identification of other aquatic vertebrates, refer to Bishop (1947), Carr (1952), and Conant (1975).

6.3 When a tentative species identification has been made using a key, confirmation or rejection of the determination is based on: (1) A comparison with species characteristics listed in the key, (2) determination of correct geographic range, (3) comparison with photographs and drawings in various keys, and (4) identification by a specialist of individuals of questionable species.

6.4 Fish, amphibians, and other aquatic, cold-blooded animals can be handled easier and with less harm done to them if they are anesthetized. There also is less chance that the worker will be injured by sharp teeth or spines when the animal's reactions have been slowed. MS 222 (tricanemethane sulfonate), at the prescribed concentration, is the preferred anesthetic. Read label completely for directions and warnings about the use of this chemical.

6.5 Weigh each fish to the nearest gram after blotting dry using a paper towel or cheesecloth.

6.6 Measure the total length of each fish to the nearest millimeter. Fork length is preferred by some fisheries' biologists (fig. 56).

6.7 Food habits (optional). If the food habits of the fish are one of the study objectives, representative specimens usually must be killed. However, methods are available for removing food materials from the stomachs of living fish (Wales, 1962). Make a quantitative determination of the food present in the stomachs using a method appropriate to the study objectives. The usual methods are numerical, frequency of occurrence, percentage of bulk, gravimetric, and volumetric (Lagler, 1956, p. 120-128).

6.8 Age and growth by the length frequency method (optional). This method is based on the assumption that the lengths of individuals of a species of one age group will be normally distributed about the mean length, when collected at the same time. Accurate results using this method require fairly large samples of all age groups in the population (Carlander, 1969).

6.9 Age and growth by the scale-analysis method (optional). Using a knife blade or scalpel, remove a sample of scales from the left side of the fish (fig. 56). Place the scales in a folded piece of bond typing paper, and insert into an envelope. Record the following on the outside of the envelope: species, locality, method of capture, time, date, collector, length, weight, and sex (if known) of the fish. Using the collected scales, determine the age of the fish using the methods described in Lagler (1956, p. 131-158).

6.10 Population density (optional) is population size in relation to some unit of space. It generally is measured and expressed as the number of individuals or standing crop (biomass) per unit of area; for example, 53 brook trout per surface area, or 190 lb of fish per surface area.

The methods for determining population density can be divided into two general categories: (1) Direct or total count, and (2) indirect or sample count. The opportunity for total direct counting only occurs when the entire population can be concentrated, such as during a reclamation project or during a spawning run. More often the population must be estimated by sampling

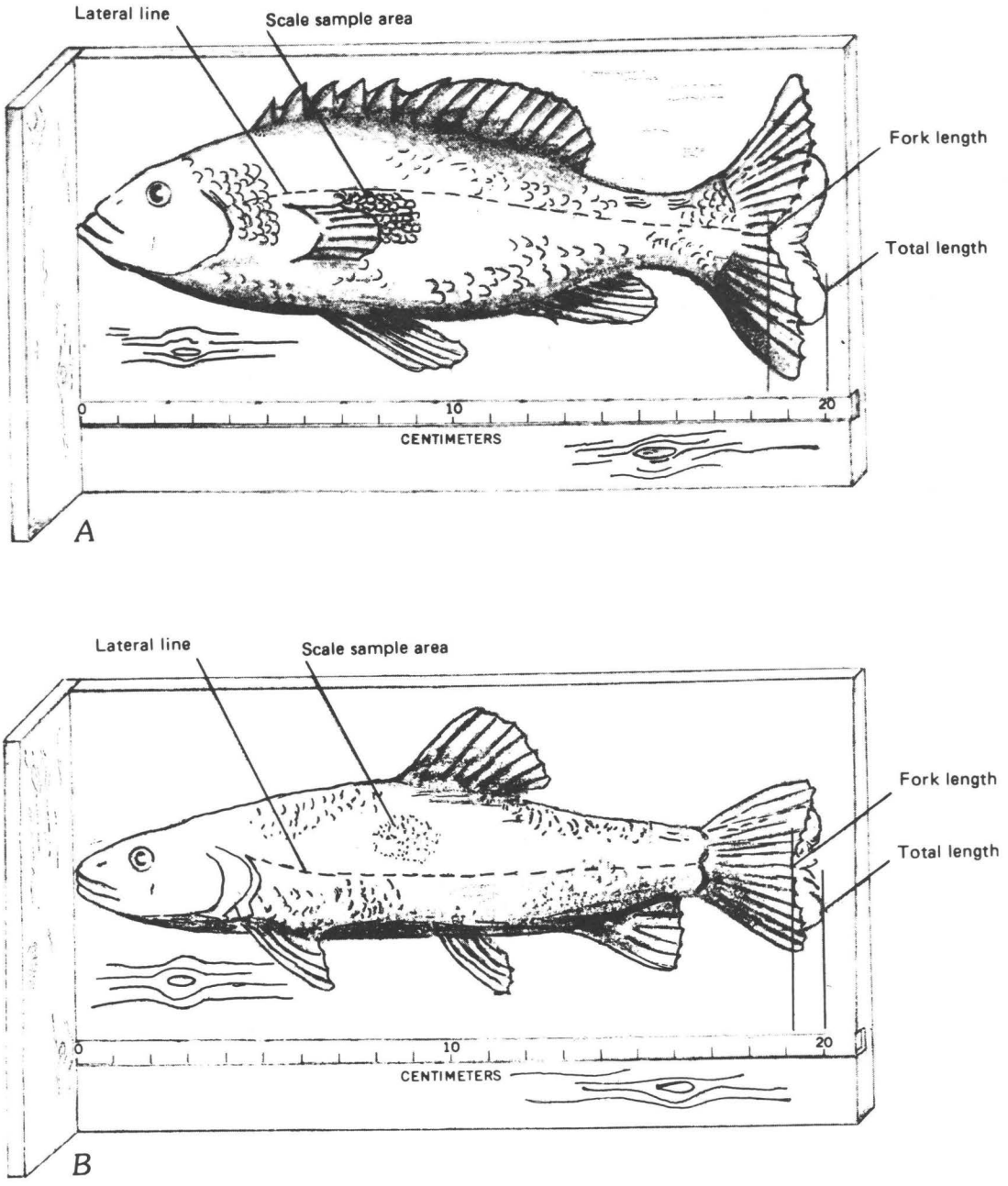


Figure 56.--Fish measurements and areas for scale collection on: (A) spiny-rayed and (B) soft-rayed fish.

methods. The three most commonly used sampling methods include: (1) The area-density method, (2) the mark and recapture method, and (3) the catch-per-unit-effort method. The methods are described in Cooper and Lagler (1956) and Everhart and others (1975).

6.10.1 The area-density method consists of counting the number of fish in a series of random or stratified plots or in areas that are representative of the total area whose population is to be estimated. The sample count then is expanded to an estimate of the population by multiplying the aggregate sample count by the fraction: total area (or time) divided by the sum of sample areas (Everhart and others, 1975).

6.10.2 The mark and recapture method of populations involves, first, the capture and release of a number of marked individuals into the population; and second, the subsequent recapture of marked individuals and the capture of unmarked individuals from the population.

6.10.3 The catch-per-unit-effort method requires a measurable decrease in the population by fishing and commonly is referred to as the DeLury (1947) regression method. The method of Moran (1951) and Zippin (1956, 1958) is appropriate when effort is constant. The DeLury (1947) and Leslie (1952) methods are appropriate when effort is variable. These methods are valid only if the population is closed, and the chance of capture is equal and remains constant from sample to sample. Examples of the application of data from the catch-per-unit-effort method to regression analyses are presented in Lagler (1956), Zippin (1956, 1958), and Everhart and others (1975).

Methods for measuring population density are numerous and too involved to go into detail here. The investigator should review the indicated literature and adapt proven techniques to fit a specific case.

7. Calculations

7.1 Percent species composition in sample

$$= \frac{\text{Number of individuals of a given species}}{\text{Total number of all fish collected}} \times 100 \ .$$

7.2 Plot weight as a function of length, as described in Lagler (1956, p. 159-166, figs. 47, 48).

7.3 Plot age as a function of length, as described in Lagler (1956, p. 149-158).

7.4 The calculations required for food-habit studies are determined by the methods of analysis. The usual methods are described in Lagler (1956, p. 120-130).

7.5 Calculate the population-density estimate from area-density data using the equation

$$\underline{N} = \frac{\underline{A}}{\underline{a}} \sum_{\underline{i}=1}^{\underline{a}} \underline{N}_{\underline{i}} \ ,$$

where N = the estimate of pouplation size;
A = the number of equal units of area (or time) occupied by the total population;
a = the number of units sampled; and
N_i = the number counted in the i^{th} sample area.

The estimated variance ($\hat{v}$) is

$$\hat{v}(N) = \frac{A^2 - aA}{a} \times \frac{a \sum_{i=1}^{a} N_i^2 - \sum_{i=1}^{a} N_i^2}{a(a-1)} .$$

7.6 Calculate the population-density estimate from mark and recapture data using the equation

$$N = MC/R$$

where N = the estimate of population size;
M = the number of individuals marked and released into the population;
C = the recapture sample size that includes both marked and unmarked individuals; and
R = the number of marked individuals that are recaptured.

If the population density is large enough for multiple marking and recapture periods, use Schnable's equation (1938)

$$N = \frac{\sum_{t=1}^{n} C_t M_t}{\sum_{t=1}^{n} R_t} .$$

7.7 Calculate the population-density estimate from catch-per-unit-effort data using the line or regression technique where catch-per-unit effort is plotted against cumulative catch. In such a graph, the catch-per-unit effort is the ordinate and the cumulative catch is the abscissa. Fit the straight regression line to its intercept with the x axis. The intercept value is the approximation of the population density (Lagler, 1956).

8. Reporting of results

8.1 Report percent species composition in sample to the nearest whole number.

8.2 Report weight to the nearest gram, and length to the nearest millimeter.

8.3 Report age to the nearest year.

8.4 Report food-habit analyses by the method used and by study objectives.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bailey, R. M., Fetch, J. E., Herald, E. S., Lachner, E. A., Lindsey, C. C., Robins, C. R., and Scott, W. B., 1970, A list of common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada (3d ed.): Washington, D.C., American Fisheries Society Special Publication 6, 150 p.

Bishop, S. C., 1947, Handbook of salamanders: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 555 p.

Calhoun, A., 1966, Inland fisheries management: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, 546 p.

Carlander, K. D., 1969, Freshwater fishery biology: Ames, Iowa State University Press, v. 1, 752 p.

Carr, A. F., Jr., 1952, Handbook of turtles: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 542 p.

Conant, Roger, 1975, A field guide to reptiles and amphibians of eastern and central North America (2d ed.): Boston, Houghton Mifflin Co., 429 p.

Cooper, G. P., and Lagler, K. R., 1956, Appraisals of the methods of fish population study, III--The measurement of fish population size: North American Wildlife Conference 21st, New Orleans, 1956, Transactions, p. 281-297.

DeLury, D. B., 1947, On the estimation of biological populations: Biometrics, v. 3, p. 145-167.

Eddy, Samuel, 1978, How to know the freshwater fishes (3d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 286 p.

Everhart, W. H., Eipper, A. W., and Youngs, W. D., 1975, Principles of fisheries science: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University Press, 288 p.

Hocutt, C. H., 1978, Fish, in Mason, W. T., Jr., ed., Methods for assessment and prediction of mineral mining impacts on aquatic communities--A review and analysis: U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service Report FWS/OBS-78/30, p. 80-103.

Hubbs, Carl, and Lagler, K. R., 1958, Fishes of the Great Lakes region (revised ed.): Bloomfield Hill, Mich., Cranbrook Institute of Science Bulletin 26, 186 p.

Jordan, D. S., and Everman, B. W., 1890-1900, The fishes of North and Middle America, a descriptive catalogue of the species of fishlike vertebrates found in the waters of North America, north of the Isthmus of Panama: U.S. National Museum Bulletin 48, 4 parts, 3,313 p.

Lagler, K. R., 1956, Freshwater fishery biology (2d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, William C. Brown Co., 421 p.

Leslie, P. H., 1952, The estimation of population parameters from data obtained by means of the capture-recapture method, Part II--The estimation of total numbers: Biometrika, v. 39, no. 3-4, p. 363-388.

Moran, P. A., 1951, A mathematical theory of animal trapping: Biometrika, v. 38, pt. 3-4, p. 307-311.
Needham, J. G., and Needham, P. R., 1962, A guide to the study of freshwater biology (5th ed., revised): San Francisco, Holden-Day, Inc., 108 p.
Ricker, W. E., ed., 1971, Methods for assessment of fish production in fresh waters (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 3, 384 p.
Schnable, Z. E., 1938, The estimation of the total fish population of a lake: American Mathematics Monthly, v. 45, no. 6, p. 348-352.
Schultz, L. P., 1936, Keys to the fishes of Washington, Oregon, and closely adjoining regions: Seattle, University of Washington Publication in Biology, v. 2, no. 4, p. 103-228.
Simon, J. R., 1946, Wyoming fishes: Cheyenne, Wyoming Game and Fish Department Bulletin 4, 129 p.
Trautman, M. B., 1957, The fishes of Ohio with illustrated keys: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, 683 p.
Wales, J. H., 1962, Forceps for removal of trout stomach content: Progressive Fish Culturist, v. 24, p. 171.
Weber, C. I., ed., 1973, Biological field and laboratory methods for measuring the quality of surface waters and effluents: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Service EPA-670/4-73-001, 19 p.
Zippin, Calvin, 1956, An evaluation of the removal method of estimating animal populations: Biometrics, v. 12, p. 163-189.
_____1958, The removal method of population estimation: Journal of Wildlife Management, v. 22, p. 82-90.

Methods for Investigation of Fish and Other Aquatic Vertebrate Kills (B-6040-85)

Parameter and Code: Not applicable

1. Applications

Methods of investigation and collection are applicable to all water.

2. Summary of method

2.1 Fish kills are an obvious and important event related to water quality. The methods in this section describe what important facts need to be documented when making an onsite investigation and how to properly preserve specimens for laboratory examination to determine the probable cause of death. The collection of fish and other vertebrates from a natural or man-caused kill generally is only one phase of a more comprehensive investigation that involves onsite and laboratory chemical tests.

2.2 Because fish-kill investigations normally are the responsibility of State and Federal enforcement agencies, the U.S. Geological Survey's involvement usually is that of a supportive role. However, because many fish kills are due to a slug of toxic material of short duration, personnel from the first agency on the scene should be prepared to collect the necessary samples and information.

2.3 For additional information about the investigation of fish kills, see Smith and others (1956), Burdick (1965), Federal Water Pollution Control Administration (1966, 1967), and American Public Health Association and others (1985).

3. Interferences

Physical factors, such as stream velocity and depth of water, may make collection difficult. Access to affected waters also is a common problem. Some pollutants are toxic or hazardous to humans and require special precautions.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Aluminum foil, heavy weight type.

4.2 Dip net, long handle, and 3/16-in. mesh.

4.3 Plastic bags, various sizes.

4.4 Waterproof ink.

4.5 Waterproof labels, or labels may be cut from sheets of plastic paper.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Distilled or deionized water.

5.2 Ethyl alcohol, 75 percent. Dilute 750 mL commercial 95-percent denatured ethyl alcohol to 950 mL using distilled water.

6. Analysis

Samples should be shipped to an appropriate laboratory for histological or pathological examination. The nearest laboratory can be located by contacting the local office of the State Fish and Game Department or State Department of Health.

7. Calculations

No calculations are necessary.

8. Reporting of results

Report estimated number of distressed or dead fish, or other observed aquatic vertebrates, followed with an appropriate qualifying statement such as estimation based on 1 hour of observation or number of specimens observed per unit length of shoreline. Degrees of severity of fish kills have been based on the number of dead or dying fish per length of shoreline (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Burdick, G. E., 1965, Some problems in the determination of the cause of fish kills, in Problems in water pollution: U.S. Public Health Service Publication 999-WP-25, p. 289-292.

Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, 1966, 1967, Fish kills by pollution: U.S. Department of the Interior, FWPCA Publication CWA-7 1967, 17 p.

Smith, L. L., Jr., and others, 1956, Procedures for investigation of fish kills--A guide for field reconnaissance and data collection: Cincinnati, Ohio River Valley Water Sanitation Commission, 24 p.

CELLULAR CONTENTS

Introduction

Chlorophyll a is the primary photosynthetic pigment of all oxygen-producing photosynthetic organisms and is present in all algae (phytoplankton and periphyton). Thus, measurement of this pigment can indicate the quantity of algae present and provide an estimate of the primary productivity (Lorenzen, 1970). Because environmental and nutritional factors may affect the chlorophyll concentration without affecting the total algal biomass, this measurement is only an estimate. Green algae and euglenophytes also contain chlorophyll b (Wetzel, 1975). Certain other algae contain chlorophylls c and d. Ratios between the different types of chlorophyll may indicate the taxonomic composition of an algal community.

An estimate of the quantity of living micro-organisms (biomass) in an aquatic environment can be useful when assessing water quality. The universal occurrence and central function of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) in living cells and its chemical stability make it an excellent indicator of the presence of living material. The level of endogenous ATP (that is, the quantity of ATP per unit biomass) in bacteria (Allen, 1973), in algae (Holm-Hansen, 1970), and in zooplankton (Holm-Hansen, 1973) is relatively constant when compared to cellular organic-carbon content in several species of organisms. Furthermore, its concentration in all phases of a growth cycle remains relatively constant. In studies where cell viability was determined (Hamilton and Holm-Hansen, 1967; Dawes and Large, 1970), the concentration of ATP per viable cell remained relatively constant during periods of starvation. The quantity of ATP, therefore, can be used to estimate total living biomass.

Collection

The sites and methods used for phytoplankton and periphyton sampling should correspond as closely as possible to those selected for chemical and microbiological sampling. The sample-collection method will be determined by the study objectives. In lakes, reservoirs, deep rivers, and estuaries, phytoplankton abundance may vary transversely, with depth and width, and with time of day. To collect a sample representative of the phytoplankton concentration at a particular depth, use a water-sampling bottle. To collect a sample representative of the entire flow of a stream, use a depth-integrating sampler (Guy and Norman, 1970; Goerlitz and Brown, 1972). For small streams, a depth-integrated sample or a point sample at a single transverse position at the centroid of flow is adequate. For further information about collection of phytoplankton samples, see the "Phytoplankton" section.

After collection of the phytoplankton sample, place a 47-mm glass-fiber filter on a filter funnel. Filter a measured volume of water sample at a vacuum of no more than 250 mm of mercury. Rinse the sides of the filter funnel with a few milliliters of distilled water. For estuarine samples, use rinse water that is near the salinity of the sample.

Roll the filter so the plankton is on the inside and proceed with the prescribed method of determination or place the rolled filter in a glass vial, 22×85 mm, and store frozen in the dark. Storage should not exceed 2 weeks. Dry ice is used for preserving samples while in transit (samples must not thaw before analysis begins).

Most analyses of the periphyton community have been adapted from long-established methods of phytoplankton analyses. The attached benthic nature of periphyton, however, causes special collection problems that adversely affect the accuracy of various estimates. Methods have been developed for collecting periphyton from natural substrates and from artificial substrates.

Natural submerged substrates commonly contain periphyton that can be sampled quantitatively. The periphyton should be removed from a known area of substrate onsite. Several devices for removing periphyton from a known area of natural substrates are shown in figure 18. Stockner and Armstrong (1971) sampled periphyton using a plastic hypodermic syringe that had a toothbrush attached to the end of the syringe piston. Holding the barrel of the syringe tightly against the substrate, the piston is pushed in until the brush contacts the periphyton. The piston then is rotated several times to dislodge the periphyton and then is withdrawn, pulling the periphyton up with it. A glass plate is placed immediately under the end of the barrel, and the syringe inverted. Four small holes at the base of the syringe enable the water to move freely when procuring the sample.

The device used by Douglas (1958) consists of a broad-necked polyethylene flask that has the bottom removed. The neck of the flask is held tightly against the surface to be sampled, and the periphyton inside the enclosed area is dislodged from the substrate using a stiff nylon brush. The loose periphyton is removed from the flask using a pipet. Ertl's (1971) apparatus consists of two concentric metal, or plastic, cylinders separated by spacers. The space between the cylinders is filled with modeling clay, and the sampler is pressed firmly against the substrate to be sampled. Using a blunt stick or metal rod, the clay is forced down onto the substrate to isolate the sampling area of the inner circle. The periphyton within the inner circle is dislodged using a stiff brush and removed using a pipet.

Artificial substrates can be attached to a supporting object in a stream or lake (figs. 19, 20). The substrate must be submerged during the entire colonization period but may be near the surface of the water and can be suspended at several depths. The substrates may be attached to natural items, such as submerged trees, stumps, logs, or boulders, or they may be attached to stakes driven into the bottom. Floating samplers also may be used. The sampler should be secured so that it will not drift into any obstruction or become beached. In extremely shallow streams, a weir may have to be constructed to guarantee sufficient water to float the sampler. If such a weir is constructed, data from the sample should be compared only with data obtained from comparably placed samplers. A floating sampler is not recommended for any area that would have intermittent flow for any period during the exposure time.

The artificial substrates should be placed in areas of light that typify the streams, rivers, or lakes being studied. For example, if most of the stream is shaded, an area that receives a great deal of sunlight should not be selected as being representative. In general, substrate samples collected from similar lighting conditions need to be compared; but, depending on the study objective, this is not a requirement.

To ensure a continuous period of uniform substrate exposure to the environment being monitored, the sampler should be examined, periodically if possible, for any evidence of fouling or mechanical damage. If the sampler or substrate has been fouled or beached, the data for that sampling period should not be compared with data from any other substrate that has had free, continuous, and uninterrupted exposure to the aquatic environment.

The length of time required for colonization of the substrates by periphyton will depend on other environmental factors as well as water quality. Exposure times will vary and must be determined for each season and water type. The exposure period should be long enough to enable the development of a periphyton community large enough for measurement but, at the same time, should avoid so much growth that sloughing would occur. Test samplers can be used prior to the actual monitoring to determine the most desirable exposure time for the prevailing (that is, seasonal and environmental) conditions. The general exposure period for fresh to brackish waters, mesotrophic to eutrophic, within the thermal range of 15 to 35 °C, is 14 days. Exposure periods during special conditions of low productivity (that is, few nutrients, low temperature) or very high productivity may, by experience, be adjusted for the onsite conditions. Exposure periods should be identical for all sites in the entire study area.

The artificial substrates should be located so damage to the apparatus by floating debris is minimized. Vandalism is a common problem and placing the substrate away from frequently traveled areas is advisable. For further information on collection of periphyton samples, see the "Periphyton" section.

Place the detached periphyton from the natural substrate or the complete artificial substrate into a bottle containing water or preservative. Store frozen in the dark for no more than 2 weeks. Dry ice is used for preserving samples in transit.

References Cited

Allen, P. D., 1973, Development of the luminescence biometer for microbial detection: Developments in Industrial Microbiology, v. 14, p. 67-73.

Dawes, E. A., and Large, P. J., 1970, Effect of starvation on the viability and cellular constituents of Zymomonas anaerobia and Zymomonas mobilis: Journal of General Microbiology, v. 60, p. 31-40.

Douglas, Barbara, 1958, The ecology of the attached diatoms and other algae in a small stony stream: Ecology, v. 46, p. 295-322.

Ertl, Milan, 1971, A quantitative method of sampling periphyton from rough substrates: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 3, p. 576-577.

Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hamilton, R. D., and Holm-Hansen, O., 1967, Adenosine triphosphate content of marine bacteria: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 2, p. 319-324.

Holm-Hansen, O., 1970, ATP levels in algal cells as influenced by environmental conditions: Plant and Cell Physiology, v. 11, p. 689-700.

_____1973, Determination of total microbial biomass by measurement of adenosine triphosphate, in Stevenson, L. H., and Colwell, R. R., eds., Estuarine microbial ecology: Columbia, University of South Carolina Press, p. 73-89.

Lorenzen, C. J., 1970, Surface chlorophyll as an index of the depth, chlorophyll content, and primary productivity of the euphotic zone: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 15, no. 3, p. 479-480.

Stockner, J. G., and Armstrong, F. A. J., 1971, Periphyton of the experimental lakes area, northwestern Ontario: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 215-229.

Wetzel, R. G., 1975, Limnology: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 743 p.

Chlorophyll in Phytoplankton by Spectroscopy
(B-6501-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, phytoplankton, spectrometric, uncorrected (µg/L):	32230
Chlorophyll b, phytoplankton, spectrometric (µg/L):	32231
Chlorophyll c, phytoplankton, spectrometric (µg/L):	32232
Chlorophyll, total, phytoplankton, spectrometric, uncorrected (µg/L):	32234

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

Chlorophyll pigments are determined simultaneously without detailed separation. A water sample is filtered, and the phytoplankton cells retained on the filter are ruptured mechanically, using 90-percent acetone, to facilitate extraction of pigments. Concentrations of chlorophylls are calculated from measurements of absorbance of the extract at four wavelengths, corrected for a 90-percent acetone blank.

3. Interferences

Suspended materials in the sample may clog the membrane filter. Erroneously large values may result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves and other plant materials. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls. Large populations of photosynthetic bacteria will result in an overestimation of phytoplankton chlorophyll (Hussaing, 1973).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Centrifuge, swing-out type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, and 15-mL graduated centrifuge tubes.

4.2 Filters, metricel, alpha-6, 0.45 µm, 25-mm diameter.

4.3 Filter flask, 1 or 2 L. Onsite, a polypropylene flask is used.

4.4 Filter funnel, vacuum, 1.2 L, stainless steel.

4.5 Filter holder, Pyrex microanalysis, frit support, 25 mm.

4.6 Manostat that has mercury and calibration equipment to regulate the filtration suction to not more than 250 mm of mercury when filtering using an aspirator or an electric vacuum pump.

4.7 Membrane filter, white, plain, 0.45-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.8 Source of vacuum for filtration: A water-aspirator pump or an electric vacuum pump for laboratory use; a handheld vacuum pump and gauge for onsite use.

4.9 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.10 Tissue grinder.

4.11 Water-sampling bottle. Depth-integrating samplers are described by Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

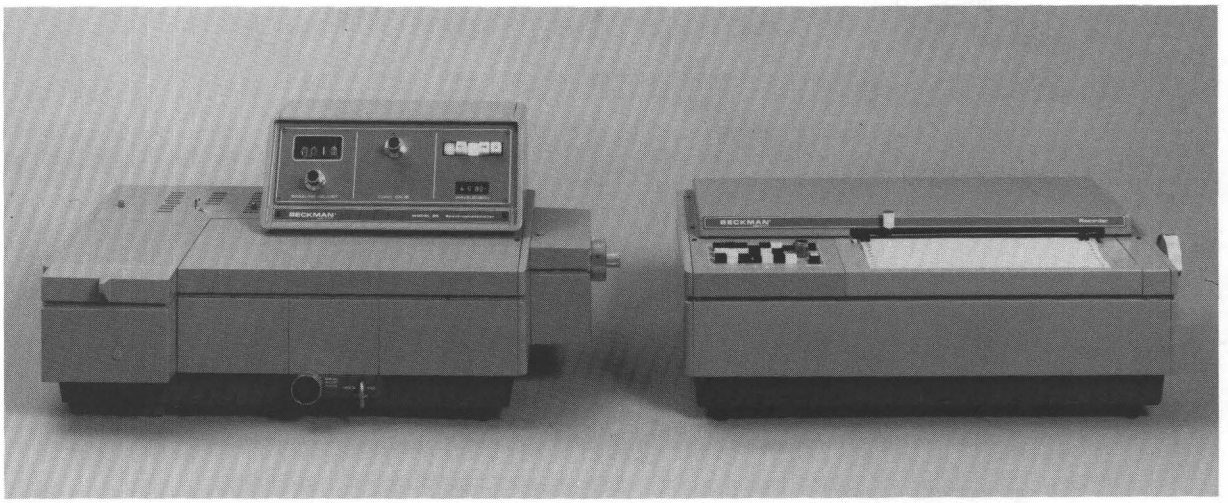


Figure 57.--Scanning spectrometer (spectrophotometer) (photograph courtesy of Beckman Instruments, Inc., Irvine, Calif.).

6. Analysis

6.1 If filter was frozen, allow it to thaw for 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 Place the filter in a tissue grinder. Add 3 to 4 mL of 90-percent acetone, and grind at 500 r/min for 3 minutes. If multiple filters are used, use a 40-mL grinder.

6.3 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder two or three times using 90-percent acetone. Adjust to some convenient volume, such as 10±0.1 mL. Store for 10 minutes in the dark at room temperature.

6.4 Centrifuge at 3,000 to 4,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.5 Carefully pour or pipet the supernatant into the spectrometer cell. Do not disturb the precipitate. If the extract is turbid, clear by making a twofold dilution using 90-percent acetone, or by filtering through an acetone-resistant filter.

6.6 Read the absorbances at 750, 664, 647, and 630 nm and compare to a 90-percent acetone blank. (Dilute the extract using 90-percent acetone if the absorbance is greater than 0.8.) If the 750-nm reading is greater than 0.005 absorbance unit per centimeter of light path, decrease the turbidity as in 6.5.

7. Calculations

7.1 Subtract the absorbance at 750 nm from the absorbance at each of the other wavelengths (that is, 664, 647, and 630 nm). Divide the differences by the light path of the spectrometer cell, in centimeters. The concentrations of chlorophylls in the extract, in micrograms per milliliter, are calculated by the following equations (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

Chlorophyll a, in micrograms per milliliter = $11.85e_{664}-1.54e_{647}-0.08e_{630}$;
Chlorophyll b, in micrograms per milliliter = $-5.43e_{664}+21.03e_{647}-2.66e_{630}$;
and
Chlorophyll c, in micrograms per milliliter = $-1.67e_{664}-7.60e_{647}+24.52e_{630}$;

where $e_{664} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 664 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$;

$e_{647} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 647 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$; and

$e_{630} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 630 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$.

7.2 Convert the values derived in 7.1 to the concentrations of chlorophylls, in micrograms per liter, in the originally collected sample. For example:

$$\text{Chlorophyll } \underline{a} \text{ (micrograms per liter)} = \frac{\text{Derived value (micrograms per milliliter)} \times \text{extract volume (milliliters)}}{\text{Sample volume (liters)}} .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophyll a, b, or c, in micrograms per liter, as follows: less than 1 µg/L, one decimal; 1 µg/L and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 The precision of chlorophyll determinations is affected by the volume of water filtered, the range of chlorophyll values calculated, the volume of extraction solvent, and the light path of the spectrometer cells.

9.2 The following precision estimates were reported by Strickland and Parsons (1972).

Chlorophyll a precision at the 5 µg level. The correct value is in the range: Mean of n determinations $\pm 0.26/n^{\frac{1}{2}}$ µg chlorophyll a.

Chlorophyll b precision at the 0.5 µg level. The correct value is in the range: Mean of n determinations $\pm 0.21/n^{\frac{1}{2}}$ µg chlorophyll b.

9.3 The precision of chlorophyll c determinations is variable and very poor, anywhere between ±10 and ±30 percent of the quantity being measured; results are not accurate.

10. References cited

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hussaing, S. U., 1973, Some difficulties in the determination of photosynthetic pigments in inland waters: Australian Society for Limnology Bulletin 5, p. 26-28.

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural phytoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Strickland, J. D. H., and Parsons, T. R., 1972, A practical handbook of seawater analysis (2d ed.): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 167, 311 p.

Chlorophyll in Phytoplankton by Chromatography and Spectroscopy (B-6520-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, phytoplankton, chromatographic/spectrometric (µg/L): 70951
Chlorophyll b, phytoplankton, chromatographic/spectrometric (µg/L): 70952

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water. The method is not suitable for the determination of chlorophyll c.

2. Summary of method

A plankton sample is filtered, and the chlorophylls are extracted from the algal cells. The chlorophylls are separated from each other and from chlorophyll degradation products by thin-layer chromatography. Chlorophylls are eluted and measured using a spectrometer.

3. Interferences

A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the extraction process. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Air dryer.

4.2 Centrifuge.

4.3 Centrifuge tubes, graduated, screwcap, 15- and 40-mL capacity.

4.4 Chromatography sheet, thin-layer cellulose, 5×20 cm, 80-µm thick cellulose.

4.5 Developing tank and rack.

4.6 Evaporation device.

4.7 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.8 Filter funnel, vacuum, 1.2 L, stainless steel.

4.9 Glass pipets, 10-mL capacity.

4.10 Glass vials, screwcap, 22×85 mm.

4.11 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.12 Grinding motor that has 0.1 horsepower.

4.13 Microdoser, and 50-µL syringe.

4.14 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.15 Propipet, or equivalent suction device.

4.16 Solvent-saturation pads, 13.4×22 cm.

4.17 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.18 Tissue grinder.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Chlorophyll a, stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll a (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2 and 5.3 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b, stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll b.

5.4 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Ethyl ether.

5.7 Methyl alcohol.

5.8 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

5.9 Petroleum ether, 30 to 60 °C.

6. Analysis

6.1 If filter was frozen, allow it to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 Place the filter in a tissue grinder. Add 3 to 4 mL DMSO and grind at 500 r/min for 3 minutes. If multiple filters are used, use a 40-mL grinder.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.3 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder twice using DMSO.

6.4 Add an equal volume of ethyl ether. Screw on cap and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and repeat shaking for 10 seconds more.

6.5 Remove cap and add slowly, almost dropwise, a volume of distilled water equal to 25 percent of the total volume of extractant (DMSO).

6.6 Cap and shake as in 6.4.

6.7 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.8 During centrifugation, prepare chromatography tank by pouring 294 mL petroleum ether and 6 mL methyl alcohol into the tank. Mix well. Prepare fresh before each use. Use two solvent-saturation pads and the developing rack to dry the chromatography sheet.

6.9 Remove the top ethyl ether layer containing chlorophyll using a pipet, and place in another 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube.

6.10 Add an equal volume of distilled water, and shake as in 6.4.

6.11 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.12 Remove the top ethyl ether layer using a capillary pipet, and place in the conical tube in the evaporation device. Evaporate to dryness by blowing nitrogen gas over the ethyl ether surface.

6.13 Immediately add 0.5 mL acetone. Mix. Wait 30 seconds and mix again. If all chlorophyll is not in solution, then repeat procedure.

6.14 Using microdoser, streak about 25 µL of the acetone-chlorophyll solution on the chromatography sheet, 15 mm from the bottom and 6 mm from each side, using the air dryer to speed evaporation of the solvent. If excessive trailing occurs during chromatography, the volume of the solvent should be decreased.

6.15 Develop chromatograph in the dark, using chlorophyll solution(s). Use enough chlorophyll (about 5 µL of the solutions as in 5.2 or 5.3, or both) to visually locate the spot of pigment. The time required for development is about 30 minutes. Remove strips when solvent has traveled within 2 to 3 cm from top of the strip.

6.16 Determine $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ values (Note 2) for pure chlorophylls.

Note 2: $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value = distance traveled by the chlorophyll from the point of application divided by the distance traveled by the solvent from the point of application.

6.17 Locate the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value on the chromatography sheet; and, using a razor blade, scrape the cellulose off the sheet at the spot of the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value minus 0.07 for chlorophyll *a* (0.14 for chlorophyll *b*) × $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$. Place the cellulose into a graduated centrifuge tube, and add acetone to a volume of 3 mL. This step should be done immediately after the chromatograph is removed from the tank. Shake the scraped cellulose and acetone vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 1 minute and shake again vigorously for 10 seconds more.

6.18 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.19 Remove supernatant and read the absorbance on the spectrometer at 664 nm for chlorophyll *a* and 647 nm for chlorophyll *b*.

7. Calculations

7.1 If the absorbance is greater than 0.01, determine concentrations using the specific absorptivities of 0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* from the following equation (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

$$\underline{C} = \frac{\underline{A}}{\underline{\alpha b}},$$

where $\underline{C}$ = concentration of chlorophyll, in milligrams per liter;
$\underline{A}$ = absorbance;
$\underline{b}$ = path length, in centimeters; and
$\underline{\alpha}$ = specific absorptivity.

If the absorbance is less than 0.01, use the fluorescence technique.

7.2 The concentration of chlorophyll obtained in 7.1 is corrected for the concentration step onsite and in the determination:

$$\text{Original sample (micrograms chlorophyll per liter)} = \frac{\text{Micrograms chlorophyll per milliliter (as in 6.19)} \times 3 \text{ mL} \times \dfrac{\text{Concentrate volume (microliters)}}{\text{volume streaked (microliters)}}}{\text{Volume filtered onsite (liters)}}.$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls *a* or *b* as follows: less than 1 µg/L, one decimal; 1 µg/L and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. Reference cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural phytoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Chlorophyll in Phytoplankton by High-Pressure Liquid Chromatography (B-6530-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, phytoplankton, chromatographic/fluorometric (µg/L): 70953
Chlorophyll b, phytoplankton, chromatographic/fluorometric (µg/L): 70954

1. Applications

The method is suitable for the determination of chlorophylls a and b in phytoplankton in concentrations of 0.1 µg/L and greater and is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

A filtered phytoplankton sample is ruptured mechanically, and the chlorophylls pigments are separated from each other and degradation products by high-pressure liquid chromatography and determined by fluorescence spectroscopy (Shoaf and Lium, 1976, 1977).

3. Interferences

Exposure of the sample to heat, light, or acid can result in photochemical or chemical degradation of the chlorophylls. Large values will result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves or other plant materials that contain chlorophyll. Large populations of photosynthetic bacteria also will result in large values.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Auto-injector (recommended, but not required).

4.2 Centrifuge.

4.3 Centrifuge tubes, 15 and 50 mL, conical, screwcap, graduated.

4.4 Evaporation device.

4.5 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.6 Fluorometer, equipped with excitation and emission filters.

4.7 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.8 High-pressure liquid chromatograph (HPLC), consisting of a solvent programmer, an isochromatic pump, an oven, and a column. (The column oven needs to be capable of maintaining a constant temperature in the 25 to 35 °C range.)

4.9 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.10 Separatory funnels, 125 mL.

4.11 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.12 Tissue homogenizer, 30-mL homogenizing flasks, and blades.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water and mix.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll a to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll b to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone.

5.4 Chlorophyll standard solution. Mix 25 mL chlorophyll a stock solution with 25 mL chlorophyll b stock solution in a 50-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5 Chlorophyll working standard solutions. Use a 5-mL pipet to prepare the following mixtures.

5.5.1 High standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 5 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 5 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.2 Mid-range standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 3 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.3 Low standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 1 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.6 Distilled or deionized water.

5.7 Diethyl ether, distilled in glass, unpreserved.

5.8 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.9 Methyl alcohol, 96 percent. Pour 960 mL methyl alcohol, distilled in glass, into a 1-L graduated cylinder. Add distilled water to the mark and mix.

5.10 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

6. Analysis

6.1 Sample preparation. Analyze only samples on glass-fiber filters. Record the volume of water filtered for the phytoplankton sample. [If a biomass determination is required, save the DMSO layer (see 6.1.7).]

6.1.1 Allow the frozen filter to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.1.2 Place the filter in a 30-mL tissue homogenizing flask. Add 15 mL DMSO and homogenize until the sample has been ruptured.

6.1.3 Transfer the sample to a 50-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and rinse the homogenizing flask and blade using 5 mL DMSO. Add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.4 Add 20 mL diethyl ether to the centrifuge tube, screw on the cap, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.5 Remove the cap and slowly add, almost dropwise, 10 mL distilled water to the centrifuge tube. Secure the cap and shake gently. Vent, then shake for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.6 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.1.7 Transfer the top diethyl ether layer, using a disposable pipet, to a 125-mL separatory funnel. (If the DMSO layer appears green after diethyl ether extraction, repeat 6.1.4 through 6.1.7. There are, however, some green chlorophyll derivatives not extractable using diethyl ether.)

6.1.8 Add 15 mL distilled water to the separatory funnel, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds, venting often. Allow the layers to separate. (Break emulsions by adding 1 to 2 mL acetone and swirling the funnel gently.)

6.1.9 Drain and discard the bottom layer.

6.1.10 Rinse the upper part of the separatory funnel using 2 to 3 mL acetone. Remove the bottom layer that forms in the funnel and discard.

6.1.11 Decant the diethyl ether layer through the top of the separatory funnel into a centrifuge tube. Rinse the funnel using 5 mL diethyl ether, and add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.12 Place the centrifuge tube on the evaporation device, and evaporate to 0.2 to 0.4 mL using a gentle stream of nitrogen gas.

6.1.13 Add sufficient acetone to the sample extract so the color intensity is between the color intensities of the high and low standards. If the color of the sample extract is not within the specified range after the addition of 20 mL acetone, take a 1-mL aliquot of the 20 mL extract, and dilute volumetrically until the desired color intensity is obtained.

6.2 High-pressure liquid-chromatographic analysis.

6.2.1 Measure the absorbance of the chlorophyll stock solutions using a spectrometer. Measure the absorbance at 664 nm for chlorophyll a and at 647 nm for chlorophyll b. Record the absorbance for three replicates of chlorophylls a and b. Average the three values for chlorophyll a and the three values for chlorophyll b, separately, and record each average separately for subsequent calculations.

6.2.2 Operate the HPLC system using 96-percent methyl alcohol as the mobile phase at a flow of 1.5 mL/min until the pressure stabilizes.

6.2.3 Calibrate the instrument by injecting 10 µL of the mid-range standard solution, and record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b.

6.2.4 Verify that the response of the fluorometer is linear by injecting the high and low standard solutions.

6.2.5 Analyze the sample by injecting 10 µL of the sample extract into the HPLC. Record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b, if any.

7. Calculations

7.1 Calculate the exact concentrations of the chlorophyll stock solutions from the equation:

$$C_s = \frac{A}{\alpha b},$$

where C_s = concentration of chlorophyll stock solution, in milligrams per liter;
A = average absorbance obtained in 6.2.1;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity [0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll a and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll b (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975)].

7.2 Verify and correct the concentrations of the chlorophyll working standard solutions in 5.5 by using the chlorophyll stock solutions determined in 7.1.

7.3 Calculate the response factor for chlorophylls *a* and *b* in the chlorophyll working standard solution:

$$RF = \frac{V \times C_m}{I_s},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a*, in milligrams per unit area;
V = volume of mid-range standard solution, injected, in milliliters;
C_m = concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* in the mid-range standard solution, in milligrams per liter; and
I_s = integrated area of the component peak.

7.4 Use the data from 6.2.5 to calculate the concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* in the original sample from the equation:

$$\text{Concentration (micrograms per liter)} = \frac{RF \times IV_e}{A_s \times V_i},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a* or *b* from 7.3, in milligrams per unit area;
I = integrated area of the chlorophyll *a* or *b* peak in the sample as determined in 6.2.5;
V_e = final volume of the sample extract from 6.1.13, in milliliters;
A_s = volume of water filtered in 6.1, in liters; and
V_i = volume of sample extract injected in 6.2.5, in microliters.

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls *a* or *b* as follows: less than 1 µg/L, one decimal; 1 µg/L and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls *a*, *b*, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural phytoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Shoaf, W. T., and Lium, B. W., 1976, Improved extraction of chlorophyll a and b from algae using dimethyl sulfoxide: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 926-928.

_____1977, The quantitative determination of chlorophyll a and b from fresh water algae without interference from degradation products: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey , v. 5, no. 2, p. 263-264.

Chlorophyll in Phytoplankton by Chromatography and Fluorometry (B-6540-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, phytoplankton, chromatographic/fluorometric (µg/L): 70953
Chlorophyll b, phytoplankton, chromatographic/fluorometric (µg/L): 70954

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water. The method is not suitable for determining chlorophyll c.

2. Summary of method

A plankton sample is filtered, and the chlorophylls are extracted from the algal cells. The chlorophylls are separated from each other and chlorophyll degradation products by thin-layer chromatography. Chlorophylls are eluted and measured using a spectrofluorometer.

3. Interferences

A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the extraction process. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Air dryer.

4.2 Centrifuge.

4.3 Centrifuge tubes, graduated, screwcap, 15-mL capacity.

4.4 Chromatography sheet, thin-layer cellulose, 5×20 cm, 80-µm thick cellulose.

4.5 Developing tank and rack.

4.6 Evaporation device.

4.7 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.8 Filter funnel, nonmetallic, that has vacuum or pressure apparatus.

4.9 Glass pipets, 5- and 10-mL capacity.

4.10 Glass vials, screwcap, 22×85 mm.

4.11 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.12 Grinding motor that has 0.1 horsepower.

4.13 Microdoser, and 50-μL syringe.

4.14 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.15 Propipet, or equivalent suction device.

4.16 Solvent-saturation pads, 13.4×22 cm.

4.17 Spectrofluorometer (fig. 58) that has redsensitive R446S photomultiplier, or equivalent. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.18 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.19 Tissue grinder.

Figure 58.--Spectrofluorometer (photograph courtesy of AMINCO Division of SLM Instruments, Inc., Urbana, Ill.).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Chlorophyll a, stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll a (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2 and 5.3 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b, stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll b.

5.4 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Ethyl ether.

5.7 Methyl alcohol.

5.8 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

5.9 Petroleum ether, 30 to 60 °C.

6. Analysis

6.1 If filter was frozen, allow it to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 Place the filter in a tissue grinder. Add 3 to 4 mL DMSO and grind at 500 r/min for 3 minutes. If multiple filters are used, use a 40-mL grinder.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.3 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder twice using DMSO.

6.4 Add an equal volume of ethyl ether. Screw on cap and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and repeat shaking for 10 seconds more.

6.5 Remove cap and add slowly, almost dropwise, a volume of distilled water equal to 25 percent of the total volume of extractant (DMSO).

6.6 Cap and shake as in 6.4.

6.7 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.8 During centrifugation, prepare chromatography tank by pouring 294 mL petroleum ether and 6 mL methyl alcohol into the tank. Mix well. Prepare fresh before each use. Use two solvent-saturation pads and the developing rack to dry the chromatography sheet.

6.9 Remove the top ethyl ether layer containing chlorophyll using a pipet, and place in another 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube.

6.10 Add an equal volume of distilled water, and shake as in 6.4.

6.11 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.12 Remove the top ethyl ether layer using a capillary pipet, and place in the conical tube in the evaporation device. Evaporate to dryness by blowing nitrogen gas over the ethyl ether surface.

6.13 Immediately add 0.5 mL acetone. Mix. Wait 30 seconds and mix again. If all chlorophyll is not in solution, then repeat procedure.

6.14 Using the microdoser, streak about 25 µL of the acetone-chlorophyll solution on the chromatography sheet, 15 mm from the bottom and 6 mm from each side, using the air dryer to speed evaporation of the solvent. If excessive trailing occurs during chromatography, the volume of the solvent should be decreased.

6.15 Develop chromatograph in the dark, using chlorophyll solution(s). Use enough chlorophyll (about 5 µL of the solutions as in 5.2 or 5.3, or both) to visually locate the spot of pigment. The time required for development is about 30 minutes. Remove strips when solvent has traveled within 2 to 3 cm from top of the strip.

6.16 Determine $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ values (Note 2) for pure chlorophylls.

Note 2: $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value = distance traveled by the chlorophyll from the point of application divided by the distance traveled by the solvent from the point of application.

6.17 Locate the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value on the chromatography sheet; and, using a razor blade, scrape the cellulose off the sheet at the spot of the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value minus 0.07 for chlorophyll _a_ (0.14 for chlorophyll _b_) × $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$. Place the cellulose into a graduated centrifuge tube, and add acetone to a volume of 3 mL. This step should be done immediately after the chromatograph is removed from the tank. Shake the scraped cellulose and acetone vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 1 minute and shake again vigorously for 10 seconds more.

6.18 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.19 Determine the concentration of chlorophyll _a_ or _b_ using the spectrofluorometer as follows. Curves are prepared daily to standardize the spectrofluorometer. Five standard solutions of each chlorophyll should be

prepared at the concentrations of 0.25, 0.5, 1, 2, and 4 mg/L. These are prepared from the chlorophyll stock solutions by an appropriate dilution using 90-percent acetone. The absorbance then is read on a spectrometer at 664 nm for chlorophyll *a* and 647 nm for chlorophyll *b*. Determine concentrations of standard solutions and samples using the specific absorptivities of 0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* from the following equation (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

$$C = \frac{A}{\alpha b},$$

where C = concentration of chlorophyll, in milligrams per liter;
A = absorbance;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity.

6.20 These chlorophyll standard solutions are used to standardize the spectrofluorometer. For chlorophyll *a*, set the spectrofluorometer for an excitation wavelength of 430 nm and an emission wavelength of 670 nm. For chlorophyll *b*, the excitation wavelength is 460 nm and the emission wavelength is 650 nm. Set entrance and exit slits at 2 mm. Plot chlorophyll concentration versus relative fluorescence intensity. Determine unknown concentrations from the standard solution curve.

7. Calculations

The concentration of chlorophyll obtained in 6.20 is corrected for the concentration step onsite and in the determination:

$$\text{Original sample (micrograms chlorophyll per liter)} = \frac{\text{Micrograms chlorophyll per milliliter (as in 6.20)} \times 3\text{ mL} \times \dfrac{\text{Concentrate volume (microliters)}}{\text{volume streaked (microliters)}}}{\text{Volume filtered onsite (liters)}}.$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls *a* or *b* as follows: less than 1 µg/L, one decimal; 1 µ/L and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. Reference cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls *a*, *b*, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural phytoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Biomass/Chlorophyll Ratio for Phytoplankton
(B-6560-85)

Parameter and Code:
Biomass-chlorophyll ratio, phytoplankton: 70949

Plankton and periphyton communities normally are dominated by algae. As degradable, nontoxic organic materials enter a body of water, a frequent result is that a greater percentage of the total biomass is heterotrophic (nonchlorophyll-containing) organisms, such as bacteria and fungi. This change can be observed in the biomass to chlorophyll a ratio (or autotrophic index). Periphyton ratios for unpolluted water have been reported in the range of 50 to 100 (Weber, 1973); whereas, values greater than 100 may result from organic pollution (Weber and McFarland, 1969; Weber, 1973).

1. Applications

The method is suitable for the determination of chlorophylls a and b in concentrations of 0.1 µg/L and greater.

2. Summary of method

A filtered phytoplankton sample is ruptured mechanically, and the chlorophyll pigments are separated from each other and degradation products by high-pressure liquid chromatography and are determined by fluorescence spectroscopy (Shoaf and Lium, 1976, 1977). The dry weight and ash weight of the phytoplankton are determined to obtain the weight of organic matter (biomass). The biomass/chlorophyll a ratio is calculated from these values.

3. Interferences

3.1 A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the chlorophyll extraction process. Inorganic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry and ash weights; nonliving organic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry (and thus organic) weights.

3.2 Exposure of the sample to heat, light, or acid can result in photochemical or chemical degradation of the chlorophylls. Large values will result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves or other plant materials that contain chlorophyll. Large populations of photosynthetic bacteria also will result in large values.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Analytical balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.2 Auto-injector (recommended, but not required).

4.3 Centrifuge.

4.4 Centrifuge tubes, 15 and 50 mL, conical, screwcap, graduated.

4.5 Desiccator, containing anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.6 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.7 Evaporation device.

4.8 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 μm.

4.9 Filter funnel, nonmetallic, that has vacuum or pressure apparatus.

4.10 Fluorometer, equipped with excitation and emission filters.

4.11 Forceps or tongs.

4.12 Glass bottles, screwcap, smallest appropriate size for the sample.

4.13 Glass funnels.

4.14 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.15 High-pressure liquid chromatograph (HPLC), consisting of a solvent programmer, an isochromatic pump, an oven, and a column. (The column oven needs to be capable of maintaining a constant temperature in the 25 to 35 °C range.)

4.16 High-vacuum pump, capable of providing an absolute pressure of less than 1 torr.

4.17 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.18 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.19 Porcelain crucibles.

4.20 Separatory funnels, 125 mL.

4.21 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.22 Tissue homogenizer, 30-mL homogenizing flasks, and blades.

4.23 Vacuum flasks, stoppers, glass tubing, vacuum tubing, and a sintered glass tube.

4.24 Vacuum desiccator.

4.25 Vacuum oven.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water and mix.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll a to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll b to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone.

5.4 Chlorophyll standard solution. Mix 25 mL chlorophyll a stock solution with 25 mL chlorophyll b stock solution in a 50-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5 Chlorophyll working standard solutions. Use a 5-mL pipet to prepare the following mixtures.

5.5.1 High standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 5 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 5 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.2 Mid-range standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 3 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.3 Low standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 1 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.6 Distilled or deionized water.

5.7 Diethyl ether, distilled in glass, unpreserved.

5.8 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.9 Methyl alcohol, 96-percent. Pour 960 mL methyl alcohol, distilled in glass, into a 1-L graduated cylinder. Add distilled water to the mark and mix.

5.10 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

6. Analysis

6.1 Sample preparation. Analyze only samples on glass-fiber filters. Record the volume of water filtered for the phytoplankton sample. [If a biomass determination is required, save the DMSO layer (see 6.1.7).]

6.1.1 Allow the frozen filter to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.1.2 Place the filter in a 30-mL tissue homogenizing flask. Add 15 mL DMSO and homogenize until the sample has been ruptured.

6.1.3 Transfer the sample to a 50-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and rinse the homogenizing flask and blade using 5 mL DMSO. Add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.4 Add 20 mL diethyl ether to the centrifuge tube, screw on the cap, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.5 Remove the cap and slowly add, almost dropwise, 10 mL distilled water to the centrifuge tube. Secure the cap and shake gently. Vent, then shake for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.6 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.1.7 Transfer the top diethyl ether layer, using a disposable pipet, to a 125-mL separatory funnel. (If the DMSO layer appears green after diethyl ether extraction, repeat 6.1.4 through 6.1.7. There are, however, some green chlorophyll derivatives not extractable using diethyl ether.)

6.1.8 Add 15 mL distilled water to the separatory funnel and shake vigorously for 10 seconds, venting often. Allow the layers to separate. (Break emulsions by adding 1 to 2 mL acetone and swirling the funnel gently.)

6.1.9 Drain and discard the bottom layer.

6.1.10 Rinse the upper part of the separatory funnel using 2 to 3 mL acetone. Remove the bottom layer that forms in the funnel and discard.

6.1.11 Decant the diethyl ether layer through the top of the separatory funnel into a centrifuge tube. Rinse the funnel using 5 mL diethyl ether, and add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.12 Place the centrifuge tube on the evaporation device, and evaporate to 0.2 to 0.4 mL using a gentle stream of nitrogen gas.

6.1.13 Add sufficient acetone to the sample extract so the color intensity is between the color intensities of the high and low standard solutions. If the color of the sample extract is not within the specified range after the addition of 20 mL acetone, take a 1-mL aliquot of the 20 mL extract, and dilute volumetrically until the desired color intensity is obtained.

6.2 High-pressure liquid-chromatographic analysis.

6.2.1 Measure the absorbance of the chlorophyll stock solutions using a spectrometer. Measure the absorbance at 664 nm for chlorophyll a and at 647 nm for chlorophyll b. Record the absorbance for three replicates of chlorophylls a and b. Average the three values for chlorophyll a and the three values for chlorophyll b separately, and record each average separately for subsequent calculations.

6.2.2 Operate the HPLC system using 96-percent methyl alcohol as the mobile phase at a flow of 1.5 mL/min until the pressure stabilizes.

6.2.3 Calibrate the instrument by injecting 10 µL of the mid-range standard solution, and record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b.

6.2.4 Verify that the response of the fluorometer is linear by injecting the high and low standard solutions.

6.2.5 Analyze the sample by injecting 10 µL of the sample extract into the HPLC. Record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b, if any.

6.3 Dry weight and ash weight of organic matter.

6.3.1 Bake a porcelain crucible at 500 °C for 20 minutes. Cool to room temperature in a desiccator. Silica gel is not recommended. Measure the tare weight to the nearest 0.1 mg.

6.3.2 Remove the DMSO supernatant (6.1.7) using a disposable pipet. If biomass particles are visible in the supernatant, centrifuge first and then remove the supernatant. If the supernatant is still murky, filter through a tared glass-fiber filter, burn at 500 °C, and add filter ashes to sediment in crucible.

6.3.3 Quantitatively transfer the sediment to a 30-mL porcelain crucible using a microspoon or microspatula and rinses of distilled water.

6.3.4 Place the crucible in a 105 °C oven overnight to evaporate the water.

6.3.5 Place the crucible in a desiccated (preheated to 105 °C) vacuum oven. Lower the pressure in the oven to approximately 20 torr. Leave the crucible in the oven for 2 hours. Approximately every one-half hour or hour, redraw the vacuum (without reaching atmospheric pressure in the oven) to remove the DMSO fumes from the oven.

6.3.6 Cool cruicible in a vacuum desiccator to room temperature.

6.3.7 Weigh cruicible to the nearest 1 mg in a desiccated balance.

6.3.8 Reheat cruicible in the vacuum oven for 1 hour.

6.3.9 Cool cruicible in a vacuum desiccator and weigh. If the weight is not constant, reheat until constant weight within 5 percent is obtained. This value is used to calculate the dry weight.

6.3.10 Place the crucible containing the dried residue in a muffle furnace at 500 °C for 1 hour until a constant weight is obtained. This value is used to calculate the ash weight (Note 2).

Note 2: The ash is wetted to reintroduce the water of hydration of the clay and other minerals that, though not evaporated at 105 °C, is lost at 500 °C. This water loss may be as much as 10 percent of the weight lost during ignition and, if not corrected, will be interpreted as organic matter (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7. Calculations

7.1 Chlorophyll.

7.1.1 Calculate the exact concentrations of the chlorophyll stock solutions from the equation:

$$C_s = \frac{A}{\alpha b},$$

where C_s = concentration of chlorophyll stock solution, in milligrams per liter;
A = average absorbance obtained in 6.2.1;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity [0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975)].

7.1.2 Verify and correct the concentrations of the chlorophyll working standard solutions in 5.5 by using the chlorophyll stock solutions determined in 7.1.1.

7.1.3 Calculate the response factor for chlorophylls *a* and *b* in the chlorophyll working standard solution:

$$RF = \frac{V \times C_m}{I_s},$$

where $\underline{RF}$ = response factor of chlorophyll a, in milligrams per unit area;
$\underline{V}$ = volume of mid-range standard solution injected, in milliliters;
$\underline{C_m}$ = concentration of chlorophyll a or b in the mid-range standard solution, in milligrams per liter; and
$\underline{I_s}$ = integrated area of the component peak.

7.1.4 Use the data from 6.2.5 to calculate the concentration of chlorophyll a or b in the original sample from the equation:

$$\text{Concentration (micrograms per liter)} = \frac{\underline{RF} \times \underline{IV_e}}{\underline{A_s} \times \underline{V_i}},$$

where $\underline{RF}$ = response factor of chlorophyll a or b from 7.1.3, in milligrams per unit area;
$\underline{I}$ = integrated area of the chlorophyll a or b peak in the sample as determined in 6.2.5;
$\underline{V_e}$ = final volume of the sample extract from 6.1.13, in milliliters;
$\underline{A_s}$ = volume of water filtered in 6.1, in liters; and
$\underline{V_i}$ = volume of sample extract injected in 6.2.5, in microliters.

7.2 Biomass.

$$\text{Organic weight (milligrams per liter)} = \frac{\text{Dry weight (milligrams)} - \text{ash weight (milligrams)}}{\text{Volume filtered onsite (liters)}}.$$

$$\text{7.3 Ratio} = \frac{\text{Biomass (milligrams per liter)} \times 1{,}000}{\text{Chlorophyll a or b (micrograms per liter)}}.$$

8. Reporting of results

8.1 Report concentrations of chlorophylls a and b as follows: less than 1 µg/L, one decimal; 1 µg/L and greater, two significant figures.

8.2 Report biomass as follows: less than 1 mg/L, one decimal; 1 mg/L and greater, two significant figures.

8.3 Report ratio to three significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Shoaf, W. T., and Lium, B. W., 1976, Improved extraction of chlorophyll a and b from algae using dimethyl sulfoxide: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 926-928.

_____1977, The quantitative determination of chlorophyll a and b from fresh water algae without interference from degradation products: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 5, no. 2, p. 263-264.

Weber, C. I., 1973, Recent developments in the measurement of the response of plankton and periphyton to changes in their environment, in Glass, G., ed., Bioassay techniques and environmental chemistry: Ann Arbor Science, p. 119-138.

Weber, C. I., and McFarland, B., 1969, Periphyton biomass-chlorophyll ratio as an index of water quality: Cincinnati, Ohio, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Analytical Quality Laboratory, 19 p.

Chlorophyll in Periphyton by Spectroscopy
(B-6601-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, periphyton, spectrometric, uncorrected (mg/m^2):	32228
Chlorophyll b, periphyton, spectrometric, (mg/m^2):	32226
Chlorophyll c, periphyton, spectrometric, (mg/m^2):	32227
Chlorophyll, total, periphyton, spectrometric, uncorrected (mg/m^2):	32225

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water and may be used for periphyton from natural or artificial substrates.

2. Summary of method

Chlorophyll pigments are determined simultaneously without detailed separation. The periphyton is scraped from a known area, suspended in water, and concentrated on a membrane filter. A water sample is filtered, and the periphyton cells retained on the filter are ruptured mechanically, using 90-percent acetone, to facilitate extraction of pigments. Concentrations of chlorophylls are calculated from measurements of absorbance of the extract at four wavelengths, corrected for a 90-percent acetone blank.

3. Interferences

Erroneously large values may result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves and other plant materials. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 Centrifuge, swing-out type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, and 15-mL graduated centrifuge tubes.

4.3 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.4 Filters, metricel, alpha-6, 0.45 µm, 25-mm diameter.

4.5 Filter flask, 1 or 2 L. Onsite, a polypropylene flask is used.

4.6 Filter funnel, vacuum, 1.2 L, stainless steel.

4.7 Filter holder, Pyrex microanalysis, frit support, 25 mm.

4.8 Glass pan, smallest appropriate size for scraping substrate.

4.9 Manostat that has mercury and calibration equipment to regulate the filtration suction to not more than 250 mm of mercury when filtering using an aspirator or an electric vacuum pump.

4.10 Membrane filter, white, plain, 0.45-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.11 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.12 Sample containers suitable for the type of sample. Glass bottles are useful containers for artificial substrates or for pieces of natural substrates.

4.13 Scraping device, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.14 Source of vacuum for filtration. A water-aspirator pump or an electric vacuum pump for laboratory use; a handheld vacuum pump and gauge for onsite use.

4.15 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.16 Tissue grinder, glass, pestle-type, 15-mL capacity. Homogenizer should be motor driven at about 500 r/min.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

6. Analysis

6.1 If filter was frozen, allow it to thaw for 5 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 If an artificial substrate is used, scrape the periphyton off the substrate, using the scraping device, into a glass pan. Transfer all solid material to the tissue grinder.

6.3 Rinse the scraping device and substrate using 90-percent acetone. Store for 10 minutes in the dark at room temperature.

6.4 Grind at 400 r/min for 3 minutes.

6.5 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder two or three times using 90-percent acetone. Adjust to some convenient volume, such as 10±0.1 mL.

6.6 Centrifuge at 3,000 to 4,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.7 Carefully pour or pipet the supernatant into the spectrometer cell. Do not disturb the precipitate. If the extract is turbid, clear by making a twofold dilution using 90-percent acetone, or by filtering through an acetone-resistant filter.

6.8 Read the absorbances at 750, 664, 647, and 630 nm and compare to a 90-percent acetone blank. (Dilute the extract using 90-percent acetone if the absorbance is greater than 0.8.) If the 750-nm reading is greater than 0.005 absorbance unit per centimeter of light path, decrease the turbidity as in 6.7.

7. Calculations

7.1 Subtract the absorbance at 750 nm from the absorbance at each of the other wavelengths (that is, 664, 647, and 630 nm). Divide the differences by the light path of the spectrometer cell, in centimeters. The concentrations of chlorophylls in the extract, in micrograms per milliliter, are calculated by the following equations (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

Chlorophyll a, in micrograms per milliliter = $11.85e_{664}-1.54e_{647}-0.08e_{630}$;
Chlorophyll b, in micrograms per milliliter = $-5.43e_{664}+21.03e_{647}-2.66e_{630}$;
and
Chlorophyll c, in micrograms per milliliter = $-1.67e_{664}-7.60e_{647}+24.52e_{630}$;

where $e_{664} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 664 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$;

$e_{647} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 647 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$; and

$e_{630} = \frac{\text{Absorbance at 630 nm - absorbance at 750 nm}}{\text{Light path, in centimeters}}$.

7.2 Convert the values derived in 7.1 to the concentrations of chlorophylls, in milligrams per square meter, in the originally collected sample. For example:

$$\text{Chlorophyll } \underline{a} \text{ (milligrams per square meter)} = \frac{\text{Derived value (micrograms per milliliter)} \times \text{extract volume (milliliters)}}{\text{Area of scraped surface (square meters)} \times 1{,}000} .$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophyll a, b, or c, in milligrams per square meter, to three significant figures.

9. Precision

9.1 The precision of chlorophyll determinations is affected by the area scraped, the range of chlorophyll values calculated, the volume of extraction solvent, and the light path of the spectrometer cells.

9.2 Tilley and Haushild (1975a and b) reported that 21 glass microscope slides exposed for 2 weeks at a single site in the Duwamish River, Wash., had chlorophyll a concentrations that ranged from 1.33 to 2.81 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 1.97 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 7.4 mg/m^2. Twenty-two slides exposed for 3 weeks at a single site had chlorophyll a concentrations that ranged from 1.89 to 4.86 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 3.44 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 14.4 mg/m^2.

10. References cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Tilley, L. J., and Haushild, W. L., 1975a, Net primary productivity of periphytic algae in the intertidal zone, Duwamish River Estuary, Washington: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 3, no. 3, p. 253-259.

_____1975b, Use of productivity of periphyton to estimate water quality: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 47, no. 8, p. 2157-2171.

Chlorophyll in Periphyton by Chromatography and Spectroscopy (B-6620-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, periphyton, chromatographic/spectrometric (mg/m^2): 70955
Chlorophyll b, periphyton, chromatographic/spectrometric (mg/m^2): 70956

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water. The method is not suitable for the determination of chlorophyll c.

2. Summary of method

A periphyton sample is obtained, and the chlorophylls are extracted from the algal cells. The chlorophylls are separated from each other and from chlorophyll degradation products by thin-layer chromatography. Chlorophylls are eluted and measured using a spectrometer.

3. Interferences

A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the extraction process. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Air dryer.

4.2 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.3 Centrifuge.

4.4 Centrifuge tubes, graduated, screwcap, 15-mL capacity.

4.5 Chromatography sheet, thin-layer cellulose, 5×20 cm, 80-µm thick cellulose.

4.6 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.7 Developing tank and rack.

4.8 Evaporation device.

4.9 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.10 Glass bottles, screwcap, smallest appropriate size for the sample.

4.11 Glass pan, smallest appropriate size for scraping substrate.

4.12 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.13 Grinding motor that has 0.1 horsepower.

4.14 Microdoser, and 50-µL syringe.

4.15 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.16 Scraping device, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.17 Solvent-saturation pads, 13.4×22 cm.

4.18 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.19 Tissue grinder, glass, pestle-type, 15-mL capacity. Homogenizer should be motor dirven at about 500 r/min.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll a (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2 and 5.3 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll b.

5.4 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Ethyl ether.

5.7 Methyl alcohol.

5.8 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

5.9 Petroleum ether, 30 to 60 °C.

6. Analysis

6.1 If filter was frozen, allow it to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 If an artificial substrate is used, scrape the periphyton off the substrate, using the scraping device, into a glass pan. Transfer all solid material into the tissue grinder.

6.3 Rinse the scraping device and substrate using DMSO.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.4 Grind at 400 r/min for 3 minutes.

6.5 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder twice using DMSO.

6.6 Add an equal volume of ethyl ether. Screw on cap and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and repeat shaking for 10 seconds more.

6.7 Remove cap and add slowly, almost dropwise, a volume of distilled water equal to 25 percent of the total volume of extractant (DMSO).

6.8 Cap and shake as in 6.6.

6.9 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.10 During centrifugation, prepare chromatography tank by pouring 294 mL petroleum ether and 6 mL methyl alcohol into the tank. Mix well. Prepare fresh before each use. Use two solvent-saturation pads and the developing rack to dry the chromatography sheet.

6.11 Remove the top ethyl ether layer containing chlorophyll using a pipet, and place in another 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube.

6.12 Add an equal volume of distilled water, and shake as in 6.6.

6.13 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.14 Remove the top ethyl ether layer using a pipet, and place in conical tube in evaporation device. Evaporate to dryness by blowing nitrogen gas over the ethyl ether surface.

6.15 Immediately add 0.5 mL acetone. Mix. Wait 30 seconds and mix again. If all chlorophyll is not in solution, then repeat procedure.

6.16 Using microdoser, streak 25 µL of the acetone-chlorophyll solution on the chromatography sheet, 15 mm from the bottom and 6 mm from each side, using the air dryer to speed evaporation of the solvent. If excessive trailing occurs during chromatography, the volume of the solvent should be decreased.

6.17 Develop chromatograph in the dark, using chlorophyll solution(s). Use enough chlorophyll (about 5 µL of the solutions as in 5.2 or 5.3, or both) to visually locate the spot of pigment. The time required for development is about 30 minutes. Remove strips when solvent has traveled within 2 to 3 cm from top of strip.

6.18 Determine $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ values (Note 2) for pure chlorophylls.

Note 2: $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value = distance traveled by the chlorophyll from the point of application divided by the distance traveled by the solvent from the point of application.

6.19 Locate the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value on the chromatography sheet; and, using a razor blade, scrape the cellulose off the sheet at the spot of the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value minus 0.07 for chlorophyll *a* (0.14 for chlorophyll *b*) × $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$. Place the cellulose into a graduated centrifuge tube, and add acetone to a volume of 3 mL. This step should be done immediately after the chromatograph is removed from the tank. Shake the scraped cellulose and acetone vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 1 minute and shake again vigorously for 10 seconds more.

6.20 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.21 Remove supernatant and read the absorbance on the spectrometer at 664 nm for chlorophyll *a* and 647 nm for chlorophyll *b*.

7. Calculations

7.1 If the absorbance is greater than 0.01, determine concentrations using the specific absorptivities of 0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* from the following equation (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

$$\underline{C} = \frac{\underline{A}}{\underline{\alpha b}},$$

where $\underline{C}$ = concentration of chlorophyll, in milligrams per liter;
$\underline{A}$ = absorbance;
$\underline{b}$ = path length, in centimeters; and
$\underline{\alpha}$ = specific absorptivity.

If the absorbance is less than 0.01, use the fluorescence technique.

7.2 The concentration of chlorophyll obtained in 7.1 is corrected for the concentration step onsite and in the determination:

$$\begin{array}{l}\text{Original sample (milligrams chlorophyll per square meter)} \\ \qquad = \end{array} \frac{\begin{array}{c}\text{Micrograms chlorophyll per milliliter (as in 6.21)} \times \text{(3 mL)} \times \dfrac{500\ \mu L}{25\ \mu L} \\ \hline \text{Area of surface scraped (square meters)} \times 1{,}000\end{array}}{}.$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls *a* or *b*, in milligrams per square meter, to three significant figures.

9. Precision

Tilley and Haushild (1975a and b) reported that 21 glass microscope slides exposed for 2 weeks at a single site in the Duwamish River, Wash., had chlorophyll *a* concentrations that ranged from 1.33 to 2.81 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 1.97 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 7.4 mg/m^2. Twenty-two slides exposed for 3 weeks at a single site had chlorophyll *a* concentrations that ranged from 1.89 to 4.86 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 3.44 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 14.4 mg/m^2.

No other precision data are available.

10. References cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls *a*, *b*, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Tilley, L. J., and Haushild, W. L., 1975a, Net primary productivity of periphytic algae in the intertidal zone, Duwamish River Estuary, Washington: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 3, no. 3, p. 253-259.

_____1975b, Use of productivity of periphyton to estimate water quality: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 47, no. 8, p. 2157-2171.

Chlorophyll in Periphyton by High-Pressure Liquid Chromatography (B-6630-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, periphyton, chromatographic/fluorometric (mg/m^2): 70957
Chlorophyll b, periphyton, chromatographic/fluorometric (mg/m^2): 70958

1. Applications

The method is suitable for the determination of chlorophylls a and b in periphyton in concentrations of 0.1 mg/m^2 and greater and is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

A periphyton sample is ruptured mechanically, and the chlorophyll pigments are separated from each other and degradation products by high-pressure liquid chromatography and determined by fluorescence spectroscopy (Shoaf and Lium, 1976, 1977).

3. Interferences

Exposure of the sample to heat, light, or acid can result in photochemical or chemical degradation of the chlorophylls. Large values will result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves or other plant materials that contain chlorophyll. Large populations of photosynthetic bacteria also will result in large values.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 Auto-injector (recommended, but not required).

4.3 Centrifuge.

4.4 Centrifuge tubes, 15 and 50 mL, conical, screwcap, graduated.

4.5 Centrifuge tubes, 50 mL, conical, pennyhead stopper, graduated.

4.6 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.7 Evaporation device.

4.8 Fluorometer, equipped with excitation and emission filters.

4.9 Glass pan, smallest appropriate size for scraping substrate.

4.10 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.11 High-pressure liquid chromatograph (HPLC), consisting of a solvent programmer, an isochromatic pump, an oven, and a column. (The column oven needs to be capable of maintaining a constant temperature in the 25 to 35 °C range.)

4.12 Pasteur pipet, disposable.

4.13 Scraping device, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.14 Separatory funnels, 125 mL.

4.15 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.16 Tissue homogenizer, 30-mL homogenizing flasks, and blades.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water and mix.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll a to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Transfer 1 mg cholorphyll b to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone.

5.4 Chlorophyll standard solution. Mix 25 mL chlorophyll a stock solution with 25 mL chlorophyll b stock solution in a 50-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5 Chlorophyll working standard solutions. Use a 5-mL pipet to prepare the following mixtures.

5.5.1 High standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 5 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 5 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.2 Mid-range standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 3 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.3 Low standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 1 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.6 Distilled or deionized water.

5.7 Diethyl ether, distilled in glass, unpreserved.

5.8 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.9 Methyl alcohol, 96 percent. Pour 960 mL methyl alcohol, distilled in glass, into a 1-L graduated cylinder. Add distilled water to the mark and mix.

5.10 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

6. Analysis

6.1 Sample preparation.

6.1.1 Allow the frozen sample to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.1.2 Scrape the periphyton off the substrate into a glass pan.

6.1.3 Use 15 mL DMSO to rinse the solid material into a 30-mL homogenizing flask. Homogenize the sample until the cells have been ruptured.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.1.4 Transfer the sample to a 50-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and rinse the homogenizing flask and blade using 5 mL DMSO. Add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.5 Add 20 mL diethyl ether to the centrifuge tube, screw on the cap, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.6 Remove the cap and slowly add, almost dropwise, 10 mL distilled water to the centrifuge tube. Secure the cap and shake gently. Vent, then shake for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.7 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.1.8 Transfer the top diethyl ether layer, using a disposable pipet, to a 125-mL separatory funnel. (If the DMSO layer appears green after diethyl ether extraction, repeat 6.1.5 through 6.1.8. There are, however, some green chlorophyll derivatives not extractable using diethyl ether.)

6.1.9 Add 15 mL distilled water to the separatory funnel, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds, venting often. Allow the layers to separate. (Break emulsions by adding 1 to 2 mL acetone and swirling the funnel gently.)

6.1.10 Drain and discard the bottom layer.

6.1.11 Rinse the upper part of the separatory funnel using 2 to 3 mL acetone. Remove the bottom layer that forms in the funnel and discard.

6.1.12 Decant the diethyl ether layer through the top of the separatory funnel into a centrifuge tube. Rinse the funnel using 5 mL diethyl ether, and add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.13 Place the centrifuge tube on the evaporation device, and evaporate to 0.2 to 0.4 mL using a gentle stream of nitrogen gas.

6.1.14 Add sufficient acetone to the sample extract so the color intensity is between the color intensities of the high and low standards. If the color of the sample extract is not within the specified range after the addition of 20 mL acetone, take a 1-mL aliquot of the 20 mL extract, and dilute volumetrically until the desired color intensity is obtained.

6.2 High-pressure liquid-chromatographic analysis.

6.2.1 Measure the absorbance of the chlorophyll stock solutions using a spectrometer. Measure the absorbance at 664 nm for chlorophyll a and at 647 nm for chlorophyll b. Record the absorbance for three replicates of chlorophylls a and b. Average the three values for chlorophyll a and the three values for chlorophyll b separately, and record each average separately for subsequent calculations.

6.2.2 Operate the HPLC system using 96-percent methyl alcohol as the mobile phase at a flow of 1.5 mL/min until the pressure stabilizes.

6.2.3 Calibrate the instrument by injecting 10 µL of the mid-range standard solution, and record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b.

6.2.4 Verify that the response of the fluorometer is linear by injecting the high and low standard solutions.

6.2.5 Analyze the sample by injecting 10 µL of the sample extract into the HPLC. Record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b, if any.

7. Calculations

7.1 Calculate the exact concentrations of the chlorophyll stock solutions from the equation:

$$C_s = \frac{A}{\alpha b},$$

where C_s = concentration of chlorophyll stock solution, in milligrams per liter;
A = average absorbance obtained in 6.2.1;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity [0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975)].

7.2 Verify and correct the concentrations of the chlorophyll working standard solutions in 5.5 by using the chlorophyll stock solutions determined in 7.1.

7.3 Calculate the response factor for chlorophylls *a* and *b* in the chlorophyll working standard solution:

$$RF = \frac{V \times C_m}{I_s},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a*, in milligrams per unit area;
V = volume of mid-range standard solution injected, in milliliters;
C_m = concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* in the mid-range standard solution, in milligrams per liter; and
I_s = integrated area of the component peak.

7.4 Use the data from 6.2.5 to calculate the concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* on the original substrate:

$$\text{Concentration (milligrams per square meter)} = \frac{RF \times IV_e}{A_s \times V_i \times 1{,}000},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a* or *b*, in milligrams per unit area;
I = integrated area of the chlorophyll *a* or *b* peak in the sample as determined in 6.2.5;
V_e = final volume of the sample extract from 6.1.14, in milliliters;
A_s = area of substrate, in square meters; and
V_i = volume of sample extract injected in 6.2.5, in microliters.

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls a or b as follows: less than 1 mg/m^2, one decimal; 1 mg/m^2 and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Shoaf, W. T., and Lium, B. W., 1976, Improved extraction of chlorophyll a and b from algae using dimethyl sulfoxide: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 926-928.

_____1977, The quantitative determination of chlorophyll a and b from fresh water algae without interference from degradation products: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 5, no. 2, p. 263-264.

Chlorophyll in Periphyton by Chromatography and Fluorometry (B-6640-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Chlorophyll a, periphyton, chromatographic/fluorometric (mg/m^2): 70957
Chlorophyll b, periphyton, chromatographic/fluorometric (mg/m^2): 70958

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water. The method is not suitable for the determination of chlorophyll c.

2. Summary of method

A periphyton sample is obtained and the chlorophylls are extracted from the algal cells. The chlorophylls are separated from each other and chlorophyll degradation products by thin-layer chromatography. Chlorophylls are eluted and measured using a spectrofluorometer.

3. Interferences

A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the extraction process. Exposure to light or acid at any stage of storage and analysis can result in photochemical and chemical degradation of the chlorophylls.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Air dryer.

4.2 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.3 Centrifuge.

4.4 Centrifuge tubes, graduated, screwcap, 15-mL capacity.

4.5 Chromatography sheet, thin-layer cellulose, 5×20 cm, 80-µm thick cellulose.

4.6 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.7 Developing tank and rack.

4.8 Evaporation device.

4.9 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.10 Glass bottles, screwcap, smallest appropriate size for the sample.

4.11 Glass pan, smallest appropriate size for scraping substrate.

4.12 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.13 Grinding motor that has 0.1 horsepower.

4.14 Microdoser, and 50-mL syringe.

4.15 Pasteur pipets, disposable.

4.16 Scraping device, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.17 Solvent-saturation pads, 13.4×22 cm.

4.18 Spectrofluorometer (fig. 58) that has red-sensitive R446S photomultiplier, or equivalent. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.19 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.20 Tissue grinder.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll a (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2 and 5.3 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Add 1 mL 90-percent acetone to 1 mg chlorophyll b.

5.4 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Ethyl ether.

5.7 Methyl alcohol.

5.8 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

5.9 Petroleum ether, 30 to 60 °C.

6. Analysis

6.1 If sample was frozen, allow it to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.2 If an artificial substrate is used, scrape the periphyton off the substrate, using the scraping device, into a glass pan. Transfer all solid material into the tissue grinder.

6.3 Rinse the scraping device and substrate using DMSO.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.4 Grind at 400 r/min for 3 minutes.

6.5 Transfer the sample to a 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and wash the pestle and grinder twice using DMSO.

6.6 Add an equal volume of ethyl ether. Screw on cap and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and repeat shaking for 10 seconds more.

6.7 Remove cap and add slowly, almost dropwise, a volume of distilled water equal to 25 percent of the total volume of extractant (DMSO).

6.8 Invert the centrifuge tube gently, vent (to prevent tube from breaking from excess pressure), and then shake vigorously.

6.9 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.10 During centrifugation, prepare chromatography tank by pouring 294 mL petroleum ether and 6 mL methyl alcohol into tank. Mix well. Prepare fresh before each use. Use two solvent-saturation pads and the developing rack to dry the chromotography sheet.

6.11 Remove the top ethyl ether layer containing chlorophyll using a pipet, and place in another 15-mL graduated centrifuge tube.

6.12 Add an equal volume of distilled water, and shake as in 6.6.

6.13 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.14 Remove the top ethyl ether layer, using a pipet, and place in the conical tube in the evaporation device. Evaporate to dryness by blowing nitrogen gas over the ethyl ether surface.

6.15 Immediately add 0.5 mL acetone. Mix. Wait 30 seconds and mix again. If all chlorophyll is not in solution, then repeat procedure.

6.16 Using the microdoser, streak 25 μL of the acetone-chlorophyll solution on the chromotography sheet, 15 mm from the bottom and 6 mm from each side, using the air dryer to speed evaporation of the solvent. If excessive trailing occurs during chromatography, the volume of the solvent should be decreased.

6.17 Develop chromatograph in the dark, using chlorophyll solution(s). Use enough chlorophyll (about 5 μL of the solutions as in 5.2 or 5.3, or both) to visually locate the spot of pigment. The time required for development is about 30 minutes. Remove strips when solvent has traveled within 2 to 3 cm from top of strip.

6.18 Determine $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ values (Note 2) for pure chlorophylls.

Note 2: $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value = distance traveled by the chlorophyll from the point of application divided by the distance traveled by the solvent from the point of application.

6.19 Locate the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value on the chromotography sheet; and, using a razor blade, scrape the cellulose off the sheet at the spot of the $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$ value minus 0.07 for chlorophyll *a* (0.14 for chlorophyll *b*) × $\underline{R}_{\underline{f}}^{\wedge}$. Place the cellulose into a graduated centrifuge tube, and add acetone to a volume of 3 mL. This step should be done immediately after the chromotograph is removed from the tank. Shake the scraped cellulose and acetone vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 1 minute and shake again vigorously for 10 seconds more.

6.20 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 5 minutes.

6.21 Determine the concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* using the spectrofluorometer as follows. Curves are prepared daily to standardize the spectrofluorometer. Five standard solutions of each chlorophyll should be prepared at the concentrations of 0.5, 1, 2, 3, and 4 mg/L. These are prepared from the chlorophyll stock solutions by an appropriate dilution using 90-percent acetone.

6.22 For chlorophyll *a*, set the spectrofluorometer for an excitation wavelength of 430 nm and an emission wavelength of 670 nm. For chlorophyll *b*, the excitation wavelength is 460 nm and the emission wavelength is 650 nm. Set entrance and exit slits at 2 mm. Plot chlorophyll concentration versus relative fluorescence intensity. Determine unknown concentrations from the appropriate standard solution curve.

7. Calculations

7.1 The absorbance then is read on a spectrometer at 664 nm for chlorophyll *a* and 647 nm for chlorophyll *b*. Determine concentrations of solutions and samples using the specific absorptivities of 0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* from the following equation (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975):

$$\underline{C} = \frac{\underline{A}}{\underline{\alpha b}},$$

where C = concentration of chlorophyll, in milligrams per liter;
A = absorbance;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity.

7.2 The concentration of chlorophyll obtained in 6.22 is corrected for the concentration step onsite and in the determination:

$$\text{Original sample (milligrams chlorophyll per square meter)} = \frac{\text{Micrograms chlorophyll per milliliter (as in 6.22)} \times 3 \text{ mL} \times \frac{500\ \mu\text{L}}{25\ \mu\text{L}}}{\text{Area of surface scraped (square meters)} \times 1{,}000}.$$

8. Reporting of results

Report concentrations of chlorophylls a or b, in milligrams per square meter, to three significant figures.

9. Precision

Tilley and Haushild (1975a and b) reported that 21 glass microscope slides exposed for 2 weeks at a single site in the Duwamish River, Wash., had chlorophyll a concentrations that ranged from 1.33 to 2.81 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 1.97 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 7.4 mg/m^2. Twenty-two slides exposed for 3 weeks at a single site had chlorophyll a concentrations that ranged from 1.89 to 4.86 mg/m^2 and had a mean of 3.44 mg/m^2. The 95-percent confidence limit (approximated by two standard deviations) was 14.4 mg/m^2.

No other precision data are available.

10. References cited

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls a, b, c_1, and c_2 in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Tilley, L. J., and Haushild, W. L., 1975a, Net primary productivity of periphytic algae in the intertidal zone, Duwamish River Estuary, Washington: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 3, no. 3, p. 253-259.

_____1975b, Use of productivity of periphyton to estimate water quality: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 47, no. 8, p. 2157-2171.

Biomass/Chlorophyll Ratio for Periphyton
(B-6660-85)

Parameter and Code:
Biomass-chlorophyll ratio, periphyton: 70950

Plankton and periphyton communities normally are dominated by algae. As degradable, nontoxic organic materials enter a body of water, a frequent result is that a greater percentage of the total biomass is heterotrophic (nonchlorophyll-containing) organisms, such as bacteria and fungi. This change can be observed in the biomass to chlorophyll a ratio (or autotrophic index). Periphyton ratios for unpolluted water have been reported in the range of 50 to 100 (Weber, 1973); whereas, values greater than 100 may result from organic pollution (Weber and McFarland, 1969; Weber, 1973).

1. Applications

The method is suitable for the determination of chlorophylls a and b in concentrations of 0.1 mg/m^2 and greater.

2. Summary of method

A periphyton sample is ruptured mechanically, and the chlorophylls are separated from each other and degradation products by high-pressure liquid chromatography and are determined by fluorescence spectroscopy (Shoaf and Lium, 1976, 1977). The difference between the ash weight and dry weight is the organic matter (biomass). The biomass/chlorophyll a ratio is calculated from these values.

3. Interferences

3.1 A substantial quality of sediment may affect the chlorophyll extraction process. Inorganic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry and ash weights; nonliving organic matter in the sample will cause erroneously large dry (and thus organic) weights.

3.2 Exposure of the sample to heat, light, or acid can result in photochemical or chemical degradation of the chlorophylls. Large values will result from the presence of fragments of tree leaves or other plant materials that contain chlorophyll. Large populations of photosynthetic bacteria also will result in large values.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Analytical balance, capable of weighing to at least 0.1 mg.

4.2 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.3 Auto-injector (recommended, but not required).

4.4 Centrifuge.

4.5 Centrifuge tubes, 15 and 50 mL, conical, screwcap, graduated.

4.6 Centrifuge tubes, 50 mL, conical, pennyhead stopper, graduated.

4.7 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.8 Desiccator, containing anhydrous calcium sulfate.

4.9 Drying oven, thermostatically controlled for use at 105 °C.

4.10 Evaporation device.

4.11 Filters, glass fiber, 47-mm diameter, capable of retaining particles having diameters of at least 0.45 µm.

4.12 Filter funnel, nonmetallic, that has vacuum or pressure apparatus.

4.13 Fluorometer, equipped with excitation and emission filters.

4.14 Forceps or tongs.

4.15 Glass bottles, screwcap, smallest appropriate size for the sample.

4.16 Glass funnels.

4.17 Glass pan, smallest appropriate size for scraping substrates.

4.18 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.19 High-pressure liquid chromotograph (HPLC), consisting of a solvent programmer, an isochromatic pump, an oven, and a column. (The column oven needs to be capable of maintaining a constant temperature in the 25 to 35 °C range.)

4.20 High-vacuum pump, capable of providing an absolute pressure of less than 1 torr.

4.21 Muffle furnace, for use at 500 °C.

4.22 Pasteur pipet, disposable.

4.23 Porcelain crucibles.

4.24 Scraping device, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.25 Separatory funnels, 125 mL.

4.26 Solvent-saturation pads, 13.4×22 cm.

4.27 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.28 Tissue homogenizer, 30-mL homogenizing flasks, and blades.

4.29 Vacuum flasks, stoppers, glass tubing, vacuum tubing, and a sintered glass tube.

4.30 Vacuum desiccator.

4.31 Vacuum oven.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acetone, 90 percent. Add nine volumes of acetone to one volume of distilled water.

5.2 Chlorophyll a stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll a to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone (Note 1).

Note 1: Chlorophyll solutions undergo rapid photochemical degradation and must be stored cold (0 °C) and in the dark. Containers for solutions prepared in 5.2, 5.3, 5.4, and 5.5 are wrapped with aluminum foil as an added precaution.

5.3 Chlorophyll b stock solution. Transfer 1 mg chlorophyll b to a 100-mL volumetric flask and fill to capacity using 90-percent acetone.

5.4 Chlorophyll standard solution. Mix 25 mL chlorophyll a stock solution with 25 mL chlorophyll b stock solution in a 50-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5 Chlorophyll working standard solutions. Use a 5-mL pipet to prepare the following mixtures.

5.5.1 High standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 5 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 5 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.2 Mid-range standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 3 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.5.3 Low standard solution, chlorophylls a and b. Add 1 mL chlorophyll standard solution to 9 mL 90-percent acetone in a 15-mL centrifuge tube.

5.6 Distilled or deionized water.

5.7 Diethyl ether, distilled in glass, unpreserved.

5.8 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO).

5.9 Methyl alcohol, 96 percent. Pour 960 mL methyl alcohol, distilled in glass, into a 1-L graduated cylinder. Add distilled water to the mark and mix.

5.10 Nitrogen gas, prepurified.

6. Analysis

6.1 Sample Preparation.

6.1.1 Allow the frozen sample to thaw 2 to 3 minutes at room temperature.

6.1.2 Scrape the periphyton off the substrate into a glass pan.

6.1.3 Use 15 mL DMSO to rinse the solid material into a 30-mL homogenizing flask. Homogenize the sample until the cells have been ruptured.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6.1.4 Transfer the sample to a 50-mL graduated centrifuge tube, and rinse the homogenizing flask and blade using 5 mL DMSO. Add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.5 Add 20 mL diethyl ether to the centrifuge tube, screw on the cap, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake another 10 seconds.

6.1.6 Remove the cap and slowly add, almost dropwise, 10 mL distilled water to the centrifuge tube. Secure the cap and shake gently. Vent, then shake for 10 seconds. Wait 10 seconds and shake for another 10 seconds.

6.1.7 Centrifuge at 1,000 r/min for 10 minutes.

6.1.8 Transfer the top diethyl ether layer, using a disposable pipet, to a 125-mL separatory funnel. (If the DMSO layer appears green after diethyl ether extraction, repeat 6.1.5 through 6.1.8. There are, however, some green chlorophyll derivatives not extractable using diethyl ether.)

6.1.9 Add 15 mL distilled water to the separatory funnel, and shake vigorously for 10 seconds, venting often. Allow the layers to separate. (Break emulsions by adding 1 to 2 mL acetone and swirling the funnel gently.)

6.1.10 Drain and discard the bottom layer.

6.1.11 Rinse the upper part of the separatory funnel using 2 to 3 mL acetone. Remove the bottom layer that forms in the funnel and discard.

6.1.12 Decant the diethyl ether layer through the top of the separatory funnel into a centrifuge tube. Rinse the funnel using 5 mL diethyl ether, and add the rinse to the centrifuge tube.

6.1.13 Place the centrifuge tube on the evaporation device and evaporate to 0.2 to 0.4 mL using a gentle stream of nitrogen gas.

6.1.14 Add sufficient acetone to the sample extract so the color intensity is between the color intensities of the high and low standard solutions. If the color of the sample extract is not within the specified range after the addition of 20 mL acetone, take a 1-mL aliquot of the 20 mL extract, and dilute volumetrically until the desired color intensity is obtained.

6.2 High-pressure liquid-chromatographic analysis.

6.2.1 Measure the absorbance of the chlorophyll stock solutions using a spectrometer. Measure the absorbance at 664 nm for chlorophyll a and at 647 nm for chlorophyll b. Record the absorbance for three replicates of chlorophylls a and b. Average the three values for chlorophyll a and the three values for chlorophyll b, separately, and record each average separately for subsequent calculations.

6.2.2 Operate the HPLC system using 96-percent methyl alcohol as the mobile phase at a flow of 1.5 mL/min until the pressure stabilizes.

6.2.3 Calibrate the instrument by injecting 10 µL of the mid-range standard solution, and record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b.

6.2.4 Verify that the response of the fluorometer is linear by injecting the high and low standard solutions.

6.2.5 Analyze the sample by injecting 10 µL of the sample extract into the HPLC. Record the peaks of chlorophylls a and b, if any.

6.3 Dry weight and ash weight of organic matter.

6.3.1 Bake a porcelain crucible at 500 °C for 20 minutes. Cool to room temperature in a desiccator. Silica gel is not recommended. Measure the tare weight to the nearest 0.1 mg.

6.3.2 Remove the DMSO supernatant (6.1.8) using a disposable pipet. If biomass particles are visible in the supernatant, centrifuge first and then remove the supernatant. If the supernatant is still murky, filter through a tared glass-fiber filter, burn at 500 °C, and add filter ashes to sediment in crucible.

6.3.3 Quantitatively transfer the sediment to a 30-mL porcelain crucible using a microspoon or microspatula and rinses of distilled water.

6.3.4 Place the crucible in a 105 °C oven overnight to evaporate the water.

6.3.5 Place the crucible in a desiccated (preheated to 105 °C) vacuum oven. Lower the pressure in the oven to approximately 20 torr. Leave the crucible in the oven for 2 hours. Approximately every one-half hour or hour, redraw the vacuum (without reaching atmospheric pressure in the oven) to remove the DMSO fumes from the oven.

6.3.6 Cool crucible in a vacuum desiccator to room temperature.

6.3.7 Weigh crucible to the nearest 1 mg in a desiccated balance.

6.3.8 Reheat crucible in the vacuum oven for 1 hour.

6.3.9 Cool crucible in a vacuum desiccator and weigh. If the weight is not constant, reheat until constant weight within 5 percent is obtained. This value is used to calculate the dry weight.

6.3.10 Place the crucible containing the dried residue in a muffle furnace at 500 °C for 1 hour until a constant dry weight is obtained. This value is used to calculate the ash weight (Note 2).

Note 2: The ash is wetted to reintroduce the water of hydration of the clay and other minerals that, though not evaporated at 105 °C, is lost at 500 °C. This water loss may be as much as 10 percent of the weight lost during ignition and, if not corrected, will be interpreted as organic matter (American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

7. Calculations

7.1 Chlorophyll.

7.1.1 Calculate the exact concentrations of the chlorophyll stock solutions from the equation:

$$C_s = \frac{A}{\alpha b},$$

where C_s = concentration of chlorophyll stock solution, in milligrams per liter;
A = average absorbance obtained in 6.2.1;
b = path length, in centimeters; and
α = specific absorptivity [0.0877 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *a* and 0.0514 L/mg × cm for chlorophyll *b* (Jeffrey and Humphrey, 1975)].

7.1.2 Verify and correct the concentrations of the chlorophyll working standard solutions in 5.5 by using the chlorophyll stock solutions determined in 7.1.1.

7.1.3 Calculate the response factor for chlorophylls *a* and *b* in the chlorophyll working standard solution:

$$RF = \frac{V \times C_m}{I_s},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a*, in milligrams per unit area;
V = volume of mid-range standard solution injected, in milliliters;
C_m = concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* in the mid-range standard solution, in milligrams per liter; and
I_s = integrated area of the component peak.

7.1.4 Use the data from 6.2.5 to calculate the concentration of chlorophyll *a* or *b* on the original substrate:

$$\text{Concentration (milligrams per square meter)} = \frac{RF \times IV_e}{A_s \times V_i \times 1{,}000},$$

where RF = response factor of chlorophyll *a* or *b*, in milligrams per unit area;
I = integrated area of the chlorophyll *a* or *b* peak in the sample as determined in 6.2.5;
V_e = final volume of the sample extract from 6.1.14, in milliliters;
A_s = area of substrate, in square meters; and
V_i = volume of sample extract injected in 6.2.5, in microliters.

7.2 Biomass.

$$\text{Organic weight (milligrams per square meter)} = \frac{\text{Dry weight (milligrams)} - \text{ash weight (milligrams)}}{\text{Area of scraped surface (square meters)}}.$$

7.3 $$\text{Ratio} = \frac{\text{Biomass (milligrams per square meter)}}{\text{Chlorophyll } \underline{a} \text{ or } \underline{b} \text{ (milligrams per square meter)}} .$$

8. Reporting of results

8.1 Report concentrations of chlorophylls _a_ and _b_ as follows: less than 1 mg/m^2, one decimal; 1 mg/m^2 and greater, two significant figures.

8.2 Report biomass as follows: less than 1 mg/m^2, one decimal; 1 mg/m^2 and greater, two significant figures.

8.3 Report ratio to three significant figures.

9. Precision

No precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Jeffrey, S. W., and Humphrey, G. F., 1975, New spectrophotometric equations for determining chlorophylls _a_, _b_, $\underline{c}_1$, and $\underline{c}_2$ in higher plants, algae, and natural photoplankton: Biochemie und Physiologie der Pflanzen, v. 167, p. 191-194.

Shoaf, W. T., and Lium, B. W., 1976, Improved extraction of chlorophyll _a_ and _b_ from algae using dimethyl sulfoxide: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 926-928.

_____1977, The quantitative determination of chlorophyll _a_ and _b_ from fresh water algae without interference from degradation products: Journal of Research of the U.S. Geological Survey, v. 5, no. 2, p. 263-264.

Weber, C. I., 1973, Recent developments in the measurement of the response of plankton and periphyton to changes in their environment, _in_ Glass, G., ed., Bioassay techniques and environmental chemistry: Ann Arbor Science, p. 119-138.

Weber, C. I., and McFarland, B., 1969, Periphyton biomass-chlorophyll ratio as an index of water quality: Cincinnati, Ohio, Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Analytical Quality Laboratory, 19 p.

Adenosine Triphosphate (ATP)
(B-6700-85)

Parameter and Code:
Adenosine triphosphate (µg/L): 70998

Very sensitive methods of adenosine triphosphate (ATP) analysis have been developed because of McElroy's (1947) discovery that luminescence in fireflies has an absolute requirement for ATP. ATP is determined by measuring the intensity of light produced when ATP reacts with reduced luciferin (LH_2) and oxygen (O_2) in the presence of firefly luciferase and magnesium (Mg^{+2}), producing adenosine monophosphate (AMP), inorganic pyrophosphate (PPi), oxidized luciferin (L), water (H_2O), carbon dioxide (CO_2), and light (hv). The following equation shows this reaction:

$$ATP + LH_2 + O_2 \xrightarrow[Mg^{+2}]{\text{luciferase}} AMP + PPi + L + H_2O + CO_2 + hv.$$

The bioluminescent reaction is specific for ATP. The reaction rate is proportional to the ATP concentration, and 1 photon of light is emitted for each molecule of ATP hydrolyzed. When ATP is mixed with suitably buffered enzyme and substrates, a light flash follows that decays in an exponential fashion. Either the peak height of the light flash or the integration of the area under the decay curve can be used to prepare standard curves.

The sample-collection method will be determined by the study objectives. In lakes, reservoirs, deep rivers, and estuaries, phytoplankton abundance may vary transversely, with depth, and with time of day. To collect a sample representative of the phytoplankton concentration at a particular depth, use a water-sampling bottle. To collect a sample representative of the entire flow of a stream, use a depth-integrated sampler (Guy and Norman, 1970; Goerlitz and Brown, 1972). For small streams, a depth-integrated sample or a point sample at a single transverse position at the centroid of flow is adequate. Study design, collection, and statistics for streams, rivers, and lakes are described in Federal Working Group on Pest Management (1974).

The analysis section (6.1 through 6.16) in the method that follows describes the extraction of ATP from the living material (algae, bacteria, or fungi) in the sample. These extraction procedures ideally should be done immediately after collection. The sample may be stored 2 to 3 hours if necessary and if the temperature and lighting conditions are maintained; for example, do not put a warm sample from a well-lighted area into a cool, dark ice chest.

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all water.

2. Summary of method

A water sample is filtered, and the ATP is extracted from the living material. The extract from the living material (containing the ATP) is injected into a suitable buffered luciferin-luciferase enzyme solution. The intensity of light produced by the subsequent reaction is measured using an ATP photometer. The reaction rate is proportional to the ATP concentration, and 1 photon of light is emitted for each molecule of ATP hydrolyzed.

3. Interferences

In general, several metals (for example, mercury) and a large concentration of salts will inhibit the reaction; therefore, washing the filter using buffered distilled water, immediately after filtration to remove most of the dissolved salts is advisable. A substantial quantity of sediment may affect the extraction process.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Balance, analytical.

4.2 Constant-rate injector.

4.3 Cuvettes, 6×49 mm, quartz, 1-cm light-path length.

4.4 Cuvette caps.

4.5 Cuvette holder.

4.6 Distillation apparatus, glass.

4.7 Filter assemblies, 13-mm diameter, 0.45-μm mean pore size, self-supported filters (Note 1).

Note 1: These filters are resistant to the extracting agent, dimethyl sulfoxide.

4.8 Glass storage bottles, approximately 150-mL capacity, and autoclavable screwcaps.

4.9 Glass vials, approximately 15-mL capacity, and screwcaps, 22×85 mm.

4.10 Gloves, long-service latex.

4.11 Photometer, Chem-Glow photometer and integrator, ATP photometer, or luminescence biometer.

4.12 Pipet, 0.1, 0.2, and 1 mL that has disposable tips.

4.13 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave or vertical steam autoclave.

4.14 Syringe, 50 µL, blunt-tipped (nonbeveled).

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.15 Tubes, graduated 12- or 15-mL centrifuge.

4.16 Vacuum-filter stand.

4.17 Vacuum pump, to provide at least 250 mm of mercury.

4.18 Volumetric flasks, 100-mL and 1-L sizes.

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

All reagents are prepared using only freshly distilled water, which has an ATP value not greater than 0.1 µg/L.

5.1 Adenosine-5-triphosphate solutions, 1, 2.5, 10, 25, and 100 µg ATP per liter. Do the following steps rapidly because ATP is an unstable biochemical: Dissolve 119.3 mg $Na_2ATP \cdot 3H_2O$ (equivalent to 100 mg ATP) in 100 mL ATP diluent. Make two serial dilutions of 1:100 using the ATP diluent. Mix well between dilutions. The result is a 100-µg/L solution of ATP. Make 1:4, 1:10, 1:40, and 1:100 dilutions of the 100-µg/L solution using the ATP diluent to make ATP solutions of 25, 10, 2.5, and 1 µg/L concentrations. Pour small aliquots (approximately 100 µL) of the 1-, 2.5-, 10-, 25-, and 100-µg/L solutions into the cuvettes and cap using the cuvette caps. Quickfreeze the cuvettes immediately by immersing in a bath of acetone and dry ice; store at -20 °C or less.

5.2 ATP diluent. Dissolve 1.045 g morpholinopropane sulfonic acid (MOPS); 0.372 g ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid, disodium salt, dihydrate ($Na_2EDTA \cdot 2H_2O$); and 1.2 g magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4$) in approximately 900 mL distilled water. Adjust the pH to 7.7 using sodium hydroxide and increase the final volume to 1 L using distilled water. If not used immediately, the solution should be autoclaved to prevent growth of micro-organisms and, thus, the production of ATP.

5.3 Distilled water.

5.4 Hydrochloric acid solution, 0.2N. Dilute 16.7 mL concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) to 1 L using distilled water.

5.5 Luciferin-luciferase buffer solution. The kit must be stored frozen at -20 °C or less. For daily use, dissolve one buffer-salt (MOPS and $MgSO_4$ at pH 7.4) tablet in 3 mL distilled water. Add the vial containing the lyophilized enzyme-substrate (luciferin-luciferase) powder to the buffer solution. Mix gently but completely. Do not allow the formation of bubbles because this may result in enzyme (luciferase) denaturation. Wait at least 15 minutes before using. Fresh solution must be prepared before each use, but it may be left at room temperature (20-24 °C) during the day. One tablet of buffer salt and one vial of enzyme-substrate powder provide enough solution for approximately 30 cuvettes.

5.6 Morpholinopropane sulfonic acid (MOPS) solution, 0.01M. Dissolve 2.09 g MOPS in approximately 900 mL distilled water. Adjust pH to 7.4 using sodium hydroxide. Increase final volume to 1 L using distilled water. Pour approximately 100 mL each into 150-mL glass bottles, cap loosely, and autoclave. After cooling, cap tightly and store at room temperature.

5.7 Dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO) solution. Add nine volumes of DMSO to one volume 0.01M MOPS solution that was prepared in step 5.6. Mix well. Prepare fresh before each use.

CAUTION.--Latex gloves are worn to prevent the possible transport of toxic material across skin by DMSO.

6. Analysis

6.1 Shake water sample and remove 25 mL. If sample obviously contains abundant living material (for example, algae, bacteria, or fungi), this aliquot may be decreased to a volume as small as 10 mL. Record the final volume.

6.2 Pour the sample aliquot into the filter assembly containing the membrane filter, which has a graduated centrifuge tube in place and a vacuum pump attached.

6.3 Apply a vacuum no greater than 250 mm mercury.

6.4 Release vacuum immediately when filtration is almost complete so sample does not dry.

6.5 Quickly add 5 mL distilled water and filter again, this time to dryness. Release vacuum immediately.

6.6 Replace graduated centrifuge tube with a clean and dry centrifuge tube.

6.7 Pipet 0.2 mL DMSO onto sample in filter assembly and distribute evenly by rotation of filter assembly. If the 0.2 mL does not cover the sample, it may be doubled; if so, the 1 mL volume in 6.10 also should be doubled to 2 mL. Record the change so that corrections for dilutions can be made.

6.8 Wait at least 20 seconds (not more than 30).

6.9 Apply vacuum until surface is dry.

6.10 Add 1 mL of MOPS solution.

6.11 Wait 10 seconds.

6.12 Apply vacuum until surface is dry.

6.13 Repeat 6.10 through 6.12.

6.14 Record final volume; this value should be 2.2 mL.

6.15 Mix contents of centrifuge tube.

6.16 Pour contents of the centrifuge tube into small screwcap vial (approximately 15-mL volume), and quickfreeze by immersing the bottom part in an acetone and dry-ice bath. The sample must be frozen until analyzed. Storage should not exceed 30 days.

6.17 Pipet 100 µL luciferin-luciferase solution into the cuvettes.

6.18 Rinse the syringe three times using 0.2N hydrochloric acid by drawing acid into the entire 50-µL length of the syringe; rinse three times using MOPS solution to neutralize any remaining acid; rinse three times using distilled water.

6.19 Thaw the ATP solutions at room temperature and mix well.

6.20 Test the photometer for response to the luciferin-luciferase solution (background luminescence) and 10 µL of the five ATP solutions. Follow specific instructions for the photometer used. This procedure prepares a standard curve and is linear for this analysis.

6.21 Rinse syringe as in 6.18.

6.22 Place cuvette in photometer.

6.23 Thaw sample prepared in 6.1 through 6.16 at room temperature for analysis. Mix well.

6.24 Rinse syringe three times using the sample.

6.25 Inject 10 µL sample into the cuvette, and record response. Analyze in duplicate.

6.26 If response is too great for photometer, the sample may be diluted. Dilutions using distilled water are linear.

7. Calculations

7.1 Prepare a standard curve from the five ATP solutions. The standard curve is linear and has a slope of 1. Compute the concentration of ATP in the injected sample in micrograms ATP per liter of sample.

7.2 This ATP value is corrected for the concentration step onsite using the following equation:

$$\text{Original sample (micrograms ATP per liter)} = \frac{\text{Micrograms ATP measured per liter}}{\text{Volume of sample filtered (liters)}} \times \frac{\text{Dilution}}{\text{Volume recovered after extraction (liters)}} .$$

If undiluted, the value for dilution equals 1; the volume recovered after extraction commonly is 2.2×10^{-3} L.

8. Reporting of results

Report ATP to the nearest 0.1 µg/L.

9. Precision

Reproducibility of analysis is approximately ±2 percent (single analyst).

10. References cited

Federal Working Group on Pest Management, 1974, Guidelines on sampling and statistical methodologies for ambient pesticide monitoring: Washington, D.C., 59 p.

Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

McElroy, W. D., 1947, The energy source for bioluminescence in an isolated system: Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, v. 33, p. 342-346.

PRIMARY PRODUCTIVITY (Production Rate)

Introduction

Bodies of water differ greatly in their populations of plants and animals, and these differences may be used in the interpretation of water quality. Biological differences may be expressed qualitatively and quantitatively. For many purposes, however, the factor of greatest interest is the rate at which new organic matter is formed and accumulated in the system being studied. Organic matter can be produced by photosynthesis and chemosynthesis. In most environments, chemosynthesis is not an important component of primary productivity. Through photosynthesis, organic compounds are synthesized from water (H_2O) and carbon dioxide (CO_2) using energy absorbed from sunlight by chlorophyll. Light energy is used to convert carbon dioxide to reduced carbon compounds. This process can be summarized by

$$6\ CO_2 + 6\ H_2O + \text{light} \longrightarrow C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2\ .$$

This implies that primary productivity could be determined by measuring any of the following parameters: (1) Uptake of carbon dioxide, (2) production of oxygen (O_2), or (3) increases in pH. In addition, changes in biomass or nutrient concentrations per unit time also can be a measure of primary productivity.

The underlying assumptions in the following methods are that the change in oxygen and dissolved carbon concentrations is a result of photosynthesis and respiration. As described in the preceding paragraph, photosynthesis involves uptake of carbon dioxide and production of oxygen. Respiration is the reverse of this process.

Two general approaches are described for the estimation of primary productivity. In the first, the organisms are isolated in suitable containers, and the production and respiration rates are estimated from changes in the dissolved-oxygen concentration or from changes in carbon dioxide concentration as measured by uptake of radioactive carbon [carbon 14 (^{14}C)]. If the rate of primary production is sufficient for accurate measurements to be made within 24 hours, the oxygen method is preferred. Vollenweider (1974) indicates that the oxygen method is impractical when there is less than a 7-mg (O_2/m^3)/hour photosynthetic rate for a 3-hour exposure. Alternatively, if the chlorophyll concentration is less than 1 mg/m^2, the oxygen method should not be used. Therefore, the ^{14}C method, which is of greater sensitivity, is preferred for use in oligotrophic (low-productivity) water. In the second approach, production and respiration rates for nonisolated natural communities are estimated from changes in the dissolved-oxygen concentration of the open water.

The metabolism of aquatic plants and animals may result in changes in the concentrations of dissolved substances in the environment. The diel (24-hour) rise and fall of dissolved oxygen or carbon dioxide has been used to determine the productivity of biological communities in streams (Odum, 1956, 1957; Hoskin, 1959; Edwards and Owens, 1962; Gunnerson and Bailey, 1963; Edwards, 1965; O'Connell and Thomas, 1965; Wright and Mills, 1967; Hornberger and Kelly, 1972, 1974) and in standing water (Talling, 1957; Odum and Hoskin, 1958; Park and others, 1958; Odum, 1959; Verduin, 1960; Odum and Wilson, 1962;

Lyford and Phinney, 1968; Welch, 1968; Eley, 1970; Cory, 1974; Hornberger and Kelly, 1974). The following methods use oxygen changes because of the ease with which they can be determined, but the principles are applicable as well to changes in total carbon dioxide (Vollenweider, 1974; Hall and Moll, 1975).

In the first approach, diel changes in the in-situ concentration of dissolved oxygen caused mainly by photosynthesis and respiration are used to estimate the primary productivity of the entire aquatic plant community. The advantages of this method are: (1) Unnatural effects of enclosures are eliminated, (2) phytoplankton and attached plants are included, and (3) observations can be of long duration or can be adapted for continuous monitoring. The disadvantages of the method are: (1) Limited sensitivity; (2) the unknown effects of transient conditions between sampling intervals; (3) the exchange of oxygen between the air and the water requiring calculation or measurement; and (4) in the graphical analysis, the necessity of assuming that the respiration rate is the same during the night as during the day. In standing water, unmeasured horizontal exchange (advection) may cause errors.

Changes in the dissolved-oxygen concentration in a reach of stream or in a standing body of water are results of photosynthesis, respiration, diffusion, and inflowing surface and ground water. If how these factors affect the oxygen concentration in the study area is known, a dissolved-oxygen curve can be drawn, and the primary productivity can be determined. The equation for the oxygen curve (Odum, 1956; Owens, 1965) is

$$\underline{Q} = \underline{P} - \underline{R} + \underline{D} + \underline{A} \ , \qquad (1)$$

where $\underline{Q}$ = rate of change (gain or loss) of dissolved oxygen per unit area;
$\underline{P}$ = rate of gross primary production per unit area;
$\underline{R}$ = rate of oxygen use (respiration) per unit area;
$\underline{D}$ = rate of oxygen uptake or loss by diffusion per unit area, depending on whether the water is undersaturated or oversaturated with oxygen when compared to the air; and
$\underline{A}$ = rate of supply of oxygen from drainage accrual.

If possible, select an area for study in which accrual has a negligible effect on the dissolved-oxygen concentration when compared with the other components.

The rate per unit area of the diffusion of oxygen into or out of the water, $\underline{D}$, is the product of the gas-transfer coefficient, $\underline{K}$, and the percentage-saturation deficit of oxygen between the water and air, $\underline{S}$, or

$$\underline{D} = \underline{K} \frac{\underline{S}}{100} \ , \qquad (2)$$

where $\underline{D}$ and $\underline{K}$ are in grams per square meter per hour. If equations 1 and 2 are divided by the depth, $\underline{z}$, in meters, then the terms are expressed as volume, or grams per cubic meter per hour. Conventionally, capital letters are used for quantities defined on an areal basis and lowercase letters are used for quantities defined volumetrically (Odum, 1956). Thus, $\underline{k}$ is the gas-transfer coefficient, in grams per cubic meter per hour.

Various equations for obtaining K and D, as well as example values, are described in Odum (1956), Odum and Hoskin (1958), Churchill and others (1962), Odum and Wilson (1962), and Owens and others (1964). Procedures for measuring and predicting the reaeration coefficient of open-channel flows are evaluated by Bennett and Rathbun (1972).

In the methods described in this section, the diffusion rate either is obtained directly by the plastic-dome technique (Copeland and Duffer, 1964) or is calculated from measurements of hydraulic (mean flow) parameters (Churchill and others, 1962). The determination of K and D during the study period by one of these methods is preferable, but if that is not possible, a value for K may be estimated from the following data (Odum and Hoskin, 1958, p. 20):

Water type	Gas-transfer coefficient, K (grams per square meter per hour at 0-percent saturation)
1. Quiet water less than 0.5 m deep or shallowly stratified	0.1-1
2. Bay and lakes that have gentle circulation and small waves	1-3
3. Rivers, streams, and open tidal water that have strong circulation and large waves	$\geq$3

The presence of sewage and surfactants in the water tends to decrease the K value when compared with the pure-water K value; whereas, winds tend to increase the K value when compared with the quiescent air K value (Bennett and Rathbun, 1972, p. 56-58).

A possible source of error when estimating gross primary productivity from changes in dissolved-oxygen concentration is the loss of oxygen to the atmosphere in the form of bubbles. Losses of 1 to 6.5 percent of the total oxygen production have been reported (Odum, 1957; Edwards and Owens, 1962). Although the rate of gas loss may be slow for many environments, estimates can be made of the quantity of oxygen produced during photosynthesis that is lost in this way (Owens, 1965).

The procedures for graphical analysis of the diel oxygen curve are described for streams (single-station and upstream-downstream methods) and for stratified water.

Collection

For oxygen light- and dark-bottle and ^{14}C methods, determine the depth of the euphotic zone (the region that receives 1 percent or more of the surface light) using an irradiance meter or submarine photometer. Quantum radiometers also are used for measurement of photosynthetically active radiation (Fee,

1976). If no other method is available, an estimate of the bottom limit of the euphotic zone is obtained by multiplying the Secchi disk depth by 2 (Dillon and Rigler, 1974; Vollenweider, 1974). Select sampling depths equivalent to 100-, 50-, 25-, 10-, 3-, and 1-percent light-penetration depths using the following equation:

$$\text{Depth at } (\underline{x})\text{-percent light} = \frac{\underline{\ln}(100/\underline{x})}{\underline{K}} ,$$

where, for example, depth at 25-percent light = $\underline{\ln}(100/25)/\underline{K}$; and $\underline{K}$ = extinction coefficient (Vollenweider, 1974) and is determined by

$$\underline{K} = \frac{\underline{\ln}(\underline{Is}/\underline{Iz})}{\underline{z}} ,$$

where $\underline{Is}$ = irradiance at the surface;
$\underline{Iz}$ = irradiance at depth, $\underline{z}$; and
$\underline{z}$ = photometer depth.

In-situ incubations for oxygen and ^{14}C should be no longer than 4 hours, and the incubation period should be at midday (1000-1400 hours). For further details, refer to Shindler and Holmgren (1971) or Hall and Moll (1975).

If a 4-hour incubation is too short to measure oxygen changes, then ^{14}C should be used. In studies where more than one site must be sampled in 1 day, an on-board incubation technique can be used for the ^{14}C method (Fee, 1973a and b, 1976). A similar technique for multistation investigations of primary productivity using the oxygen light- and dark-bottle method is described by Megard (1972).

Collect a water sample, using an opaque, nonmetallic sampler, from each preselected depth. The sample volume should be sufficient to rinse and fill three incubation [biochemical oxygen demand (BOD)] bottles and a sample bottle for determination of alkalinity. After collection, all samples should be kept in the dark at sample water temperature during the following procedures to avoid light injury to the organisms. Samples preferably should be collected in early morning. This procedure allows for measurements of light penetration and water sampling during daylight and for an incubation period from 1000 to 1400 hours (Schindler and Holmgren, 1971).

Oxygen Light- and Dark-Bottle Method for Phytoplankton

Transfer the water sample collected from each depth to an 8-L polyethylene bottle, and let it stand for 15 to 30 minutes (but not more than 1 or 2 hours) at a temperature slightly higher than the in-situ water temperature. Shake the bottles occasionally to eliminate oxygen supersaturation. Supersaturation is most likely to occur in extremely productive water or in samples that have warmed several degrees.

For each depth sampled, fill four light and two dark BOD bottles by letting the well-mixed sample flow gently through a rubber tube inserted to the bottom of the bottle. Allow the water to overflow for about three bottle volumes and slowly withdraw the filling tube while the water still is flowing into the bottle. Immediately stopper the bottle, taking care to avoid entrapment of bubbles. All bottles from each depth must have the same initial dissolved-oxygen concentration. This requirement can be met during filling by adding successive increments of sample to each of the bottles in rotation until all are filled and flushed about three times. Place all bottles in a dark storage box until used.

The sequence of the following two steps may be altered as required. The determination of the initial dissolved-oxygen concentration should be started as soon as incubation begins.

Immediately add the reagents for the azide modification of the Winkler method to two light BOD bottles from each depth. These samples, designated IB, are used for determination of the initial dissolved-oxygen concentration. Titration may be delayed several hours, if necessary, if the samples are kept cool and dark.

Secure the stoppers in the BOD bottles that are to be incubated. The method of securing may be part of the suspension system, or stainless-steel or aluminum wire may be wound around the neck of the bottle and looped over the stopper. Do not use copper wire. Cover the stopper and neck of the dark bottles with several layers of aluminum foil. Attach pairs of light and dark bottles to a bottle holder attached to a wire cable (fig. 59). Lower the holders to the depth corresponding to the original sample depth. The wire cable can be attached to a surface float or suspended from a supporting arm attached to a pier or similar structure. Care must be taken not to shade the bottles with opaque floats or nearby structures. Begin the incubation, and prepare any remaining IB samples for dissolved-oxygen determination. At the end of the incubation period, raise the bottles and place them in a darkened box.

Carbon-14 Method for Phytoplankton

Transfer the contents of ^{14}C bicarbonate stock ampoules to a 50-mL Erlenmeyer dispensing flask (see e in Analytical Problems in the "Supplemental Information" section for alternative method). Remove an ampoule of radioactive solution from storage. Carefully snap the ampoule neck. Using a clean, dry pipet, or syringe, that has a 7.5- or 10-cm needle, transfer the ^{14}C bicarbonate to the dispensing flask. The volume of ^{14}C bicarbonate in the dispensing flask should be sufficient to inoculate all BOD bottles and three inoculant standards. Swirl the contents to provide a homogeneous bicarbonate solution. Shake the sample thoroughly. Rinse each BOD bottle using a small volume of sample water.

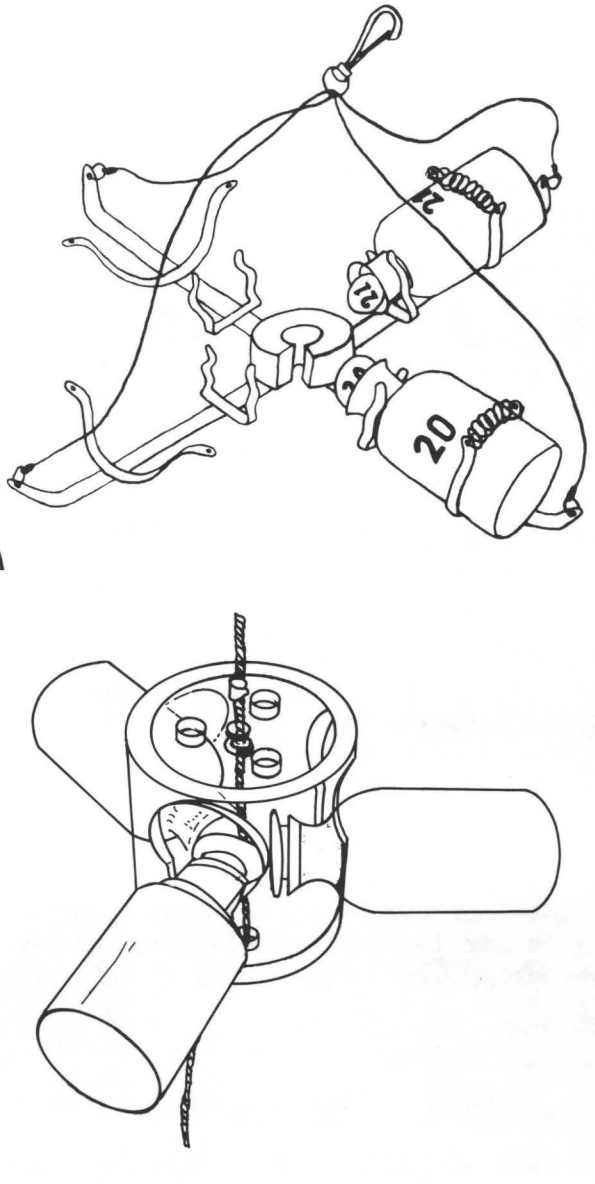


Figure 59.--Devices for holding light and dark bottles in a horizontal position: (A) Metal suspension frame (modified from Saunders and others, 1962); (B) polyethylene bottle holder (sketch based on photograph courtesy of Schindler and Holmgren, 1971).

Shake the sample thoroughly again. Fill one dark and two light BOD bottles with water from the sample depth. Also collect a sample for alkalinity determination from each depth. Place the light and dark BOD bottles in a plastic tray to confine possible spills and to minimize the potential for radioactive contamination of the working area. Alkalinity bottles that contain sample water should be capped and stored until analyzed in the lab-

oratory. Alkalinity determinations for the available carbon-12 (^{12}C) value used in primary productivity calculations are limited. Stainton (1973) describes the use of IR or gas-chromatographic techniques, especially for water that has small carbonate concentrations.

Inoculate each BOD bottle using ^{14}C bicarbonate, solution. The radioactivity of the sample after incubation is dependent on standing stock of the phytoplankton, growth rate, length of incubation, and volume of sample counted. Initially, the radioactivity of the sample should be increased by adding about 3 μCi ^{14}C bicarbonate per 100 mL of sample. With experience, one can decrease the strength of the inoculant so the resultant radioactivity is sufficiently high, but the natural alkalinity of the sample has not been altered unnecessarily.

Using a 1-mL precision volumetric pipet, dispense a 1-mL aliquot of ^{14}C bicarbonate inoculant into each light and dark BOD bottle. The tip of the pipet should be inserted well into the bottle. As the inoculant is added, the pipet tip is withdrawn from the bottle. Following inoculation, cap and shake each bottle well. Place the bottles in a darkened box until incubation begins. Cover the cap and neck of each dark bottle with black electrical tape.

The concentration of ^{14}C bicarbonate inoculant must be checked by preparing standards onsite. Using the precision volumetric pipet, dispense a 1-mL aliquot of ^{14}C bicarbonate inoculant into a clean volumetric flask, and dilute to 100 mL using distilled water. Transfer 0.1 mL of the diluted ^{14}C bicarbonate inoculant into each of three vials. Add 1 mL of liquid scintillation-grade phenethylamine to each vial of ^{14}C bicarbonate standard. Cap, shake well, and let stand for 5 minutes. To each vial of standard, add 10 mL Aquasol^{R} scintillation cocktail.

When all BOD bottles are ready for incubation, place one dark and two light bottles from each sampling depth into a bottle holder attached to a wire cable (fig. 59). Lower the holder to a depth corresponding to the original sample depth. The wire cable can be attached to a surface float or suspended from a supporting arm attached to a pier or similar structure. Care must be taken not to shade the bottles with opaque floats or nearby structures. At the end of the incubation period, raise the bottles and place them in a darkened box.

Oxygen Light- and Dark-Enclosure Method for Periphyton

Samples for periphyton primary-productivity determinations may be obtained either from natural or from artificial substrates. The best results will be from direct in-situ measurements of undisturbed periphyton.

Periphyton measurement sites should be selected on the basis of study objectives. If successive measurements are needed to determine primary-productivity changes with time for a selected reach of stream, each measurement must represent the same habitat. Similarly, if measurements are needed to compare periphyton among different reaches or different streams, the measurements must represent comparable habitats. Factors, such as water depth,

current speed, degree of sedimentation or erosion, and exposure to sunlight, must be similar if meaningful comparisons are to be made. The same attention to habitat applies to lake environments for which depth, sediment type, and presence of macrophyte beds are significant factors in site selection. The proximity of each measurement site to outfalls, marinas, bridges, or other effects of man must be considered.

Measurements of primary productivity of stream periphyton in static cultures may provide useful comparative values but undoubtedly are too small in absolute terms because of suppression of photosynthesis in the absence of current (Wetzel, 1964; Bombowna, 1972; Rodgers and others, 1978). To correct for the lack of current, methods have been developed for measuring primary productivity in plastic chambers in which water is circulated using a pump (McIntire and others, 1964; Thomas and O'Connell, 1966; Hansmann and others, 1971; Bombowna, 1972; Pfeifer and McDiffett, 1975; Rodgers and others, 1978; Gregory, 1980).

Circulating chambers are not available commercially; as a result, designs have varied. Three recent designs are shown in Gregory (1980), and Rodgers and others (1978), based on McIntire and others (1964). Some chambers have been miniaturized and use battery-operated pumps. The small size is convenient particularly in remote areas, but it has the disadvantage of collecting small samples; and the small pool volume may result in rapid oxygen supersaturation and nutrient depletion in water in the chamber. Large chambers that have large pool size are much more effective. The chambers made of Plexiglas are expensive to build and bulky to move. Because the most reliable pumps require line voltage, a generator usually is required. Because the chambers are submerged for temperature control, care is required when handling them because of the electrical hazard. Despite the many problems, the chamber (flowing enclosure) is a reliable method for obtaining estimates of primary productivity of periphyton.

Natural Substrates

Rocks or other substrate material of suitable size may be placed into circulating chambers, or the chambers may be constructed to enclose an undisturbed area of periphyton-covered substrate. If the periphyton is moved from its original depth, keep the samples in subdued light to avoid light injury.

Using a nonmetallic water-sampling bottle, collect a water sample from the same depth from which the periphyton was collected. The volume should be sufficient to rinse and fill all the circulating chambers and to determine the initial dissolved-oxygen concentration. For light-bottle and dark-bottle studies, samples preferably should be collected in the morning. This procedure allows for a 4-hour incubation period (Schindler and others, 1973).

Filter the required volume of water, and allow the filtrate to stand at a temperature slightly higher than the in-situ water temperature for 15 to 30 minutes. Shake the flask occasionally to eliminate oxygen supersaturation.

Enclose a known area of substrate containing living periphyton in a light and a dark circulating chamber containing a known volume of freshly filtered water. Fill the chambers and at least one BOD bottle so the chambers and the bottle(s) all have identical dissolved-oxygen concentrations. This requirement can be met during filling by adding successive increments of sample to each container in rotation until all are filled and flushed about three times. Keep all containers in the dark until used. Prevent entrapment of bubbles.

Place circulating chambers at the original depth from which the periphyton was collected, and incubate the samples for about 4 hours. In extremely productive water, where oxygen supersaturation is likely, an incubation period of 1 to 3 hours during midday may be sufficient.

Prepare the BOD bottle sample(s) for determination of the initial dissolved-oxygen concentration by using the methods of Skougstad and others (1979) or the American Public Health Association and others (1985). Titration may be delayed for several hours, if necessary, if the samples are kept cool and in the dark.

Diel Oxygen-Curve Method for Estimating Primary Productivity

The sample-collection method for estimating stream primary productivity will be determined by the type of environment being studied. In general, the objective is to determine the concentration of dissolved oxygen that is representative of the study area for each sampling interval. In well-mixed water, one or two determinations for each sampling period may be representative of the entire water mass. Even in well-mixed streams, the investigator must watch for spatial changes in dissolved-oxygen concentration. A consistent increase in dissolved oxygen toward the banks, when compared to the center of several rivers, was reported by Churchill and others (1962), and the effects of incompletely mixed tributary inflows can persist far downstream. Macrophytes frequently are distributed unevenly, which results in nonuniformity of water chemistry.

Sampling procedures are described for two types of stream conditions and for three methods of determining the diffusion rate, D. If the incoming water has metabolic characteristics similar to the outflowing water, follow the procedure for the single-station analysis. If the metabolic characteristics of the inflowing water are unknown or are not similar to the outflowing water, follow the procedure for the two-station analysis. Additional discussions of these methods are reported in Vollenweider (1974, p. 110-126) and Hall and Moll (1975).

Single-station analysis

Select a representative reach of stream in which surface- and groundwater accrual are negligible and in which similar conditions exist upstream. In such a stream, a second station would have a diel oxygen curve identical with that of the first station (Odum, 1956). Determine the cross-sectional mean velocity and the mean depth of flow to obtain stream discharge (Buchanan and Somers, 1969). Sufficient measurements must be made to determine the mean stream discharge for the 24-hour observation period.

Determine the dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, and the temperature of the streamflow continuously, or at 1-, 2-, or 3-hour intervals for at least 24 hours. Make measurements at or near sunrise and sunset. Determine the barometric pressure.

If the Winkler method is used for dissolved-oxygen determination, collect duplicate or triplicate samples at each sampling time, and average the results from replicate samples. Collect the samples using a threefold-displacement sampler or using a water-sampling bottle to protect the water from contact with the air. If a water-sampling bottle is used, fill one or more BOD bottles by letting the sample flow gently through a rubber tube inserted into the bottom of the BOD bottle. Allow the water to overflow for about three bottle volumes, and slowly withdraw the filling tube while the water is still flowing into the bottle. Immediately stopper the BOD bottles, taking care not to entrap bubbles. Add the reagents for the azide modification of the Winkler method. Titration may be delayed several hours, if necessary, if the samples are kept cool and in the dark. Measure water temperature to ±0.5 °C at each sample time and location.

For small streams, a single sample at the centroid of flow may be adequate. For large streams, samples may be required from several verticals at centroids of equal flow (Guy and Norman, 1970; Goerlitz and Brown, 1972).

If an oxygen meter is used, determine the dissolved-oxygen concentration at the sampling times and locations described in the preceding paragraphs. When using a portable recording system, place the temperature sensor and electrode at the centroid of flow, and ensure that sufficient water current is maintained past the membrane of the oxygen electrode. For stream velocities less than 0.6 m/s at the electrode, increase flow to the membrane surface using a submersible stirrer. Many oxygen electrodes are photosensitive, and the membrane-covered surface needs to be protected from bright light during calibration and use. Determine the diffusion rate, $\underline{D}$, by one of the methods described in the "Diffusion Rate" section.

Two-station analysis

Select an upstream and a downstream station on a representative reach of stream in which surface- and ground-water accrual are negligible. Determine the cross-sectional mean velocity and the mean depth of flow to obtain stream discharge (Buchanan and Somers, 1969). Sufficient measurements must be made to determine the mean stream discharge for the 24-hour observation period. Measure the surface area, in square meters, and the mean depth, in meters, for the reach between the stations, and determine the average time required for water to travel between the stations. If the flow rate of the stream cannot be determined directly, it can be estimated from the time required for a spot of dye to pass from the upstream station to the downstream station and from the mean cross-sectional area of the reach.

Determine the dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, and the water temperature at each station as described in the "Single-Station Analysis" section. Determine the diffusion rate, $\underline{D}$, by one of the methods described in the following section.

Diffusion rate

Determination of the rate at which oxygen enters or leaves the water when the concentration is not in equilibrium with the air is a critical step in the use of the oxygen-curve method for water. The rate at which oxygen diffuses in or out of the water increases as the degree of undersaturation or oversaturation increases. Moreover, in controlled streams that have open water or variable discharge, different gas-transfer coefficients, K, may need to be used at different times of day to explain changes in flow or in wind speed and direction (Odum and Wilson, 1962). The correction for wind does not need to be used for relatively protected areas.

Any of the following methods can be used for determining D. For the two-station analysis, D should be representative of the reach between the stations.

Hydraulic-parameter method.--A detailed study of reaeration of rivers downstream from Tennessee Valley Authority reservoirs indicated that water depth and velocity were the most important factors affecting K (Churchill and others, 1962). To calculate K and D, values are required for the cross-sectional mean velocity, the mean depth of flow, the water temperature, and the dissolved-oxygen concentration and percentage saturation continuously or at 1-, 2-, or 3-hour intervals for at least 24 hours. The measurements for these determinations are described in the "Single-Station Analysis" section.

Floating-diffusion-dome method.--D is determined directly by measuring changes in the concentration of oxygen in a plastic dome filled with air and floating on the water surface (Copeland and Duffer, 1964) (fig. 60). The changes in oxygen inside the dome with time are attributed to diffusion. Measurements of oxygen inside the dome are made at night to avoid errors resulting from greenhouse effects and to eliminate photosynthetic oxygen production.

Fill the dome with fresh air and float it on the water surface. Record the volume of air in the dome, the area of the dome in contact with the water, and the time of the initial measurements. At intervals of 2 to 5 hours during the night, measure the temperature and the fraction (percentage) of oxygen inside the dome using an oxygen meter capable of measuring gaseous oxygen. Record as in table 14. Simultaneously measure the dissolved-oxygen concentration and water temperature as described in the "Single-Station Analysis" section.

For lakes, the objectives of sampling are to determine the diel changes in the average concentration and percentage saturation of dissolved oxygen in the euphotic zone and the oxygen demand in the benthic zone. Total community metabolism of the water body then may be estimated on an areal basis.

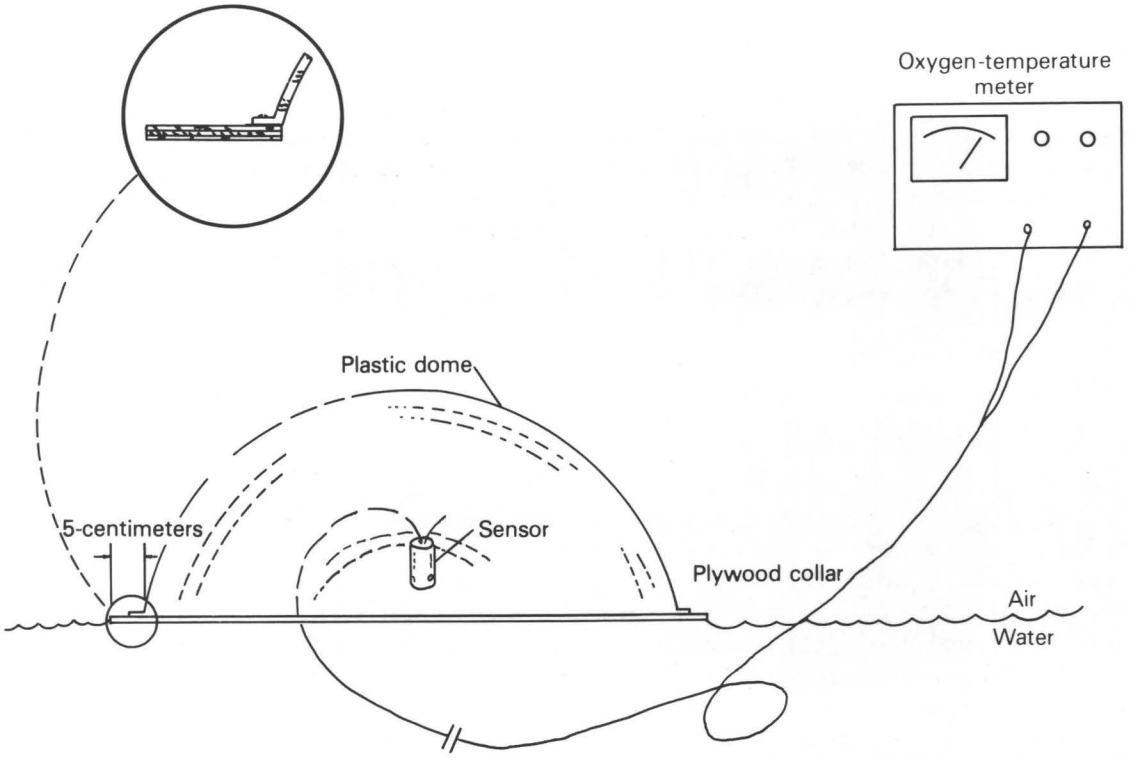


Figure 60.--Floating-diffusion-dome apparatus (modified from Hall, 1971).

Sampling stations should be located in areas representative of the water body if values are to be averaged to yield metabolism of the entire water body. Local hours of sunrise and sunset, as well as average barometric pressure during the study, are required; and phytoplankton standing crop and chlorophyll a are useful supportive data.

Determine the depth of the euphotic zone using a submersible photometer. If no other method is available, an estimate of the bottom limit of the euphotic zone is obtained by multiplying the Secchi disk depth by 2 (Dillon and Rigler, 1974; Vollenweider, 1974). Select sampling intervals equal to one-tenth of the depth of the euphotic zone. Respiration in the deepest part of the lake (hypolimnion) can be estimated by including one or more sampling depths between the euphotic zone and the bottom of the lake. A computer-analysis method requires that depth intervals be constant.

At 1-, 2-, or 3-hour intervals for each increment of depth, determine water temperature, dissolved-oxygen concentration, and if appropriate, salinity or conductivity. Determine D as described in the preceding paragraphs, or by the following method.

Table 14.--Hypothetical data for determining the diffusion rate, D, in a stream by the floating-diffusion-dome method

[The dome has a volume of 2.5 liters and an area of 0.038 square meter in contact with the water; ---, not applicable]

Time interval (hour)	Dome			Water			Gas-transfer coefficient, K (grams per square meter per hour at 0-percent saturation)
	Percent oxygen[1]	Temperature (degrees Celsius)	Volume oxygen (milliliters)	Temperature (degrees Celsius)	Average saturation deficit[2]	Oxygen diffusion rate, D (grams per square meter per hour)	
Beginning (0000)----	99.0	29.5	519.8	29.5	-26.6	0.82	3.1
End (0500)----	74.8	25.0	392.7	25.0			
Beginning (2000)----	99.4	30.0	521.8	30.0	-19.4	.64	3.3
End (2400)--	84.8	29.0	445.2	29.0			
Average K for study period----	---	---	---	---	---	---	3.2

[1]Fresh air = 100 percent.
[2]From table 15.

Nighttime rate-of-change method.--Odum (1956) and Odum and Hoskin (1958) developed this method to estimate reaeration gains or losses during darkness in the absence of photosynthesis. It assumes that there is no photosynthetic production of oxygen and that respiration is constant during the nighttime measurement interval.

Individual values for K corresponding to a nighttime measurement interval may be used to correct the surface-water layer value for nighttime diffusion. An arithmetic average of the nighttime values can be used to provide the daytime diffusion correction.

References Cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Bennett, J. P., and Rathbun, R. E., 1972, Reaeration in open-channel flow: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 737, 75 p.

Bombowna, Maria, 1972, Primary production of a montane river, in Kajak, Z., and Hillbrecht-Slkowska, Anna, eds., Productivity problems of freshwater [IBP-UNESCO Symposium, Kazemierz, Dolny, Poland, 1970, Proceedings]: Warsaw-Cracow, Polish Ecology, p. 129-147.

Buchanan, T. J., and Somers, W. P., 1969, Discharge measurements at gaging stations: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. A8, 65 p.

Churchill, M. A., Elmore, H. L., and Buckingham, R. A., 1962, The prediction of stream reaeration rates: Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, v. 88, no. SA-4, p. 1-46.

Copeland, B. J., and Duffer, W. R., 1964, Use of a clear plastic dome to measure gaseous diffusion rates in natural waters: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 9, no. 4, p. 494-499.

Cory, R. L., 1974, Changes in oxygen and primary production of the Patuxent Estuary, Maryland, 1963 and 1969: Chesapeake Science, v. 15, no. 2, p. 78-83.

Dillon, P. J., and Rigler, F. H., 1974, The phosphorus-chlorophyll relationship in lakes: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 19, no. 5, p. 767-773.

Edwards, R. W., 1965, The oxygen balance of streams, in Goodman, G. T., Edwards, R. W., and Lambert, J. M., eds., Ecology and the industrial society: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, Proceedings of the 5th British Ecological Society Symposium, p. 149-172.

Edwards, R. W., and Owens, Morlais, 1962, The effects of plants on river conditions, Part IV--The oxygen balance of a chalk stream: Ecology, v. 50, p. 207-220.

Eley, R. L., 1970, Physiochemical limnology and community metabolism of Keystone Reservoir, Oklahoma: Stillwater, Oklahoma State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 240 p.

Fee, E. J., 1973a, A numerical model for determining integral primary production and its application to Lake Michigan: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 30, p. 1447-1468.

_____1973b, Modelling primary production in water bodies--A numerical approach that allows vertical inhomogenetics: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 30, p. 1469-1473.
_____1976, The vertical and seasonal distribution of chlorophyll in lakes of the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario--Implications for primary production estimates: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 6, p. 767-783.
Goerlitz, D. F., and Brown, Eugene, 1972, Methods for analysis of organic substances in water: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A3, 40 p.
Gregory, S. V., 1980, Responses of periphyton communities in Cascade Mountain streams to light, nutrients, and grazing: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 146 p.
Gunnerson, C. G., and Bailey, T. E., 1963, Oxygen relationships in the Sacramento River: Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, v. 89, no. SA-4, p. 95-124.
Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.
Hall, C. A., 1971, Migration and metabolism in a stream ecosystem: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina, Department of Zoology, Environmental Science and Engineering Report 49, 243 p.
Hall, C. A., and Moll, R., 1975, Methods of assessing aquatic primary productivity, in Lieth, H., and Whittaker, R. H., eds., Primary productivity of the biosphere: New York, Springer Verlag, p. 19-53.
Hansmann, E. W., Lane, C. B., and Hall, J. D., 1971, A direct method of measuring benthic primary production in streams: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 5, p. 822-826.
Hornberger, G. M., and Kelly, M. G., 1972, The determination of primary production in a stream using an exact solution to the oxygen balance equation: Water Resources Bulletin, v. 8, no. 4, p. 795-801.
_____1974, A new method for estimating productivity in standing waters, using free oxygen measurements: Water Resources Bulletin, v. 10, no. 2, p. 265-271.
Hoskin, C. M., 1959, Studies of oxygen metabolism of streams of North Carolina: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 6, p. 186-192.
Lyford, J. H., Jr., and Phinney, H. K., 1968, Primary productivity and community structure of an estuarine impoundment: Ecology, v. 49, p. 854-866.
McIntire, C. D., Garrison, R. L., Phinney, H. K., and Warren, C. E., 1964, Primary production in laboratory streams: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 9, no. 1, p. 92-102.
Megard, R. O., 1972, Phytoplankton, photosynthesis, and phosphorus in Lake Minnetonka, Minnesota: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 17, no. 1, p. 68-87.
O'Connell, R. L., and Thomas, N. A., 1965, Effects of benthic algae on stream dissolved oxygen: Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, v. 91, no. SA-3, p. 1-16.
Odum, H. T., 1956, Primary production in flowing waters: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 1, no. 2, p. 102-117.
_____1957, Trophic structure and productivity of Silver Springs, Florida: Ecological Monographs, v. 27, p. 51-112.

_____1959, Analysis of diurnal oxygen curves for the assay of reaeration rates in polluted marine bays, in Pearson, E. A., ed., Proceedings of the First International Conference on Waste Disposal in the Marine Environment: New York, Pergamon Press, p. 547-555.

Odum, H. T., and Hoskin, C. M., 1958, Comparative studies on the metabolism of marine waters: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 5, p. 16-46.

Odum, H. T., and Wilson, R. F., 1962, Further studies on reaeration and metabolism of Texas bays, 1958-60: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 8, p. 23-55.

Owens, Morlais, 1965, Some factors involved in the use of dissolved-oxygen distributions in streams to determine productivity, in Goldman, C. R., ed., Primary productivity in aquatic environments: Berkeley, University of California Press, 1st Italiano Idrobiologia Memoris, Supplement 18, p. 209-224.

Owens, Morlais, Edwards, R. W., and Gibbs, J. W., 1964, Some reaeration studies in streams: International Journal of Air and Water Pollution, v. 8, p. 469-486.

Park, Kilhao, Hood, D. W., and Odum, H. T., 1958, Diurnal pH variation in Texas bays, and its application to primary production estimation: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 5, p. 47-64.

Pfeifer, R. F., and McDiffett, W. F., 1975, Some factors affecting primary productivity of stream riffle communities: Archives Hydrobiology, v. 75, p. 306-317.

Rodgers, J. H., Jr., Dickson, K. L., and Cairns, John, Jr., 1978, A chamber for in situ evaluations of periphyton productivity in lotic systems: Archives Hydrobiology, v. 84, p. 389-398.

Saunders, G. W., Trama, F. B., and Bachmann, R. W., 1962, Evaluation of a modified C-14 technique for shipboard estimation of photosynthesis in large lakes: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Great Lakes Division Publication 8, 61 p.

Schindler, D. W., and Holmgren, S. K., 1971, Primary production and phytoplankton in the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario, and other low carbonate waters, and a liquid scintillation method for determining ^{14}C activity in photosynthesis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 189-201.

Schindler, D. W., Frost, V. E., and Schmidt, R. V., 1973, Production of epilithiphyton in two lakes of the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 30, p. 1511-1524.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Stainton, M. P., 1973, A syringe gas-stripping procedure for gas chromatographic determination of dissolved inorganic and organic carbon in fresh water and carbonates in sediments: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 30, p. 1441-1445.

Talling, J. F., 1957, Diurnal changes of stratification and photosynthesis in some tropical African waters: London, Proceedings of the Royal Society, v. 147, p. 57-83.

Thomas, N. A., and O'Connell, R. L., 1966, A method for measuring primary production by stream benthos: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 11, no. 3, p. 386-392.

Verduin, Jacob, 1960, Phytoplankton communities of western Lake Erie and the CO_2 and O_2 changes associated with them: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 4, p. 372-380.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Welch, H. E., 1968, Use of modified diurnal curves for the measurement of metabolism in standing water: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 13, no. 5, p. 679-687.

Wetzel, R. G., 1964, A comparative study of the primary productivity of higher aquatic plants, periphyton, and phytoplankton in a large, shallow lake: Internationale Revue der Gestamten Hydrobiologie, v. 49, p. 1-61.

Wright, J. C., and Mills, I. K., 1967, Productivity studies on the Madison River, Yellowstone National Park: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 4, p. 568-577.

Oxygen Light- and Dark-Bottle Method for Phytoplankton
(B-8001-85)

Parameters and Codes:	
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70959
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70960
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70963
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70964
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70967
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70968

1. Applications

The method is applicable to standing or slowly moving water. Best results are obtained in eutrophic water in which the production rate is about 3 to 200 mg(C/m^3)/h during the photoperiod (Strickland and Parsons, 1968, p. 263). The smaller limit for measurable oxygen production occurs when there is less than a 7-mg(O_2/m^3)/h photosynthetic rate for a 3-hour exposure (Vollenweider, 1974, p. 93).

2. Summary of method

Light (clear) and dark (blackened) bottles filled with water samples are suspended at several depths in the euphotic zone for a known period of time. The concentration of dissolved oxygen is measured at the beginning and at the end of the incubation period. Changes in the dissolved-oxygen concentrations of the enclosed samples are interpreted in terms of photosynthesis and respiration. Productivity is calculated on the basis of one carbon atom assimilated for each oxygen molecule released.

3. Interferences

3.1 The method uses isolated phytoplankton samples to indicate the response of the natural system. Care must be used when collecting the sample, handling the sample, and exposing the sample to light to prevent interference with the life requirements of the organisms. Water-sampling bottles or devices should be made of plastic or glass, and the essential metal parts should be made of stainless steel. Copper, brass, and bronze fittings on water-sampling bottles or on suspension equipment should not be used. The water-sampling bottles should be opaque to decrease the risk of light injury, and biochemical oxygen demand (BOD) bottle filling should be done in the shade or in an enclosure to avoid exposure of unadapted algae to full sunlight. Light leaks into the dark bottles must be prevented. The formation of bubbles in the BOD bottles results in errors during the determination of dissolved-oxygen changes; microbial activity and chemical oxygen demand cause losses of oxygen when incubation times exceed a few hours (Vollenweider, 1974; Hall and Moll, 1975).

3.2 Interferences with the chemical determination of dissolved oxygen were described by Skougstad and others (1979) and American Public Health Association and others (1985).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies. All materials must be free of agents that inhibit photosynthesis and respiration.

4.1 BOD bottles, numbered, 300 mL, Pyrex or borosilicon glass, that have flared necks and pointed ground-glass stoppers. A supply of light and dark bottles is required. The dark bottles may be prepared by painting the bottles black and covering the paint with overlapping strips of black plastic tape. The exposed parts of the stoppers should be similarly blackened, and a hood of several layers of aluminum foil should cover the stopper and neck of the bottle during use (Note 1).

Note 1: To prepare the BOD bottles, fill with the acid cleaning solution and let stand for several hours. Rinse thoroughly using distilled water. Traces of iodine from the Winkler analysis should be removed by rinsing the bottles and stoppers using 0.01N sodium thiosulfate solution followed by thorough rinsing using distilled water. Do not use phosphorous-based detergents.

4.2 Dark box, preferably insulated, for storing filled BOD bottles until ready for incubation.

4.3 Equipment for determination of dissolved oxygen by the azide modification of the Winkler method (Skougstad and others, 1979; Golterman, 1982; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

4.4 Polyethylene bottles, 8-L capacity that has cap and bottom tubulation.

4.5 Suspension system for holding light and dark bottles in a horizontal position at various depths (fig. 59).

4.6 Underwater light-measurement equipment. A quantum/radiometer/photometer measures photosynthetically active radiation (400-700 nm). If a submersible photometer is not available, a Secchi disk may be used.

4.7 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type or equivalent. If a clear acrylic bottle is used, care should be taken to avoid light shock to dark-adapted organisms. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acid cleaning solution, 20 percent. Mix 20 mL concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) (specific gravity 1.19) with distilled water and dilute to 100 mL.

CAUTION.--Use rubber gloves, safety goggles, and protective clothing when handling concentrated HCl.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Reagents for the azide modification of the Winkler method for dissolved oxygen (Skougstad and others, 1979; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

5.4 Sodium thiosulfate solution, 0.01N. Dissolve 2.5 g sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$) in distilled water and dilute to 1 L.

6. Analysis

6.1 After suitable incubation, remove the BOD bottles from the suspension system; and, as quickly as possible, add the first two Winkler reagents to each bottle to arrest biological activity and to fix the dissolved oxygen. Complete the Winkler determination of dissolved oxygen for all samples; average the results from duplicate samples.

7. Calculations

Primary productivity is expressed as the quantity of oxygen released, or of carbon assimilated, per unit time. Adjust the following calculated values for the appropriate incubation period. Gross or net primary productivity is calculated on the assumption that one atom of carbon is assimilated for each molecule (two atoms) of oxygen released.

7.1 Gross primary productivity [$mg(O_2/m^3)/t$]

$$= \frac{LB - DB}{t} \times 1{,}000 \ ,$$

where LB = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light bottle after incubation;
DB = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the dark bottle after incubation; and
t = incubation period, in hours or days, and 1,000 converts liters to cubic meters.

7.2 Gross primary productivity [$mg(C/m^3)/t$]

$$= \frac{LB - DB}{t} \times \frac{12}{32} \times 1{,}000 \ ,$$

where LB, DB, t, and 1,000 = as in 7.1;
12 = atomic weight of carbon; and
32 = molecular weight of oxygen.

7.3 Net primary productivity [$mg(O_2/m^3)/\underline{t}$]

$$= \frac{\underline{LB} - \underline{IB}}{\underline{t}} \times 1{,}000 \ ,$$

where $\underline{LB}$ = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light bottle after incubation;
$\underline{IB}$ = initial dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light bottle before incubation; and
$\underline{t}$ = incubation period, in hours or days, and 1,000 converts liters to cubic meters.

7.4 Net primary productivity [$mg(C/m^3)/\underline{t}$]

$$= \frac{\underline{LB} - \underline{IB}}{\underline{t}} \times \frac{12}{32} \times 1{,}000 \ ,$$

where $\underline{LB}$, $\underline{IB}$, $\underline{t}$, and 1,000 = as in 7.3;
12 = atomic weight of carbon; and
32 = molecular weight of oxygen.

7.5 Respiration [$mg(O_2/m^3)/\underline{t}$]

$$= \frac{\underline{IB} - \underline{DB}}{\underline{t}} \times 1{,}000 \ ,$$

where $\underline{IB}$ = initial dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light bottle before incubation;
$\underline{DB}$ = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the dark bottle after incubation; and
$\underline{t}$ = incubation period, in hours or days, and 1,000 converts liters to cubic meters.

7.6 The gross or net primary productivity of a vertical column of water, 1 m^2 in cross section (milligrams oxygen per square meter per time or milligrams carbon per square meter per time), is determined by a summation of the productivities in successive cubic meter volumes, from top to bottom, in the euphotic zone at each study site. However, the maximum value in the euphotic zone for primary productivity, expressed on a cubic meter basis (pmax), has much more meaning for data interpretation than does an integrated square meter value (Megard, 1972). Therefore, the maximum cubic meter value should be reported in addition to the square meter integral value for primary productivity. On a graph of depth versus productivity (fig. 61), plot the experimentally determined productivity value for each incubation depth, and draw a line of best fit through the points. Integrate the area under the productivity-depth curve to obtain a total productivity value for the euphotic zone. An example of the vertical distribution of daily primary productivity in a lake is shown in figure 61.

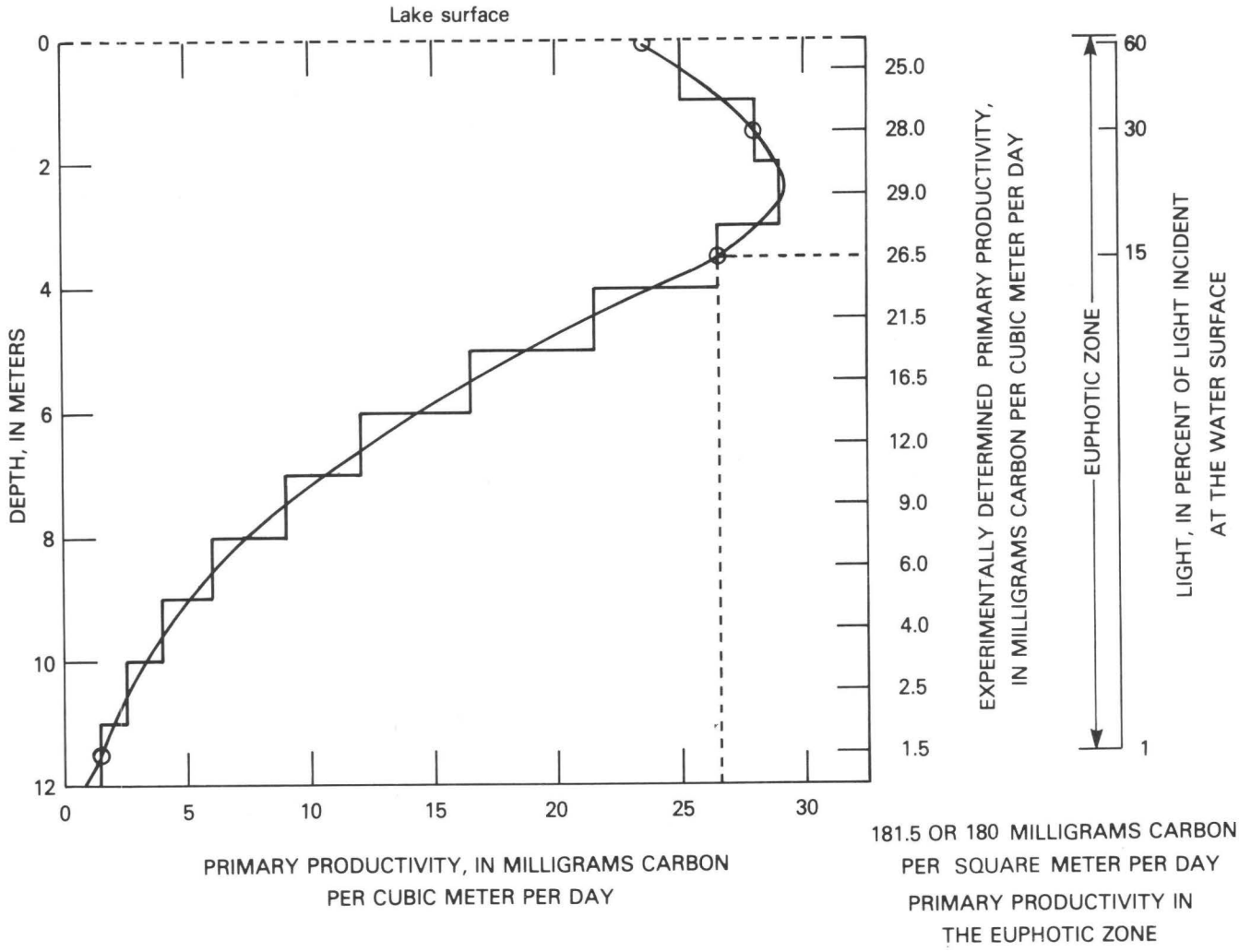


Figure 61.--Example of the vertical distribution of daily primary productivity in Koocanusa Reservoir, Mont. The circled points are values of primary productivity (milligrams carbon per cubic meter per day) calculated from contents of light and dark bottles suspended at those depths. The smooth curve was fitted by eye, and the area under the primary productivity-depth curve (milligrams carbon per square meter per day) was estimated by summing the values at 1-meter intervals through the euphotic zone (modified from Janzer and others, 1973).

8. Reporting of results

Report primary productivity as follows: less than 10 mg, one decimal; 10 mg and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

The following precision estimates were reported by Strickland and Parsons (1968, p. 263) for aliquots from a single, large sample and do not include variabilities from sampling. For precision at the 100-mg $(C/m^3)/h$ level, the correct value lies in the range: Mean of $\underline{n}$ determinations $\pm 15/\underline{n}^{\frac{1}{2}}$ mg(C/m^3)/hr

(6-hour incubation). For precision at the 10-mg (C/m^3)/h level, the correct value lies in the range: Mean of n determinations $\pm 1.5/n^{\frac{1}{2}}$ mg(C/m^3)/h (6-hour incubation).

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Golterman, H. L., ed., 1982, Methods for chemical and physical analysis of fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 8, 213 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hall, C. A., and Moll, R., 1975, Methods of assessing aquatic primary productivity, in Lieth, H., and Whittaker, R. H., eds., Primary productivity of the biosphere: New York, Springer Verlag, p. 19-53.

Janzer, V. J., Schroeder, L. J., and Knapton, J. R., 1973, Determination of aquatic productivity (photosynthesis) in Lake Koocanusa, Montana, by carbon-14 light- and dark-bottle method: U.S. Geological Survey open-file report, 43 p.

Megard, R. O., 1972, Phytoplankton, photosynthesis, and phosphorus in Lake Minnetonka, Minnesota: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 17, no. 1, p. 68-87.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Strickland, J. D. H., and Parsons, T. R., 1968, A practical handbook of seawater analysis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 167, 311 p.

Vollenweider, R. A., ed., 1974, A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Carbon-14 Light- and Dark-Bottle Method for Phytoplankton (B-8020-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Productivity, primary, gross [mg(C/m^3)/d]:	70961
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(C/m^2)/d]:	70962
Productivity, primary, net [mg(C/m^3)/d]:	70965
Productivity, primary, net [mg(C/m^2)/d]:	70966

Phytoplankton primary productivity as determined by the ^{14}C light- and dark-bottle method measures the rate of assimilation of carbon dioxide (CO_2) into particulate organic material by contained algal populations. The ^{14}C method measures productivity by determining the rate of incorporation of a radioisotope tracer, $^{14}CO_2$, into organic material.

The ^{14}C method was used first by Steemann-Nielsen (1952). Originally, radioactivity of incorporated ^{14}C was measured using Geiger-Müller (GM) counters, but this measurement technique is rarely used because GM counters are susceptible to considerable back scatter and self-absorption and can have inaccurate counting efficiencies. Comparisons of the merits of GM measurements and liquid-scintillation measurements (Schindler, 1966; Wolfe and Schleske, 1967; Wallen and Geen, 1968) indicated that liquid-scintillation measurements do not have many of the drawbacks inherent with the use of GM counters. Pugh (1970, 1973) reported that counting efficiency as calculated by internal or external standardization can result in serious errors if applied to a heterogeneous sample, for example, a filter that has attached phytoplankton. High levels of self-absorption caused by dense layering of particulate material on filters can be corrected accurately only by using a filter standardization technique (Pugh, 1973). Many investigators proposed the use of solubilizers, emulsifiers, and bleaching to provide a homogeneous sample that has accurate counting efficiency. Schindler and others (1972) proposed acidification and bubbling of the sample to eliminate errors and uncertainties associated with filtration techniques (Arthur and Rigler, 1967). Further modifications of the acid bubbling method (Smith, 1975; Theodorsson and Bjarnason, 1975; Mague and others, 1980) have resulted in a technique that eliminates many problems inherent in ^{14}C-filtration methods (Goolsby, 1976; Gachter and Mares, 1979), particularly problems caused by filtration artifacts, accurate determination of counting efficiency, and excretion of dissolved organic material.

1. Applications

1.1 The ^{14}C method is applicable to standing or slowly moving eutrophic and oligotrophic water in freshwater or saline environments. In very eutrophic water, the rate of photosynthesis may be so rapid that adjustments in experimental procedure may be necessary (see "Supplemental Information" section). Lean and Burnison (1979) warn of possible insensitivity of acidification and bubbling techniques in water that has greater than 1,500 to 3,000 µm dissolved inorganic carbon.

1.2 Although radioisotope techniques seem to be straightforward, exactly what is being measured by ^{14}C techniques has never been determined precisely. Measures of gross or net productivity typically are of interest. But, because the technique cannot directly measure respiration, photorespiration, or the

rate of ^{14}C movement through the cellular carbon pool, accurate determinations of whether gross or net productivity is being measured cannot be made. Studies by Hobson and others (1976) and Gieskes and others (1979) indicate that incubations of 2 to 4 hours are needed to measure gross carbon uptake, whereas incubations of 24 hours are required to measure net productivity.

2. Summary of method

Measurements of primary productivity of organic matter using the ^{14}C method (Steemann-Nielsen, 1952) require adding radioactive bicarbonate, $NaH^{14}CO_3$, to an enclosed water sample. After incubation (either in situ or in an incubator), photosynthesis is stopped by chemical means before further processing. An aliquot of the fixed sample then is acidified and bubbled (Schindler and others, 1972) to separate the inorganic $^{14}CO_3^{-2}$ from the organic fraction. Following acidification and bubbling, an unfiltered subsample and a filtrate subsample are used for subsequent scintillation counting. After a volumetric subsample of the filtrate is acidified and bubbled, a known quantity is put into a scintillation vial and a light-sensitive scintillation fluor is added to the vial. As the ^{14}C atom decays, an energized β particle is emitted, which causes the scintillation solution to fluoresce pulses of light. Very sensitive photomultiplier tubes in a scintillation spectrometer record the light pulses. The ^{14}C activity in the sample is proportional to the frequency of light pulses. The uptake and reduction of CO_2 to organic matter is assumed to be proportional to the uptake of ^{14}C bicarbonate. Primary productivity, as the quantity of carbon fixed per unit time, is calculated from the proportion of ^{14}C fixed to ^{14}C available and total CO_2 in the sample.

3. Interferences

Some interferences are inherent in the ^{14}C method and cannot be avoided. A "Supplemental Information" section is included at the end of the description of this method to indicate commonly occurring problems and the types of procedures that minimize their effects.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies. All materials used must be free of agents that inhibit photosynthesis and respiration.

4.1 Bags, polyethylene, about 30×60 cm, for solid radioactive wastes.

4.2 Black tape, to cover cap and neck of dark bottles after inoculating using ^{14}C bicarbonate.

4.3 BOD bottles, numbered, 300 mL, Pyrex or borosilicon glass, that have flared necks and pointed ground-glass stoppers. A supply of light and dark bottles is required. The dark bottles may be prepared by painting the bottles black and covering the paint with overlapping strips of black plastic tape. The exposed parts of the stoppers should be similarly blackened, and a hood of several layers of aluminum foil should cover the stopper and neck of the bottle during use (Note 1).

Note 1: To prepare the BOD bottles, fill with the acid cleaning solution and let stand for several hours. Rinse thoroughly using distilled water. Traces of iodine from the Winkler analysis should be removed by rinsing the bottles and stoppers using 0.01N sodium thiosulfate solution followed by thorough rinsing using distilled water. Do not use phosphorous-based detergents.

4.4 Carboy, waste, 20 L, polyethylene.

4.5 Dark box, preferably insulated, for storing filled BOD bottles until ready for incubation.

4.6 Filtration assembly, 20-mL syringe that has the plunger removed, attached to a 25-mm filter unit. The sample is filtered through a 25-mm filter, and the filtrate is collected in a temporary holding vial.

4.7 Glass-fiber filters, 47-mm diameter disks, or membrane filters, white, plain, 0.45-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.8 Micropipet, automatic, precision volumetric, 1 mL.

4.9 Needles, hypodermic, 7.5 or 10 cm, Luer taper.

4.10 Pipet, automatic, adjustable, volumetric, 1 to 5 mL.

4.11 Pipet tips, disposable, 1-mL capacity.

4.12 Pipet tips, disposable, 5-mL capacity.

4.13 Repipettor.

4.14 Sample bubbler, for agitating the sample while stripping $^{14}CO_3^{-2}$ from the solution. A number of designs have been employed (Theodorsson and Bjarnason, 1975; Gachter and Mares, 1979). A system proven to be effective is shown in figure 62. After acid is added to the sample vial and the stopper is in place, air, which agitates the solution and mixes the sample and acid, is drawn through the inlet tube. The $^{14}CO_2$ is drawn away by vacuum and vented outside the laboratory.

4.15 Spectrometer (spectrophotometer; fig. 57) that has a band width of 2 nm or less so absorbance can be read to ±0.001 units. Use cells that have a light path of 1 cm.

4.16 Suspension system for holding light and dark bottles in a horizontal position at various depths (fig. 59).

4.17 Syringe, 10-mL Luer taper.

4.18 Underwater light-measurement equipment. A quantum/radiometer/photometer measures photosynthetically active radiation (400-700 nm). If a submersible photometer is not available, a Secchi disc may be used.

4.19 Vacuum pump.

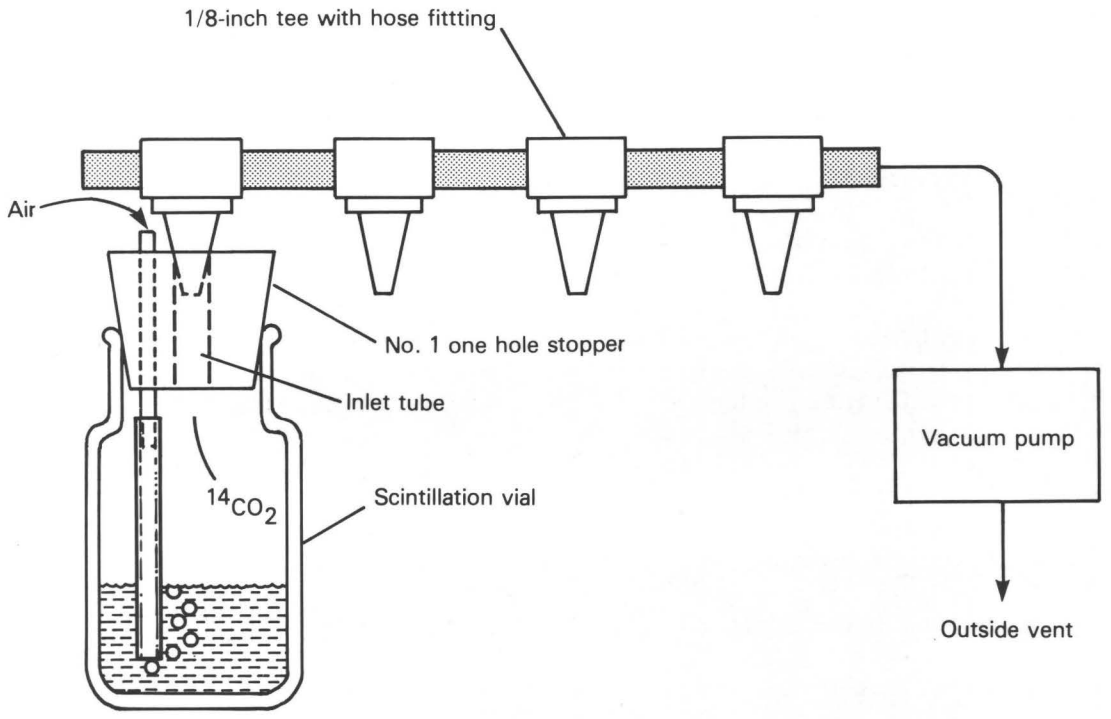


Figure 62.--Sample bubbler that has sample vial attached. The stopper is a no. 1 (one-hole stopper). An air vent is made from a 3-centimeter section of a no. 20 hypodermic needle to which is attached a short length of tygon tubing.

4.20 Vials, liquid scintillation, 20-mL capacity, that have plastic-lined screwcaps (Note 2).

Note 2: Place identifying marks on the caps and not on the sides of the vials.

4.21 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type or equivalent. If a clear acrylic bottle is used, care should be taken to avoid light shock to dark-adapted organisms. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acid cleaning solution, 1N. Mix 82.6 mL concentrated HCl (specific gravity 1.19) per liter of distilled water.

CAUTION.--Use rubber gloves, safety goggles, and protective clothing when handling concentrated HCl.

5.2 Ammoniacal barium chloride solution. Dissolve 50 g $BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ in approximately 1 L lakewater or tapwater, add 75 to 100 mL concentrated NH_4OH (specific gravity 0.90), and place in the 20-L polyethylene waste carboy.

5.3 ^{14}C bicarbonate solution, $NaH^{14}CO_3$ or equivalent. Specific activity of 0.1 µCi/µg. Standard solutions of 1, 5, 10, or 20 µCi/mL are available. The activity necessary for a particular environment should be established by the researcher.

5.4 ^{14}C labeled toluene standard, certified calibration standard of toluene (^{14}C) that has a specific activity of 4×10^5 DPM/mL.

5.5 Distilled or deionized water.

5.6 Hydrochloric acid, 0.1N. Mix 8.3 mL concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) (specific gravity 1.19) with distilled water and dilute to 1 L in a repipettor that has 0.1-mL graduations.

5.7 Liquid-scintillation solution. Aquasol^R scintillation cocktail has been a satisfactory fluor. PCS Solubilizer premixed liquid-scintillation cocktail also has been satisfactory (Janzer and others, 1973).

5.8 Reagents for determining total alkalinity (CO_2, HCO_3^{-1}, and CO_3^{-2}) (Skougstad and others, 1979; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

5.9 2-phenethylamine, scintillation grade. Phenethylamine is used to form carbonates, which are stable in Aquasol, to eliminate loss of radiocarbon from the acidic fluor.

6. Analysis

6.1 After incubation is completed, process the samples in a work area that has subdued lighting. After shaking the sample well, dispense a 3-mL aliquot of sample into a scintillation vial using a precision volumetric pipet. Add 0.2 mL of 0.1N HCl to decrease the pH to 2.5 to 3. Immediately insert a stopper (fig. 62) and attach the vial to the sample bubbler. Repeat in triplicate for each light and dark bottle.

6.2 Gravity filter 5 to 10 mL of each sample through a 0.45-µm glass-fiber filter. Pour the sample water into a 20-mL plastic syringe filtration unit. The filtrate is collected in a temporary holding vial from which a 3-mL subsample is dispensed into a scintillation vial. Add 0.2 mL of 0.1N HCl and bubble.

6.3 After aerating each sample for 10 to 15 minutes, remove the vial from the sample bubbler and replace the stopper with a scintillation vial cap. When convenient, add to each vial 10 mL liquid-scintillation solution, using a volume sufficient to produce a stable emulsion suitable for holding particulates dispersed throughout the medium.

6.4 Filter the remaining contents of all BOD bottles through a 0.45-µm glass-fiber filter. Dispose of the glass-fiber filters in the solid-waste disposal bag. Pour the collected filtrate into the 20-L polyethylene waste

carboy to react with the ammoniacal barium chloride solution; ^{14}C bicarbonate in solution will be precipitated as barium carbonate, which is allowed to settle ("Supplemental Information" subsection at the back of this section).

6.5 Temporary holding vials are reused after being washed, soaked in 1N HCl, rinsed, and dried.

6.6 When the vials are returned to the laboratory, wipe the outside of each vial using an acetone dampened tissue to remove dust and finger marks.

6.7 Dark adapt all vials until their activity drops to a consistent level. The time required for dark adaptation will vary but can be determined by counting a representative sample until little variation between successive counts is observed. Typically, a few hours is sufficient for dark adaptation.

6.8 Using a liquid-scintillation spectrometer, count each vial in series for 20 minutes. Repeat the counting procedure three times.

6.9 Determine the counting efficiency for each sample by internal standardization. After counting, add 100 µL of ^{14}C labeled toluene standard to two samples from each sampling depth. Repeat counting as described in 6.8.

6.10 Determine the counting efficiency for these spiked samples using the equation

$$\underline{E} = \frac{(\bar{\underline{R}}_{s'} - \bar{\underline{R}}_{s})}{\underline{S}} \times 100 \ ,$$

where $\underline{E}$ = the counting efficiency, in percent (Note 3);
$\bar{\underline{R}}_{s'}$ = the average counting rate of the sample, in counts per minute after the addition of the ^{14}C labeled toluene standard;
$\bar{\underline{R}}_{s}$ = the average counting rate of the sample, in counts per minute; and
$\underline{S}$ = the total activity of the ^{14}C labeled toluene standard added, in disintegrations per minute.

Note 3: Experience indicates that a variation of 2 percent in the counting efficiency is acceptable. If the variation is greater than 2 percent, the counting efficiency for all samples in light and dark bottles from the location(s) in question should be checked and count-rate corrections made, if necessary.

6.11 Activity of ^{14}C bicarbonate standards are determined in a similar manner. Because the activity of standard samples is intense, counting time should be decreased to 1 minute to prevent overloading the scintillation spectrometer's counting mechanism. After counting each standard three times, add 1 mL of ^{14}C labeled toluene standard to two samples. Repeat the counting procedure for the spiked samples. Counting efficiency for spiked standards is calculated as outlined in 6.10.

7. Calculations

7.1 Primary productivity is expressed as the quantity of carbon assimilated per unit time. Gross photosynthesis, based on incubations of 2 to 4 hours, should be reported as productivity per hour (milligrams carbon per cubic meter per hour). Net photosynthesis, based on 24-hour incubations, should be reported in milligrams carbon per cubic meter per day.

Net primary productivity = total $carbon_{fixed}$ - excreted $carbon_{fixed}$.

Gross primary productivity = total $carbon_{fixed}$.

$$Carbon_{fixed} = \frac{(\bar{B}_l - \bar{B}_d) \times W \times (V_i/V_a) \times 1.064}{\bar{S} \times D},$$

where $\bar{B}_l$ (DPM) = average light-bottle counting rate ($\bar{R}_x$) divided by sample counting efficiency (E) (see C in analytical problems in "Supplemental Information" section);

$\bar{B}_d$ (DPM) = average dark-bottle counting rate ($\bar{R}_s$) divided by sample counting efficiency (E);

W (mg/L) = alkalinity (actually ^{12}C-total inorganic carbon). Conversion of alkalinity data to inorganic carbon values is discussed in Vollenweider (1974);

V_i (mL) = volume incubated;

V_a (mL) = volume of aliquot acidified and bubbled;

1.064 = isotopic preference factor (Steemann-Nielsen, 1952);

$\bar{S}$ (DPM) = average ^{14}C bicarbonate standard counting rate ($\bar{R}_s$) × counting efficiency (E).

D = unit time;

Total $carbon_{fixed}$ = unfiltered sample fixation rate; and

Excreted $carbon_{fixed}$ = 0.45-μm filtrate sample fixation rate.

7.2 The primary productivity of a vertical column of water, 1 m^2 in cross section (milligrams carbon per square meter per time), is determined by a graphical summation of the productivity in successive cubic meter volumes, from top to bottom, in the euphotic zone at each study site. On a graph of depth versus productivity (fig. 61), plot the experimentally determined productivity value for each incubation depth, and draw a line of best fit through the points. Integrate the area under the productivity-depth curve to obtain a total productivity value for the euphotic zone. In addition, report the maximum cubic meter value of primary productivity (pmax) measured in the euphotic zone. LaBaugh (1979) and Smith (1979) have reported the usefulness of pmax in the interpretation of water-quality data related to primary productivity measured by the ^{14}C method. Kerekes (1975) describes why square-

meter primary-productivity data are less suitable for interpretive studies than cubic-meter primary-productivity data. An example of the vertical distribution of daily primary productivity in Koocanusa Reservoir is shown in figure 61.

8. Reporting of results

Report primary productivity as follows: two significant figures.

9. Precision

Estimates of precision of primary-productivity measurements based on replicate samples from in-situ incubations seldom are reported. Hager and others (1980) reported the precision of replicate ^{14}C samples to be 5 to 10 percent. Precision of the acid bubbling technique is reported by Gachter and Mares (1979) to range from 0.7 to 2.4 percent (n = 10).

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Antia, N. J., McAllister, C. D., Parsons, T. R., Stephens, K., and Strickland, J. D., 1963, Further measurements of primary production using a large-volume plastic sphere: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 8, no. 2, p. 166-183.

Arthur, C. R., and Rigler, F. H., 1967, A possible source of error in the ^{14}C method of measuring primary productivity: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 1, p. 121-124.

Barnett, A. M., and Hirota, J. D., 1967, Changes in the apparent rate of ^{14}C uptake with length of incubation period in natural phytoplankton populations: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 2, p. 349-353.

Bunt, J., 1965, Measurements of photosynthesis and respiration in a marine diatom with a mass spectrometer and with carbon-14: Nature, v. 207, p. 1373-1375.

Doty, M. S., and Oguri, M., 1959, The carbon-fourteen technique for determining primary plankton productivity: Pubblicazioni della Stazione Zooligica de Napoli, v. 31 supplement, p. 70-94.

Eppley, R. W., 1968, An incubation method for estimating the carbon content of phytoplankton in natural samples: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 13, no. 4, p. 574-582.

Eppley, R. W., Renger, E. H., Venrick, E. L., and Mullin, M. M., 1973, A study of plankton dynamics and nutrient cycling in the central gyre of the North Pacific Ocean: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 18, no. 4, p. 534-551.

Gachter, R., and Mares, A., 1979, Comments to the acidification and bubbling method for determining phytoplankton production: Oikos, v. 33, p. 69-73.

Gargas, E., ed., 1975, A manual for phytoplankton primary production studies in the Baltic: Horsholm, Denmark, Baltic Marine Biologists, 88 p.

Gieskes, W. W. C., Kraay, G. W., and Baars, M. A., 1979, Current ^{14}C methods for measuring primary production--Gross underestimates in oceanic waters: Netherlands Journal of Sea Research, v. 13, p. 58-78.

Gieskes, W. W. C., and Van Bennekom, A. J., 1973, Unrealiability of the ^{14}C method for estimating primary productivity in eutrophic Dutch coastal waters: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 18, no. 3, p. 494-495.

Goldman, C. R., 1963, Measurement of primary productivity and limiting factors in freshwater with C-14, in Doty, M. J., ed., Conference on Primary Productivity Measurement, Marine and Freshwater, Honolulu, University of Hawaii, 1961, Proceedings: U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Division Technical Information, v. 7633, p. 103-113.

Goldman, C. R., Mason, D. T., and Wood, B. J. B., 1963, Light injury and inhibition in Antarctic freshwater phytoplankton: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 8, no. 3, p. 313-322.

Goolsby, D. A., 1976, A critique of methods for measuring aquatic primary productivity: U.S. Geological Survey Quality of Water Branch Technical Memorandum no. 76.18, 14 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hager, S. W., Cole, B. E., and Schemel, L. E., 1980, Phytoplankton productivity measurements in the San Francisco Bay Estuary--A comparison of four methods: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 80-766, 36 p.

Hellebust, J. A., 1965, Excretion of some organic compounds by marine phytoplankton: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 10, no. 2, p. 192-206.

Hobson, L. A., Morris, W. J., and Pirquet, K. T., 1976, Theoretical and experimental analysis of the ^{14}C technique and its use in studies of primary production: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 33, p. 1715-1721.

Holm-Hansen, O., 1974, Review and critique of primary productivity measurements: California Cooperative Oceanic Fisheries Investigations, v. 17, p. 53-56.

Ignatiades, L., and Fogg, G. C., 1973, Studies in the factors affecting the release of organic matter by Skeletonema costatum (Greville) Cleve in culture: Journal of the Marine Biological Association, v. 53, p. 937-956.

Iverson, R. L., Bittaker, H. F., and Myers, V. B., 1976, Loss of radiocarbon in direct use of Aquasol for liquid scintillation counting of solutions containing ^{14}C-$NaHCO_3$: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 21, no. 5, p. 756-758.

Janzer, V. J., Schroeder, L. J., and Knapton, J. R., 1973, Determination of aquatic productivity (photosynthesis in Lake Koocunusa, Montana) by carbon-14 light- and dark-bottle method: U.S. Geological Survey open-file report, 43 p.

Kerekes, J. J., 1975, The relationship of primary production to basin morphometry in five small oligotrophic lakes in Terra Nova National Park in Newfoundland, in Sal'anki, J., and Ponyi, J. E., eds., Limnology of shallow water: Budapest, Symposia Biologica Hungaria, v. 15, p. 35-48.

LaBaugh, J. W., 1979, Chlorophyll prediction models and changes in assimilation numbers in Spruce Knob Lake, West Virginia: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 87, p. 178-197.

Lean, D. R. S., and Burnison, B. K., 1979, An evaluation of errors in the ^{14}C method of primary production measurement: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 24, no. 5, p. 917-928.

MacCaull, W. A., and Platt, Trevor, 1977, Diel variations in the photosynthetic parameters of coastal marine phytoplankton: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 22, no. 4, p. 723-731.

Mague, T. H., Friberg, E., Hughes, D. J., and Morris, I., 1980, Extracellular release of carbon by marine phytoplankton--A physiological approach: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 25, no. 2, p. 262-279.
Malone, T. C., 1971, Diurnal rhythms in netplankton and nanoplankton assimilation ratios: Marine Biology, v. 10, p. 285-289.
Marra, J., 1978, Phytoplankton photosynthetic response to vertical movement in a mixed layer: Marine Biology, v. 46, p. 203-208.
McAllister, C. D., 1961, Decontamination of filters in the C^{14} method of measuring marine photosynthesis: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 6, no. 4, p. 447-450.
McAllister, C. D., Parsons, T. R., Stephens, K., and Strickland, J. D. H., 1961, Measurements of primary production in coastal sea water using a large volume plastic sphere: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 6, no. 3, p. 237-258.
McCarthy, J. J., and Goldman, J. C., 1979, Nitrogenous nutrition of marine phytoplankton in nutrient-depleted waters: Science, v. 203, p. 670-672.
McCarthy, J. J., Taylor, W. R., and Loftus, M. E., 1974, Significance of nanoplankton in the Chesapeake Bay estuary and problems associated with measurement of nanoplankton productivity: Marine Biology, v. 24, p. 7-16.
McMahon, J. W., 1973, Membrane filter retention--A source of error in the ^{14}C method of measuring primary production: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 18, no. 2, p. 319-324.
Nalewajko, C., 1966, Photosynthesis and excretion in various plankton algae: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 11, no. 1, p. 1-10.
Nalewajko, C., and Lean, D. R. S., 1972, Retention of dissolved compounds by membrane filters as an error in the ^{14}C method of primary production measurement: Journal of Phycology, v. 8, p. 37-43.
Paerl, H. W., and Mackenzie, L. A., 1977, A comparative study of the diurnal carbon fixation patterns in nanoplankton and netplankton: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 22, no. 4, p. 732-738.
Petersen, G. H., 1978, On the analysis of dark fixation in primary production computations: Journal du Conseil Permanent International pour l'Exploration de la Mer, v. 38, p. 326-330.
Pugh, P. R., 1970, Liquid scintillation counting of ^{14}C-diatom material on filter papers for use in productivity studies: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 15, no. 4, p. 652-655.
_____1973, An evaluation of liquid scintillation counting techniques for use in aquatic primary production studies: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 18, no. 2, p. 310-319.
Ryther, J. H., and Menzel, D. W., 1965, Comparison of the ^{14}C-technique with direct measurement of photosynthetic carbon fixation: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 10, no. 5, p. 490-492.
Ryther, J. H., and Vaccaro, R. F., 1954, A comparison of the O_2 and ^{14}C methods of measuring marine photosynthesis: Journal du Conseil Permanent International pour l'Exploration de la Mer, v. 20, p. 25-34.
Savidge, G., 1978, Variation in the progress of ^{14}C uptake as a source of error in estimates of primary production: Marine Biology, v. 49, p. 295-301.
Schindler, D. W., 1966, A liquid scintillation method for measuring carbon-14 uptake in photosynthesis: Nature, v. 211, p. 844-845.

Schindler, D. W., and Holmgren, S. K., 1971, Primary production and phytoplankton in the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario, and other low carbonate waters, and a liquid scintillation method for determining ^{14}C activity in photosynthesis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, p. 189-201.

Schindler, D. W., Moore, J., and Vollenweider, R. A., 1974, Liquid scintillation techniques, in Vollenweider, R. A., ed., A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, p. 76-80.

Schindler, D. W., Schmidt, R. V., and Reid, R. A., 1972, Acidification and bubbling as an alternative to filtration in determining phytoplankton production by the ^{14}C method: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 29, p. 1627-1631.

Sharp, J. H., 1977, Excretion of organic matter by marine phytoplankton--Do healthy cells do it?: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 22, no. 3, p. 381-399.

Sheldon, R. W., Sutcliff, W. H., and Prakesh, A., 1973, The production of particles in the surface waters of the ocean with particular reference to the Sargasso Sea: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 18, no. 5, p. 719-731.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Smith, J. B., Tatsumotu, M., and Hood, D. W., 1960, Carbamino carboxylic acids in phytosynthesis: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 4, p. 425-431.

Smith, V., 1979, Nutrient dependence of primary productivity in lakes: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 24, no. 6, p. 1051-1064.

Smith, W. O., 1975, The optimal procedures for the measurement of phytoplankton excretion: Marine Science Communications, v. 16, p. 395-405.

Steemann-Nielsen, E., 1952, The use of radioactive carbon (C-14) for measuring organic production in the sea: Journal du Conseil Permanent International pour l'Exploration de la Mer, v. 18, p. 117-140.

_____1978, Growth of plankton algae as a function of N-concentration, measured by means of a batch technique: Marine Biology, v. 46, p. 185-189.

Steemann-Nielsen, E., and Hansen, V. K., 1959, Measurements with the C-14 technique of the respiration rates in natural populations of phytoplankton: Deep-Sea Research and Oceanographic Abstracts, v. 5, p. 222-232.

Taguchi, S., and Platt, T., 1977, Assimilation of $^{14}CO_2$ in the dark compared to phytoplankton production in a small coastal inlet: Estuarine and Coastal Marine Science, v. 5, p. 679-684.

Theodorsson, P., and Bjarnason, J. O., 1975, The acid-bubbling method for primary productivity measurements modified and tested: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 20, no. 6, p. 1018-1019.

Venrick, E. L., Beers, J. R., and Heinbokel, J. F., 1977, Possible consequences of containing microplankton for physiological rate measurements: Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology, v. 26, p. 55-76.

Verduin, Jacob, 1960, Phytoplankton communities of western Lake Erie and the CO_2 and O_2 changes associated with them: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 5, no. 4, p. 372-380.

Vollenweider, R. A., 1965, Calculation models of photosynthesis depth curves and some implications regarding day rate estimates in primary productivity measurements, in Goldman, C. R., ed., Primary productivity in aquatic environments: Berkeley, University of California Press, 1st Italiano Idrobiologia Memoirs, Supplement 18, p. 425-451.

_____1974, ed., A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Wallen, D. G., and Geen, G. N., 1968, Loss of radioactivity during storage of ^{14}C-labelled phytoplankton on membrane filters: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 25, p. 2219-2224.

Ward, F. J., and Nakanishi, M., 1971, A comparison of Geiger-Müller and liquid scintillation counting methods in estimating primary productivity: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 3, p. 560-563.

Watt, W. D., and Fogg, G. E., 1966, The kinetics of extracellular glycullate production by Chlorella pyrenoidosa: Journal of Experimental Botany, v. 17, p. 117-134.

Williams, P. J., Berman, T., and Holm-Hansen, O., 1972, Potential sources of error in the measurement of low rates of planktonic photosynthesis and excretion: Nature-New Biology, v. 236, p. 91-92.

Wolfe, D. A., and Schelske, C. L., 1967, Liquid scintillation and geiger counting efficiencies for carbon-14 incorporated by marine phytoplankton in productivity measurements: Journal du Conseil Permanent International pour l'Exploration de la Mer, v. 31, p. 31-37.

Interferences and limitations

Toxins.--Any substance on the collecting apparatus or BOD bottles that is foreign to the natural-water sample may have a deleterious effect on the productivity of the sample. All equipment and glassware must be cleaned between sampling. All traces of HCl cleaning solution must be rinsed from the BOD bottles to eliminate loss of the inoculant. Liquid-scintillation vials and preservatives, such as Lugol's and formalin, are very toxic. Such chemicals should be restricted from the sample preparation area.

Contamination of samples by bare metal may have detrimental (Doty and Oguri, 1959) and stimulatory (Goldman, 1963) effects on the sample. To decrease either effect, plastic, stainless-steel, or plastic-coated metal parts should be used when possible.

Analytical problems.--Since Steemann-Nielsen's (1952) description of the method, techniques for more accurate measurement of β-particle activity have led to many refinements in methods.

a. Counting methods. Originally, Geiger-Müller (GM) counters were used for measuring the frequency of β emissions. Although the equipment is less expensive than liquid-scintillation counters, the efficiency of GM counters is minimal (less than 20 percent), and there are serious errors that may be due to self-absorption and backscatter. GM counters require that the material be dried, a process that can result in a 30 to 50 percent loss in carbon (Wallen and Geen, 1968; Ward and Nakanishi, 1971). Liquid-scintillation counters have come into common use because of their more accurate counting efficiencies and ability to count wet filters and aqueous samples when a suitable fluor is used.

b. Quench. A decrease in the efficiency of a scintillation counter's detection of β emissions is caused by quenching of the sample. Of the three types of quench in liquid-scintillation samples--chemical, color, and physical--the last is the most difficult to correct when using phytoplankton samples. Large quantities of solid phytoplankton and filter material physically block the emission of light from the sample fluor.

c. Counting efficiency. Essential to an accurate estimation of the total activity of a sample is knowledge of the efficiency with which the scintillation spectrometer detects β emissions. Three common techniques for measuring counting efficiency are internal standardization, external standardization, and channels ratio. Specific techniques for implementing each of these methods are outlined in manuals supplied by manufacturers of scintillation spectrometers. These techniques for determining counting efficiency are limited in accuracy because they are suited ideally only for a homogeneous

solution, one without particulate matter. This is especially true for the external-standardization and channels-ratio techniques, which are based on efficiency curves of standard solutions that may not accurately represent the factors causing quench in a heterogeneous sample. Pugh (1970) has reported serious errors in measuring efficiencies using these techniques when attempts are made to count filters heavily laden with particulate material. Pugh (1970, 1973) developed a filter standardization technique for ^{14}C-sucrose incorporation onto membrane filters, as long as the weight of sample algae on the filters was small (less than 1 mg). Solubilizers have been used to dissolve the filter and attached algae, which results in a homogeneous sample whose counting efficiency can be determined by one of the standard techniques. The digests of such samples may be very dark and require bleaching with either peroxide (Gargas, 1975) or intense ultraviolet light to decrease color quenching. The efficiency of dissolution varies with the fluor used. Undissolved particles still may cause self-absorption and may require the addition of an emulsifier (Schindler, 1966) such as NCS or Protosol, to prevent settling of particulates.

d. Standardization of inoculant. Measurement of the activity of the ^{14}C bicarbonate inoculant can be inaccurate if the liquid-scintillation vial used is acidic. Iverson and others (1976) reported the loss of ^{14}C activity when $NaH^{14}CO_3$ was added to Aquasol^{R}, a xylene-based fluor. They advised the addition of an organic base, such as phenethylamine, to stabilize the ^{14}C and to achieve complete retention of the radioisotope in the scintillation vial. Other compounds that have been found suitable in toluene-based fluors include Bio-Sol, PCS tissue solubilizer, and monethylamine. The efficiency of retention of inorganic ^{14}C in any scintillation vial should be evaluated prior to onsite studies.

e. Commerical ^{14}C bicarbonate solutions. The purity of commercially supplied $NaH^{14}CO_3$ has been questioned by a number of investigators (Gargas, 1975). Large concentrations of silica, which might be stimulatory to diatom growth, have been reported (Gieskes and Van Bennekom, 1973). Contamination by known organics also has been noted (Sharp, 1977). Use of these inoculants might result in anomalously large excretion rates resulting in small estimates of net productivity. These dangers can be minimized by preparing the ^{14}C bicarbonate solution in one's own laboratory by dilution of a commercial solution using large specific concentrations (1-5 mCi/0.5-2 mL) or from solid $Ba^{14}CO_3$ (Gargas, 1975). Irradiation of the ^{14}C bicarbonate solution using intense ultraviolet light has been used to oxidize all of the organic material to $^{14}CO_2$.

f. Filtration. An integral component of the ^{14}C method as used by early investigators was filtration to concentrate the particulates, enabling the GM counter, which has questionable counting efficiency, to measure the level of sample activity. The process of filtration can cause cell rupture and loss of intracellular carbon if the differential pressure is too great. Although Nalewajko and Lean (1972) and McMahon (1973) attribute the filtration artifact reported by Arthur and Rigler (1967) to filter retention of unfixed radiotracer,

pressure differentials should be less than 100 mm of mercury to minimize cell breakage. The acid bubbling technique (Schindler and others, 1972) prevents the uncertainties due to possible absorption, cell rupture, and filtration corrections.

The presence of a filter in the scintillation vial adds to the difficulty of accurate determination of counting efficiency (Pugh, 1970, 1973). Solubilizers have been used to dissolve the filter. Unfortunately, the degree of dissolution attained depends on the filter and the fluor used (Schindler, 1966; Wallen and Geen, 1968; Pugh, 1973; Gargas, 1975). Solubilization of the filter can cause color quench that may be decreased by the addition of 1 to 2 drops of 30-percent hydrogen peroxide (Gargas, 1975) or by heating or suspending the samples in quartz tubes in strong ultraviolet light and adding peroxide (Schindler and others, 1974).

g. ^{14}C bicarbonate elimination. Decontamination of ^{14}C bicarbonate is necessary to remove residual inorganic ^{14}C from the sample. Steemann-Nielsen (1952) suggested exposing the filter to fumes of concentrated HCl. For greater speed, convenience, and safety, a few milliliters of dilute HCl were poured through the filter. The concentration of acid rinse ranged from 0.001N (Ryther and Vaccaro, 1954) to 1N (Smith and others, 1960). Which concentration is the most efficient is not clear. Williams and others (1972) and McMahon (1973) suggested simply washing the filter using nonradioactive, filtered sample water. Other investigators believed that the filters should not be washed with filtered sample water or dilute acids (McAllister, 1961; Gargas, 1975). Lean and Burnison (1979) suggested placing the filter in a scintillation vial, adding a few drops of 0.5N HCl, and fuming for 2 to 3 hours. Using acid bubbling techniques, ^{14}C bicarbonate is stripped from the aqueous sample after the addition of dilute acid. Efficiency of removal using acid bubbling is about 99.99 percent (Sharp, 1977; Mague and others, 1980) at pH 3.

Environmental variables.--Accurate measures of primary productivity and an evaluation of their significance is dependent on an understanding of how environmental variables may affect the measured results.

a. Light. Light preconditioning, adaptation, and shock can have a dramatic effect on primary productivity. When using population sites where the light is dim, light shock must be minimized (Steemann-Nielsen and Hansen, 1959; Goldman and others, 1963). Short-term incubation productivity measurements particularly are susceptible to light shock. A satisfactory way to minimize light shock is to make dawn-sunset incubations. Cells preconditioned to dim light and then exposed to bright light have increased excretion rates when compared with those kept under dim light (Nalewajko, 1966; Watt and Fogg, 1966; Ignatiades and Fogg, 1973). Hellebust (1965) suggests increased rate of excretion in bright light without dim-light preconditioning. Increases in excretion also are reported when samples are preconditioned to bright light and then are incubated in dim light.

An assumption made by many investigators is that for short incubation periods (for example, 2 hours) or long incubation periods (for example, 24 hours) the ^{14}C method measures the same type of productivity, gross or net. A second assumption is that for a specific incubation period, the method measures the same type of productivity, even when cells are exposed to varying irradiances (incubation depth). Neither assumption is correct. Hobson and others (1976) report that incubations for 24 hours are the minimum required for net productivity to be measured by ^{14}C techniques, and estimates of gross productivity can be calculated best after short exposure to ^{14}C. Their findings support those of McAllister and others (1961), Antia and others (1963), Bunt (1965), Ryther and Menzel (1965), and Paerl and MacKenzie (1977) that net productivity is measured in 24-hour experiments. Data from Hobson and others (1976) also indicate that the rate of passage of ^{14}C through the cellular carbon pool is dependent on irradiance. The incubation time required for measurement of net productivity is greater than 24 hours when samples are exposed to dim light. After 24 hours, productivity in the bright-light incubation bottle will more closely approximate net values while that in dim-light incubation bottles will approximate gross values. The integration of primary productivity when compared to depth, therefore, results in an overestimate of net production per unit area.

b. Temperature. Changes in temperature during sample handling or incubation can cause physiological stress on sensitive phytoplankton. All sample handling should be completed as quickly as possible after sample collection. Variation between the natural temperature of a sample and incubation temperature can seriously affect measured productivity. If it is necessary to incubate at a temperature different from the collection temperature, one can correct the data by application of Van't Hoff's law (Gargas, 1975)--an increase in temperature of 10 °C doubles the rate of an enzymatic process.

c. Nutrients. Nutrients may include carbon, trace minerals, chelators, and vitamins in addition to nitrogen, phosphorus, and silica. Primary productivity can be enhanced or inhibited depending on the concentrations of the nutrients involved. Samples from an oligotrophic system may be particularly sensitive to slight perturbations of the nutrient regime (Eppley and others, 1973). The concentration of a nutrient in a bottle may become limiting to photosynthesis during the course of incubation so the measured productivity does not represent accurately the natural system. Ambient nutrient concentrations may not be adequate evidence of the capacity of natural water to sustain intense productivity. Containment of a water sample for a prolonged period restricts interactions between the sample and the mixing and regeneration processes that normally replenish nutrients in the water. Although Eppley (1968) reported nutrient depletion in 36 samples contained for more than 24 hours, recent studies by Steemann-Nielsen (1978) and McCarthy and Goldman (1979) report that even in oligotrophic systems enough nutrients for rapid near-optimal growth are constantly available to phytoplankton by heterotrophic processes.

Nutrient contamination of sampling gear or incubation glassware can affect dramatically the results of an experiment. For example, Gieskes and Van Bennekom (1973) report dissolved silica in ^{14}C ampoules at concentrations of 800 to 1,000 µg-atoms/L caused by dissolution of silicate from the glassware wall during autoclaving. One could minimize this source of error by purchasing ^{14}C bicarbonate that has an intense specific activity (for example, 5 mCi/mL), and then diluting the ^{14}C bicarbonate to the desired activity (for example, 5 µCi/mL). Ultraviolet irradiation rather than autoclaving could be used to sterilize the solution.

Processes taking place in the sample bottle also may affect the speciation of a nutrient. In a very eutrophic system, photosynthesis by a contained population might enable the pH to increase to 9 to 10. As a result, NH_4^+ may be converted to the toxic form NH_3.

d. Zooplankton. At times, zooplankton can be so abundant that their grazing pressure might decrease the measured net primary productivity of a sample; therefore, productivity might be measured more accurately if the zooplankton are removed by filtering the sample through a screen. McCarthy and others (1974) reported that prescreening the sample to eliminate grazers had no effect on measured productivity, but production in 16 percent of the screened samples exceeded production in those not screened. They attribute the increased production in screened samples to heavy grazing pressure that occurred in unscreened ones. Venrick and others (1977) also could not attribute any decline in productivity to prefiltration. However, the phytoplankton population must not be decreased simultaneously with the zooplankton population. If the sizes of the algae and grazing population overlap, the researcher will have to decide whether inclusion of zooplankton in the sample or the exclusion of a part of the phytoplankton community from the sample will bias the results. Simultaneous incubation of screened and unscreened samples may be required.

e. Dark-bottle fixation. The effects of heterotrophic carbon fixation on primary productivity measured by the ^{14}C method are difficult to assess. Although phytoplankton can assimilate CO_2 independent of light energy (Kreb's Cycle), this is only 1 percent of the photosynthetic rate of CO_2 uptake. The incubation of a dark bottle is included in the ^{14}C method to correct for abiotic processes and heterotrophic uptake that will bias productivity calculations. Dark-bottle fixation, which is a biotic and an abiotic process (Petersen, 1978; Gieskes and others, 1979), is not related to light-bottle fixation, but to other factors and thus must be determined for each experiment. Although the processes involved in assimilation of CO_2 in the dark are not well understood, they account for 10 to 100 percent (Taguchi and Platt, 1977; Gieskes and others, 1979) of the assimilation measured in the light. Therefore, dark-bottle CO_2-uptake rates are subtracted from light-bottle CO_2-uptake rates when calculating productivity.

Sample containment.--The ^{14}C method assumes that enclosure of the water sample does not appreciably affect the response of the phytoplankton community to environmental variables, but confinement of the phytoplankton isolates them from many of the physical, chemical, and biological factors they normally encounter and increases their exposure to other variables. The effects of containment have not been investigated thoroughly.

The species composition of a contained population can change markedly during incubation. During incubations of 6 to 24 hours, Venrick and others (1977) noted a decrease in abundance of nearly all components of the phytoplankton and the complete disappearance of some ciliate groups. A tenfold decrease in production by contained samples compared to unenclosed populations is reported by Verduin (1960).

Enclosure in a bottle decreases circulation and turbulent mixing. Sedimentation of heavy cells and flotation of blue-green populations can result, altering the community structure (Goolsby, 1976). Incubation also maintains the organisms at specific depths or light intensity, rather than enabling them to mix vertically through the water column. Estimates of areal photosynthesis have been 19 to 87 percent larger using vertically cycled bottles rather than a series of specific depth samples (Marra, 1978).

Sheldon and others (1973) and Gieskes and others (1979) report that, although bottle volume may cause changes in contained populations, the results are not predictable. Sheldon and others (1973) report a significant increase in particles in small incubation bottles; whereas, no difference could be detected between 4-L bottle populations and the natural community. Gieskes and others (1979) reported little or no production in 30-mL bottles, but more than five times the production in 4-L bottles than that in 300-mL bottles. Although the most prudent approach is to use the largest practical bottle size, the question of optimum incubation bottle size and the effects of sample containment need to be evaluated further.

Respiration.--One of the principal limitations of the ^{14}C method is that the respiration rates in phytoplankton cannot be measured directly. Respiration takes place simultaneously with photosynthesis so, in time, some of the ^{14}C photosynthate will be respired back into $^{14}CO_2$ and H_2O. Because a large fraction of many aquatic systems is aphotic, realistic carbon budgets for a system are dependent on accurate estimation of respiration. The rate of heterotrophic ^{14}C fixation in dark bottles is not relevant to this process and, hence, cannot be used to calculate respiration rates (Holm-Hansen, 1974). Measurement of the time required for transfer of carbon through the cellular carbon pool is critical for accurate estimations of net primary productivity. Steemann-Nielsen and Hansen (1959) report respiration rate as the intercept of productivity (in milligrams carbon per hour) at zero irradiance. Until analytical methods are devised, a calculated respiration value rather than a directly measured value will have to suffice when using the ^{14}C method.

Excretion.--Estimates of the percent of photosynthate products that are released as extracellular material range from 0 to 75 percent (Sharp, 1977). Refinements in technique (Smith, 1975) have resulted in the conclusion that

extracellular products, although a minor component of production [less than 10 percent (Mague and others, 1980)], are real and must be accounted for in accurate estimates of primary productivity. Traditional filtration techniques used in the ^{14}C method hindered the measurement of these substances. Excreted organic material passed through the filter and was discarded with the filtrate. Acidification and bubbling of 0.45-μm filtrate enables measurement of this component of production.

Duration of incubation.--The question of the optimal duration for incubation that would result in the most accurate measure of primary productivity is fundamental to the method. The answer depends on many factors and cannot be absolutely prescribed. As evidenced by the preceding discussion, the researcher must decide which is the most suitable incubation period based on the information desired and the limitations with which one is faced. To ensure the standardization and reliability of the data, a 4-hour incubation at midday (1000-1400 hours) is suggested for in-situ light- and dark-bottle methods. The oxygen or ^{14}C method then is chosen on the basis of the limits of measuring oxygen production in the water body in question during that 4-hour incubation.

The most common measures of photosynthesis are gross primary productivity and net primary productivity. The rate of passage of ^{14}C through the carbon cellular pool is of critical importance in determining whether gross or net productivity is being measured. The ^{14}C method cannot measure both types of productivity simultaneously. For short periods, before significant losses by excretion and respiration, gross rates of production will be measured (Hobson and others, 1976; Savidge, 1978). Incubation periods of at least 24 hours at intense light are required for the ^{14}C method to measure net productivity (Hobson and others, 1976).

Extrapolation from short-term incubations to long-term results must include the diel variability in primary productivity by natural populations. Barnett and Hirota (1967) and Malone (1971) reported variability throughout a day in ^{14}C retention by different groups of phytoplankton. Paerl and Mackenzie (1977) report different diurnal patterns of carbon fixation and loss between net phytoplankton and nanoplankton communities; whereas, MacCaull and Platt (1977) were unable to distinguish a diel rhythm in the rate of photosynthesis of coastal marine phytoplankton. The lack of uniformity and predictability in ^{14}C assimilation during short-term incubations limits the suitability of assessing long-term trends based on short-term incubations. MacCaull and Platt (1977) report that differences in estimates of daily productivity based on early morning or midday productivities were as much as four times. However, Schindler and Holmgren (1971) reported midday incubations to be satisfactory.

If short-term incubations are necessary, a correction similar to that proposed by Vollenweider (1965) should be applied to decrease the magnitude of the error. He reported that if one divided the light day (sunrise to sunset) into 5 equal periods (I to V), then 10, 31, 30, 22, and 7 percent of daily productivity occurred during light periods I through V, respectively. Estimation of total daily productivity from partial-day incubations can be made using the graph shown in figure 63.

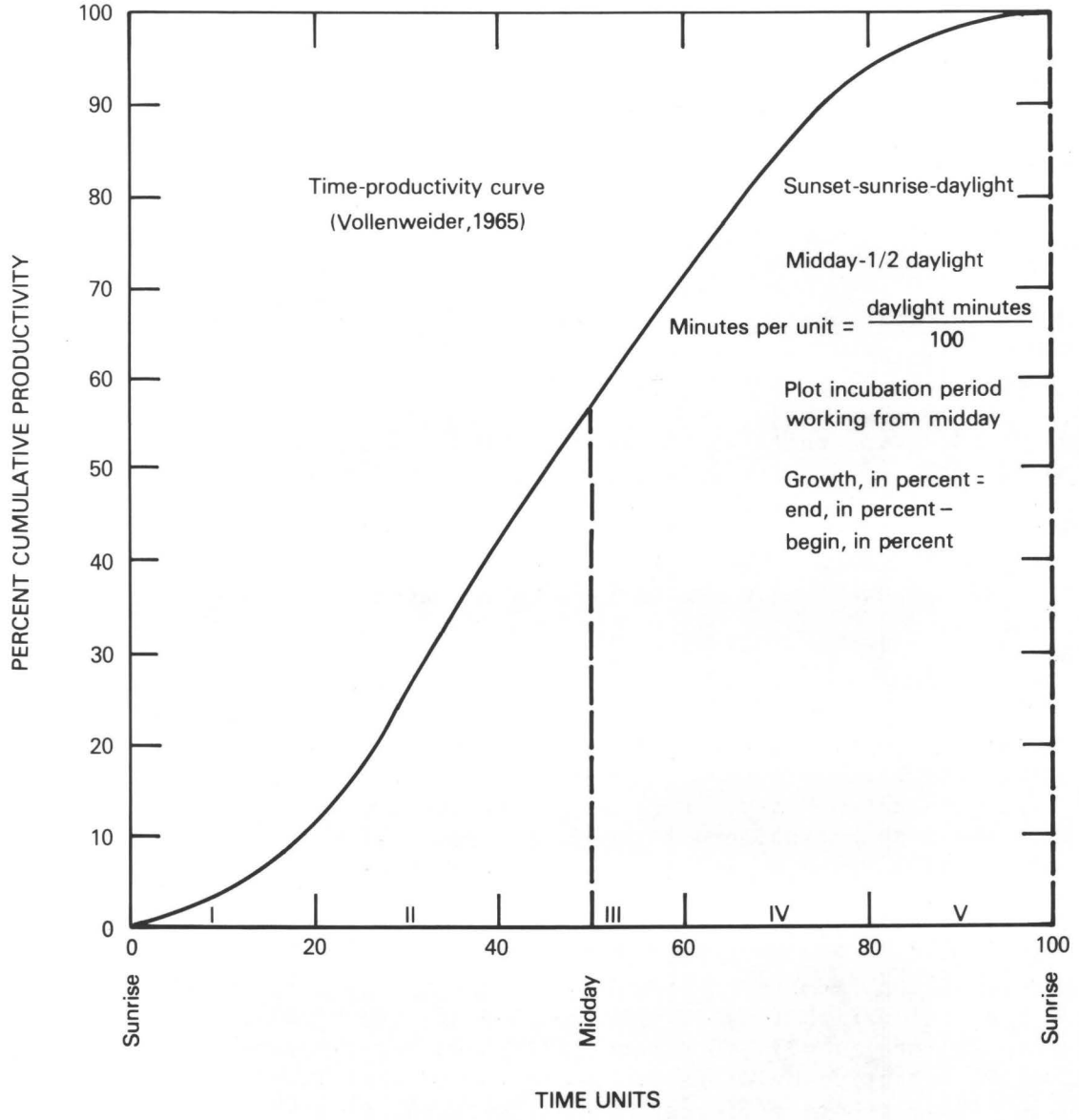


Figure 63.--Cumulative percentages for Vollenweider's five-period light day (modified from Janzer and others, 1973).

Example calculation:

Daylight period (sunrise to sunset):

0600 - 1800 hours = 12 hours = 720 minutes

$$\text{minutes per unit} = \frac{720}{100} = 7.2 \text{ minutes/time unit}$$

Incubation period, 1027 to 1427 hours:

0600 - 1027 hours = 4 hours 27 minutes = 267 minutes ÷ 7.2 = 37 time units
0600 - 1427 hours = 8 hours 27 minutes = 507 minutes ÷ 7.2 = 70 time units
37 time units = 38 percent cumulative productivity (from fig. 63)
70 time units = 85 percent cumulative productivity.

Growth, in percent = 85 percent - 38 percent = 47 percent. Alternatively, the correction proposed by Schindler and Holmgren (1971) that uses the ratio of solar radiation for the day to solar radiation during the incubation period is suggested.

Handling and disposal of radioactive wastes.--Radioactive ^{14}C (half-life 5,730 years) may be used in quantities as much as 100 µCi (1×10^{-6} Ci) specified by the license exempt provisions of Title 10, Part 30, Section 30.71 Schedule B, October 15, 1971, revision, "Rules of General Applicability to Licensing of Byproduct Materials," U.S. Atomic Energy Commission. Although the quantities used may be license exempt, all efforts should be made to minimize the release of ^{14}C to the environment and to avoid contamination of onsite and laboratory equipment.

The $^{14}CO_3$ and dissolved carbonate species remaining in solution after the phytoplankton have been removed by filtration are precipitated from the water as barium carbonate ($BaCO_3$) by mixing the filtrate with a solution of ammoniacal barium chloride ($BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$) solution in a 20-L polyethylene waste carboy. After the waste solution has been added to the carboy, add 1N sodium carbonate (Na_2CO_3) solution to the waste to further scavenge $^{14}CO_3$ from solution. Calculate the maximum volume of 1N Na_2CO_3 needed using the following equation:

$$\text{Volume of } 1N\ Na_2CO_3 = 10.1\ [40.4 - (A_S \times V_W \times 0.00197)]\ ,$$

where 10 mL 1N Na_2CO_3 = 1 g $BaCO_3$;
40.4 g $BaCO_3$ = 50 g $BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ in polyethylene waste carboy;
A_S = sample alkalinity as calcium carbonate ($CaCO_3$), in milligrams per liter;
V_W = volume of waste in the carboy; and
0.00197 = factor to convert weight of $CaCO_3$, in milligrams, to grams $BaCO_3$.

Example: If a carboy contained 10 L of liquid waste that had an alkalinity of 85 mg/L, the volume, in milliliters of 1N Na_2CO_3 required to completely react with the 50 g $BaCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ added to the carboy, would be

Volume = 10.1 [40.4 - (85 × 10 × 0.00197)] = 391 mL required for total precipitation.

Scavenging of the ^{14}C from solution is more complete if the Na_2CO_3 solution is added in four or five volumes. The resulting $BaCO_3$ precipitate is allowed to settle before making the next addition of Na_2CO_3.

After settling, the $BaCO_3$ is separated by decantation of the supernatant. Add plaster of paris to the $BaCO_3$ slurry to form a solid block that is sent to the counting laboratory for disposal as radioactive waste. Retain the supernatant until a laboratory check of an aliquot by liquid-scintillation counting has indicated that the ^{14}C scavenge essentially was complete. The supernatant then may be discarded.

Oxygen Light- and Dark-Enclosure Method for Periphyton
(B-8040-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70960
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(C/m^2)/d]:	70962
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70964
Productivity, primary, net [mg(C/m^2)/d]:	70966
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^2)/d):	70968

1. Applications

The enclosure method of primary productivity is most suitable for shallow streams and for the littoral zones of lakes where light penetration is sufficient for photosynthesis. Best results are obtained in eutrophic water in which the production rate is about 3 to 200 mg(C/m^3)/h during the photoperiod (Strickland and Parsons, 1968, p. 263; Schindler and others, 1973).

2. Summary of method

Known areas of substrates containing living periphyton are isolated in sealed containers and filled with filtered stream or lake water of known dissolved-oxygen concentration. The samples are exposed in the euphotic zone, usually at the original depth, for a known period of time. Changes in the dissolved-oxygen concentrations of the enclosed samples are interpreted in terms of photosynthesis and respiration per unit area of periphyton.

3. Interferences

3.1 The method uses isolated periphyton samples to indicate the response of the natural system. Care must be used when collecting the sample, handling the sample, and exposing the sample to light to prevent interference with the life requirements of the organisms. Water-sampling equipment should be made of plastic or glass, and the essential metal parts should be made of stainless steel. Copper, brass, and bronze fittings should not be used. Samples of periphyton should be kept in the shade or in a circulating chamber before incubation to prevent exposure of unadapted algae to full sunlight. Light leaks into the dark chamber must be prevented.

3.2 The formation of bubbles in the experimental containers results in errors in the determination of dissolved-oxygen concentration changes. Air bubbles in circulating chambers result from two causes: (1) Incomplete filling of chambers, or (2) supersaturation. Extra care should be practiced initially to ensure that no trapped air bubbles are present in the chamber at the beginning of the experiment. Supersaturation also may be caused by warming of the sample between collection and filling or by excessive photosynthesis during the experiment. Supersaturation can be prevented by adjusting the length of the experimental period or by increasing the chamber size for light-bottle and dark-bottle studies.

3.3 Photosynthesis and respiration of phytoplankton in the water used to fill the circulating chambers can affect the results. This is prevented by filtering the water through a glass-fiber or membrane filter.

3.4 Microbial activity and chemical oxygen demand cause losses of dissolved oxygen when incubation times exceed a few hours. Interferences with the chemical determination of dissolved oxygen were described by Skougstad and others (1979) and the American Public Health Association and others (1985).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies. All materials used must be free of agents that inhibit photosynthesis and respiration.

4.1 Artificial substrates made of glass slides, Plexiglas or polyethylene strips, tygon tubing, styrofoam, or other materials. See figures 19 and 20 for selected types of artificial substrates.

4.2 BOD bottles, numbered, 300 mL, Pyrex or borosilicon glass, that have flared necks and pointed ground-glass stoppers (Note 1).

Note 1: Before use, fill with acid cleaning solution and let stand for several hours. Rinse thoroughly using distilled water. Traces of iodine from the Winkler analysis should be removed by rinsing the bottles and stoppers using 0.01N sodium thiosulfate solution followed by thorough rinsing using distilled water. Do not use phosphorus-based detergents.

4.3 Collecting devices for the removal of periphyton from natural substrates. Three devices for collecting a known area of periphyton from natural or artificial substrates are shown in figure 18.

4.4 Dark box, preferably insulated, for storing filled BOD bottles until ready for incubation.

4.5 Equipment for determination of dissolved oxygen by the azide modification of the Winkler method (Skougstad and others, 1979; Golterman, 1982; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

4.6 Filter flask, 1 or 2 L. For onsite use, a polypropylene flask is suggested.

4.7 Filter funnel, vacuum, 1.2-L capacity, stainless steel.

4.8 Glass-fiber filters, 47-mm diameter disks, or membrane filters, white, plain, 0.45-µm mean pore size, 47-mm diameter.

4.9 Light and dark circulating chambers of suitable size and shape, made of glass or plastic (McIntire and others, 1964; Wetzel, 1964, 1965; Thomas and O'Connell, 1966; Hansmann and others, 1971; Pfeifer and McDiffett, 1975; Rodgers and others, 1978; Gregory, 1980). Transparent containers can be made opaque by painting them black and covering the paint with overlapping strips of black plastic tape. The exposed parts of stoppers, if present, should be similarly blackened and covered with a hood of several layers of aluminum foil during use.

4.10 Polyethylene bottles, 8-L capacity that has cap and bottom tubulation.

4.11 Scraping devices, razor blades, stiff brushes, spatulas, or glass slides, for removing periphyton from artificial substrates. The edge of a glass microscope slide is excellent for scraping periphyton from hard, flat surfaces (Tilley, 1972).

4.12 Vacuum pump, water-aspirator pump, or an electric vacuum pump for laboratory use; a hand-operated vacuum pump that has a gauge for onsite use.

4.13 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Acid cleaning solution, 20 percent. Mix 20 mL concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) (specific gravity 1.19) with distilled water and dilute to 100 mL.

5.2 Distilled or deionized water.

5.3 Filling water for the experimental circulating chambers. Prepare by filtering through a glass-fiber or a 0.45-μm membrane filter to remove plankton, unless it is known that plankton metabolism will be insignificant. Filter enough water to rinse and fill the chambers and to determine the initial concentration of dissolved oxygen. The water should be slightly undersaturated with dissolved oxygen. Dissolved oxygen may be decreased to 5 or 6 mg/L by passing the water through a sparging column (Hansmann and others, 1971) or by adding sodium sulfite with cobaltous chloride as a catalyst for the sulfite oxidation reaction (Pfeifer and McDiffett, 1975). For diel studies using large chambers, starting at dusk also will decrease the dissolved-oxygen concentration because periphyton metabolism occurs in the dark. This method requires continuous monitoring for dissolved-oxygen concentration because light and dark measurements are made sequentially in the same chamber.

5.4 Reagents for the azide modification of the Winkler method for dissolved oxygen (Skougstad and others, 1979; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

5.5 Sodium thiosulfate solution, 0.01N. Dissolve 2.5 g sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$) in distilled water and dilute to 1 L.

6. Analysis

6.1 After suitable incubation, remove a sample of water from each circulating chamber and determine the dissolved-oxygen concentration. Average the results from duplicate samples.

7. Calculations

Primary productivity is expressed as the quantity of oxygen released or carbon assimilated per unit time. Respiration is expressed as the quantity of dissolved oxygen assimilated per unit time. Adjust the following calculated values for the appropriate incubation period. Gross or net primary productivity is calculated on the assumption that one atom of carbon is assimilated for each molecule (two atoms) of oxygen released. Average results from duplicate measurements.

7.1 Gross primary productivity $[mg(O_2/m^2)/\underline{t}]$

$$= \frac{(\underline{LC} - \underline{DC})\underline{V}}{\underline{tA}},$$

where $\underline{LC}$ = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light circulating chamber after incubation;
$\underline{DC}$ = dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the dark circulating chamber after incubation;
$\underline{V}$ = volume of water in the circulating chamber, in liters;
$\underline{t}$ = incubation period, in hours or days; and
$\underline{A}$ = area of periphyton-covered substrate, in square meters.

7.2 Gross primary productivity $[mg(C/m^2)/\underline{t}]$

$$= \frac{(\underline{LC} - \underline{DC})\underline{V}}{\underline{tA}} \times \frac{12}{32},$$

where $\underline{LC}$, $\underline{DC}$, $\underline{V}$, $\underline{t}$, and $\underline{A}$ = as in 7.1;
12 = atomic weight of carbon; and
32 = molecular weight of oxygen.

7.3 Net primary productivity $[mg(O_2/m^2)/\underline{t}]$

$$= \frac{(\underline{LC} - \underline{IC})\underline{V}}{\underline{tA}},$$

where $\underline{LC}$, $\underline{DC}$, $\underline{V}$, $\underline{t}$, and $\underline{A}$ = as in 7.1; and
$\underline{IC}$ = initial dissolved-oxygen concentration, in milligrams per liter, in the light circulating chamber before incubation.

7.4 Net primary productivity $[mg(C/m^2)/\underline{t}]$

$$= \frac{(\underline{LC} - \underline{IC})\underline{V}}{\underline{tA}} \times \frac{12}{32},$$

where $\underline{LC}$, $\underline{V}$, $\underline{t}$, and $\underline{A}$ = as in 7.1;
$\underline{IC}$ = as in 7.3; and
12 and 32 = as in 7.2.

7.5 Respiration $[mg(O_2/m^2)/\underline{t}]$

$$= \frac{(\underline{IC} - \underline{DC})\underline{V}}{\underline{tA}}$$

where $\underline{DC}$, $\underline{V}$, $\underline{t}$, and $\underline{A}$ = as in 7.1; and
$\underline{IC}$ = as in 7.3.

8. Reporting of results

Report primary productivity as follows: less than 10 mg, one decimal; 10 mg and greater, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision values are available.

10. References Cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Golterman, H. L., ed., 1982, Methods for chemical and physical analysis of fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 8, 213 p.

Gregory, S. V., 1980, Responses of periphyton communities in Cascade Mountain streams to light, nutrients, and grazing: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 146 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hansmann, E. W., Lane, C. B., and Hall, J. D., 1971, A direct method of measuring benthic primary production in streams: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 5, p. 822-826.

McIntire, C. D., Garrison, R. L., Phinney, H. K., and Warren, C. E., 1964, Primary production in laboratory streams: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 9, no. 1, p. 92-102.

Pfeifer, R. F., and McDiffett, W. F., 1975, Some factors affecting primary productivity of stream riffle communities: Archives Hydrobiology, v. 75, p. 306-317.

Rodgers, J. H., Jr., Dickson, K. L., and Cairns, John, Jr., 1978, A chamber for in-situ evaluations of periphyton productivity in lotic systems: Archives Hydrobiology, v. 84, p. 389-398.

Schindler, D. W., Frost, V. E., and Schmidt, R. V., 1973, Production of epilithiphyton in two lakes of the Experimental Lakes area, northwestern Ontario: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 30, p. 1511-1524.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Strickland, J. D. H., and Parsons, T. R., 1968, A practical handbook of seawater analysis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 167, 311 p.

Thomas, N. A., and O'Connell, R. L., 1966, A method for measuring primary production by stream benthos: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 11, no. 3, p. 386-392.

Tilley, L. J., 1972, A method for rapid and reliable scraping of periphyton slides, in Geological Survey Research 1972: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 800-D, p. D221-D222.

Wetzel, R. G., 1964, A comparative study of the primary productivity of higher aquatic plants, periphyton, and phytoplankton in a large, shallow lake: International Review Hydrobiologie, v. 49, p. 1-61.

_____1965, Techniques and problems of primary productivity measurements in higher aquatic plants and periphyton, in Goldman, C. R., ed., Primary productivity in aquatic environments: Berkeley, University of California Press, 1st Italiano Idrobiologia Memoirs, Supplement 18, p. 249-267.

Diel Oxygen-Curve Method for Estimating Primary Productivity and Community Metabolism in Streams
(B-8120-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70959
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70960
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70963
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70964
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70967
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70968

Two analytical approaches are described for evaluating oxygen metabolism in streams. The graphical approach, developed for a hypothetical stream, provides an estimate of gross primary productivity, or the total quantity of oxygen produced during a diel (24-hour) period, and of total community respiration, or the total quantity of oxygen consumed during a diel period. Diel net primary productivity, or the oxygen that was not consumed, is calculated as the difference between gross productivity and total respiration. The graphical approach assumes that daytime respiration is constant or that it varies only linearly with time. This is the major limitation to the graphical approach.

The alternative analytical approach consists of data processing using a Fortran computer program (Program designation: Primary production, J330). A complete description of the program is in the user manual by Stephens and Jennings (1976). The program will calculate daytime net oxygen production and nighttime oxygen respiration for the single-station or the two-station analysis. The arithmetic difference between these is a 24-hour community metabolism that is equivalent to diel net primary productivity and should be entered into the computer using parameter code 70964. Other parameter codes are not compatible for any calculations made by program J330. Gross productivity is not calculated. Program J330 functions by assuming that production occurs only during daylight hours, and any change in dissolved oxygen that occurred during this period, after correcting for diffusion, is due to production. Any change in dissolved oxygen that occurred during hours of darkness, after correcting for diffusion, is due to respiration.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to streams in which the biological productivity is relatively intense. If the incoming water has a metabolic history similar to the outflowing water, the single-station analysis may be made. If the metabolic characteristics of the inflowing water are unknown or are not similar to the outflowing water, the two-station analysis should be made.

2. Summary of method

Dissolved-oxygen concentration and water temperature are determined in the open water continuously or at 1- to 3-hour intervals for at least 24 hours. Community primary productivity and respiration are estimated from rates of oxygen change after correction for the exchange of oxygen between the water and the atmosphere.

3. Interferences

3.1 Undetected advection, accrual of surface or ground water, and loss of oxygen from the water in the form of bubbles are possible sources of error. The limited sensitivity of this diel oxygen-curve method precludes its use in unproductive water. Limitations of dissolved-oxygen meters are that oxygen changes can be greater than 0.1 mg/L. Corresponding changes when using the Winkler method require a minimum of 0.02 mg/L. The diel oxygen-curve method should be used in water of comparative homogeneity.

3.2 In shallow, turbulent streams, the rate at which equilibrium is achieved between the water and the atmosphere is too rapid for the diel oxygen-curve method to be used. In these instances, a method based on the equililbrium between carbon dioxide, bicarbonate, and pH has been developed to measure photosynthesis and respiration (Wright and Mills, 1967).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies. All materials used must be free of agents that inhibit photosynthesis and respiration.

4.1 Barometer for measuring local barometric pressure.

4.2 Floating-diffusion dome, clear Plexiglas, approximately 22 cm in diameter, or larger. Suitable domes are available from restaurant equipment suppliers. The device described by Hall (1971) consists of a 40.5-cm-diameter dome sealed onto a floating collar of 1-cm marine plywood (fig. 60). The oxygen and temperature sensors can be inserted from below into a support inside the dome or through holes in the dome. The dome is painted silver to decrease the greenhouse effect on the inside temperature.

4.3 Equipment for determination of dissolved oxygen by the azide modification of the Winkler method (Skougstad and others, 1979; Golterman, 1982; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

4.4 Graph paper, 1-mm squares.

4.5 Recorder, portable, for continuous measurements of dissolved oxygen or for use with oxygen meters.

4.6 Stirrer, submersible, battery operated, for use with membrane-electrode oxygen instruments.

4.7 Thermistor or thermometer for determining water temperature and gas temperature in the diffusion dome. Most oxygen meters include thermistors suitable for making these measurements.

4.8 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Reagents required for the azide modification of the Winkler method for dissolved oxygen (Skougstad and others, 1979; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

5.2 Sodium thiosulfate solution, 0.01N. Dissolve 2.5 g sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$) in distilled water, and dilute to 1 L.

6. Analysis

6.1 Single-station analysis. Using the data collected and following the procedures in the "Single-Station Analysis" subsection of the "Primary Productivity" section, tabulate time versus temperature and dissolved-oxygen concentration as listed in table 15, columns 1 through 3, and plot curves as in figure 64A and B . Graph paper that has 1-mm squares is convenient to use for these plots.

6.2 Determine the percentage saturation for each dissolved-oxygen value using tables indicating oxygen solubility at various temperatures, pressures, and salinities (Mortimer, 1981; American Public Health Association and others, 1981). Tabulate the values in table 15, column 6, and plot a curve of time versus measured percentage of dissolved-oxygen saturation as shown in figure 64.

6.3 Using the measured dissolved-oxygen-concentration data (table 15, col. 3), determine the hourly rate of change in dissolved oxygen (milligrams per liter per hour) by subtracting successive pairs of dissolved-oxygen values. Tabulate the values, and plot the rate curve from the values in table 15, column 4, and as shown in figure 64D (curve labeled "Before correction for diffusion").

6.4 Subtract each percentage-saturation value determined in 6.2 from 100 percent, recording values less than 100 as negative. List these percentage-saturation deficits as in table 15, column 7. Proceed to 6.9 or 6.10 depending on the method used to determine the diffusion rate. If area-based gas transfer coefficient, K, is estimated, proceed to 6.12.

6.5 Two-station analysis. Using the data collected and following the procedures in the "Two-Station Analysis" subsection of the "Primary Productivity" section, determine the average dissolved-oxygen concentration and average temperature for the reach between stations for each sample interval. Tabulate time versus average temperature and time versus average dissolved-oxygen concentration as listed in table 15, columns 1 through 3. Plot curves as in figure 64A and B. Graph paper that has 1-mm squares is convenient to use for these plots.

Table 15.--Hypothetical data for determining community primary productivity of a stream by the oxygen-curve method

[The mean depth of flow is 1.2 meters; the gas transfer coefficient on a volume basis, $\underline{k}$, is 2.67 grams per cubic meter per hour at 100-percent saturation deficit; h, hours; °C, degrees Celsius; mg/L, milligrams per liter; (mg/L)/h, milligrams per liter per hour; $(g/m^3)/h$, grams per cubic meter per hour]

		Dissolved oxygen						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Time (h)	Temperature (°C)	Measured (mg/L)[1]	Rate of change [(mg/L)/h]	Concentrations at saturation (mg/L)	Measured saturation (percent)	Average saturation deficit, $\underline{S}$ (percent)	$\frac{\underline{S} \times \underline{k}}{100}$ $[(g/m^3)/h]$	Corrected rate of change $[(g/m^3)/h]$
0000	29.5	6.00		7.7	78			
			-0.05			-23.0	-0.614	-0.664
0100	29.0	5.95		7.8	76			
			-.05			-24.5	-.654	-.704
0200	28.0	5.90		7.9	75			
			-.05			-26.5	-.708	-.758
0300	27.0	5.85		8.1	72			
			-.05			-29.0	-.774	-.824
0400	25.5	5.80		8.3	70			
			+.10			-30.0	-.801	-.701
0500	25.0	5.90		8.4	70			
			.00			-28.5	-.761	-.761
0600	27.0	5.90		8.1	73			
			+.40			-23.5	-.627	-.227
0700	28.0	6.30		7.9	80			
			+.55			-15.0	-.400	+.150
0800	30.0	6.85		7.6	90			
			+1.00			-7.5	-.200	+.800
0900	31.0	7.85		7.5	105			
			+.95			+11.5	+.307	+1.257
1000	31.5	8.80		7.4	118			
			+.60			+22.5	+.601	-1.201
1100	32.0	9.40		7.4	127			
			+.65			+32.0	+.854	-1.504
1200	32.5	10.05		7.4	137			
			+.45			+41.0	+1.095	+1.545
1300	33.5	10.50		7.2	145			
			+.10			+45.0	+1.202	+1.302
1400	33.0	10.60		7.3	145			
			-.15			+43.5	+1.161	+1.011
1500	32.5	10.45		7.4	142			
			-.25			+38.5	+1.028	+.778

Table 15.--Hypothetical data for determining community primary productivity of a stream by the oxygen-curve method--Continued

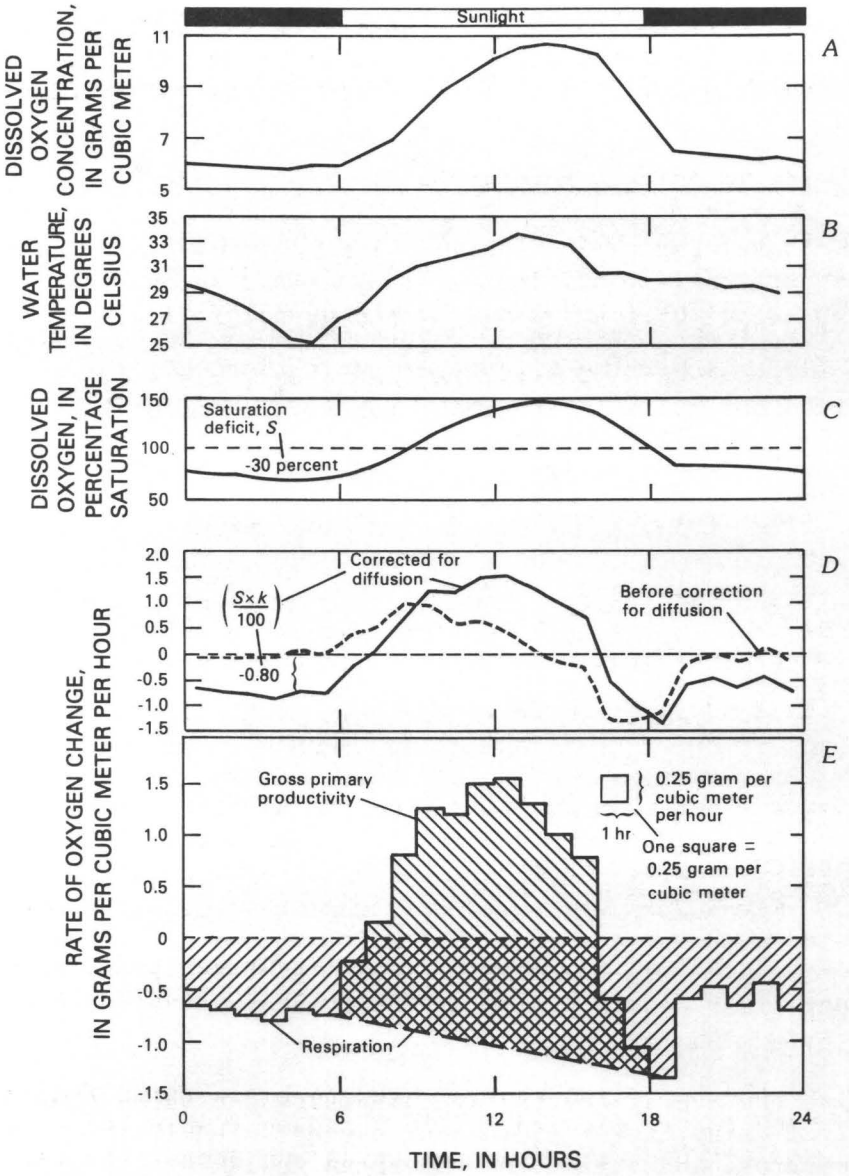
		Dissolved oxygen						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Time (h)	Temperature (°C)	Measured (mg/L)[1]	Rate of change [(mg/L)/h]	Concentrations at saturation (mg/L)	Measured saturation (percent)	Average saturation deficit, S (percent)	$\frac{S \times k}{100}$ [(g/m^3)/h]	Corrected rate of change [(g/m^3)/h]
1600	30.5	10.20		7.6	135			
			-1.30			+26.5	+0.708	-0.592
1700	30.5	8.90		7.6	118			
			-1.30			+9.0	+.240	-1.060
1800	30.0	7.60		7.6	100			
			-1.15			-7.5	-.200	-1.350
1900	30.0	6.45		7.6	85			
			-.15			-16.0	-.427	-.577
2000	30.0	6.30		7.6	83			
			.00			-17.5	-.467	-.467
2100	29.5	6.30		7.7	82			
			-.15			-19.0	-.507	-.657
2200	29.5	6.15		7.7	80			
			+.10			-20.0	-.534	-.434
2300	29.0	6.25		7.8	80			
			-.15			-21.0	-.561	-.711
2400	29.0	6.10		7.8	78			

[1]Milligrams per liter equals grams per cubic meter.

6.6 Determine the average percentage of dissoved-oxygen saturation for each sample interval using tables indicating oxygen solubility at various temperatures, pressures, and salinities (American Public Health Association and others, 1985). Tabulate the values in table 15, column 6, and plot a curve of time versus average percentage of dissolved-oxygen saturation as shown in figure 64C.

6.7 Using the average dissolved-oxygen-concentration data for the reach (table 15, col. 3), determine the average hourly rate of change in dissolved oxygen (milligrams per liter per hour) by subtracting successive pairs of oxygen values. Tabulate the values, and plot the rate curve from the values in table 15, column 4, and as shown in figure 64D (curve labeled "Before correction for diffusion").

6.8 Subtract each average percentage-saturation value determined in 6.6 from 100 percent, recording values less than 100 as negative. List these average percentage-saturation deficits as in table 15, column 7. Proceed to 6.9, 6.10, or 6.13 depending on the method used to determine the diffusion rate. If K is estimated, proceed to 6.12.



Diffusion correction calculations:

K = 3.2 grams per square meter per hour

$$k = \frac{K}{z} = \frac{\text{3.2 grams per square meter per hour}}{\text{1.2 meters}} = \text{2.67 grams per cubic meter per hour}$$

$$\frac{S \times k}{100} = \frac{-30 \times 2.67}{100} = \text{-0.80 gram per cubic meter per hour}$$

$$\text{Gross productivity} = \frac{(81.3 \text{ squares})}{\text{day}} \text{ (0.25 gram per cubic meter) (1.2 meters)} = \text{24.4 grams per square meter per day}$$

$$\text{Community respiration} = \frac{(84.1 \text{ squares})}{\text{day}} \text{ (0.25 gram per cubic meter) (1.2 meters)} = \text{25.2 grams per square meter per day}$$

Figure 64.--Diel oxygen curve and supported data (from tables 14 and 15) for determining community primary productivity and community respiration of a stream by the oxygen-curve method. The mean depth of flow is 1.2 meters, the gas transfer coefficient on an area basis, K, is 3.2 grams per square meter per hour, and on a volume basis, k, is 2.67 grams per cubic meter per hour at 100-percent saturation deficit (modified from Odum and Hoskin, 1958).

6.9 Determine the volume-based gas transfer coefficient, k, for each sample interval from measurements of the hydraulic parameters. The following procedure is adapted from Hall (1971) for k derived from volume-based gas transfer coefficient per day, k_2. Thus, from Churchill and others (1962),

$$k_2 \text{ (at 20 °C)} = 5.026 V^{0.969} R^{-1.673} ,$$

where k_2 = volume-based gas transfer coefficient per day;
V = cross-sectional mean velocity, in feet per second; and
R = hydraulic radius (approximately the depth of flow), in feet.

Using a known dissolved-oxygen-saturation value for a specific time, Hall (1971) obtained the following equation for k in terms of k_2:

$$k = \frac{2.3\ (k_2 C_s)}{24} ,$$

where k = volume-based gas transfer coefficient, in grams per cubic meter per hour, and is for a 100-percent saturated deficit; and
C_s = the 100-percent saturation deficit, in grams per cubic meter.

The 2.3 converts the k_2 defined in terms of $\log_{10}$ to k defined in terms of $\log_e$.

For temperatures other than 20 °C, correct to k_2 at a rate of 2.41-percent increase or decrease per degree above or below 20 °C. Estimate k for the study period by averaging the k values determined for each sampling interval (Note 1). Proceed to 6.14.

Note 1: Some situations require use of different gas transfer coefficients at different times of day as explained in the "Diffusion Rate" subsection.

6.10 Determine the diffusion rate, D, for each nighttime sample interval from measurements made in the floating-diffusion dome (table 14). Calculate the volume of oxygen in the dome at the beginning and end of the sample interval as follows:

$$V_t = V_d (0.21) \frac{F_t}{100} ,$$

where V_t = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at a specific time, t;
V_d = volume of atmospheric gases, in milliliters, in the dome;
F_t = percentage oxygen saturation in the dome atmosphere at time, t, when fresh air equals 100-percent oxygen saturation; and
0.21 = fractional volume of oxygen in the air.

Indicate the concentration of oxygen in the floating-diffusion dome in terms of standard temperature and pressure for each sample interval using the equation

$$\Delta\underline{V} = \frac{273\underline{V}_0}{273 + \underline{T}_0} - \frac{273\underline{V}_1}{273 + \underline{T}_1} ,$$

where $\Delta\underline{V}$ = change in volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at standard temperature and pressure;
$\underline{V}_0$ = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at the beginning of the interval;
$\underline{T}_0$ = temperature, in degrees Celsius, in the dome at the beginning of the interval;
$\underline{V}_1$ = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at the end of the interval;
$\underline{T}_1$ = temperature, in degrees Celsius, in the dome at the end of the interval; and
273 = factor for converting to absolute temperature.

Oxygen weighs 0.00143 g/mL at standard temperature and pressure. Therefore, $\underline{D}$ may be computed from

$$\underline{D} = \frac{(\Delta\underline{V})(0.00143)}{\underline{A}(\Delta\underline{t})} ,$$

where $\underline{D}$ = rate of diffusion of oxygen into the water, in grams per square meter per hour;
$\underline{A}$ = area of the dome, in square meters, that is in contact with the water surface; and
$\Delta\underline{t}$ = time interval, in hours, between the two measurements.

6.11 Using the following equation, convert the area-based rate of diffusion for each sampling interval to a value at 0-percent saturation of the water (rate of diffusion if the water contained no oxygen) by dividing $\underline{D}$ by the average percentage-saturation deficit during the time of measurement, or

$$\underline{K} = \frac{\underline{D}\ (100)}{\underline{S}} ,$$

where $\underline{K}$ = area-based gas transfer coefficient, in grams per square meter per hour, at 0-percent saturation (100-percent saturation deficit); and
$\underline{S}$ = average percentage-saturation deficit between the water and the air during the sample interval (derived from 6.4 to 6.8).

6.12 Convert each area value to a volume value by dividing by the mean depth of water, in meters, or

$$\underline{k} = \frac{\underline{K}}{\underline{z}} ,$$

where k = volume-based gas transfer coefficient, in grams per cubic meter per hour, at 0-percent saturation; and
z = mean depth, in meters.

Estimate k for the study period by averaging the k values determined for each sampling interval (Note 2). Proceed to 6.14.

Note 2: Some situations require use of different diffusion constants at different times of day.

6.13 Determine the average k for each sample interval from measurements of the nighttime average rate of oxygen change. This can be estimated by calculating k values for each nighttime sampling interval using the Odum (1956) method as presented by Eley (1970):

$$k = \frac{q_n - q_n + 1}{S_n - S_n + 1},$$

where q_n = average rate of change in oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, for the reach at nighttime, n;
$q_n + 1$ = average rate of change in oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, for the reach at nighttime, $n + 1$;
S_n = average oxygen-saturation deficit for the reach at nighttime, n; and
$S_n + 1$ = average oxygen-saturation deficit for the reach at nighttime, $n + 1$.

Proceed to 6.14.

6.14 Determine the quantity of oxygen (grams per cubic meter) gained or lost by diffusion during each sampling interval. To adjust for atmospheric reaeration, multiply the average k (from 6.9, 6.12, or 6.13) by each percentage oxygen-saturation deficit value (from 6.4 or 6.8), and divide by 100 to convert percentage to fractional values. List these values as in table 15, column 8.

6.15 Using figure 64D, the hourly rate-of-change graph plotted as directed in 6.3 or 6.7, prepare a corrected rate-of-change curve by adding or subtracting, graphically, the quantity of oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, gained or lost by diffusion during each sampling interval (from 6.14). Draw the curve as in figure 64D (curve labeled "Corrected for diffusion"). The corrected rate-of-change curve is replotted as a step function to facilitate graphical integration as shown in figure 64E.

6.16 Connect a line between the presunrise and postsunset negative rate-of-change points on the corrected rate-of-change curve as shown in figure 64E (Odum and Wilson, 1962). This line is an estimate of daytime respiration (Note 3).

Note 3: The maximum rate of respiration often occurs immediately after sunset, and the rate declines to a minimum before sunrise. Where presunrise and postsunset respiration differ, connect the line diagonally from the dawn-

respiration rate to the sunset-respiration rate on the corrected rate-of-change graph. The values for respiration and gross primary productivity are affected by the placement of the respiration line. The accuracy of the method probably is limited by this step (Odum and Hoskin, 1958, p. 22). Graphs in which the rates of change are very irregular enable more subjectivity of choice of the respiration line than do smooth curves.

7. Calculations

The following volume- or concentration-based calculations, in grams per cubic meter per day, can be converted to area-based calculations, in grams per square meter per day, by multiplying by the average water depth of the study area, in meters.

7.1 An estimate of gross primary productivity, P_g, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is the area above the daytime respiration line and below the daytime rate-of-change line (fig. 64E). The area may be determined from the plot by counting the graph-paper squares and multiplying by the value, in grams per cubic meter, of one square.

7.2 An estimate of community respiration, R_t, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is the area above the nighttime negative rate-of-change line and the daytime respiration line and below the zero rate-of-change line (fig. 64E). The area may be determined from the plot by counting the graph-paper squares and multiplying by the value, in grams per cubic meter, of one square. The graphical procedure integrates the hourly values during a 24-hour period; hence, the respiration rate is on a per-day basis.

7.3 An estimate of net primary productivity, P_n, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is the difference between P_g and R_t.

7.4 An index of the trophic nature of the community may be calculated as the ratio of photosynthetic productivity to respiration, P:R. Communities having a P:R ratio less than 1 have an excess of respiration compared to productivity. They are heterotrophic; that is, they degrade organic compounds through oxygen metabolism at a greater rate than they fix carbon in photosynthesis. Autotrophic communities have a P:R ratio greater than 1 and release more oxygen through photosynthesis than they consume through respiration.

8. Reporting of results

Report community primary productivity and respiration, in milligrams, as follows: less than 10 mg, one decimal; 10 mg or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

No numerical precision data are available.

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Churchill, M. A., Elmore, H. L., and Buckingham, R. A., 1962, The prediction of stream reaeration rates: Proceedings of the American Society of Civil Engineers, v. 88, no. SA-4, p. 1-46.

Eley, R. L., 1970, Physiochemical limnology and community metabolism of Keystone Reservoir, Oklahoma: Stillwater, Oklahoma State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 240 p.

Golterman, H. L., ed., 1982, Methods for chemical and physical analysis of fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 8, 213 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hall, C. A., 1971, Migration and metabolism in a stream ecosystem: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina, Department of Zoology, Environmental Science and Engineering Report 49, 243 p.

Mortimer, C. H., 1981, The oxygen content of air-saturated fresh waters over ranges of temperature and atmospheric pressure of limnological interest: Mittellungen Internationale Vereinigung für Theoretische und Angewandte Limnologie, no. 22, 23 p.

Odum, H. T., 1956, Primary production in flowing waters: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 1, no. 2, p. 102-117.

Odum, H. T., and Hoskin, C. M., 1958, Comparative studies on the metabolism of marine waters: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 5, p. 16-46.

Odum, H. T., and Wilson, R. F., 1962, Further studies on reaeration and metabolism of Texas bays, 1958-60: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 8, p. 23-55.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Stephens, D. W., and Jennings, M. E., 1976, Determination of primary productivity and community metabolism using diel oxygen measurements: U.S. Geological Survey Computer Contributions, 94 p. [Available from National Technical Information Service, U.S. Department of Commerce, Springfield, Va. 22161 as PB-256 645/AS.]

Wright, J. C., and Mills, I. K., 1967, Productivity studies on the Madison River, Yellowstone National Park: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 12, no. 4, p. 568-577.

Diel Oxygen-Curve Method for Estimating Primary Productivity and Community Metabolism in Stratified Water
(B-8100-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70959
Productivity, primary, gross [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70960
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70963
Productivity, primary, net [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70964
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^3)/d]:	70967
Respiration [mg(O_2/m^2)/d]:	70968

If complete vertical mixing occurs in the water body, a series of single-station analyses may be sufficient to characterize the oxygen regime in the water. However, in many places, the water may be stratified, and a vertical dissolved-oxygen variation from near saturation at the surface to near zero concentration at the bottom may exist. If these conditions do exist, production of oxygen may be limited to the euphotic zone, and an oxygen deficit could exist in the lower or hypolimnetic water.

Two analytical approaches for evaluating oxygen metabolism in stratified water are described and contrasted using synthetic data for a hypothetical lake. The graphical approach provides an estimate of gross primary productivity, or the total quantity of oxygen produced during a diel (24-hour) period, and of total community respiration, or the total quantity of oxygen consumed during a diel period. Diel net primary productivity, or the oxygen that was not consumed, is calculated as the difference between gross productivity and total respiration. The graphical approach assumes that daytime respiration is constant or that it varies only linearly with time. This is the major limitation to the graphical approach.

The alternative analytical approach consists of data processing using a Fortran computer program (Program designation: Primary production, J330). A complete description of the program is in the user manual by Stephens and Jennings (1976). The program will calculate daytime net oxygen production and nighttime oxygen respiration for the single-station or two-station analysis. The arithmetic difference between these is a 24-hour community metabolism that is equivalent to diel net primary productivity and should be entered into the computer using parameter code 70964. Other parameter codes are not compatible for any calculations made by program J330. Gross productivity is not calculated. Program J330 functions by assuming that production occurs only during daylight hours, and any change in dissolved oxygen that occurred during this period, after correcting for diffusion, is due to production. Any change in dissolved oxygen that occurred during hours of darkness, after correcting for diffusion, is due to respiration. The program also enables exchange between the horizontal segments of a stratified water body using estimated or measured vertical-dispersion coefficients.

1. Applications

The method is applicable to eutrophic estuaries, lakes, and other stratified bodies of water in which a vertical variation in dissolved oxygen exists. The lower limit for measurable oxygen production occurs when phytoplankton densities, expressed as chlorophyll _a_, are less than 1 mg/m^3 (Talling, 1974).

2. Summary of method

From average values for temperature, dissolved oxygen, and, if appropriate, salinity, an average rate of change in dissolved oxygen is calculated for the entire water body. Average dissolved-oxygen values for the surface-water layer are corrected for diffusion. The resulting curve of diel changes in the in-situ concentration of dissolved oxygen, mainly due to photosynthesis and respiration, is used to estimate the primary productivity of the entire aquatic-plant community.

3. Interferences

Undetected advection, accrual of surface or ground water, and loss of oxygen from the water in the form of bubbles are possible sources of error. The limited sensitivity of this diel oxygen-curve method precludes its use in unproductive water. Limitations of dissolved-oxygen meters are that oxygen changes can be greater than 0.1 mg/L. Corresponding changes when using the Winkler method require a minimum of 0.02 mg/L. The method should be used in water of comparative horizontal homogeneity.

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies. All materials used must be free of agents that inhibit photosynthesis and respiration.

4.1 Barometer for measuring local barometric pressure.

4.2 Floating-diffusion dome, clear Plexiglas, approximately 22 cm in diameter, or larger. Suitable domes are available from restaurant equipment suppliers. The device described by Hall (1971) consists of a 40.5-cm-diameter dome sealed onto a floating collar of 1-cm marine plywood (fig. 60). The oxygen and temperature sensors can be inserted from below into a support inside the dome or through holes in the dome. The dome is painted silver to decrease the greenhouse effect on the inside temperature.

4.3 Equipment for determination of dissolved oxygen by the azide modification of the Winkler method (Skougstad and others, 1979; Golterman, 1982; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

4.4 Equipment for determination of salinity by titration (Strickland and Parsons, 1968) or by electrical conductivity, if appropriate.

4.5 Graph paper, 1-mm squares.

4.6 Polar planimeter and maps appropriate to the study (see 6.1).

4.7 Thermistor or thermometer for determining water temperature and gas temperature in the diffusion dome. Most oxygen meters include thermistors suitable for making these measurements.

4.8 Underwater light-measurement equipment. A quantum/radiometer/photometer measures photosynthetically active radiation (400-700 nm). If a submersible photometer is not available, a Secchi disc may be used.

4.9 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Reagents required for the azide modification of the Winkler method for dissolved oxygen (Skougstad and others, 1979; American Public Health Association and others, 1985).

5.2 Sodium thiosulfate solution, 0.01N. Dissolve 2.5 g sodium thiosulfate ($Na_2S_2O_3 \cdot 5H_2O$ in distilled water, and dilute to 1 L.

5.3 Reagents for determination of salinity (Strickland and Parsons, 1968), if appropriate.

6. Analysis

6.1 Lake morphometry. The volume of water contained in a lake may be calculated from measurements of each depth contour on a good topographic or bathymetric map. An accurate, scaled map and planimeter are required. Winter (1981) describes errors in bathymetric map drawing. Determine the area enclosed within each contour interval using a planimeter. Typically, the planimeter will indicate area, in square inches (or centimeters), that then must be converted to actual area using the map scale. A small lake (fig. 65) was planimetered to obtain the morphometric data in table 16. Using the map scale of 1:250,000, the actual area represented by 1 in^2 of map was calculated to be 6.25×10^{10} in^2. This value, when divided by the number of square inches in a square mile (4.01×10^9), provides the factor (15.59) used to calculate the actual surface area of each contour. Conversion to metric units is made using the relation 1 mi^2 equals 2.59×10^6 m^2 (table 16, col. 3).

The volume of each contour (table 16, col. 4) is calculated as

$$V_{n-m} = 1/3\ (A_m + A_n + A_m A_n)(n - m)\ ,$$

where V_{n-m} = the volume of a given element between contour n and contour m, in cubic meters;

A_m = the area at contour m, in square meters;

A_n = the area at contour n, in square meters; and

$n - m$ = the interval between contour n and contour m, in meters.

Total lake volume is the summation of all element volumes.

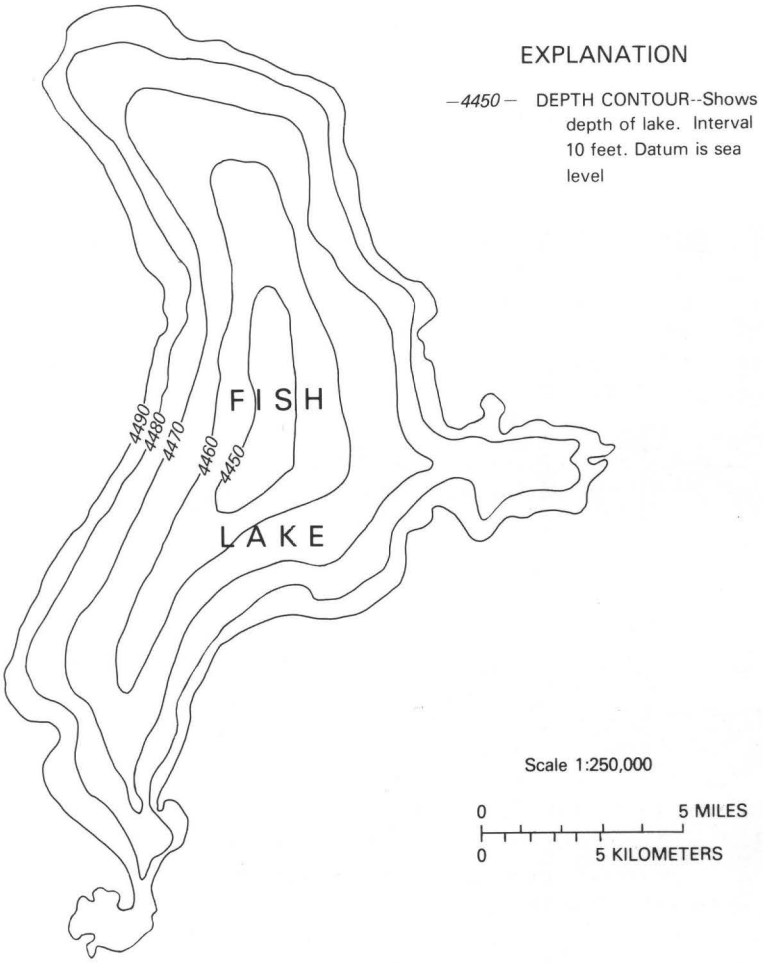


Figure 65.--Fish Lake, used in morphometric analysis.

6.2 From the data collected, average the temperature, dissolved oxygen, and, if appropriate, salinity values at each depth interval (table 17) for several stations to eliminate the effects of horizontal heat and solute exchange. Tabulate time versus surface dissolved-oxygen concentration and temperature. These surface dissolved-oxygen values are to be corrected for diffusion as described below. Tabulate average dissolved-oxygen values for each remaining depth interval as in table 17, column 3. These values are not corrected for diffusion. Proceed from 6.3 through 6.12 for the graphical-analysis procedure.

6.3 Graphical analysis. Determine the percentage saturation for each average surface dissolved-oxygen value using tables indicating oxygen solubility at various temperatures, pressures, and salinities (American Public Health Association and others, 1985). Tabulate the values in table 17, column 6, and plot a curve of time versus measured percentage surface dissolved-oxygen saturation as shown in figure 64C.

Table 16.--Morphometric data and results of graphical analysis of community primary productivity and respiration for Fish Lake

[Area values: gross primary productivity, 78.98 grams per square meter per day; respiration, 81.29 grams per square meter per day; net primary productivity, -2.31 grams per square meter per day; productivity/respiration, 0.972; ----, not applicable]

1 Lake slice (depth interval equals 3 meters)	2 Elevation (feet)	3 Area ($\times 10^8$ square meters)	4 Volume ($\times 10^8$ cubic meters)	5 Gross primary productivity (grams per cubic meter per day)	6 Lake slice gross primary productivity ($\times 10^8$ grams per cubic meter per day)	7 Respiration (grams per cubic meter per day)	8 Lake slice respiration ($\times 10^8$ grams per cubic meter per day)
Surface	4,490	3.83	----	----	----	----	----
1	4,480	2.81	9.37	20.33	190.49	21.03	197.05
2	4,470	1.82	6.89	9.13	62.91	9.18	63.25
3	4,460	.75	4.24	9.00	38.16	10.05	42.61
4	4,450	.15	1.88	5.30	9.96	4.48	8.42
Total	----	----	----	----	301.5	----	311.33

Table 17.--Hypothetical data for determining community primary productivity for each individual depth in a lake by the oxygen-curve method

[The gas transfer coefficient on an area basis, K, is 3.2 grams per square meter per hour, and on a volume basis, k, is 2.67 grams per cubic meter per hour at 100-percent saturation deficit; h, hours; °C, degrees Celsius; mg/L, milligrams per liter; (mg/L)/h, milligrams per liter per hour; $(g/m^3)/h$, grams per cubic meter per hour]

		Dissolved oxygen						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Time (h)	Temperature (°C)	Measured (mg/L)[1]	Rate of change [(mg/L)/h]	Concentrations at saturation (mg/L)	Measured saturation (percent)	Average saturation deficit, S (percent)	$\frac{S \times k}{100}$ [$(g/m^3)/h$]	Corrected rate of change [$(g/m^3)/h$]
0000	29.5	6.00		7.7	78			
			-0.05			-23.0	-0.614	-0.664
0100	29.0	5.95		7.8	76			
			-.05			-24.5	-.654	-.704
0200	28.0	5.90		7.9	75			
			-.05			-26.5	-.708	-.758
0300	27.0	5.85		8.1	72			
			-.05			-29.0	-.774	-.824
0400	25.5	5.80		8.3	70			
			+.10			-30.0	-.801	-.701
0500	25.0	5.90		8.4	70			
			.00			-28.5	-.761	-.761
0600	27.0	5.90		8.1	73			
			+.40			-23.5	-.627	-.227
0700	28.0	6.30		7.9	80			
			+.55			-15.0	-.400	+.150
0800	30.0	6.85		7.6	90			
			+1.00			-7.5	-.200	+.402
0900	31.0	7.85		7.5	105			
			+.95			+11.5	+.307	+1.257
1000	31.5	8.80		7.4	118			
			+.60			+22.5	+.601	+1.201
1100	32.0	9.40		7.4	127			
			+.65			+32.0	+.854	+1.504
1200	32.5	10.05		7.4	137			
			+.45			+41.0	+1.095	+1.545
1300	33.5	10.50		7.2	145			
			+.10			+45.0	+1.202	+1.302
1400	33.0	10.60		7.3	145			
			-.15			+43.5	+1.161	+1.011
1500	32.5	10.45		7.4	142			
			-.25			+38.5	+1.028	+.778

Table 17.--Hypothetical data for determining community primary productivity for each individual depth in a lake by the oxygen-curve method--Continued

		Dissolved oxygen						
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
Time (h)	Temperature (°C)	Measured (mg/L)[1]	Rate of change [(mg/L)/h]	Concentrations at saturation (mg/L)	Measured saturation (percent)	Average saturation deficit, S (percent)	$\frac{S \times k}{100}$ [(g/m^3)/h]	Corrected rate of change [(g/m^3)/h]
1600	30.5	10.20		7.6	135			
			-1.30			+26.5	+0.708	-0.592
1700	30.5	8.90		7.6	118			
			-1.30			+9.0	+.240	-1.060
1800	30.0	7.60		7.6	100			
			-1.15			-7.5	-.200	-1.350
1900	30.0	6.45		7.6	85			
			-.15			-16.0	-.427	-.577
2000	30.0	6.30		7.6	83			
			.00			-17.5	-.467	-.467
2100	29.5	6.30		7.7	82			
			-.15			-19.0	-.507	-.657
2200	29.5	6.15		7.7	80			
			+.10			-20.0	-.534	-.434
2300	29.0	6.25		7.8	80			
			-.15			-21.0	-.561	-.711
2400	29.0	6.10		7.8	78			

[1]Milligrams per liter equals grams per cubic meter.

6.4 Using the surface dissolved-oxygen-concentration data (table 17) determine the hourly rate of change in dissolved oxygen (milligrams per liter per hour) by subtracting successive pairs of dissolved-oxygen values. Tabulate the values, and plot the rate curve from the values in table 17, column 4, and as shown in figure 64D (curve labeled "Before correction for diffusion").

6.5 Subtract each percentage-saturation value determined in 6.3 from 100 percent, recording values less than 100 as negative. List these percentage-saturation deficits as in table 17, column 7. Proceed to 6.6 or 6.7 depending on the method used to determine the diffusion rate. If area-based transfer coefficient, K, is estimated, proceed to 6.8.

6.6 Determine the diffusion rate, $\underline{D}$, for each nighttime sample interval from measurements made in the floating-diffusion dome (table 14). Calculate the volume of oxygen in the dome at the beginning and end of the sample interval as follows:

$$\underline{V}_{\underline{t}} = \underline{V}_{\underline{d}}(0.21)\frac{\underline{F}_{\underline{t}}}{100},$$

where $\underline{V}_{\underline{t}}$ = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at a specific time, $\underline{t}$;
$\underline{V}_{\underline{d}}$ = volume of atmospheric gases, in milliliters, in the dome;
$\underline{F}_{\underline{t}}$ = percentage oxygen saturation in the dome atmosphere at time, $\underline{t}$, when fresh air equals 100-percent oxygen saturation; and
0.21 = fractional volume of oxygen in the air.

Indicate the concentration of oxygen in the floating-diffusion dome in terms of standard temperature and pressure for each sample interval using the equation

$$\Delta\underline{V} = \frac{273\underline{V}_0}{273 + \underline{T}_0} - \frac{273\underline{V}_1}{273 + \underline{T}_1},$$

where $\Delta\underline{V}$ = change in volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at standard temperature and pressure;
$\underline{V}_0$ = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at the beginning of the interval;
$\underline{T}_0$ = temperature, in degrees Celsius, in the dome at the beginning of the interval;
$\underline{V}_1$ = volume of oxygen, in milliliters, in the dome at the end of the interval;
$\underline{T}_1$ = temperature, in degrees Celsius, in the dome at the end of the interval; and
273 = factor for converting to absolute temperature.

Oxygen weighs 0.00143 g/mL at standard temperature and pressure. Therefore, $\underline{D}$ may be computed from

$$\underline{D} = \frac{(\Delta\underline{V})(0.00143)}{\underline{A}(\Delta\underline{t})},$$

where $\underline{D}$ = rate of diffusion of oxygen into the water, in grams per square meter per hour;
$\underline{A}$ = area of the dome, in square meters, that is in contact with the water surface; and
$\Delta\underline{t}$ = time interval, in hours, between the two measurements.

Proceed to 6.8.

6.7 Determine the volume-based gas transfer coefficient, $\underline{k}$, for each sample interval from measurements of the nighttime rate of oxygen change. This can be estimated by calculating $\underline{k}$ values for each nighttime surface sampling interval using the Odum (1956) method as presented by Eley (1970):

$$\underline{k} = \frac{\underline{q}_{\underline{n}} - \underline{q}_{\underline{n}} + 1}{\underline{S}_{\underline{n}} - \underline{S}_{\underline{n}} + 1},$$

where $\underline{k}$ = volume-based gas transfer coefficient for oxygen, in grams per cubic meter per hour, at 0-percent saturation;
$\underline{q}_{\underline{n}}$ = rate of change of the surface oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, at nighttime, $\underline{n}$;
$\underline{q}_{\underline{n}} + 1$ = rate of change of the surface oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, at nighttime, $\underline{n} + 1$;
$\underline{S}_{\underline{n}}$ = oxygen-saturation deficit for the surface water at nighttime, $\underline{n}$; and
$\underline{S}_{\underline{n}} + 1$ = oxygen-saturation deficit for the surface water at nighttime, $\underline{n} + 1$.

Proceed to 6.9.

6.8 Using the following equation, convert the area-based rate of diffusion for each sampling interval to a value at 0-percent saturation of the water (rate of diffusion if the water contained no oxygen) by dividing $\underline{D}$ by the average percentage-saturation deficit during the time of measurement, or

$$\underline{K} = \frac{\underline{D}(100)}{\underline{S}},$$

where $\underline{K}$ = area-based gas transfer coefficient, in grams per square meter per hour, at 0-percent saturation (100-percent saturation deficit); and
$\underline{S}$ = average percentage-saturation deficit between the water and the air during the sample interval (derived from 6.5).

6.9 Convert each area value to a volume value by dividing by the depth of water, in meters, for the surface interval, or

$$\underline{k} = \frac{\underline{K}}{\underline{z}},$$

where $\underline{z}$ = depth, in meters, of the surface interval.

Estimate $\underline{k}$ for the study period by averaging the $\underline{k}$ values determined for each sampling interval (Note 1). Proceed to 6.10.

Note 1: Some situations require use of different diffusion constants at different times of day.

6.10 Determine the quantity of oxygen (grams per cubic meter) gained or lost by diffusion at the surface during each sampling interval. To adjust for atmospheric reaeration, multiply the average k (from 6.9) by each percentage oxygen-saturation deficit value (from 6.5), and divide by 100 to convert percentage to fractional values. List these values as in table 17, column 8.

6.11 Using figure 64D, the hourly rate-of-change graph plotted as directed in 6.4, prepare a corrected rate-of-change curve by adding or subtracting, graphically, the quantity of oxygen, in grams per cubic meter, gained or lost by diffusion during each sampling interval (from 6.10). Draw the curve as in figure 64D (curve labeled "Corrected for diffusion"). The corrected rate-of-change curve is replotted as a step function to facilitate graphical integration as shown in figure 64E. Dissolved-oxygen values for each remaining depth interval are tabulated as in table 17, column 3, but not corrected for diffusion, and their hourly rates of change (col. 4) are plotted as was done for the surface interval in figure 64E.

6.12 Connect a line between the presunrise and postsunset negative rate-of-change points on the corrected rate-of-change curve as shown in figure 64E (Odum and Wilson, 1962). This line is an estimate of daytime respiration (Note 2).

Note 2: The maximum rate of respiration often occurs immediately after sunset, and the rate declines to a minimum before sunrise. Where presunrise and postsunset respiration differ, connect the line diagonally from the dawn-respiration rate to the sunset-respiration rate on the corrected rate-of-change graph. The values for respiration and gross primary productivity are affected by the placement of the respiration line. The accuracy of the method probably is limited by this step (Odum and Hoskin, 1958, p. 22). Graphs in which the rates of change are very irregular enable more subjectivity of choice of the respiration line than do smooth curves.

7. Calculations

7.1 An estimate of gross primary productivity, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, for each depth increment is the area above the daytime respiration line and below the daytime rate-of-change line (fig. 64E, for the surface interval). The area may be determined from the plot by counting the graph-paper squares and multiplying by the value, in grams per cubic meter, of one square. Total gross productivity of each lake slice, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is obtained by multiplying the lake-slice volumetric-productivity value, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, by the total water volume of the lake-slice interval, in cubic meters. Total productivity of the entire water body, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is the summation of all lake-slice-interval productivity values. Total productivity of the water divided by the surface area, in square meters, of the water body will provide an areal value, in grams oxygen per square meter per day, useful when comparing primary-productivity values from diverse water bodies.

7.2 An estimate of community respiration, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, for each depth increment is the area above the nighttime negative rate-of-change line and below the zero rate-of-change line (fig. 64E, for the surface interval). The area may be determined from the plot by

counting the graph-paper squares and multiplying by the value, in grams per cubic meter, of one square. Total community respiration of each lake slice, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is calculated by multiplying the lake-slice volumetric respiration, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, by the total water volume of the lake-slice interval, in cubic meters. Total respiration of the entire water body, in grams oxygen per cubic meter per day, is the summation of all lake-slice-interval respiration values. Total respiration of the water divided by the surface area, in square meters, of the water body will provide an areal value, in grams oxygen per square meter per day, useful when comparing respiration from diverse water bodies.

7.3 An estimate of primary productivity for each lake-slice interval or the entire water body may be calculated by subtracting the appropriate gross primary-productivity value from the corresponding respiration value.

7.4 An index of the trophic nature of the community may be calculated as the ratio of photosynthetic productivity to respiration, P:R. Communities having a P:R ratio less than 1 have an excess of respiration compared to productivity. They are heterotrophic; that is, they degrade organic compounds through oxygen metabolism at a greater rate than they fix carbon in photosynthesis. Autotrophic communities have a P:R ratio greater than 1 and release more oxygen through photosynthesis than they consume through respiration.

8. Reporting of results

Report community primary productivity and respiration, in milligrams, as follows: less than 10 mg, one decimal; 10 mg or more, two significant figures.

9. Precision

Mean coefficients of variation among substations within four stations in Keystone Reservoir, Okla., were reported by Eley (1970). The coefficient of variation for gross primary productivity ranged from 2.72 to 9.36 percent, and the coefficient of variation for community respiration ranged from 1.71 to 11.67 percent. Average coefficients of variation among replicate observations in eight laboratory microcosms containing water from Keystone Reservoir were 1.8 percent for gross primary productivity and 5.7 percent for community respiration.

Replications of the diurnal-curve method at three similar stations in the upper Laguna Madre, Tex., were within 20 percent of the mean (Odum and Hoskin, 1958).

10. References cited

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C. American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.

Eley, R. L., 1970, Physiochemical limnology and community metabolism of Keystone Reservoir, Oklahoma: Stillwater, Oklahoma State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 240 p.

Golterman, H. L., ed., 1982, Methods for chemical and physical analysis of fresh waters: Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 8, 213 p.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hall, C. A., 1971, Migration and metabolism in a stream ecosystem: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina, Department of Zoology, Environmental Science and Engineering Report 49, 243 p.

Odum, H. T., 1956, Primary production in flowing waters: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 1, no. 2, p. 102-117.

Odum, H. T., and Hoskin, C. M., 1958, Comparative studies on the metabolism of marine waters: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, v. 5, p. 16-46.

Odum, H. T., and Wilson, R. F., 1962, Further studies on reaeration and metabolism of Texas bays, 1958-60: Austin, University of Texas, Marine Science Institute Publication, V. 8, p. 23-25.

Skougstad, M. W., Fishman, M. J., Friedman, L. C., Erdmann, D. E., and Duncan, S. S., eds., 1979, Methods for determination of inorganic substances in water and fluvial sediments: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 5, chap. A1, 626 p.

Stephens, D. W., and Jennings, M. E., 1976, Determination of primary productivity and community metabolism using diel oxygen measurements: U.S. Geological Survey Computer Contributions, 94 p. [Available from National Technical Information Service, U.S. Department of Commerce, Springfield, Va. 22161 as PB-256 645/AS.]

Strickland, J. D. H., and Parsons, T. R., 1968, A practical handbook of seawater analysis: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin 167, 311 p.

Talling, J. F., 1974, General limitations--Oxygen method, in Vollenweider, R. A., ed., A manual on methods for measuring primary production in aquatic environments (2d ed.): Oxford and Edinburgh, Blackwell Scientific Publications, International Biological Programme Handbook 12, 225 p.

Winter, T. C., 1981, Uncertainties in estimating the water balance of lakes: Water Resources Bulletin, v. 17, no. 1, p. 82-115.

BIOASSAY

Introduction

The abundance and composition of algae are related to water quality and are affected by the availability of growth substances, the major components of which are phosphorus and nitrogen. The significance of measuring algal growth potential (AGP) in water samples is that a distinction can be made between the growth substances of a sample determined by chemical analysis and the quantity of algal growth that the water can support. The AGP test that has no spikes does not identify the substances that limit or stimulate growth, nor does it indicate the presence of toxic or inhibitory substances in the water. The test does, however, enable the comparison of growth responses of test water from different sources or from the same source at different times.

Determination of AGP on a sample filtered at the time of collection measures the growth response elicited by dissolved nutrients. Samples that are autoclaved and then filtered measure a growth response that results from nutrients that are present in living organisms and organic matter as well as from dissolved nutrients.

A series of AGP bioassays, using phosphorus and nitrogen spikes, will indicate one of three conditions in a body of water: phosphorus limitation, nitrogen limitation, and the absence of phosphorus or nitrogen limitation. If phosphorus or nitrogen are not limiting--that is, there is no stimulation of growth in the spiked culture flasks--then one of several conditions may exist in the test water: minor element (micronutrient) limitation, limitation by an organic growth factor, or limitation by the presence of a toxic substance. This test will not differentiate between these possibilities; however, autoclaving does remove some biologically produced inhibitors.

In very productive water where the natural concentration of phosphorus and nitrogen exceeds the concentration of phosphorus and nitrogen in the spiked media, the concentration of the spikes may have to be increased. The limiting nutrient in a body of water also may change with time. A system that is phosphorus limited in June may be limited by some other nutrient in August. Consequently, any conclusions based on samples collected at one or two sampling times must be qualified accordingly. In addition, positive results for phosphorus or nitrogen limitation do not imply that those are the only limiting factors. There may be simultaneous micronutrients, light, or other limitations.

The minimum chemical data that must be collected to evaluate the assay response and define nutrient limitation are: initial pH, and concentrations of total phosphorus, orthophosphate, nitrite, nitrate, and total ammonia plus organic nitrogen.

Collection

To ensure maximum correlation of results, water collected for the AGP tests need to be subsampled for chemical and other biological analyses. The sample-collection method and sample size will be specified by study objec-

tives. Use a nonmetallic sampler. Do not reuse containers when toxic or nutrient contamination is suspected. Collection of samples intended for AGP analysis for dissolved substances only must be filtered at the time of collection.

Prepare the sample for analysis by autoclaving or filtering (0.22-µm pore size membrane, low-water extractable, membrane filter), or both. Autoclaving will solubilize additional nutrients, including many of those contained in filterable organisms. If a sample is collected during an algal bloom, it especially may be important to autoclave the sample. The autoclaving will oxidize algal excretions that would inhibit algal growth and result in erroneous data (Boyd, 1973). If autoclaving is desired, the length of time at 121 °C and 1.1 kg/cm^2 should be 10 to 30 minutes per liter. After autoclaving, the sample needs to be cooled to room temperature and then bubbled with a mixture of 1-percent carbon dioxide in air until the original pH is restored, or bubbled for about 5 minutes. The bubbling will minimize loss by resolubilizing some precipitates that might have formed during autoclaving. In very hard water or water containing large concentrations of suspended particulate matter, autoclaving may cause irreversible precipitation of certain constituents in the sample; therefore, the pH before and after autoclaving and carbon dioxide equilibration should be reported. Allow the sample to equilibrate in air at 24 °C. Shaking will speed the equilibration.

Changes can occur in a sample during storage regardless of conditions, so keep the storage time to a minimum. Store the sample in the dark at 0 to 4 °C and have a minimum of air space over the sample. If storage for more than 1 week is necessary, autoclave or filter, or both, the sample before storage.

Algal Growth Potential (AGP), Spikes for Nutrient Limitation (B-8502-85)

Parameters and Codes:

Algal growth potential, filtered (mg/L): 85209
Algal growth potential, filtered and spiked with 0.05 mg/L P
Algal growth potential, filtered and spiked with 1.0 mg/L N
Algal growth potential, filtered and spiked with 1.0 mg/L N and 0.05 mg/L P

Algal growth potential, unfiltered (mg/L): 70988
Algal growth potential, unfiltered and spiked with 0.05 mg/L P
Algal growth potential, unfiltered and spiked with 1.0 mg/L N
Algal growth potential, unfiltered and spiked with 1.0 mg/L N and 0.05 mg/L P

1. Applications

The method is suitable for all freshwater and is similar to the original method developed by Oswald and Golveke (1966) and the method developed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1978).

2. Summary of method

2.1 A water sample is autoclaved or filtered, or both, and placed in a covered Erlenmeyer flask. This sample is inoculated with the test algal species and incubated under constant temperature and light intensity until the rate of growth is less than 5 percent per day. The number of algal cells and the mean cell volume are determined using an electronic particle counter (fig. 66), and these values are used to determine the maximum standing crop.

2.2 The electronic particle counter has been used for counting and sizing nonfilamentous unialgal species (Hastings and others, 1962; El-Sayed and Lee, 1963). Operation of the counter is as follows: The algal cells, which are relatively poor electrical conductors, are suspended in an electrolyte solution, and as they pass through a small aperture, each cell causes a voltage drop that is recorded as a count. The height of the pulse resulting from the voltage drop is proportional to cell volume. The knowledge of the cell number per unit volume of sample and the change in mean cell volume enable standing crop to be measured reproducibly and accurately.

3. Interferences

3.1 Particles in the counting medium (for example, dust or lint) may block the aperture of the electronic particle counter or may cause false counts. These interferences are eliminated by passing all media and water samples through a 0.22-μm pore size, low-water extractable, membrane filter. Samples for the analysis should be collected in a nonmetallic sampler because certain metals in a metallic sampler may affect results.

3.2 Autoclaving may cause precipitation of certain constituents in the sample and increase the pH. These precipitates may not be irreversible. The sample often may be clarified by exposing it to 1 percent carbon dioxide plus air until the original pH is restored.

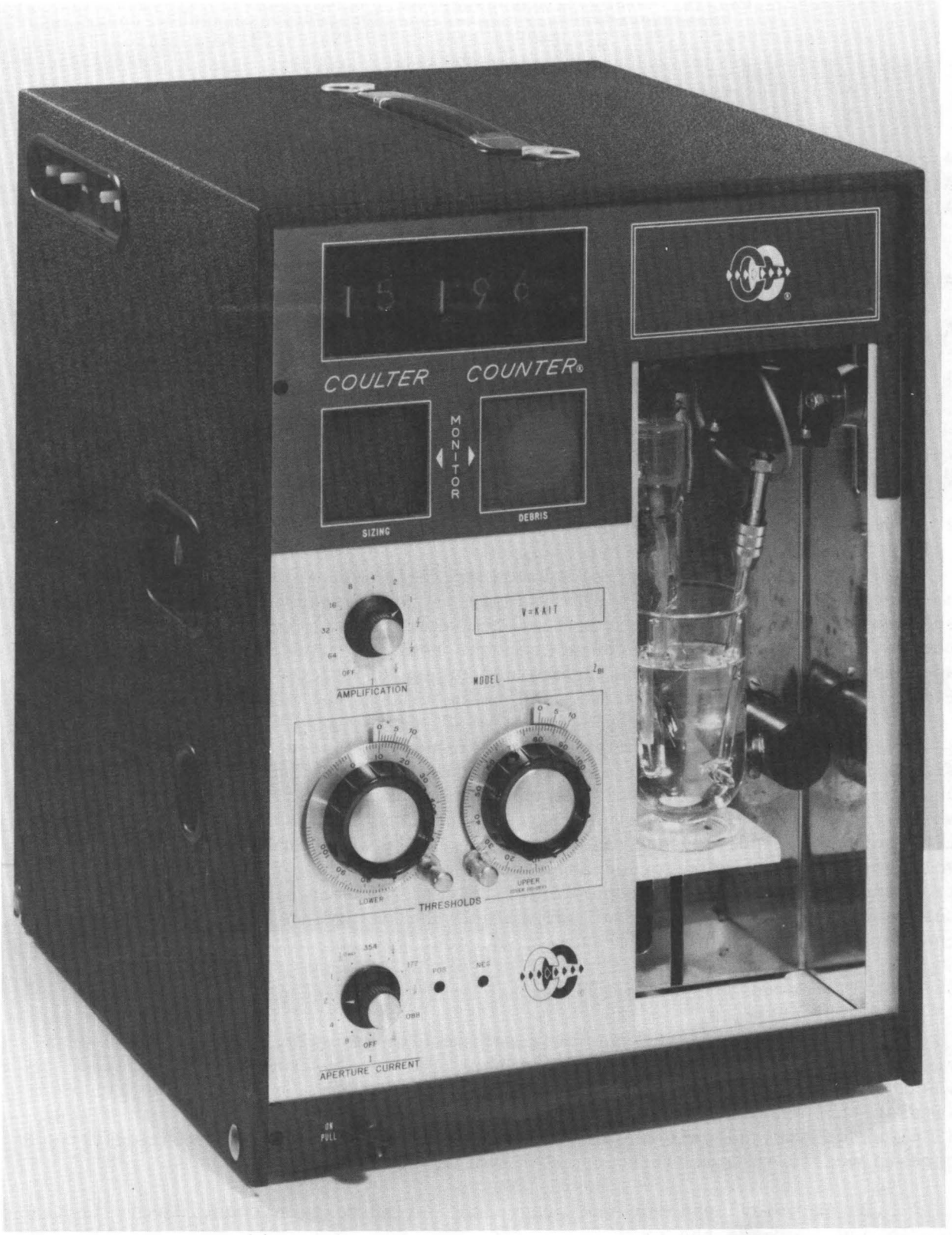


Figure 66.--Electronic particle counter (photograph courtesy of Coulter Electronics, Inc., Hialeah, Fla.).

4. Apparatus

Most of the materials and apparatus listed in this section are available from scientific supply companies.

4.1 Centrifuge, either swing-out or fixed-head cup-type, 3,000 to 4,000 r/min, 15- to 50-mL conical or 100-mL pear-shaped centrifuge tubes, and simple siphoning or suction device to remove excess fluid after centrifugation.

4.2 Electronic particle counter and mean cell volume accessory that has 100-µm aperture tube and a 500-µL manometer.

4.3 Environmental chamber (walk-in), that has temperature control (24±2 °C) and illumination (cool, white fluorescent that provides 4,300 lumens/m^2).

4.4 Onsite filtration apparatus, nonmetallic, and vacuum apparatus.

4.5 Flasks, Erlenmeyer, 250 mL, covered with 50-mL beakers, both glass, and prepared as follows. Wash using detergent and rinse thoroughly using tap water. Rinse using a 10-percent hydrochloric acid (HCl) solution by swirling the HCl solution so the entire inner surface of the flask is coated. The flasks then are rinsed thoroughly using particle-free distilled or deionized water (filtered through a 0.22-µm membrane filter) and covered with the 50-mL beakers. Autoclave at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 20 minutes, and dry in an oven at 50 °C. Sterilized flasks and beakers must be stored in closed cabinets until used.

4.6 Laboratory filtration apparatus, sterile, disposable.

4.7 Membrane filters, 0.22-µm pore size, 47-mm diameter, low-water extractable.

4.8 Oven, for use at 50 °C.

4.9 pH meter.

4.10 Pipets and disposable tips, 0.1- and 1-mL capacities.

4.12 Refrigerator(s), without circulation blower.

4.12 Sample container, linear polyethlene bottles, 1 L.

4.13 Shaker, rotatory, capable of 120 oscillations per minute.

4.14 Sterilizer, horizontal steam autoclave, or vertical steam autoclave.

CAUTION.--If vertical autoclaves or pressure cookers are used, they need to be equipped with an accurate pressure gauge, a thermometer with the bulb 2.5 cm above the water level, automatic thermostatic control, metal air-release tubing for quick exhaust of air in the sterilizer, metal-to-metal-seal

eliminating gaskets, automatic pressure-release valve, and clamping locks preventing removal of lid while pressure exists. These features are necessary in maintaining sterilization conditions and decreasing safety hazards.

To obtain adequate sterilization, do not overload sterilizer. Use a sterilization indicator to ensure that the correct combination of time, temperature, and saturated steam has been obtained.

4.15 Vacuum pump.

4.16 Water-sampling bottle, Van-Dorn type. Depth-integrating samplers are described in Guy and Norman (1970).

5. Reagents

Most of the reagents listed in this section are available from chemical supply companies.

5.1 Aperture cleaner. Bleach or nitric acid may be used, but aperture tube should be removed when these are used.

5.2 Calcium chloride solution. Dissolve 2.205 g calcium chloride ($CaCl_2 \cdot H_2O$) in 500 mL distilled water.

5.3 Cultures of test alga, Selenastrum capricornutum Printz. The culture medium is prepared in the following manner. Add 1 mL each of sodium nitrate ($NaNO_3$), magnesium sulfate ($MgSO_4$), magnesium chloride ($MgCl_2$), sodium bicarbonate ($NaHCO_3$), calcium chloride ($CaCl_2$), micronutrient, and potassium phosphate (K_2HPO_4) solutions, in the order listed, to 900 mL distilled water, and then dilute to 1 L. Filter the medium through a membrane filter (0.22-μm mean pore size) at 25 cm mercury. Place about 100 mL in 250-mL Erlenmeyer flasks rinsed with filtered culture medium and cover with a 50-mL beaker. Autoclave the prepared flasks at 121 °C at 1.05 kg/cm^2 (15 psi) for 30 minutes and allow to equilibrate for 12 hours in the environmental chamber. Store extra culture medium at 0 to 5 °C until used.

The cultures used for inoculum are maintained by weekly transferring an aliquot of a 7- to 10-day-old culture to new media. The quantity of culture maintained depends on the conditions necessary to provide an adequate supply of algal cells at the proper growth stage for the AGP test. Extreme care must be used to prevent contamination of stock cultures.

Media that contain 1-percent agar are used to maintain stock cultures for a long period of time. Cultures on agar should be prepared every 6 to 8 weeks. The algal transfer should be streaked on the agar to isolate colonies. A clean colony should be transferred every 6 weeks to culture medium that is five times the strength 1-percent agar, and this (5X) culture should be transferred to the (1X) medium in about 2 weeks to reestablish fresh inoculum. Seven- to ten-day-old liquid cultures always should be used to provide inoculum for the AGP test.

5.4 Distilled or deionized water. Filter if in doubt about the water being particle free.

5.5 Hydrochloric acid (HCl), 10 percent.

5.6 Magnesium chloride solution. Dissolve 6.082 g $MgCl_2 \cdot 6H_2O$ in 500 mL distilled water.

5.7 Magnesium sulfate solution. Dissolve 3.593 g $MgSO_4$ in 500 mL distilled water.

5.8 Micronutrient solution. Dissolve 92.76 mg H_3BO_4, 207.69 mg $MnCl_2 \cdot 4H_2O$, 1.64 mg $ZnCl_2$, 79.88 mg $FeCl_3 \cdot 6H_2O$, 150 mg $Na_2EDTA \cdot 2H_2O$ (ethylenediaminetetraacetate) 0.39 mg $CoCl_2$, 3.63 mg $NaMoO_4 \cdot 2H_2O$, and 5.7 µg $CuCl_2 \cdot 2H_2O$ in 500 mL distilled water.

5.9 Potassium phosphate solution (particle free). Dissolve 0.522 g K_2HPO_4 in 500 mL distilled water. Filter the solution.

5.10 Potassium phosphate solution. Dissolve 143 mg K_2HPO_4 in 500 mL distilled water (for spike).

5.11 Saline solution (diluent), particle-free.

5.12 Sodium bicarbonate solution. Dissolve 7.5 g $NaHCO_3$ in 500 mL distilled water.

5.13 Sodium nitrate solution (particle free). Dissolve 12.75 g $NaNO_3$ in 500 mL distilled water.

5.14 Sodium nitrate solution. Dissolve 303.4 mg $NaNO_3$ in 500 mL distilled water (for spike). Filter the solution.

6. Analysis

6.1 Depending on type of analysis requested, AGP for dissolved substances with or without spikes or AGP for digested sample (autoclaved) with or without spikes, filter 100-mL aliquots of sample to provide each test, 6.3 to 6.6, with three replicate flasks. (Prepare filter by filtering 100 mL through each filter to saturate filter; use filtrate to wash replicate flasks. Filter vacuum should not exceed 25 cm mercury.)

6.2 Prepare one replicate for each sample to be used as an uninoculated batch control to determine particle background of sample.

6.3 Prepare three flasks to be used as controls for the following spikes or to provide the basic AGP test.

6.4 Add 1 mL potassium phoshate solution to three of the flasks.

6.5 Add 1 mL sodium nitrate solution to three more of the flasks.

6.6 Add 1 mL sodium nitrate solution and 1 mL potassium phosphate solution to each of three more flasks.

6.7 Place the covered flasks in the environmental chamber for temperature equilibration at 24 °C for at least 12 hours.

6.8 Rinse algal inoculum (see 5.3) free of culture medium using the following procedure: Place 30 mL in two 50-mL centrifuge tubes, cover, and centrifuge at 5,000 r/min for 5 minutes. Decant the supernatant and add 30 mL of filtered distilled water and resuspend the cells. Repeat the centrifugation and decantation step. Add 10 mL filtered distilled water and resuspend the cells. Combine tube contents. Mix.

6.9 Determine the concentration of the algal particles using the electronic particle counter. (Final concentration should be about 10×10^6 cells/mL).

6.10 Pipet a volume of the cell suspension into each of the sets of test samples in the flasks to make a final concentration in the test water of about 10,000 particles (cells) per milliliter.

6.11 Place the flasks (inoculated replicates plus uninoculated control) in the environmental chamber on a rotatory shaker at 120 oscillations per minute and expose to constant illumination of 4,300 lumens/m^2 produced by cool, white fluorescent tubes.

6.12 Incubate 3 to 4 days counting the number of cells in the flasks each day; thereafter, count until the growth rate is less than or equal to 5 percent per day.

7. Calculations

Maximum standing crop is determined when the increase in algal density (cells per unit volume) is less than 5 percent per day and is defined as milligram(s) dry weight algae per liter by the following equation:

$$\text{cells/mL} \times \underline{\text{MCV}} \times 2.5\times10^{-7} \times \text{dilution factor}$$

$$= \frac{\text{micrograms dry weight per liter}}{1000} = \text{milligrams dry weight per liter ,}$$

where cells/mL = coincident corrected cell count per milliliter (determined by the electronic particle counter);

$\underline{\text{MCV}}$ = mean cell volume (determined by mean cell volume accessory), in cubic micrometers;

2.5×10^{-7} = factor to convert maximum standing crop to dry weight of algal biomass (determined gravimetrically). The 2.5×10^{-7} conversion factor was determined by dividing the known total cell volume of Selenastrum capricornutum Printz culture in artificial media into the gravimetric dry weight measured from the corresponding cell suspension. The factors should be determined for each laboratory performing the analysis. As a maintenance function, recompute these factors every 6 months. Question calculations and experimental procedure if the new factor is not within ±2 to 3×10^{-7}; and

Dilution factor = dilution of algal cells from pure culture using particle-free saline solution for proper counting.

This equation is valid only when MCV has been determined using an electronic particle counter calibrated using an appropriate reference particle.

8. Reporting of results

Report maximum standing crop, in milligram(s) dry weight algae per liter, as follows: two significant figures.

9. Precision

The precision is dependent on the biomass of Selenastrum capricornutum produced. For typical samples, the precision is approximately ±10 percent.

Examples of growth responses of Selenastrum capricornutum and chemical analyses in nitrogen- and phosphorus-limited water are listed in tables 18 to 21 in the "Supplemental Information" subsection at the back of this section.

Table 18.--Growth responses representative of phosphorus limitation

[Adapted from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1978]

Sample treatment	Maximum standing crop (milligrams dry weight per liter)
Control	2.16
Control + 0.05 milligrams per liter phosphorus	5.81
Control + 1.0 milligrams per liter nitrogen	2.30
Control + 0.05 milligrams per liter phosphorus and 1.0 milligrams per liter nitrogen	23.69

Table 19.--Chemical analysis of phosphorus-limited control test water and predicted phosphorus and nitrogen yields of Selenastrum capricornutum

[Adapted from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1978]

Nutrient	Predicted yield[1] (milligrams per liter)
0.021 milligrams per liter total phosphorus .006 milligrams per liter orthophosphorus	= 0.006 × [2]430 = 2.58 ±20 percent
.368 milligrams per liter total nitrogen .120 milligrams per liter nitrate plus nitrite as nitrogen .040 milligrams per liter ammonia as nitrogen .160 milligrams per liter nitrite plus nitrate plus ammonia as nitrogen	= 0.160 × [2]38 = 6.10 ±20 percent
27:1 N:P ratio	

[1]Predicted yield of Selenastrum capricornutum based on soluble inorganic phosphorus or nitrogen concentrations in the test water if all other essential nutrients are present in excess.

[2]Yield coefficients of 430 and 38 determined experimentally by Miller and others (1978) and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1978).

Table 20.--Growth responses representative of nitrogen limitation

[Adapted from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1978]

Sample treatment	Maximum standing crop (milligrams dry weight per liter)
Control	4.06
Control + 0.05 milligrams per liter phosphorus	4.21
Control + 1.0 milligrams per liter nitrogen	12.68
Control + 1.0 milligrams per liter phosphorus and 1.0 milligrams per liter nitrogen	34.52

Table 21.--Chemical analysis of nitrogen-limited control test water and predicted phosphorus and nitrogen yields of Selenastrum capricornutum

[Adapted from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1978]

Nutrient	Predicted yield[1] (milligrams per liter)
0.072 milligrams per liter total phosphorus .030 milligrams per liter orthophosphorus .160 milligrams per liter total nitrogen .055 milligrams per liter nitrate plus nitrite as nitrogen .020 milligrams per liter ammonia as nitrogen .075 milligrams per liter nitrite plus nitrate plus ammonia as nitrogen 2.5:1 N:P ratio	= 0.030 × [2]430 = 12.90 ±20 percent = 0.075 × [2]38 = 2.85 ±20 percent

[1]Predicted yield of Selenastrum capricornutum based on soluble inorganic phosphorus or nitrogen concentrations in the test water if all other essential nutrients are present in excess.

[2]Yield coefficients of 430 and 38 determined experimentally by Miller and others (1978) and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1978).

10. References cited

Boyd, C. E., 1973, Biotic interactions between different species of algae: Weed Science, v. 21, p. 32-37.

El-Sayed, S. Z., and Lee, B. D., 1963, Evaluation of an automatic technique for counting unicellular organisms: Journal of Marine Research, v. 21, p. 59-73.

Goldman, C. R., 1972, The role of minor nutrients in limiting the productivity of aquatic ecosystems, in Likens, G. E., ed., Nutrients and euthrophication--The limiting nutrient controversy: American Society of Limnology and Oceanography Special Symposia, v. 1, p. 21-40.

Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, bk. 3, chap. C2, 59 p.

Hastings, J. W., Sweeney, B. M., and Mullin, M. W., 1962, Counting and sizing of unicellular marine organisms: Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, v. 99, p. 280-289.

Miller, W. E., Greene, J. C., Merwin, E. A., and Shiroyama, T., 1978, Algal bioassay techniques for pollution evaluation, in Toxic materials in the aquatic environment: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Water Resources Research Institute, SEMIN WR 024-78, p. 9-16.

Oswald, W. J., and Golveke, E. G., 1966, Euthrophication trends in the United States--A problem: Water Pollution Control Federation Journal, v. 38, no. 6, p. 964-975.

U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1978, The Selenastrum capricornutum Printz algal assay bottle test: Corvallis, Oreg., 155 p.

Supplemental Information

The kind of responses that can be expected when phosphorus and nitrogen are limiting are listed in tables 18 and 20. There is no significant increase in maximum standing crop (MSC) when nitrogen is added alone; however, the phosphorus spike produced more than double the MSC of the control. The combined spike of phosphorus and nitrogen increased growth even more, indicating that the phosphorus spike was large enough that, when added alone, it caused nitrogen to become the limiting nutrient in the medium.

The yield coefficients 430 and 38 listed in table 19 to predict the MSC were developed by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1978). The ratio of these factors is about 11:1 and is considered to be the optimum N:P ratio. A ratio of greater than 11:1 indicates probable phosphorus limitation, and a ratio of less than 11:1 indicates probable nitrogen limitation. The ratio of total soluble inorganic nitrogen to orthophosphorus is 27:1 (table 19), a strong indication of phosphorus limitation. The assay response confirms this prediction.

Comparing the predicted results in table 19 and the growth response in table 18 indicates that the growth of the control (2.16 MSC) corresponds with (within the stipulated confidence limits) the predicted result of 2.58 MSC. The control and phosphorus spikes (5.81 MSC) correspond with the predicted results based on total soluble inorganic nitrogen (6.10 MSC), again clearly indicating phosphorus limitation and indicating that by adding 0.05 mg/L of phosphorus, the system was nitrogen limited.

A representative growth response and chemical analysis for a system that is nitrogen limited is listed in tables 20 and 21. The N:P ratio is less than 11:1 (2.5:1). The predicted yield based on the orthophosphorus concentration is 12.90 MSC and 2.85 MSC based on the total soluble inorganic nitrogen. No significant increase occurs in the sample when a phosphorus spike is added. The nitrogen spike produces an MSC that corresponds with that predicted by the phosphorus concentration, and the combined spike produces a threefold increase in the MSC, indicating that, by adding the nitrogen spike, the system has been changed to one that is phosphorus limited.

When a test water does not attain the predicted yields and nutrient spikes do not cause an increase in MSC, one of the following causes should be investigated: (1) Some other nutrient instead of phosphorus or nitrogen was limiting; (2) chemical analysis for orthophosphorus and total soluble nitrogen was inaccurate; or (3) toxicants were present.

Phosphorus limitation is the most usual case. Nitrogen limitation is not as common. Trace-element limitation is rare but has been documented (Goldman, 1972). The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (1978) indicates that less than 2 percent of all water is trace-element limited. This method does not describe trace-element limitation, nor does it describe toxicity. With modification, this method can be used to detect trace-element limitation and the presence of toxic substances.

PART 2: GLOSSARY

[n, noun; pl, plural; adj, adjective; v, verb; sing, singular]

Acarina, acari (n, pl).--An Order of Arachnoidea that includes mites and ticks.

Accuracy (n).--A measure of the degree of conformity of a value generated by a specific procedure for the true value. The concept of accuracy includes precision and bias (American Society for Testing and Materials, 1980).

Aerobe (n), aerobic (adj).--An organism living or growing only in the presence of free oxygen.

Agar (n).--A gelatinous substance derived from seaweed and used as a base for culture media.

AGP (n).--Abbreviation for algal growth potential, the maximum quantity of algae that a water body can sustain.

Alga, algae (n), algal (adj).--A group of plants, mostly aquatic, single-celled, colonial, or multicelled, containing chlorophyll and lacking roots, stems, and leaves.

Algal bloom (n).--A large number of a particular algal species.

Allochthonous (adj).--Originating outside the area being studied. Also see autochthonous.

Amino acid (n).--A class of nitrogen-containing organic compounds, large numbers of which become linked together to form proteins.

Anaerobe (n), anaerobic (adj).--An organism living or growing in the absence of free oxygen.

Aquatic (adj).--Pertaining to water; aquatic organisms, such as phytoplankton or fish, live in or on water.

Assimilation (n).--The total rate of organic matter used by heterotrophs; secondary productivity plus respiration and other losses. Also see secondary productivity.

ATP (n).--Abbreviation for adenosine triphosphate, an organic, phosphate-rich compound, important in the transfer of energy in organisms.

Autochthonous (adj).--Originating within the area. Also see allochthonous.

Autotroph (n), autotrophic (adj).--An organism, such as an alga, in which organic matter is synthesized from inorganic substances, commonly by the process of photosynthesis.

Bacterium, bacteria (n), bacterial (adj).--Microscopic unicellular organisms, typically spherical, rod-like, or spiral and threadlike in shape, often clumped into colonies. Some bacteria cause disease, and others perform an essential role in the recycling of materials; for example, by decomposing organic matter into a form available for reuse by plants.

Benthic invertebrate (n).--An invertebrate of the benthos.

Benthos (n), benthic (adj).--The community of organsims living in or on the bottom of an aquatic environment.

Bias (n).--A persistent positive or negative deviation of the average value of the method from the true value (American Society for Testing and Materials, 1980).

Bioassay (n).--The use of living organisms to test the effects of a substance. Also see toxicity bioassay.

Biology (n), biological (adj).--The science or study of life.

Biomass (n).--The quantity of living matter present at any given time, expressed as the number or weight per unit area or volume of habitat. Same as standing crop.

Biotic community (n).--All the plant and animal populations living together in a habitat and functioning as a unit by virtue of food and other relations.

Blackfly (n).--See simuliidae.

Bloom (n).--See algal bloom.

Botany (n).--The science or study of plants.

Broth medium (n).--A liquid mixture of defined composition used to provide nourishment for the growth of micro-organisms in culture.

Bryophyta (n, pl), bryophyte (n).--The division of the plant kingdom containing mosses and liverworts.

Carnivore (n).--An organism that obtains its nourishment by consuming animals; includes many types of fish and aquatic insects.

Chemosynthesis (n), chemosynthetic (adj).--A chemical synthesis of organic compounds in bacteria by energy derived from oxidation-reduction reactions of mineral compounds.

Chironomidae (n, pl), chironomid (n).--A family of the insect Order Diptera that includes midges.

Chlorophyll (n).--The green pigments of plants.

Class (n).--The taxonomic category below phylum, consisting of orders. Also see taxonomy.

Coliform bacteria (n).--A particular group of bacteria used as indicators of possible sewage pollution. They formally are characterized as aerobic and facultative anaerobic, gram-negative, nonspore-forming, rod-shaped bacteria that ferment lactose and form gas at 35 °C within 48 hours.

Community (n).--Any naturally occurring group of different organisms inhabiting a common environment and interacting with one another through food relations.

Compensation level or depth (n).--The depth of water at which gross photosynthesis (oxygen production) balances respiration (oxygen uptake) during a 24-hour period.

Concentration (n).--The weight or number per unit volume or area of a water-quality constituent or characteristic.

Culture (n, v).--Cultivation of or act of cultivating living material, such as micro-organisms, in nutrient medium; any inoculated nutrient medium whether or not it contains living organisms.

Culture medium (n).--See nutrient medium.

Denitrification (n).--The biochemical reduction of nitrates and nitrites during the oxidation of organic matter and the evolution of gaseous nitrogen.

Detritivore (n).--An animal that obtains its nourishment by consuming organic detritus; includes many types of aquatic insects.

Detritus (n).--Fragmented material of inorganic or organic origin.

Diatom (n).--A unicellular or colonial alga having a siliceous shell.

Diel (adj).--Relating to a 24-hour period that usually includes a day and the adjoining night.

Diurnal (adj).--Relating to daytime or something recurring every day, commonly used as a synonym for diel.

Division (n).--The primary taxonomic category of the plant kingdom, consisting of classes. Also see taxonomy.

Dorsum (n), dorsal (adj).--The upper surface of an organism. Also see ventrum.

Dredge (n).--An instrument pulled across or through the bottom of a lake or stream to sample the benthos. Also see grab.

Ecology (n), ecologic(al) (adj).--The science or study of the relation of organisms or groups of organisms to their environment.

Ecosystem (n).--The community of plants and animals interacting together and with the physical and chemical environment.

Emersed plant (n).--A rooted, aquatic plant that has leaves or other structures extending above the water surface (sometimes called emergent plant).

Environment (n).--The sum of all the external physical, chemical, and biological conditions that affect the life and development of an organism.

Epilimnion (n).--The upper, relatively warm, circulating zone of water in a thermally stratified lake. Also see hypolimnion, metalimnion, and thermocline.

Euphotic zone (n).--That part of the aquatic environment in which the light is sufficient for photosynthesis; commonly considered to be that part of a water body in which the intensity of underwater light equals or exceeds 1 percent of the intensity of surface light.

Eutrophication (n), eutrophic (adj).--Enrichment of water, a natural process that may be accelerated by the activities of man; pertaining to water in which primary production is intense as a consequence of a large supply of available nutrients. Also see oligotrophic.

Facultative (adj).--Able to live and grow in many different environments. Also see obligate.

Family (n).--The taxonomic category below order consisting of genera. Also see taxonomy.

Fauna (n), faunal (adj).--A collective term for all the kinds of animals in an area. Also see flora.

Fecal coliform bacteria (n).--That part of the coliform group that is present in the gut or the feces of warm-blooded animals; they are indicators of possible sewage pollution.

Fecal streptococcal bacteria (n).--A particular group of bacteria found in the gut of warm-blooded animals; their presence in natural water verifies fecal pollution. They are formally characterized as gram-positive, cocci bacteria that are capable of growth in brain-heart infusion broth either at 45 °C and 10 °C (the enterococci species) or at 45 °C only (Streptococcus bovis and S. equinus).

Flagellum, flagella (n).--A fine, long, thread-like structure having lashing or undulating movement, projecting from a cell; it is used for locomotion.

Flora (n), floral (adj).--A collective term for all the kinds of plants in an area. Also see fauna.

Food chain (n).--The transfer of food energy from the source in plants through a series of organisms through repeated eating and being eaten (Odum, 1971). Also see food web.

Food web (n).--The interconnecting pattern of food chains. Also see food chain.

Formalin (n).--A clear, aqueous solution containing about 37 percent formaldehyde by volume and 5 to 10 percent methyl alcohol; when diluted with water, it is used as a general biological preservative.

Fungus, fungi (n).--Plants lacking chlorophyll, including molds, yeast, mildews, rusts, and mushrooms. Fungi derive their nourishment directly from other organisms (parasitic fungi) or from dead organic matter (saprophytic fungi).

Genus, genera (n), generic (adj).--The taxonomic categories below family, consisting of species; the first part of the scientific name of organisms. Also see taxonomy.

Generation (n).--A group of organisms about the same age.

Generation time (n).--The period of time between the origin of a generation of organisms and the origin of their offspring.

Grab (n).--An instrument designed to bite into the bottom sediment of a lake or stream to sample the benthos. Also see dredge.

Greenhouse effect (n).--An increase in temperature within a glass or plastic enclosure ascribed to entrance of short-wave radiation into the enclosure; whereas, long-wave radiation from heated objects within the enclosure is absorbed by the glass or plastic. Thus, solar energy enters but is unable to leave.

Grid (n).--An imaginary or measured, usually rectangular, arrangement of lines used to delineate an area for sampling.

Grid sampling (n).--A sampling scheme in which the area to be investigated is subdivided into equal-size units and from which the units to be sampled are selected randomly.

Gross primary productivity (n).--The total rate at which organic matter is formed by photosynthesis, including the organic matter used in respiration during the period of measurement. The term is synonymous with gross primary production, total photosynthesis, and total assimilation.

Growth (n).--The increase in biomass by synthesis of living matter.

Growth medium (n).--See nutrient medium.

Habitat (n).--The place where an organism lives.

Hemacytometer (n).--A thin-walled glass chamber used for counting very small cells or organisms using a high-power microscope objective.

Herbivore (n).--An organism that obtains its nourishment by consuming plants.

Heterotroph (n), heterotrophic (adj).--An organism that requires organic material as a source of nutrition; this includes all types of animals and many types of bacteria.

Holdfast (n).--A structure by which an organism attaches to a substrate.

Hydrobiology (n).--The science or study of life in water.

Hypolimnion (n).--The lower, relatively cold, noncirculating water zone in a thermally stratified lake. Also see epilimnion, metalimnion, and theromocline.

Incubation (n).--Maintenance of organisms in conditions favorable for growth and development.

Interpretive (adj).--A type of sampling program or study designed to collect information useful when describing a system and cause-and-effect relations within the system.

Invertebrate (n).--An animal that does not have a backbone. Common aquatic examples include worms, insects, snails, and crayfish.

Kingdom (n).--The highest biological classification category. Also see taxonomy.

Larva, larvae (n), larval (adj).--An active, immature stage of an animal during which its bodily form differs from that of the adult. Also see nymph.

Lentic (adj).--Of or pertaining to nonflowing water; for example, a lake or pond.

Life history (n).--The environmental relations of an organism, including distribution, morphology, growth, reproduction, and behavior.

Light injury (n).--Physiological damage resulting from exposure of an organism, usually a plant, to a light intensity greater than that to which the organism was adapted.

Limnetic zone (n).--The open-water zone of a water body above the compensation level.

Limnology (n).--The science or study of inland water; the ecology of inland water.

Littoral (n, adj).--Pertaining to the shallow zone of a body of water where light penetrates to the bottom.

Liverwort (n).--See bryophyta.

Lotoc (adj).--Of or pertaining to flowing water; for example, a river or creek.

Macroinvertebrate (n).--An invertebrate, usually a benthic organism, that is retained on a U.S. Standard no. 30 sieve (0.595-mm mesh opening).

Macrophyte (n).--Large plants that can be seen without magnification; includes mosses and seed plants.

Medium (n).--See nutrient medium.

Membrane filter (n).--A thin, microporous material of specific pore size used to filter bacteria, algae, and other very small particles from water.

Metabolism (n).--The chemical processes of living cells by which energy is derived and material is assimilated.

Metalimnion (n), metalimnetic (adj).--The middle layer of water in a thermally stratified lake in which temperature decreases rapidly with increasing depth. Also see epilimnion, hypolimnion, and thermocline.

Metamorphosis (n), metamorphic (adj).--The period of rapid transformation from larval to adult form.

Microseston (n).--The suspended matter in water that will pass through a 150- to 350-µm mesh. Also see seston.

Midge (n).--See chironomidae.

Mite (n).--See acari.

Monitoring (n).--A type of sample or program designed to determine time trends.

Morphology (n), morphological (adj).--The study of a life form; the physical attributes of an organism.

Morphometry (n), morphometric (adj).--The measurement of external form.

Moss (n).--See bryophyta.

Nekton (n).--Actively swimming aquatic organisms, such as fish.

Net community productivity (n).--The rate of storage of organic matter not used by the organisms in the environmental area being studied during the period of measurement; net primary productivity minus heterotrophic use.

Net primary productivity (n).--The rate of storage of photosynthetically produced organic matter in plant tissues in excess of the respiratory use by the plants during the measurement period. The term is synonymous with apparent photosynthesis, net photosynthesis, and net assimilation.

Neuston (n).--Organisms living on or under the surface film of water.

Niche (n).--The location and ecological function of an organism in the environment.

Nitrification (n).--The biological formation of nitrate or nitrite from compounds containing reduced nitrogen.

Nutrient (n).--Any chemical element, ion, or compound that is required by an organism for the continuation of growth, for reproduction, and for other life processes.

Nutrient medium, nutrient media (n).--A chemical mixture of defined composition used to provide nourishment for the growth of micro-organisms in culture. The medium may be in liquid form, called broth, or may be solidified using agar.

Nymph (n), nymphal (adj).--An immature stage of an insect that resembles the adult stage in bodily form. Also see larvae.

Obligate (adj).--Restricted to living and growing in a single environment. Also see facultative.

Oligotrophic (adj).--Pertaining to water in which primary production is small as a consequence of a small supply of available nutrients. Also see eutrophic.

Order (n).--The taxonomic category below class consisting of families. Also see taxonomy.

Organism (n).--Any living entity.

Pathogen (n), pathogenic (adj).--A disease-causing organism.

Periphyton (n), periphytic (adj).--The community of micro-organisms that are attached to or live on submerged surfaces.

Phaeopigment (n).--The degradation product of chlorophyll.

Photoperiod (n).--The duration of daylight during a 24-hour period.

Photosynthesis (n), photosynthetic (adj).--A biochemical synthesis of carbohydrates from water and carbon dioxide in the chlorophyll-containing tissues of plants in the presence of light.

Phylum, phyla (n).--The primary taxonomic category of the animal kingdom, consisting of classes. Also see taxonomy.

Phytoplankter (n).--An individual phytoplanktonic organism.

Phytoplankton (n), phytoplanktonic (adj).--The plant part of the plankton.

Plankter (n).--An individual planktonic organism.

Plankton (n), planktonic (adj).--The community of suspended or floating organisms that drift passively with water currents.

Poikilothermic organism (n).--An animal whose body temperature approximates that of the environment; commonly called cold blooded.

Pollution (n).--"***an undesirable change in the physical, chemical, or biological characteristics of our air, land, and water that may or will harmfully affect human life or that of other desirable species, our industrial process, living conditions, and cultural assets; or that may or will waste or deteriorate our raw material resources***" (National Academy of Sciences--National Research Council, Committee on Pollution, 1966, p. 3). Also see water pollution.

Population (n).--A group of interacting and interbreeding individuals of the same type living in a common habitat and having little reproductive contact with other groups of the same species.

Precision (n).--The degree of conformity of repeated measurements of the same parameter expressed quantitatively as the standard deviation computed from the results of a series of controlled determinations (American Society for Testing and Materials, 1980).

Primary productivity (n).--The rate at which radiant energy is stored by photosynthetic and chemosynthetic activity of producer organisms (chiefly green plants) in the form of organic substances that can be used as food materials (Odum, 1971, p. 43). Also see gross primary productivity, net primary productivity, net community productivity, and secondary productivity.

Production (n).--The total quantity of living matter produced in an area per unit time. Also see primary productivity and secondary productivity.

Profundal (adj).--Referring to the deep-water zone of a water body in which plant growth is limited by the absence of light.

Protein (n).--A complex nitrogenous substance of plant or animal origin formed from amino acids; essential constituent of all living cells.

Protista (n).--A biological kingdom consisting of unicellular (single-celled) organisms.

Protoplast (n).--The living contents of a cell; the nucleus, cytoplasm, and plasma membrane that constitute a living unit.

Protozoa (n, pl), protozoan (n).--Single-celled microscopic organisms of the phylum Protozoa.

Pupa, pupae (n), pupal (adj).--The inactive stage of certain insects during which the larva transforms into the adult. Also see larvae.

Random (n, adj).--The nonuniform, haphazard distribution of organisms in the environment.

Random sample (n).--A sample collected from a population or an area using an unbiased procedure so every part of the population or area has an equal chance of being sampled.

Reconnaissance (n, adj).--A type of sample or program designed to determine the present status of something; a preliminary survey.

Respiration (n).--A life process in which carbon compounds are oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, and the released energy is used in metabolic processes.

Rotifera (n, pl), rotifer (n).--The phylum containing microscopic organisms that swim and feed by means of a ciliated hand; also known as the wheel.

Sample (n).--A small, separated part of something that is representative of the whole.

Saproplankton (n).--The bacteria and fungi of the plankton.

Secondary productivity (n).--The rate of increase of organic matter in the heterotrophs of the community; assimilation minus respiration and other losses. Also see assimilation and primary productivity.

Sediment (n).--Fragmental material, mineral and organic, that is in suspension or is transported by the water mass or has been deposited on the bottom of the aquatic environment.

Seine (n).--A net used for collecting fish and other large aquatic animals.

Sessile (adj).--Pertaining to an organism that is attached to an object.

Seston (n).--The total particulate matter suspended in water.

Simuliidae (n, pl), simuliid (n).--A family of the insect Order Diptera that includes blackflies.

Species (n. sing., n. pl.).--The basic unit for the classification of organisms; the taxonomic category below genus, and the second part of the scientific name of an organism. Also see taxonomy. The biological concept of species, in contrast to the purely taxonomic concept, has been defined by Mayr (1940) as "***a group of actually or potentially interbreeding organisms reproductively isolated from other such groups of interbreeding organisms."

Specimen (n).--A part or individual used as a sample of a whole or group; an organism used for study.

Standing crop (n).--The quantity of living matter present at any given time, reported as the number or weight per unit area or volume of habitat. Same as biomass.

Statistical population (n).--The whole aggregate of something in an area being sampled.

Stratified water (n).--A body of water having a series of horizontal strata. Also see thermal stratification.

Submersed plant (n).--An aquatic macrophyte that completes its life cycle and lives entirely below the surface of the water (sometimes called submerged or submergent).

Substrate (n).--The physical surface on which something lives.

Suspended sediment (n).--Fragmental material, mineral and organic, that is maintained in suspension in water by turbulence and currents or by colloidal suspension.

Taxon, taxa (n).--Any classification category of organisms, such as phylum, class, order, or species.

Taxonomy (n).--The division of biology concerned with the classification and naming of organisms; synonymous with systematic biology. The classification of organisms is based on a hierarchical scheme beginning with the species at the base. The higher the classification level, the fewer features the organisms have in common. Also see species. As an example, the taxonomy of the common stonefly, Pteronarcys californica is as follows:

Kingdom	Animal
Phylum	Arthropoda
Class	Insecta
Order	Piecovtera
Family	Pteronarcidae
Genus	Pteronarcys
Species	californica
Scientific name	Pteronarcys californica

Thermal stratification (n).--A temperature distribution characteristic of many lakes in which the water is separated into three horizontal layers: a warm epilimnion at the surface, a metalimnion in which the temperature gradient is steep, and a cold hypolimnion at the bottom.

Thermocline (n).--The plane of maximum rate of temperature decrease in a thermally stratified lake, sometimes used as a synonym for metalimnion. See also epilimnion and hypolimnion.

Toxicity bioassay (n).--Determination of the potency of a toxic substance by measuring the intensity of a biological response. Also see bioassay.

Transect sampling (n).--A sampling scheme in which a longitudinal or transverse section of a stream or other area is marked off in equally spaced divisions, and samples are collected at predetermined division sites.

Vascular plant (n).--A multicellular macrophyte that possesses conductive tissues, including ferns and similar plants and seed plants; aquatic representatives may be rooted or may float in or on the water.

Ventrum (n), ventral (adj).--The bottom surface of an organism. Also see dorsum.

Vertebrate (n).--An animal that has a backbone enclosing a nerve cord; aquatic examples include fish and amphibians.

Water pollution (n).--Variously defined as "***any thing which brings about a reduction in the diversity of aquatic life and eventually destroys the balance of life in a stream***" (Patrick, 1953, p. 33); "***the addition of something to water which changes its natural qualities so that the riparian owner does not get the natural qualities of the stream transmitted to him***" (quoted in Hynes, 1960, p. 1); "***any impairment of the suitability of water for any of the beneficial uses, actual or potential, for man-caused changes in the quality of water***" (Warren, 1971, p. 14). Also see pollution.

Water quality (n).--Kinds and quantities of matter dissolved and suspended in natural water, the physical characteristics of the water, and the ecological relations between aquatic organisms and the environment.

Water weed (n).--A popular term for an aquatic plant, usually one of the macrophytes.

Yield (n).--The quantity (weight or number) of biomass removed from a given aquatic area in a given time.

Zoology (n), zoological (adj).--The science or study of animals.

Zooplankter (n).--An individual zooplanktonic organism.

Zooplankton (n), zooplanktonic (adj).--The animal part of the plankton.

References Cited

American Society for Testing and Materials, 1980, Annual book of standards, Part 31--Water: Philadelphia, 922 p.

Hynes, H. B. N., 1960, The biology of polluted waters: Liverpool, Liverpool University Press, 202 p.

Mayr, Ernst, 1940, Speciation phenomena in birds: American Naturalist, v. 74, p. 249-278.

National Academy of Science--National Research Council, Committee on Pollution, 1966, Waste management and control: National Academy of Science--National Research Council Publication 1400, 257 p.

Odum, E. P., 1971, Fundamentals of ecology (3d ed.): Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 574 p.

Patrick, Ruth, 1953, Biological phases of stream pollution: Proceedings of the Pennsylvania Academy Science, v. 27, p. 33-36.

Warren, C. E., 1971, Biology and water pollution control: Philadelphia, W. B. Saunders, 434 p.

PART 3: SELECTED TAXONOMIC REFERENCES

This section consists of references for the identification of aquatic organisms. The lists are not intended to be complete but rather to provide an introduction to the literature for the various taxonomic groups. Two types of references are included: (1) Keys and morphological descriptions for particular groups of organisms, mostly at the generic or higher taxonomic level; and (2) descriptions or lists of taxa for the various States or other geographic areas. North American freshwater taxa are emphasized.

Except for the general reference works, the listings are arranged by systematic or taxonomic category rather than by habitat or biological community. The analytical methods and their taxonomic groups, presented in Part 1 of this chapter, are listed in table 22.

Table 22.--Taxonomic group(s) of greatest significance for the methods in Part 1

Method	Taxonomic group(s)
Bacteria	Bacteria and fungi
Phytoplankton	Algae
Zooplankton	Protozoa (including flagellates) Coelenterata Rotifera Smaller crustacea
Periphyton	Bacteria and fungi Algae Protozoa (includes flagellates) Coelenterata Gastrotricha Rotifera Tardigrada
Macrophytes	Macrophyton Algae
Benthic invertebrates	Porifera Turbellaria Nemertea (Phynchocoela) Nematoda (Nemata) Gordiida Bryozoa Annelida Crustacea Aquatic Insecta Aquatic Acari Mollusca
Aquatic vertebrates	Aquatic vertebrates

GENERAL TAXONOMIC REFERENCES

Marine

Boyce, S. G., 1954, The salt spray community: Ecological Monographs, v. 24, p. 29-67.

Buchsbaum, R. M., and Milne, L. J., 1960, The lower animals, living invertebrates of the world: Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 303 p.

Cheng, L., 1976, Marine insects: New York, Elsevier, 581 p.

Cook, D. G., and Brinkhurst, R. O., 1973, Marine flora and fauna of the northeastern United States--Annelida:Oligochaeta: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration Technical Report NMFS Cir-374, 23 p.

Crowder, W., 1931, Between the tides: New York, Dodd, Mead, 461 p.

Davis, C. C., 1955, The marine and freshwater plankton: East Lansing, Michigan State University Press, 562 p.

Dawson, E. Y., 1966, Marine botany: New York, Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 371 p.

Fotheringham, Nick, and Brunenmeister, S. L., 1975, Common marine invertebrates of the northwestern Gulf Coast: Houston, Gulf Publishing Co., 197 p.

George, J. D., and George, J. J., 1979, Marine life--An illustrated encyclopedia of invertebrates in the sea: New York, John Wiley, 288 p.

Gosner, K. L., 1971, Guide to identification of marine and estuarine invertebrates; Cape Hatteras to the Bay of Fundy: New York, Wiley-Interscience, 693 p.

Hartman, Olga, 1961, Polychaetous annelids from California: Allan Hancock Foundation for Scientific Research, v. 25, 226 p.

Hartman, Olga, and Reish, D. J., 1950, The marine annelids of Oregon: Corvallis, Oregon State Monographs, Studies in Zoology, no. 6, 64 p.

Harvey, E. B., 1956, The American Arbacia and other sea urchins: Princeton, Princeton University Press, 298 p.

Hedgpeth, J. W., and Hinton, S., 1961, Common seashore life of southern California: Healdsburg, Calif., Naturegraph Co., 64 p.

Hyman, L. H., 1940-67, The invertebrates: New York, McGraw-Hill, v. I, 726 p.; v. II, 550 p.; v. III, 572 p.; v. IV, 763 p.; v. V, 783 p.; v. VI, 792 p.

Kozloff, E. N., 1974, Keys to the marine invertebrates of Puget Sound, the San Juan Archipelago, and adjacent regions: Seattle, University of Washington Press, 226 p.

McConnaughey, B. H., 1970, Introduction to marine biology: St. Louis, The C. V. Mosby Co., 449 p.

Miner, R. W., 1950, Field book of seashore life: New York, Putnam, 888 p.

Newman, W. A., and Ross, Arnold, 1976, Revision of the balanomorph barnacles--Including a catalog of the species: San Diego Society Natural History Memoirs 9, 108 p.

Pimentel, R. A., 1967, Invertebrate identification manual: New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 151 p.

Reid, G. K., 1967, Ecology of intertidal zones: Chicago, Rand McNally, 85 p.

Remane, A., and Schlieper, C., 1971, Biology of brackish water (2d rev. ed.): New York, John Wiley, v. 25, 372 p.

Ricketts, E. F., and Calvin, J., 1968, Between Pacific tides (4th ed.): Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 614 p.

Sims, R. W., 1980, Animal identification, a reference guide, v. 1--Marine and brackish water animals: New York, Wiley-Interscience, 108 p.
Smith, R. I., compiler, 1964, Keys to marine invertebrates of the Woods Hole region--A manual for the identification of the more common marine invertebrates: Woods Hole Marine Biological Laboratory Contribution 11, 208 p.
Smith, R. I., and Carlton, J. T., eds., 1975, Light's manual--Intertidal invertebrates of the central California coast (3d ed.): Berkeley, University of California Press, 716 p.
Stephenson, T. A., and Stephenson, A., 1972, Life between tidemarks on rocky shores: San Francisco, W. H. Freeman, 425 p.
Usinger, R. L., 1957, Marine insects, in Hedgpeth, J. W., ed., Treatise on marine ecology and paleoecology, v. I--Ecology: Geological Society of America Memoir 67, p. 1177-1182.
Yonge, C. M., 1949, The seashore: London, Wm. Collins Sons and Co., 311 p.
Zeiller, Warren, 1974, Tropical marine invertebrates of southern Florida and the Bahama Islands: New York, John Wiley, 132 p.
Zim, H. S., and Ingle, L., 1955, Seashores: New York, Simon and Schuster, 160 p.

Freshwater

American Public Health Association, American Water Works Association, and Water Pollution Control Federation, 1985, Standard methods for the examination of water and wastewater (16th ed.): Washington, D.C., American Public Health Association, 1,268 p.
Amos, W. H., 1967, The life of the pond: New York, McGraw-Hill, 232 p.
Blair, W. F., 1968, Vertebrates of the United States: New York, McGraw-Hill, 616 p.
Borror, D. J., Delong, D. M., and Triplehorn, C. A., 1976, An introduction to the study of insects (4th ed.): New York, Holt, Rinehart, and Winston, 852 p.
Borror, D. J., and White, R. E., 1970, A field guide to the insects of America north of Mexico: Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 404 p.
Brigham, A. R., Brigham, W. U., and Gnilka, Arnold, eds., 1981, Aquatic insects and oligochaetes of North and South Carolina: Mahonet, Ill., Midwest Aquatic Enterprises, 1 v.
Buchsbaum, R. M., and Milne, L. J., 1960, The lower animals, living invertebrates of the world: Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 303 p.
Chu, H. F., 1949, How to know the immature insects: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 234 p.
Davis, C. C., 1955, The marine and fresh-water plankton: East Lansing, Michigan State University Press, 562 p.
Eddy, Samuel, and Hodson, A. C., 1961, Taxonomic keys to the common animals of the north-central States, exclusive of the parasitic worms, insects and birds (3d ed): Minneapolis, Burgess Publishing Co., 162 p.
Edmondson, W. T., ed., 1959, Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 1,248 p.
Essig, E. O., 1958, Insects and mites of western North America (2d ed.): New York, Macmillan, 1,050 p.
Hickman, C. P., 1967, Biology of invertebrates: St. Louis, C. V. Mosby Co., 673 p.

Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1975, Aquatic insects of Wisconsin, with generic keys and notes on biology, ecology, and distribution: Madison, Technical Bulletin of the Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, v. 89, 52 p.

Hyman, L. H., 1940-67, The invertebrates: New York, McGraw-Hill, v. I, 726 p.; v. II, 550 p., v. III, 572 p.; v. IV, 763 p.; v. V, 783 p.; v. VI, 791 p.

Hynes, H. B. N., 1960, The biology of polluted waters: Liverpool, Liverpool University Press, 202 p.

Illies, Joachim, ed., 1967, Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer, 474 p.

Ingram, W. M., and Bartsch, A. F., 1960, Animals associated with potable water supplies; operators identification guide: American Water Works Association Manual M7, 31 p.

Jaques, H. E., 1947a, Living things--How to know them: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 172 p.

_____1947b, How to know the insects (2d rev. ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 205 p.

Kenk, R., 1949, The animal life of temporary and permanent ponds in southern Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology, no. 71, p. 1-66.

Klots, E. B., 1966, The new field book of freshwater life: New York, Putnam, 398 p.

Lehmkuhl, D. M., 1979, How to know the aquatic insects: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 168 p.

Lutz, F. E., 1935, Field book of insects (3d ed.): New York, Putnam, 510 p.

Macan, T. T., 1959, A guide to freshwater invertebrate animals: London, Longmans, 118 p.

_____1975, Life in lakes and rivers (3d ed.): London, Collins, 320 p.

Mellanby, H., 1963, Animal life in fresh water--A guide to fresh-water invertebrates (6th rev. ed.): London, Methuen, 308 p.

Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., 1978, An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., 441 p.

Morgan, A. H., 1930, Field book of ponds and streams--An introduction to the life of fresh water (4th ed.): New York, Putnam, 448 p.

Needham, J. G., and Lloyd, J. T., 1916, Life of inland waters: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 438 p.

Needham, J. G., and Needham, P. R., 1962, A guide to the study of fresh-water biology (5th ed., rev. and enlarged): San Francisco, Holden-Day, 108 p.

Niering, W. A., 1966, The life of the marsh: New York, McGraw-Hill, 232 p.

Otto, N. E., and Bartley, T. R., 1965, Aquatic pests on irrigation systems--Identification guide: Washington, D.C., U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, 72 p.

Parrish, F. K., 1975, Keys to water quality indicative organisms of the southeastern United States (2d ed.): Cincinnati, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Office of Research and Development, Environmental Monitoring and Support Laboratory, 195 p.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Peterson, Alvah, 1951, Larvae of insects, An introduction to nearctic species, Part II--Coleoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Siphonaptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera: Ann Arbor, Mich., Edwards Bros., 416 p.

Pimentel, R. A., 1967, Invertebrate identification manual: New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 151 p.
Pratt, H. S., 1935, A manual of the common invertebrate animals, exclusive of insects: Philadelphia, The Blakiston Co., 854 p.
Reid, G. K., and Zim, H. S., 1967, Pond life--A guide to common plants and animals of North American ponds and lakes: New York, Golden Press, 160 p.
Schwiebert, E. G., 1973, Nymphs--A complete guide to naturals and their imitations: N.Y., Winchester Press, 339 p.
Sims, R. W., 1980, Animal identification, a reference guide, v. 2--Land and freshwater animals: New York, Wiley-Interscience, 108 p.
Swain, R. B., 1948, The insect guide: Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 261 p.
Swan, L. A., and Papp, C. S., 1972, The common insects of North America: New York, Harper and Row, 750 p.
Tarter, D. C., 1976, Limnology in West Virginia--A lecture and laboratory manual: Huntington, W.Va., Marshall University Book Store, 249 p.
Usinger, R. L., 1956, Aquatic insects of California, with keys to North American genera and California species: Berkeley, University of California Press, 508 p.
_____1967, The life of rivers and streams: New York, McGraw-Hill, 232 p.
Winters, G. R., and Leidy, G. R., 1976, A simplified taxonomic key to the families of California aquatic insects: Sacramento, California Department of Transportation Final Report CA-DOT-TL-7108-7-76-51, 122 p.
Zimmerman, E. C., 1948, Insects of Hawaii, Part 1--Introduction: Honolulu, University of Hawaii Press, 206 p.

BACTERIA AND FUNGI

Ahearn, D. G., 1968, Fungi, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. C1-C8.
Ahearn, D. G., Roth, F. J., Jr., and Meyers, S. P., 1968, Ecology and characterization of yeasts from aquatic regions of south Florida: Marine Biology, v. 1, no. 4, p. 291-308.
Ainsworth, G. C., and Sneath, P. H. A., eds., 1962, Microbiological classification: New York, Cambridge University Press, 438 p.
American Society for Testing and Materials, 1966, Manual on industrial water and industrial waste water (2d ed.): Philadelipia, American Society Testing and Materials Special Technical Publication no. 148-I, 992 p.
Barnett, H. L., 1960, Illustrated genera of imperfect fungi (2d ed.): Minneapolis, Burgess Publishing Co., 225 p.
Barron, G. L., 1968, The genera of Hyphomycetes from soil: Baltimore, Williams and Wilkins Co., 364 p.
Buchanan, R. E., and Gibbons, N. E., eds., 1974, Bergey's manual of determinative bacteriology (8th ed.): Baltimore, Williams and Wilkins Co., 1,268 p.
Cooke, W. B., 1963, A laboratory guide to fungi in polluted waters, sewage and sewage treatment systems; their identification and culture: Cincinnati, U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service Publication 999-WP-1, 132 p.
_____1965, Fungi in sludge digesters: Industrial Waste Conference, 20th, Lafayette, Ind., Purdue University, 1965, Proceedings, p. 6-17.

_____1967, Fungal populations in relation to pollution of the Bear River, Idaho-Utah: Proceedings of the Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 44, no. 1, p. 298-315.
Cooke, W. B., Phaff, H. J., Miller, M. W., Shifrine, M., and Knapp, E., 1960, Yeasts in polluted water and sewage: Mycologia, v. 52, no. 2, p. 210-230.
Edwards, P. R., and Ewing, W. H., 1972, Identification of Enterobacteriaceae (3d ed.): Minneapolis, Burgess Publishing Co., 362 p.
Emerson, Ralph, and Weston, W. H., 1967, Aqualinderella fermentans Gen. et Sp. Nov., a phycomycete adapted to stagnant waters, Part I--Morphology and occurrence in nature: American Journal of Botany, v. 54, no. 6, p. 702-719.
Geldreich, E. E., compiler, 1966, Sanitary significance of fecal coliforms in the environment: Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, Water Pollution Control Research Series Publication no. WP-20-3, 122 p.
Gerhardt, Philipp, Murray, R. G. E., and others, eds., 1981, Manual of methods for general bacteriology: Washington, D.C., American Society for Microbiology, 524 p.
Gibbs, B. M., and Skinner, F. A., eds., 1966-68, Identification methods for microbiologists: New York, Academic Press, 2 v.
Hughes, S. J., 1953, Conidiophores, conidia and classification: Canadian Journal of Botany, v. 31, no. 5, p. 577-659.
Ingold, C. T., 1975, Guide to aquatic hyphomycetes: Ambleside, England, Freshwater Biology Association Scientific Publication no. 30, 96 p.
Johnson, T. W., Jr., 1968, Saprobic marine fungi, in Ainsworth, G. C., and Sussman, A. S., eds., The fungi: New York, Academic Press, v. III, p. 95-1-4.
Krasil'nikov, N. A., 1949, Diagnostik der bakterien und Actinomyceten: Moscow, Akad Nauk SSSR, 813 p. [German translation by R. Wittwer and R. Dickscheit, Gustav Fisher Verlag, Jena, Austria, 1959.]
Lockhart, W. R., and Liston, J. P., eds., 1970, Methods for numerical taxonomy: Washington, D.C., American Society for Microbiology, 62 p.
Miller, J. D. A., Hughes, J. E., Saunders, G. F., and Campbell, L. L., 1968, Physiological and biochemical characteristics of some strains of sulfate reducing bacteria: Journal of General Microbiology, v. 52, no. 2, p. 173-179.
Pipes, W. O., ed., 1978, Water quality and health significance of bacterial indicators of pollution: Philadelphia, Drexel University, Workshop Proceedings, 228 p.
Postgate, J. R., 1967, Report of the subcommittee on sulfate-reducing bacteria (1962-1966) to the International Committee on Nomenclature of Bacteria: International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology, v. 17, no. 2, p. 111-112.
Postgate, J. R., and Campbell, L. L., 1966, Classification of Desulfovibrio species, the nonsporulating sulfate-reducing bacteria: Bacteriological Reviews, v. 30, no. 4, p. 732-738.
Prevot, A. R., 1961, Traite de systematique bacterienne: Paris, H. Dunod et Cie, v. 2, 772 p.
Pringsheim, E. G., 1946, On iron flagellates: London, Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society, Series B., v. 232, no. 588, p. 311-342.

_____1949a, The filamentous bacteria Sphaerotilus, Leptothrix, Cladothrix, and their relation to iron and manganese: London, Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society, Series B., v. 233, no. 605, p. 453-482.
_____1949b, Iron bacteria: Biological Reviews of the Cambridge Philosophical Society, v. 24, no. 2, p. 200-245.
_____1949c, The relationship between bacteria and Myxophyceae: Bacteriological Review, v. 13, p. 47-98.
Skerman, V. B. D., 1967, A guide to the identification of the genera of bacteria (2d ed.): Baltimore, Williams and Wilkins Co., 303 p.
Skerman, V. B. D., McGowan, V., and Sneath, P. H. A., eds., 1980, Approved lists of bacterial names: Washington, D.C., American Society for Microbiology, 420 p.
Sparrow, F. K., 1959, Fungi, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 47-94.
_____1960, Aquatic phycomycetes (2d ed.): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan Press, 1,187 p.
Stanier, R. Y., Palleroni, N. J., and Soudoroff, M. K., 1966, The aerobic pseudomonads--A taxonomic study: Journal of General Microbiology, v. 43, no. 2, p. 159-271.
Stokes, J. L., 1954, Studies on the filamentous sheathed iron bacterium Sphaerotilus natans: Journal of Bacteriology, v. 67, no. 3, p. 278-291.
van Niel, C. B., 1955, Classification and taxonomy of the bacteria and bluegreen algae, in A century of progress in the natural sciences, 1853-1953: San Francisco, California Academy of Sciences, p. 89-114.
van Niel, C. B., and Stanier, R. Y., 1959, Bacteria, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 16-46.
van Uden, N., and Fell, J. W., 1968, Marine yeasts, in Dropp, M. R., and Wood, E. J. F., eds., Advances in microbiology of the sea: New York, Academic Press, v. I, p. 167-201.
Waksman, S. A., 1950, The Actinomycetes--Their nature, occurrence, activities, and importance: Waltham, Mass., Chronica Botanica, 230 p.
Watson, S. W., 1971, Taxonomic consideration of the Family Nitrobacteriaceae Buchanan--Requests for opinions: International Journal of Systematic Bacteriology, v. 21, no. 3, p. 254-270.
Wattie, E., 1942, Cultural characteristics of zooglea-forming bacteria isolated from activated sludge and trickling filters: U.S. Public Health Report, v. 57, no. 4, p. 1519-1534.

ALGAE

Ahlstrom, E. H., and Tiffany, L. H., 1934, The algal genus Tetrastrum: American Journal of Botany, v. 21, no. 8, p. 499-507.
Allegre, C. R., and Jahn, T. L., 1943, A survey of the genus Phacus Dujardin (Protozoa; Euglenoidina): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, no. 3, p. 233-244.
Allen, M. B., 1969, Structure, physiology, and biochemistry of the Chrysophyceae: Annual Review of Microbiology, v. 23, p. 29-46.
Bold, H. C., 1938, Notes on Maryland algae: Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club, v. 65, p. 293-301.

Boyer, C. S., 1916, The Diatomaceae of Philadelphia and vicinity: Philadelphia, J. B. Lippincott Co., 143 p.
_____1926, Synopsis of North American diatomaceae, Part I--Coscinodiscatae, Rhizoselenatae, Biddulphiatae, Fragilariatae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 78, (suppl.) p. 3-228.
_____1927, Synopsis of North American diatomaceae, Part II--Naviculatae, Surirellatae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 79, (suppl.) p. 229-583.
Brannon, M., 1952, Some Myxophyceae in Florida: Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 15, no. 2, p. 70-78.
Britton, M. E., 1944, A catalog of Illinois algae: Evanston, Ill., Northwestern University Studies in Biological Sciences and Medicine no. 2, 177 p.
Brock, T. D., 1968, Taxonomic confusion concerning certain filamentous blue-green algae: Journal of Phycology, v. 4, p. 178-179.
Brown, H. J., 1929, The algal family Vaucheriaceae: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 48, no. 1, p. 86-117.
_____1930, The Desmids of the southeastern coastal plain region of the United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 2, p. 97-139.
Buell, H. F., 1938, The taxonomy of a community of the blue-green algae in a Minnesota pond: Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club, v. 65, no. 6, p. 377-396.
Chapman, V. J., 1964, The Chlorophyta: Oceanography and Marine Biology Annual Review, v. 2, p. 193-228.
Chodat, R., 1926, Scenedesmus--Etude de genetique, de systematic experimentale et d'hydrobiologie: Revue de Hydrologie, v. 3, p. 71-258.
Cleve, P. T., 1894-95, Synopsis of the naviculoid diatoms: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, part I, v. 26, p. 1-194; part II, v. 27, p. 1-219.
Cleve-Euler, A. M., 1951, Die diatomeen von Schweden und Finnland: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, Fjarde Series, v. 2, no. 1, p. 1-163.
_____1952, Die diatomeen von Schweden und Finnland, Tiel V. (Schluss.): Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, Fjarde Series, v. 3, p. 1-153.
_____1953a, Die diatomeen von Schweden und Finnland, Tiel II--Arraphideae Brachyraphideae: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, Fjarde Series, v. 4, p. 1-158.
_____1953b, Die diatomeen von Schweden und Finnland, Tiel III--Monoraphideae, Biraphideae 1: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, Fjarde Series, v. 4, p. 1-255.
_____1968, Die diatomeen von Schweden und Finnland, I-IV: Lehre, Germany, J. Cramer Publishing Co., Bibliotheca Phycologica, v. 5, various pagination.
Cocke, E. C., 1949, The Myxophyceae of North Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 65, no. 1, p. 71-89.
_____ 1967, Myxophyceae of North Carolina: Winston-Salem, N.C., published by the author, 206 p.
Collins, F. S., and Hervey, A. B., 1917, The algae of Bermuda: Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Sciences, v. 53, no. 1, p. 1-195.
Cowles, R. P., 1930, A biological study of offshore waters of Chesapeake Bay: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 46, p. 277-381.

Cox, E. R., and Bold, H. C., 1966, Phycological studies, Part VII--Taxonomic investigations of Stigeoclonium: Austin, University of Texas Publication no. 6618, 167 p.
Cupp, E. E., 1943, Marine plankton diatoms of the west coast of North America: Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, 237 p.
Curl, Herbert, Jr., 1959, The phytoplankton of Apalachee Bay and the northeastern Gulf of Mexico: Publications of the Institute of Marine Science, v. 6, p. 277-320.
Daily, W. A., 1942, The Chroococcaceae of Ohio, Kentucky and Indiana: American Midland Naturalist, v. 27, no. 3, p. 636-661.
Davis, C. C., 1955, The marine and fresh-water plankton: East Lansing, Michigan State University Press, 562 p.
Deflandre, G., 1926, Monographie du genre Trachelomonas Ehr.: Paris, Nemours, 162 p.
Dillard, G. E., 1967, The freshwater algae of South Carolina, Part I--Previous work and recent additions: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 83, no. 3, p. 128-131.
Drouet, Francis, 1938, The Oscillatoriaceae of southern Massachusetts: Rhodora, v. 40, p. 221-241.
_____1939, The Myxophyceae of Maryland: Chicago Field Museum of Natural History Botanical Series, v. 20, no. 1, p. 3-14.
_____1943, Myxophyceae of eastern California and western Nevada: Chicago Field Museum of Natural History Botanical Series, v. 20, no. 7, p. 145-176.
_____1959, Myxophyceae, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 95-114.
_____1968, Revision of the classification of the Oscillatoriaceae: Monographs of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia v. 15, 370 p.
Drouet, Francis, and Daily, W. A., 1952, A synopsis of the coccoid Myxophyceae: Indianapolis, Butler University Botanical Studies, v. 10, no. 11, p. 220-223.
_____1956, Revision of the coccoid Myxophyceae: Indianapolis, Butler University Botanical Studies, v. 12, p. 1-218.
Eaglestein, R., 1939, Scientific survey of Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands, v. 8, Part 3--Botany of Puerto Rico and the Virgin Islands, diatomaceae: New York Academy of Science, various pagination.
Eddy, Samuel, 1930, The freshwater armored or thecate dinoflagellates: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 4, p. 277-321.
Elmore, C. J., 1922, The diatoms (Bacillarioideae) of Nebraska: Lincoln, University of Nebraska Studies, v. 21, p. 22-215.
Fairdi, M., 1961, A monograph of the freshwater species of Cladophora and Rhizoclonium: Lawrence, University of Kansas Ph.D. dissertation, 121 p. [Available in xerox from University Microfilms, Ann Arbor, Mich.]
Flint, L. H., 1947, Studies of freshwater red algae: American Journal of Botany, v. 34, no. 3, p. 125-131.
_____1948, Studies of freshwater red algae: American Journal of Botany, v. 35, no. 7, p. 428-443.
Foged, Niels, 1953, 1955, 1958, Diatoms from West Greenland [Meddelelser om Grønland]: Kobenhavn, C. A. Reitzel Forlag, Kommissionen for Videnskabelige Undersogelseri Grønland, v. 147, no. 10; v. 128, no. 7; v. 156, no. 4, 3 v.

_____1964, Freshwater diatoms from Spitsbergen: Tromsoe, Norway, Tromsoe Museums Skrifter, v. 11, 204 p.
Forest, H. S., 1954, Handbook of algae: Knoxville, University of Tennessee Press, 467 p.
Freese, L. R., 1952, Marine diatoms of the Rockport Texas Bay area: The Texas Journal of Science, v. 4, no. 3, p. 331-386.
Fritsch, F. E., 1935, The structure and reproduction of the algae, v. I--Introduction, Chlorophyceae, Xanthophyceae, Chrysophyceae, Bacillariophyceae, Cryptophyceae, Dinophyceae, Chloromonadineae, Euglenineae, and colourless Flagelata: New York, Macmillan, 791 p.
_____1944, Present-day classification of algae: Botanical Review, v. 10, no. 4, p. 233-277.
_____1945, The structure and reproduction of the algae, v. II--Foreword, Phaeophyceae, Rhodophyceae, and Myxophyceae: Cambridge, England, Cambridge University Press, 939 p.
Gardner, N. L., 1927, New Myxophyceae from Puerto Rico: Memoirs of the New York Botanical Garden, v. 7, p. 1-144.
Gier, L. J., and Johnson, Martha, 1954, Algae of Missouri: Transactions of the Kansas Academy of Science, v. 57, no. 1, p. 78-80.
Gojdics, Mary, 1953, The genus Euglena: Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 268 p.
Graham, H. W., 1942, Studies in the morphology, taxonomy, and ecology of the Peridiniales: Washington, D.C., Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication 542, 127 p.
Graham, H. W., and Bronikovsky, N., 1944, The genus Ceratium in the Pacific and North Atlantic Oceans: Washington, D.C., Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication 565, 209 p.
Gran, H. H., and Angst, E. C., 1931, Plankton diatoms of Puget Sound: Puget Sound Biological Station, University of Washington Publication 7, p. 417-516.
Griffith, R. E., 1961, Phytoplankton of Chesapeake Bay--An illustrated guide to the genera: Solomons, Md., Chesapeake Biological Laboratory Contribution no. 172, 79 p.
Habeeb, H., and Drouet, Francis, 1948, A list of freshwater algae from New Brunswick: Rhodora, v. 50, no. 591, p. 67-71.
Hansmann, E. W., 1973, Diatoms of the streams of eastern Connecticut: Hartford, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin 106, 119 p.
Hanna, G. D., and Brigger, A. L., 1966, Fossil diatoms from southern Baja California: Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, v. 30, no. 15, p. 285-308.
Hazen, T. E., 1902, The Ulothrichaceae and Chaetophoraceae of the United States: Memoirs of the Torrey Botanical Club, v. 11, no. 2, p. 135-250.
Hendy, N. I., 1964, An introductory account of the smaller algae of British coastal waters, Part V--Bacillariophyceae (diatoms): London, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Fishery Investigations Series IV, 317 p.
Hirn, K. E., 1960, Monographic und iconographie der Oedogoniaceen: New York, Hafner Publishing Co., 2 v.
Hohn, M. H., and Hellerman, Joan, 1963, The taxonomy and structure of diatom populations from three eastern North American rivers using three sampling methods: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 82, no. 3, p. 250-329.

_____1966, New diatoms from the Lewes-Rehoboth Canal, Delaware and Chesapeake Bay area of Baltimore, Maryland: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 85, no. 1, p. 115-130.
Hollerbach, M. M., Kossinskaja, E. K., and Poljanski, V. I., 1953, Determination of freshwater algae, Part 2--Cyanophyta: Moscow, Opredelitel Presnovodnich Vodorosleya U.S.S.R., 652 p.
Huber-Pestalozzi, G., 1938, 1941, 1942, 1955, 1961, 1968, Das phytoplankton des süsswassers systematik und biologie. v. 16, 1. Part, Allgemeiner Part, Blaualgen, Bakterien, Pilze: 2. Part, 1. Halfte, Chrysophyceen, Farblose Flagellaten Heterokonten: 2. Part, 2. Halfte, Diatomeen: 4. Part, Euglenophyceen: 5. Part, Chlorophyceae: 3. Part, 2. Auflage, Cryptophyceae, Chloromonadophyceae, Dinophyceae, in Thienemann, A., ed., Die Binnengewasser: Stuttgart, E. Schweizer-bart'sche Verlagsbuchhandlung, (New York, Stechert, reprinted 1962), various pagination.
Hustedt, Friedrich, 1927 (1930)-1966, Die Kiesalalgen Deutschlands, Osterreichs und der Schweiz, mit berücksichtigung der übrigen länder Europas sowie der angrenzenden meeresgebiete [The Diatomaceae of Germany, Austria, and Switzerland, with a consideration of those of other European countries and adjacent areas], in Rabenhorst, L., ed., Kryptogamenflora von Deutschland, Osterreich und der Schweiz: Leipzig, Deutschland, Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft Geest und Portig K.-G., v. 7, no. 1, p. 1-272; no. 2, p. 1-485; no. 3, p. 1-816.
_____1930, Bacillariophyta (Diatomeae), in Pascher, A., ed., Die Süsswasser-Flora Mittleleuropas: Jena, Gustav Fisher, v. 10, 466 p. [Reproduced in xerox by University Microfilms, Ann Arbor, Mich.]
_____1942, Süsswasser-Diatomeen des indomalayischen Archipels und der Hawaii-Inseln: International Revue Gesamten der Hydrobiologie und Hydrographie v. 42, no. 1/3, p. 1-252.
_____1949, Süsswasser-Diatomeen: Brussels, Imprimerie M. Hayez, 199 p.
_____1955, Marine littoral diatoms of Beaufort, North Carolina: Durham, N.C., Duke University Marine Station Bulletin 6, 67 p.
_____1956, Kieselalgen (Diatomeen): Stuttgart, Kosmos Gesellschaft der Naturfreunde Franckh, 69 p.
Irénée-Marie, F., 1938, Flore desmidiale de la région de Montreal: Laprairie, Canada, no publisher, 547 p.
Kim, Y. C., 1967, The Desmidiaceae and Mesotaeniaceae in North Carolina: Raleigh, N.C., North Carolina State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 126 p.
Kofoid, C. A., and Swezy, Olive, 1921, The free-living unarmored Dinoflagellata: Berkeley, Memoirs of the University of California, v. 5, 562 p.
Leedale, G. F., 1967a, Euglenida/Euglenophyta: Annual Review of Microbiology, v. 21, p. 31-48.
_____1967b, Euglenoid flagellates: Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 242 p.
Lefevre, Maurice, 1932, Monographie des espèces d'eau douce du genre Peridinium: Archives de Botanique, v. 2, p. 1-210.
McCrone, W. C., Draftz, R. G., and Delly, J. G., 1967, The particle atlas: Ann Arbor, Ann Arbor Science, 406 p.
McInteer, B. B., 1939, A checklist of the algae of Kentucky: Castanea, v. 4, no. 3, p. 27-37.
_____1941, Algae of Kentucky, additions to checklist of March 1939: Castanea, v. 6, no. 1, p. 6-8.

Madsen, G. C., and Nielsen, C. S., 1950, Checklist of the algae of northern Florida, Part II: Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 13, p. 3-19.
Manguin, E., 1961, Contribution a la flore diatomique de l'Alaska--Lac Karlug; Especes, critiques ou nouvelles: Revue Algologique, nouvelles series 5, no. 4, 271 p.
Martin, G. W., 1929, Dinoflagellates from marine and brackish waters of New Jersey: Iowa City, University of Iowa Studies in Natural History, v. 12, no. 9, p. 1-32.
Mattox, K. R., and Bold, H. C., 1962, Phycological studies, Part III--The taxonomy of certain Ulotrichacean algae: Austin University of Texas Publication no. 6222, 66 p.
Mills, F. W., 1933-34, An index to the genera and species of the Diatomaceae and their synonyms: London, Wheldon and Wesley, v. 1, p. 1-573; v. 2, p. 574-1184; v. 3, p. 1185-1726.
Mulford, R. A., 1962, Diatoms from Virginia tidal waters 1960-1961: Gloucester Point, Virginia Institute Marine Science Special Scientific Report 30, 33 leaves.
Nielsen, C. S., 1955a, Florida Oscillatoriaceae, Part III: Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 18, no. 2, p. 84-112.
_____1955b, Florida Oscillatoriaceae, Part III: Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 18, no. 3, p. 177-188.
_____1956, Notes on Stigonemataceae from southeastern United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 75, no. 4, p. 427-436.
Nielsen, C. S., and Madsen, G. C., 1948a, Checklist of the algae of northern Florida, Part I: Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 11, p. 63-68.
_____1948b, Preliminary checklist of the algae of the Tallahassee area: Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 11, p. 111-117.
Olson, T. A., and Odlaug, T. O., 1972, Lake Superior periphyton in relation to water quality: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Water Pollution Control Research Series 18050 DBM 02/72, 253 p.
Palmer, C. M., 1962, Algae in water supplies: U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Public Health Service Publication 657, 88 p.
_____1968, Algae, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. E1-E27.
Pascher, A., ed., Die Süwasserflora Deutschland, Osterreichs und der Schweiz--no. 2, 1913, Flatellatae, II--Crysomonadinae, Cryptomonadinae, Eugleninae, Chloromonadinae; no. 3, 1913, Dinoflagellatae (Peridineae); no. 4, 1927, Volvocales--Phytomonadinae; Flagellatae, IV--Chlorophyceae, I; no. 5, 1915, Chlorophyceae, II--Tetrasporales, Protococcales, Einzellige Gottungen Unsicherer Stellung; no. 6, 1914, Chlorophyceae, III--Ulotrichales, Microsporales, Oedogoniales; no. 7, 1921, Chlorophyceae, IV--Siphonocladiales, Siphonales; no. 9, 1923, Zynemales; no. 11, 1925, Heterokontae, Phaeophyta, Rhodophyta, Charophyta; no. 12, 1925, Cyanophyceae, Cyanchloridinae--Chlorobacteriaceae: Jena, G. Fischer, various pagination.
Patrick, Ruth, 1959, Bacillariophyceae, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 171-189.

Patrick, Ruth, and Freese, L. R., 1961, Diatoms (Bacillariophyceae) from northern Alaska: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 112, no. 6, p. 129-293.
Patrick, Ruth, and Reimer, C. W., 1966, The diatoms of the United States, exclusive of Alaska and Hawaii--Fragilariaceae, Eunotiaceae, Achnanthaceae, Naviculaceae: Monographs of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 13, 688 p.
Philson, P. J., 1939, The freshwater algae of North and South Carolina, Part I--Cyanophyceae: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 55, no. 1, p. 83-116.
Poteat, W. L., 1888, North Carolina desmids--A preliminary list: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 5, p. 1-4.
Prescott, G. W., 1931, Iowa algae: Iowa City, University of Iowa Studies in Natural History, v. 13, no. 6, 235 p.
_____1942, Fresh-water algae of southern United States, Part II--The algae of Louisiana, with descriptions of some new forms and notes on distribution: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 61, no. 2, p. 109-119.
_____1948, Desmids: Botanical Review, v. 14, no. 10, p. 644-676.
_____1953, Preliminary notes on the ecology of freshwater algae in the arctic slope, Alaska, with descriptions of some new species: American Midland Naturalist, v. 50, p. 463-473.
_____1962, Algae of the western Great Lakes area, with an illustrated key to the genera of desmids and freshwater diatoms: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 977 p.
_____1964, How to know the fresh-water algae: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 272 p.
_____1968, The algae--A review: Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 436 p.
Prescott, G. W., and Croasdale, H. T., 1942, The algae of New England, Part II--Additions to the freshwater algal flora of Massachusetts: American Midland Naturalist, v. 27, no. 3, p. 662-676.
Prescott, G. W., Croasdale, H. T., and Vinyard, W. C., 1972, Asynopsis of North American desmids Part I--Saccodermae, Mesotaemiaceae: New York, North American Flora Series II, part 6 of the New York Botanical Gardens, various pagination.
_____1975, A synopsis of North American desmids, Part II, section 1--Desmidiaceae, Placodermae: Lincoln, University of Nebraska Press, 275 p.
Prescott, G. W., and Scott, A. M., 1942, The freshwater algae of southern United States, Part I--Desmids from Mississippi, with descriptions of new species and varieties: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 61, no. 1, p. 1-29.
_____1945, The fresh-water algae of southern United States, Part III--The desmid genus Euastrum, with descriptions of some new varieties: American Midland Naturalist, v. 34, no. 1, p. 231-249.
Prescott, G. W., and Vinyard, W. C., 1965, Ecology of Alaskan freshwater algae, Part V--Limnology and flora of Malikpuk Lake: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 84, p. 427-478.
Pringsheim, E. G., 1948, Taxonomic problems in the Euglenineae: Biological Reviews of the Cambridge Philosophical Society, v. 23, no. 1, p. 46-61.
Popova, T. G., 1966, Flora Plantarum Cryptogamarum USSR, v. III, fasc. 1--Trachelomonas, Strombomonas, Eutreptia, Euglena: Moscow, Academy of Science U.S.S.R., 411 p.

Rabenhorst, G. L., ed., Kryptogramen-flora von Deutschland, Osterreich und der Schweiz--v. 10, no. 2, 1930, Silicoflagellatae, Coccolinthineae; v. 10, no. 3, 1935, Gymnodiniales and 1938, Peridiniales; v. 11, 1939, Heterokonten (Xanthophyceae); v. 12, no. 4, 1939, Oedogeniales; v. 13, no. 2, 1940, Zygnematales: v. 14, 1932, Cyanophyceae: Leipzig, E. Kummer, various pagination.

Ross, R., and Abdin, G., 1949, Notes on some diatoms from Norfolk: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 69, no. 4, p. 225-230.

Round, F. E., 1963, The taxonomy of the Chlorophyta: British Phycological Bulletin, v. 2, no. 4, p. 224-235.

Salisbury, R. K., 1936, The desmids of Florida: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 36, no. 1, p. 55-60.

Saunders, De Alton, 1910-1914, Bacillariaceae: Smithsonian Institution, Harriman Alaska Expedition, p. 206-211.

Schumacher, G. J., 1956, A qualitative and quantitative study of the plankton algae in southwestern Georgia: American Midland Naturalist, v. 56, no. 1, p. 88-115.

Schumacher, G. J., and Muenscher, W. C., 1952, Plankton algae of some lakes of Whatcom County, Washington: Madrono, v. 11, p. 289-297.

Scott, A. M., and Grönblad, R., 1957, New and interesting desmids from the southeastern United States: Acta Societatis Scientiarum Fennicae, new series B, v. 2, no. 8, p. 1-61.

Setchell, W. A., 1895, Notes on some Cyanophyceae of New England: Bulletin of the Torrey Botanical Club, v. 22, no. 10, p. 424-431.

Setchell, W. A., and Gardner, N. L., 1903, Algae of northwestern America: Berkeley, University of California Publication in Botany, v. 1, p. 165-418.

_____1909, The marine algae of the Pacific Coast of North America, Part I--Myxophyceae: Berkeley, University of California Publication in Botany, v. 8, p. 1-138.

_____1920, The marine algae of the Pacific Coast of North America, Part II--Chlorophyceae: Berkeley, University of California Publication in Botany, v. 8, p. 139-374.

_____1925, The marine algae of the Pacific Coast of North America, Part III--Melanophyceae: Berkeley, University of California Publication in Botany, v. 8, p. 383-898.

Silva, H., 1949, Additions to the algae of the southeastern United States: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 65, no. 1, p. 90-109.

Silva, H., and Sharp, A. J., 1945, Some algae of the southern Appalachians: Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 19, no. 4, p. 337-345.

Smith, B. H., 1932, The algae of Indiana: Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 41, p. 177-206.

Smith, G. M., 1916a, A monograph of the algal genus Scenedesmus based on pure culture studies: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 18, p. 422-530.

_____1916b, A preliminary list of algae found in Wisconsin lakes: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 18, p. 531-565.

_____1920, Phytoplankton of the inland lakes of Wisconsin, Part I--Myxophyceae, Phaeophyceae, Heterokonteae, and Chlorophyceae, exclusive of the Desmidiaceae: Madison, Wisconsin Geological and Natural History Survey Bulletin no. 57, p. 1-243.

_____1921, The phytoplankton of the Muskoka region, Ontario, Canada: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 20, p. 323-364.
_____1924, Phytoplankton of the inland lakes of Wisconsin, Part II--Desmidiaceae: Madison, Wisconsin Geological and Natural History Survey Bulletin no. 57, p. 1-227.
_____1950, The fresh-water algae of the United States (2d ed.): New York, McGraw-Hill, 719 p.
_____ed., 1951, Manual of phycology--An introduction to the algae and their biology: Waltham, Mass., Chronica Botanica Co., 375 p.
Sovereign, H. E., 1958, The diatoms of Crater Lake, Oregon: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 77, no. 2, p. 96-134.
_____ 1963, New and rare diatoms from Oregon and Washington: San Francisco, Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, v. 31, no. 4, p. 349-368.
Strickland, J. C., 1940, The Oscillatoriaceae of Virginia: American Journal of Botany, v. 27, no. 8, p. 628-633.
Taylor, W. R., 1957, Marine algae of the northeastern coast of North America (2d ed.): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan Press, 509 p.
Thompson, R. H., 1947, Fresh-water dinoflagellates of Maryland: Solomon Island, Md., Chesapeake Biological Laboratory Publication, no. 67, 28 p.
_____1959, Algae, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 115-170.
Tiffany, L. H., 1937, Oedogoniales, Oedogoniaceae, in North American flora: New York, New York Botanical Garden, v. 11, p. 1-102.
Tiffany, L. H., and Britton, M. E., 1952, The algae of Illinois: Chicago, University of Chicago Press, 407 p. [Reprinted 1971, New York, Hafner Publishing Co.]
Tilden, J. E., 1897, Some new species of Minnesota algae which live in a calcareous or siliceous matrix: Botanical Gazette, v. 23, no. 2, p. 95-104.
_____1910, Minnesota algae, v. I--The Myxophyceae of North America and adjacent regions: Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, 319 p. [Reprinted 1968, Lehre, Germany, J. Cramer, Bibliotheca Phycologica, v. 4.]
Transeau, E. N., 1926, The genus Mougeotia: Columbus, Ohio Journal of Science, v. 26, no. 6, p. 311-338.
_____1951, The Zygnemataceae: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, 327 p.
van der Werff, A., and Huls, H., 1957-74, Diatom flora of the Netherlands--1957-1974 (reprint 1976): Koenigstein, Koeltz Science Publishers, 1 v.
VanLandingham, S. L., 1967-71, Catalogue of the fossil and recent genera and species of diatoms: Lehre, Germany, J. Cramer, Part I, p. 1-493; Part II, p. 494-1086; Part III, p. 1087-1756; Part IV, 1 v.
Vinyard, W. C., 1974, Key to the genera of diatoms of the inland waters of temperate North America: Eureka, Calif., Mad River Press, 19 p.
Volkmer-Ribeiro, C., 1976, A new monotypic genus of neotropical freshwater sponges (porifera-spongillidae) and evidence of a speciation via hybridism: Hydrobiologia, v. 50, no. 3, p. 271-281.
West, G. S., and Fritsch, F. E., 1927, A treatise on the British freshwater algae: Cambridge, England, Cambridge University Press, 53 p. [Reprinted 1967, Lehre, Germany, J. Cramer; London, Wheldon and Wesley, Ltd.; and New York, Sterchert-Hafner, Inc.]

Whelden, R. M., 1947, Algae, in Polunin, Nicholas, Botany of the Canadian Eastern Arctic, Part II--Thallophyta and Bryophyta: Ottawa, National Museum of Canada Bulletin no. 97, Biological Series no. 26, p. 13-233.
Whiteford, L. A., 1950, Some freshwater algae from Mississippi: Castanea, v. 15, no. 3, p. 117-123.
_____1958, Phytoplankton in North Carolina lakes and ponds: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 74, no. 2, p. 143-157.
Whiteford, L. A., and Schumacher, G. J., 1963, Communities of algae in North Carolina streams and their seasonal relations: Hydrobiologia, v. 22, no. 112, p. 133-196.
Wolken, J. J., 1967, Euglena (2d ed.): New York, Appleton-Century-Crofts, 204 p.
Wood, R. D., 1967, Charophytes of North America--A guide to the species of charophyta of North America, Central America, and the West Indies: Kingston, R.I., University of Rhode Island, 72 p.
Wood, R. D., and Imahori, K., 1964-65, A revision of the Characeae, v. I--Monograph of the Characeae; v. II--Iconograph of the Characeae: Lehre, Germany, J. Cramer, 2 v.
Wood, R. D., and Lutes, J., 1968, Guide to the phytoplankton of Narragansett Bay, Rhode Island (rev. ed.): West Kingston, R.I., Kingston Press, 65 p.
Woodson, B. R., Holoman, V. A., and Quick, A., 1966, Additions to freshwater algae in Virginia, Part II--Dinwiddie County: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 82, no. 2, p. 154-159.

PROTOZOA (Including Flagellates)

Bick, Hartmut, 1972, Ciliated protozoa: Geneva, World Health Organization, 198 p.
Bovee, E. C., 1954, Morphological identification of free-living Amoebida: Cedar Falls, Proceedings of the Iowa Academy of Sciences, v. 60, p. 599-615.
Calaway, W. T., and Lackey, J. B., 1962, Waste treatment protozoa--Flagellata: Gainesville, University of Florida, Florida Engineering Series v. 3, 140 p.
Cash, J., Wailes, G. H., and Hopkinson, J., 1905-21, The British freshwater Rhizopoda and Heliozoa: London, Ray Society, 5 v.
Conn, H. W., 1905, A preliminary report on the protozoa of the fresh waters of Connecticut: Middleton, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin, v. 2, 69 p.
Corliss, J. O., 1961, Ciliated protozoa--Characterization, classification, and guide to the literature: New York, Pergamon Press, 310 p.
_____1979, The ciliated protozoa (2d ed.): New York, Pergamon Press, 455 p.
Curds, C. R., 1969, An illustrated key to the British freshwater ciliated protozoa commonly found in activated sludge: London, Her Majesty's Stationery Office, Water Pollution Research Technical Paper no. 12, 90 p.
Davis, H. S., 1947, Studies of the protozoan parasites of freshwater fishes: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Fisheries Bulletin, v. 51, no. 41, p. 1-29.
Deflandre, Georges, 1926, Monographie du genre Trachelomonas Ehr.: Nemours, Impremerie André Lesot, 162 p.
_____1959, Rhizopoda and Actinopoda, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 232-264.

Eddy, Samuel, 1930, The freshwater armored or thecate dinoflagellates: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 4, p. 277-321.
Edmondson, C. H., 1906, The protozoa of Iowa: Proceedings of the Davenport Academy of Science, v. 11, p. 1-124.
_____1912, Protozoa of high mountain lakes in Colorado: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 9, p. 65-74.
Grassé, P. P., ed., 1952, Traité de Zoologie, Anatomie--systematique--biologie, v. I, Part. I.--Protozoaires (generalites, flagelles): Paris, Masson et Cie, 1,071 p.
Guilcher, Yvette, 1951, Contribution à l'étude des ciliés gemnipares, chonotriches et tentaculifères: Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie et Biologie animae, series 11, v. 13, p. 33-132.
Hall, R. P., 1953, Protozoology: New York, Prentice-Hall, 682 p.
Jahn, T. L., 1946, The euglenoid flagellates: Quarterly Review of Biology, v. 21, no. 3, p. 246-274.
Jahn, T. L., and Jahn, F. F., 1949, How to know the protozoa: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 234 p.
Johnson, L. P., 1944, Euglenae of Iowa: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 63, no. 2, p. 97-135.
Kahl, Alfred, 1930-35, Wimpertiere oder Ciliata (Infusoria), in Dahl, Friedrich, ed., Die tierwelt Deutschlands und der angrenzenden meeresteile: Jena, G. Fischer, parts 18, 21, 25, 30, 4 v.
_____1934, Suctoria, in Grimpe, G., and Wagler, E., eds., Die tierwelt der Nordund Ostee: Leipzig, Akademic Verlagsges, part 26, 1 v.
Kofoid, C. A., and Swezy, O., 1921, The free-living unarmored Dinoflagellatas: Berkeley, University of California Press, 562 p.
Kudo, R. R., 1954, Protozoology (4th ed.): Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, 966 p.
_____1966, Protozoology (5th ed.): Springfield, Ill., Charles C. Thomas, 1,174 p.
Lackey, J. B., 1938, Protozoan plankton as indicators of pollution in a flowing stream: Washington, D.C., U.S. Public Health Report, v. 53, p. 2037-2058.
_____1959, Zooflagellates, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 190-231.
Leidy, J., 1879, Fresh-water rhizopods of North America: U.S. Geological Survey Territories Report 12, 324 p.
Liebmann, H., 1962, Handbuch der frischwasser- und abwasser-biologie--Biologie des trinkwassers, badewassers, fischwassers, vorfluters und abwassers (2d ed.): Munich, R. Oldenbourg, 1 v.
Mote, R. F., 1954, A study of soil protozoa on an Iowa virgin prairie: Cedar Falls, Proceedings of the Iowa Academy of Sciences, v. 61, p. 570-592.
Noland, L. E., 1959, Ciliophora, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 81-123.
Pascher, A., 1927, Volvocales: Süsswasserflora, Deutschlands, v. 4, p. 1-506.
Pascher, A., and Lemmermann, E., 1914, Flagellatae, in Die Süsswasserflora Deutschlands, Österreichs und der Schweiz: Jena, G. Fischer, no. 1, various pagination.
Penard, E., 1922, Etudes sur les infusoires d'eau douce: Geneva, Georg, 331 p.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Schaeffer, A. A., 1926, Taxonomy of the Amebas, with description of thirty-nine new marine and freshwater species: Washington, D.C., Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication no. 345, 116 p.
Skvortzow, B. W., 1925, The euglenoid genus Trachelomonas Ehr--Systematic review: Proceedings of the Sungari River Station, v. 1, p. 1-101.
Skuja, H., 1948, Taxonomie des phytoplanktons einiger Seen in Uppland, Schweden: Symbolae Botanicae Upsaliensis, v. ix:4, 399 p.
Smith, G. M., 1950, The freshwater algae of the United States (2d ed.): New York, McGraw-Hill, 719 p.
Stepanek, M., 1956, Amoebina and amoebic stages of flagellata freely living in garden soil: Universitas Carolina Biologica, v. 2, p. 125-159.
Thompson, R. H., 1947, Fresh-water dinoflagellates of Maryland: Solomons Island, Md., Chesapeake Biological Laboratory Publication no. 67, 28 p.
Valkanov, A., 1940, Die Heliozoen und Proteomyxien--Artbestand und sonstige kritische: Arch. Protistenk, Bemerkungen v. 93, no. 2, p. 225-254.

COELENTERATA

Arnold, J. R., 1951, Freshwater jellyfish (Craspedacusta sowerbii) found in California: Wasmann, Journal of Biology, v. 9, no. 1, p. 81-82.
Bennitt, R., 1932, Notes on the medusa Craspedacusta in Missouri, with a summary of the American records to date: American Naturalist, v. 66, no. 704, p. 287-288.
Breder, C. M., 1937, Freshwater jellyfish at the aquarium: New York Zoological Society Bulletin, no. 40, p 182-186.
Bryden, R. R., 1952, Ecology of Pelmatohydra oligactis in Kirkpatricks Lake, Tennessee: Ecological Monographs, v. 22, no. 1, p. 45-68.
Byers, C. F., 1944, The freshwater jellyfish in Florida: Gainesville, Proceedings of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 7, no. 2/3 p. 173-180.
Causey, D., 1938, Freshwater medusa in Arkansas: Science, v. 88, N.S. 2270, p. 13.
Dejdar, Emil, 1934, Die Süsswassermeduse Craspedacusta sowerbii Lankester in monographischer Darstellung: Zeitschrift für Morphologie und Ökologie der Tiere, v. 28, no. 5, p. 595-691.
Dexter, R. W., Surrarrer, T. C., and Davis, C. W., 1949, Some recent records of the fresh-water jellyfish Craspedacusta Sowerbii from Ohio and Pennsylvania: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 49, no. 6, p. 235-241.
Ewer, R. F., 1948, A review of the Hydridae and two new species of Hydra from Natal: Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, v. 118, p. 226-244.
Griffin, L. E., and Peters, D. C., 1939, A new species of Hydra, Hydra oregona: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 3, p. 256-257.
Hadley, C. E., and Forrest, H., 1949, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, Part 6--Description of Hydra hymanae, new species: American Museum Novitates, v. 1423, p. 1-14.
Hand, Cadet, and Gwilliam, G. F., 1951, New distributional records for two athecate hydroids, Cordylophora lacustris and Candelabrum sp., from the west coast of North America, with revisions of their nomenclature: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 41, no. 6, p. 206-209.

Hyman, L. H., 1929, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, Part I--General remarks and description of Hydra americana, new species: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 48, no. 3, p. 242-252.

_____1930, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, II--The characters of Pelmatohydra oligactis (Pallas): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 4, p. 322-333.

_____1931a, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, Part III--Rediscovery of Hydra carnea Lake Agassiz (1850), with a description of its characters: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 1, p. 20-29.

_____1931b, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, Part IV--Description of three new species, with a key to the known species: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 4, p. 302-314.

_____1938, Taxonomic studies on the hydras of North America, Part V--Description of Hydra cauliculata, n. sp., with notes on other species, especially Hydra littoralis: American Museum Novitates, v. 1003, p. 1-9.

_____1959, Coelenterata, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 313-322.

Miller, D. E., 1936, A limnological study of Pelmatohydra, with special reference to their quantitative seasonal distribution: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 55, no. 2, p. 123-193.

Payne, F., 1924, A study of the freshwater medusa, Craspedacusta ryderi: Journal of Morphology, v. 38, p. 387-411.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Rowan, W., 1930, On a new hydra from Alberta: Ottawa, Transactions of the Royal Society of Canada, Section 5, Biological Sciences, v. 24, no. 1, p. 165-170.

Schmitt, W. L., 1939, Freshwater jellyfish records since 1932: American Naturalist, v. 73, no. 744, p. 83-89.

Schulze, P., 1917, Neue beiträge zu einer monographie der gattung Hydra: Archiv für Biontologie, v. 4, no. 2, p. 29-119.

Welch, P. S., and Loomis, H. A., 1924, A limnological study of Hydra oligactus in Douglas Lake, Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 43, p. 203-235.

Woodhead, A., 1943, Around the calendar with Craspedacusta Sowerbii: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, no. 4, p. 379-381.

ROTIFERA

Ahlstrom, E. H., 1934, Rotatoria of Florida: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 53, no. 3, p. 251-266.

_____1938, Plankton Rotatoria from North Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 54, no. 1, p. 88-110.

_____1940, A revision of the rotatorian genera Brachionus and Platyias, with descriptions of one new species and two new varieties: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 77, p. 143-184.

_____1943, A revision of the rotatorian genus Keratella with description of three new species and five new varieties: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 80, Article XII, p. 411-457.

Burger, Andre, 1948, Studies on the moss dwelling bdelloids (Rotifera) of eastern Massachusetts: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 67, no. 2, p. 111-142.
Donner, Josef, 1966, Rotifers: London and New York, Warne, 80 p.
Edmondson, W. T., 1935, Some Rotatoria from Arizona: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 54, no. 4, p. 301-306.
_____1936, New Rotatoria from New England and New Brunswick: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 55, p. 214-222.
_____1939, New species of Rotatoria, with notes on heterogenic growth: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 4, p. 459-472.
_____1940, The sessile Rotatoria of Wisconsin: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 59, no. 4, p. 433-459.
_____1948, Two new species of Rotatoria from sand beaches, with a note on Collothecawiszniewskii: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 67, no. 2, p. 149-152.
_____1949, A formula key to the rotatorian genus Ptygura: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 68, no. 2, p. 127-135.
_____1950, Centrifugation as an aid in examining and fixing rotifers: Science, v. 112, p. 49.
_____1959, Rotifera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 420-494.
Gallagher, J. J., 1957, Generic classification of the Rotifera: University Park, Proceedings of the Pennsylvania Academy of Science, v. 31, p. 182-187.
Hanley, J., 1949, The narcotization and mounting of Rotifera: Microscope and Entomological Monthly, v. 7, p. 154.
Harring, H. K., 1913, Synopsis of the Rotatoria: Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 81, 226 p.
_____1914, A list of the Rotatoria of Washington and vicinity, with descriptions of a new genus and ten new species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 46, no. 2032 p. 387-405.
_____1916, A revision of the rotatorian genera Lepadella and Lophocharis, with descriptions of five new species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 51, p. 527-568.
Harring, H. K., and Myers, F. J., 1922, The rotifer fauna of Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 20, p. 553-662.
_____1924, The rotifer fauna of Wisconsin, Part II--A revision of the notommatid rotifers, exclusive of the Dicranophorinae: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 21, p. 415-550.
_____1926, The rotifer fauna of Wisconsin, Part III--A revision of the genera Lecane and Monostyla: Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 22, p. 315-423.
_____1928, The rotifer fauna of Wisconsin, Part IV--The Dicranophorinae: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 23, p. 667-808.
Hudson, C. T., and Gosse, P. H., 1889, The Rotifera; or wheel-animalcules: London, Longmans, Green, 2 v.
Jennings, H. S., 1903, Rotatoria of the United States, Part II--A monograph of the Tattulidae: Bulletin of the U.S. Fish Commission (1902), v. 22, p. 273-352.

Koste, Walter, 1978, Rotatoria, Die Rädertiere Mitteleuropas--uberordnung Monogononta: Berlin, Stuttgart, Gebrüder Borntraeger, 2 v.
Lucks, R., 1929, Rotatoria--Rädertiere: Berlin, Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands, v. 10, 176 p.
Montgomery, T. H., Jr., 1903, On the morphology of the rotatorian family Floscularidae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 55, p. 363-395.
Murray, John, 1905, On a new family and twelve new species of Rotifera of the order Bdelloidea, collected by the Lake Survey: Edinburgh, Transactions of the Royal Society, v. 41, p. 367-386.
Myers, F. J., 1930, The rotifera fauna of Wisconsin, Part V--The genera Euchlanis and Monommata: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 25, p. 353-413.
_____1931, The distribution of Rotifera on Mount Desert Island: American Museum Novitates, no. 494, p. 1-12.
_____1933a, A new genus of rotifers (Dorria): Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, v. 53, no. 2, p. 118-121.
_____1933b, The distribution of Rotifera on Mount Desert Island, Part III--New Notommatidae of the genera Pleurotrocha, Lindia, Eothina, Proalinopsis, and Encentrum: American Museum Novitates, no. 660, p. 1-18.
_____1934a, The distribution of Rotifera on Mount Desert Island, Part V--A new species of Synchaetidae and new species of Asplanchnidae, Trichocercidae, and Brachionidae: American Museum Novitates, no. 700, p. 1-16.
_____1934b, The distribution of Rotifera on Mount Desert Island, Part VII--New Testudinellidae of the genus Testudinella and a new species of Branchionidae of the genus Trichotria: American Museum Novitates, no. 761, p. 1-8.
_____1936, Psammolittoral rotifers of Lenape and Union Lakes, New Jersey: American Museum Novitates, no. 830, p. 1-22.
_____1937a, A method of mounting Rotifer jaws for study: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 56, p. 256-257.
_____1937b, Rotifera from the Adirondack region of New York: American Museum Novitates, no. 903, p. 1-17.
_____1942, The rotatorian fauna of the Pocono plateau and environs: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 94, p. 251-285.
Pax, Ferdinand, and Wulfert, Kurt, 1941, Die Rotatorien deutscher Schwefelquellen und Thermen: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 38, no. 2, p. 165-213.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Pontin, R. M., 1978, A key to the freshwater planktonic and semi-planktonic Rotifera of the British Isles: Freshwater Biological Association Science Publication no. 38, 178 p.
Rousselet, C. F., 1902, The genus Synchaeta--A monographic study, with descriptions of five new species: Journal of the Royal Microscopical Society, p. 269-290, 393-411.
Ruttner-Kolisko, Agnes, 1974, Plankton rotifers--Biology and taxonomy: Stuttgart Die Binnengewässer, v. 26, 146 p.
Sudzuki, Minoru, 1964, New systematical approach to the Japanese planktonic rotatoria: Hydrobiologia, v. 23, no. 1/2, p. 1-124.
Voigt, Max, 1957, Rotataria--Die Rädertiere Mittleeuropas [Rotatoria--Rotifera of middle Europe]: Berlin, Borntraeger, v. I-II, 508 p.

Wulfert, Kurt, 1939, Beitrage zur kennthis der Radertier fauna Deutschlands, Radertier fauna Deutschlands, Part IV: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 35, p. 563-624.
_____1956, Die Radertiere des Teufelssees bei Friedrichshagen: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 51, p. 457-495.
_____1965, Revision der Rotatorien-Gattung Platyias Harring 1913: Limnologica v. 3, no. 1, p. 41-64.

CRUSTACEA

Smaller Crustacea

Alm, Gunnar, 1916, Monographie der Schwedischen Süsswasser-Ostracoden nebst systematischen Besprechungen der Tribus Popocopa, Taf. 1: Zoologiska Bidrag Från Uppsala, v. 4, p. 1-248.
Avcin, S. B., and Collinson, Charles, 1973, Study of fossil and living ostracod occurrence in southern Lake Michigan--Progress report: Great Lakes Research Conference, 16th, Huron, Ohio, 1973, Proceedings, p. 96-97.
Aycock, Dorothy, 1942, Influence of temperature on size and form of Cyclops vernalis Fischer: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 58, no. 1, p. 84-93.
Barclay, M. H., 1968, Additions to the freshwater ostracod fauna of New Zealand: New Zealand Journal of Marine and Freshwater Research, v. 2, no. 1, p. 67-80.
Berry, E. W., 1926, Description and notes on the life history of a new species of Eulimnadia: American Journal of Science, v. 11, no. 65, p. 429-433.
Birge, E. A., 1893, Notes on Cladocera, Part III--Descriptions of new and rare species: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 9, p. 275-317.
_____1910, Notes on Cladocera, Part IV--Descriptions of new and rare species, chiefly southern: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 16, part ii, p. 1017-1066.
Blake, C. H., 1931, Two freshwater ostracods from North America: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 72, no. 7, p. 281-292.
Bond, R. M., 1932, Observations on Artemia "franciscana" Kellogg especially on the relation of environment to morphology: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 28, p. 117-125.
Brandlova, J., Brandl, Z., and Fernando, C. H., 1972, The Cladocera of Ontario, with remarks on some species and distribution: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 50, no. 11, p. 1373-1403.
Brehm, V., 1937, Zwei neue Moina-Formen aus Nevada, U.S.A.: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 117, p. 91-96.
Bronstein, Z. S., 1947, Ostracodes des eaux douces, in Stackelberg, A. A., ed., Fauna SSSR, Crustacea, v. 2, no. 1: Academy of Science USSR, Institute Zoology new serial, no. 31, 339 p.
Brooks, J. L., 1946, Cyclomorphosis in Daphnia, Part I--An analysis of D. retrocurva and D. qaleata: Ecological Monographs, v. 16, p. 409-447.
_____1953a, A redescription of typical Daphnia clathrata Forbes and Daphnia arcuata Forbes: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, no. 1, p. 193-209.

_____1953b, Redescription of Daphnia pulex var. pulicaria Forbes, D. thorata F. and D. dentifera F.: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, p. 772-800.
_____1957, The systematics of North American Daphnia: New Haven, Memoirs of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, v. 13, 180 p.
_____1959, Cladocera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 587-656.
Byrnes, E. F., 1909, The freshwater Cyclops of Long Island: Brooklyn, N.Y., Cold Spring Harbor Monographs, v. 7, 43 p.
Carpenter, K. E., 1931, Variations in Holopedium species: Science, v. 74, no. 1926, p. 550-551.
Carter, M. E., 1944, Harpacticoid copepods of the region of Mountain Lake, Virginia: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 60, no. 2, p. 158-166.
Chappuis, P. A., 1927, Freilebende Süsswasser-Copepoden aus Nordamerika, Part 2--Harpacticiden: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 74, no. 11/12, p. 302-313.
_____1929a, Die Unterfamilie der Canthocamptinae: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 20, no. 3, p. 471-516.
_____1929b, Copépodes cavernicoles de l'Amérique du Nord (Note préliminaire): Social Science Club Bulletin, v. 4, no. 3, part 3, p. 51-58.
_____1957, Le genre Parastenocaris Kessler: Vie et Milieu, v. 8, p. 423-432.
Chien, S. M., 1970, Alonella fitzpatricki sp. n. and A. leei sp. n.--New Cladocera from Mississippi: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 89, no. 4, p. 532-538.
Coker, R. E., 1934, Contribution to knowledge of North American freshwater harpacticoid copepod Crustacea: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 50, no. 1/2, p. 75-141.
_____1939, The problem of cyclomorphosis in Daphnia: Quarterly Review of Biology, v. 14, no. 2, p. 137-148.
_____1943, Mesocyclops edax (S. A. Forbes), M. leuckarti (Claus) and related species in America: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 59, no. 2, p. 181-200.
Coker, R. E., and Addlestone, H. H., 1938, Influence of temperature on cyclomorphosis of Daphnia longispina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 54, no. 1, p. 45-75.
Cole, G. A., 1949, A new cytherid ostracod from Minnesota: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 68, no. 4, p. 350-354.
_____1960, The cyprid ostracode genus, Cypriconcha Sars: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 79, no. 3, p. 333-339.
Cole, M. E., 1965, Seven new species of ostracods from Tennessee (Cypridae: Candocyprinae and Cypridopsinae): Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 40, no. 4, p. 132-142. [Revised name for a new species of ostracod from Tennessee, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 41, p. 91, 1966.]
_____1966, Four genera of ostracods from Tennessee (Darwinula, Limnocythere, Ilyocypris, and Scottia): Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 41, no. 4, p. 135-146.
_____1969, An annotated list of known species of fresh-water Ostracoda of western Kentucky: Lexington, Transactions of the Kentucky Academy of Science, v. 30, no. 3/4, p. 69-70.
Creaser, E. P., 1929, The Phyllopoda of Michigan: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 11, p. 381-388.

_____1930a, Revision of the Phyllopod genus Eubranchipus, with the description of a new species: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology, v. 208, 8 p.
_____1930b, The North American Phyllopods of the genus Streptocephalus: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology, v. 217, 10 p.
_____1940, A new species of phyllopod crustacean from Stone Mountain, Georgia: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 30, no. 10, p. 435-437.
Cushman, J. A., 1905, A new ostracod from Nantucket: American Naturalist, v. 39, p. 791-793.
_____1907, Ostracoda from south-eastern Massachusetts: American Naturalist, v. 41, p. 35-39.
Daday de Deés, Eugène, 1910, Monographie systématique des Phyllopodes Anostracés: Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, Series 9, v. 11, p. 91-489.
_____1915, Monographie systématique des Phyllopodes Conchostracés: Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, Series 9, v. 20, p. 39-330.
_____1923, Monographie systématique des Phyllopodes Conchostracés (2^{e}partie): Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, Series 10, v. 6, p. 255-390.
_____1926, Monographie systématique des Phyllopodes Conchostracés, Troisième partie (suite): Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, v. 9, no. 1/2, p. 1-81.
_____1927, Monographie systématique des Phyllopodes Conchostracés, Troisième partie (fin): Annales des Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, v. 10, no. 1, p. 1-112.
Danforth, William, 1948, A list of Iowa ostracods, with descriptions of three new species: Cedar Falls, Proceedings of the Iowa Academy of Sciences, v. 55, p. 351-359.
Deevey, E. S., Jr., and Deevey, G. B., 1971, The American species of Eubosmina Seligo (Crustacea, Cladocera): Limnology and Oceanography, v. 16, no. 2, p. 201-218.
Delorme, L. D., 1967, Field key and methods of collecting freshwater ostracods in Canada: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 45, no. 6, p. 1275-1281.
_____1969, On the identity of the ostracode genera Cypriconcha and Megalocypris: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 47, no. 3, p. 271-281.
_____1970a, Freshwater ostracodes of Canada, Part I--Subfamily Cypridinae: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 48, no. 1, p. 153-168.
_____1970b, Freshwater ostracodes of Canada, Part II--Subfamily Cypridopsinae and Herpetocypridinae, and Family Cyclocyprididae: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 48, no. 2, p. 253-266.
_____1970c, Freshwater ostracodes of Canada, Part III--Family Candonidae: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 48, no. 5, p. 1099-1127.
_____1970d, Freshwater ostracodes of Canada, Part IV--Families Ilyocyprididae, Notodromadidae, Darwinulidae, Cytherideidae, and Entocytheridae: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 48, no. 6, p. 1251-1259.
_____1971, Freshwater ostracodes of Canada, Part V--Families Limnocytheridae, Loxoconchidae: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, no. 1, p. 43-64.
Dexter, R. W., 1946, Further studies on the life history and distribution Eubranchipus vernalis (Verrill): Ohio Journal of Science, v. 46, no. 1, p. 31-44.
_____1953, Studies on North American fairy shrimps, with the description of two new species: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, no. 3, p. 751-772.

_____1956, A new fairy shrimp from western United States, with notes on other North American species: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 46, no. 5, p. 159-165.
_____1959, Anostraca, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 558-571.
Dexter, R. W., and Ferguson, M. S., 1943, Life history and distributional studies on Eubranchipus serratus Forbes (1876): American Midland Naturalist, v. 29, no. 10, p. 210-222.
Dexter, R. W., and Kuehnle, C. H., 1951, Further studies on the fairy shrimp populations of northeastern Ohio: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 51, no. 2, p. 73-86.
Dobbin, C. N., 1941, Fresh-water Ostracoda from Washington and other western localities: Seattle, University of Washington Publications in Biology, v. 4, no. 3, p. 175-245.
Dodds, G. S., 1915a, Descriptions of two new species of Entomostraca from Colorado, with notes on other species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 49, p. 97-102.
_____1915b, A key to Entomostraca of Colorado: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 15, p. 265-298.
_____1923, A new species of Phyllopod: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology, v. 141, p. 1-3.
Dolley, J. S., 1940, A new lernaean (parasitic copepod) from minnows in Lafayette County, Mississippi: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 59, no. 1, p. 70-77.
Elgmork, K., 1967, On the distribution and ecology of Cyclops scutifer Sars in New England (Copepoda, Crustacea): Ecology, v. 48, no. 6, p. 967-971.
Ewers, L. A., 1930, The larval development of freshwater Copepoda: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, The Franz Theodore Stone Laboratory Contribution no. 3, 43 p.
Faber, D. J., 1966, Free-swimming copepod nauplii of Narragansett Bay, with a key to their identification: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 23, p. 189-205.
Ferguson, Edward, Jr., 1952, A preliminary report on the freshwater ostracods of Orangeburg County, South Carolina: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 71, no. 3, p. 272-276.
_____1953, A new cyprid ostracod from Maryland: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 43, no. 6, p. 194-197.
_____1954, A new ostracod of the genus Cypricercus from South Carolina: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, p. 189-192.
_____1957, Ostracoda (Crustacea) from the northern lower peninsula of Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 76, no. 2, p. 212-218.
_____1958a, Freshwater ostracods from South Carolina: American Midland Naturalist, v. 59, no. 1, p. 111-119.
_____1958b, A supplementary list of species and records of distribution for North American freshwater Ostracoda: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 71, p. 197-202.
_____1959a, A synopsis of the ostracod (Crustacea) genus Cypridopsis, with the description of a new species: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 72, p. 59-68.
_____1959b, The ostracod genus Potamocypris, with the description of a new species: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 72, p. 133-138.

_____1960, New distribution record for Chlamydotheca unispinosa (Baird, 1862): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 79, no. 3, p. 340.
_____1962a, Freshwater Ostracoda (Crustacea) from Louisiana: Proceedings of the Louisiana Academy of Sciences, v. 25, p. 16-19.
_____1962b, Stenocypris bolieki, new freshwater ostracod from Florida and a new record of distribution for the genus: American Midland Naturalist, v. 67, no. 1, p. 65-67.
_____1964a, Stenocyprinae, a new subfamily of freshwater cyprid ostracods (Crustacea), with description of a new species from California: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 77, p. 17-24.
_____1964b, Freshwater ostracods from Florida, with a description of Cypris floridensis n. sp.: American Midland Naturalist, v. 72, no. 1, p. 129-132.
_____1964c, The ostracod (Crustacea) genus Cypridopsis in North America and a description of Cypridopsis howei sp. nov.: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 84, no. 3, p. 380-384.
_____1966, Some freshwater ostracods from the western United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 85, no. 2, p. 313-318.
_____1967a, New ostracods from the playa lakes of eastern New Mexico and western Texas: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 86, no. 3, p. 224-250.
_____1967b, Cyprinotus newmexicoensis, a new cyprid ostracod: American Midland Naturalist, v. 78, no. 1, p. 248-251.
_____1967c, A new species of freshwater ostracod from Puerto Rico: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 80, p. 9-12.
_____1967d, Potamocypris bowmani, a new freshwater ostracod from Washington, D.C.: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 80, p. 113-116.
_____1968, Recent described species and distributional records for North American freshwater Ostracoda: American Midland Naturalist, v. 79, no. 2, p. 499-506.
Frey, D.-G., 1959, The taxonomic and phylogenetic significance of the head pores of the Chydoridae (Cladocera): Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 44, p. 27-50.
_____1961, Differentiation of Alonella acutirostris (Birge, 1879) and Alonella rostrata (Koch, 1841) (Cladocera, Chydoridae): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 80, no. 2, p. 129-140.
_____1962, Supplement to: The taxonomic and phylogenetic significance of the head pores of the Chydoridae (Cladocera): Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 47, no. 4, p. 603-609.
_____1965, Differentiation of Alona costata Sars from two related species (Cladocera, Chydoridae): Crustaceana, v. 8, p. 159-173.
_____ 1973, Comparative morphology and biology of three species of Eurycercus (Chydoridae, Cladocera), with a description of Eurycercus macrocanthis sp. nov.: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 58, no. 2, p. 221-267.
Furtos, N. C., 1933, The Ostracoda of Ohio: Columbus, Ohio State University Bulletin 37, p. 411-524.
_____1935a, Freshwater Ostracoda from Massachusetts: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 25, no. 12, p. 530-544.
_____1935b, Two new species of Cypretta (Ostracoda) from the Marquesas Islands and Florida, with notes on the distribution of the genus: Honolulu, Bernice P. Bishop Museum Bulletin, v. 114, p. 279-286.

_____1936a, Freshwater Ostracoda from Florida and North Carolina: American Midland Naturalist, v. 17, no. 2, p. 491-522.
_____1936b, On the Ostracoda from the cenotes of Yucatan and vicinity, in Pearse, A. S., Creaser, E. P., Halland, F. G., and others, The cenotes of Yucatan--a zoological and hydrographic survey: Washington, D.C., Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication 457, p. 89-115.
Gajewski, N., 1922, Über die variabilität bei Artemia salina: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 10, p. 139-159, 299-307.
Goulden, C. E., 1968, The systematics and evolution of the Moinidae: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Philosophical Society, v. 58, part 6, 101 p.
Goulden, C. E., and Frey, D.-G., 1963, The occurrence and significance of lateral head pores in the genus Bosmina (Cladocera): Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 48, no. 3, p. 513-522.
Gurney, Robert, 1931-33, British fresh-water copepoda: London, Ray Society, 3 v.
Harding, J. P., and Smith, W. A., 1974, A key to the British freshwater cyclopid and calanoid copepods, with ecological notes (2d ed.): Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 18, 56 p.
Hart, C. W., Jr., 1962, A revision of the ostracods of the Family Entocytheridae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 114, no. 3, p. 121-147.
Hart, C. W., Jr., and Hart, D. G., 1969, Evolutionary trends in the ostracod Family Entocytheridae, with notes on the distributional patterns in the southern Appalachians, in Holt, P. C., ed., The distributional history of biota of the southern Appalachians, Part I--Invertebrates: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Monograph 1, p. 179-190.
Hart, D. G., and Hart, C. W., Jr., 1974, The ostracod Family Entocytheridae: Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia Monograph 18, 239 p.
Hartland-Rowe, R., 1967, Eubranchipus intricatus n. sp., a widely distributed North American fairy-shrimp, with a note on its ecology: Ottawa, Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 45, p. 663-666.
Herrick, C. L., and Turner, C. H., 1895, Second report of the State zoologist, including a synopsis of the Entomostraca of Minnesota: St. Paul, Pioneer Press, Minnesota Geological and Natural History Survey Zoological Series, 525 p.
Hobbs, H. H., Jr., and Peters, D. J., 1977, The entocytherid ostracods of North Carolina: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 247, 73 p.
Hoff, C. C., 1942, The ostracods of Illinois, their biology and taxonomy: Urbana, University of Illinois Press, Illinois Biological Monographs, v. 19, no. 1-2, 196 p.
_____1943, Seasonal changes in the ostracod fauna of temporary ponds: Ecology, v. 24, no. 1, p. 116-118.
_____1944, The origin of the neartic fresh-water ostracods: Ecology, v. 25, no. 3, p. 369-372.
Horne, F. R., 1974, Phyllopods of some southern High Plains saline playas: Southwestern Naturalist, v. 18, no. 4, p. 475-479.
Howe, H. V. W., 1955, Handbook of ostracod taxonomy: Baton Rouge, Louisiana State University Press, 389 p.
Johansen, Fritz, 1922, Euphyllopod Crustacea of the American Arctic: Report of the Canadian Arctic Expedition 1913-18, v. 7, part G, p. 1-34.

Johnson, M. W., 1953, The copepod Cyclops dimorphus Kiefer from the Salton Sea: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, no. 1, p. 188-192.
Jones, W. H., 1958, Cladocera of Oklahoma: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 77, no. 3, p. 243-257.
Juday, Chancey, 1925, Senecella calanoides, a recently described freshwater copepod: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 66, article 4, p. 1-6.
Juday, Chancey, and Muttkowski, R. A., 1915, Entomostraca from St. Paul Island, Alaska: Wisconsin Natural History Society Bulletin, v. 13, no. 1, p. 23-31.
Kabata, Z., 1969, Revision of the genus Salmincola Wilson 1915 (Copepoda: Lernaeopodidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 26, no. 11, p. 2987-3041.
Kaesler, R. L., 1971, Preliminary report--Morphological variation of Ostracoda from the Yankee Tank Creek drainage basin, Douglas County, Kansas: Lawrence, State Geological Survey of Kansas Bulletin no. 202, part 1, p. 5-7.
_____1975, Morphology of Cypridopsis vidua (O. F. Muller)--Variation with environment, in Swain, L. S., Kornicker, L. S., and Lundin, R. F., eds., Biology and paleobiology of Ostracoda: Bulletins of American Paleontology, v. 65, no. 282, p. 225-244.
Kesling, R. V., 1951, The morphology of ostracod molt stages: Urbana, University of Illinois Press, Illinois Biological Monographs, v. 21, no. 1-3, 324 p.
_____1965, Anatomy and dimorphism of adult Candona suburbana Hoff, in Four reports of ostracod investigations: Washington, D.C., National Science Foundation Project GB-26 Report no. 1, 56 p.
Keyser, Dietmar, 1974, Ostracoden aus den mangrovegebieten von Sudwest-Florida (Crustacea:Ostracoda, Podocopa): Naturwissenschaften Vereins Hamburg, Abhandlung Verhandlung n.f. 18/19, p. 255-290.
_____1976, Zur Kenntnis der brackigen mangrovebewachsenen Weichb oden Sudwest-Floridas unter besonderer Ber ucksichtigung ihrer Ostracodenfauna: Hamburg Universitat, thesis, 142 p.
Kiefer, Friedrich, 1927, Freilebande Süsswasser-Copepoden aus Nordamerika: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 72, no. 9/10, p. 262-268.
_____1934, Neue Ruderfusskrebse aus Nordamerika: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 107, no. 9/10, p. 269-271.
_____1967, Copepoda, in Illies, Joachim, ed., Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer Verlag, p. 173-185.
King, C. E., and Kornicker, L. S., 1970, Ostracoda in Texas bays and lagoons--An ecologic study: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 24, 92 p.
Klie, Walter, 1926, Ostracoda: Biologier der tiere Deutschlands, v. 22, no. 16, p. 1-56.
Krutak, P. R., 1975, Ecology, distribution, and taxonomy of Herpetocypris amychos, a new brackish-water ostracod, Bay St. Louis, Mississippi: New Orleans, Gulf Coast Association of Geological Societies Transactions, v. 25, p. 318-341.
Kuenen, D. J., 1939, Systematical and physiological notes on the brine shrimp, Artemia: Archives Neerlandaises de Zoologie, v. 3, no. 4, p. 365-449.
Lang, Karl, 1948, Monographie der Harpaticiden: Lund, H. Ohlsson, 2 v.

Larsen, A. A., 1959, Order Ostracoda, in A study of the freshwater (exclusive of the Crustacea Copepoda) of the Rochester area: Rochester, N.Y., Proceedings of the Rochester Academy of Science, v. 10, p. 211-219.
Le Roy, D. O., 1964, Two new species of recent Ostracoda from southern Louisiana: Journal of Paleontology, v. 38, no. 6, p. 1097-1099.
Light, S. F., 1938, New subgenera and species of diaptomid copepods from the inland waters of California and Nevada: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Zoology, v. 43, no. 3, p. 67-68.
_____1939, New American subgenera of Diaptomus Westwood (Copepoda, Calanoida): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 4, p. 473-484.
Linder, Folke, 1933, Die Branchiopoden des arktischen Gebietes: Fauna Arctica, v. 6, no. 3, p. 183-204.
_____1941, Contributions to the morphology and the taxonomy of the Branchiopoda Anostraca: Universitat Zoologiska Bidrag Från Uppsala, v. 20, p. 101-302.
_____1952, Contributions to the morphology and the taxonomy of the Branchiopoda Notostraca, with special reference to the North American species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 102, no. 3291, p. 1-69.
_____1959, Notostraca, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 572-576.
Littlepage, J. L., and McGinley, M. N., 1965, A bibliography of the genus Artemia (Artemia salina) 1812-1962: Special Publication of the San Francisco Aquarium Society no. 1, 73 p.
Longhurst, A. R., 1955, A review of the Notostraca: Bulletin of the British Museum (Natural History), Zoology, v. 3, no. 1, p. 1-57.
Lynch, J. E., 1937, A giant new species of fairy shrimp of the genus Branchinecta from the State of Washington: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 84, p. 555-562.
_____1958, Branchinecta cornigera, a new species of anostracan phyllopod from the State of Washington: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 108, no. 3392, p. 25-37.
_____1960, The fairy shrimp Branchinecta campestris from northwestern United States (Crustacea:Phyllopoda): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 112, no. 3447, p. 549-561.
_____1964, Packard's and Pearse's species of Branchinecta--Analysis of a nomenclatural involvement: American Midland Naturalist, v. 71, no. 2, p. 466-488.
_____1966, Lepidurus lemmoni Holmes--A redescription, with notes on variation and distribution: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 85, no. 2, p. 181-192.
_____1972a, Lepidurus couesii Notostraca redescribed, with a discussion of specific characters in the genus: Crustaceana, v. 23, no. 1, p. 43-49.
_____1972b, Branchinecta dissimilis new species, a new species of fairy shrimp, with a discussion of specific characters in the genus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 91, no. 2, p. 240-243.
Mackin, J. G., 1930, Studies on the Crustacea of Oklahoma, Part I--Camptocercus oklahomensis n. sp.: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 1, p. 46-53.
_____1931, Studies on the Crustacea of Oklahoma, Part II--Notes on the cladoceran fauna: Stillwater, Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 11, p. 22-28.

_____1939, The identification of the species of Phyllopoda of Oklahoma and neighboring states: Stillwater, Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 19, p. 45-47.
_____1940, A new species of conchostracan phyllopod, Eulimnadia antlei, from Oklahoma: American Midland Naturalist, v. 23, no. 1, p. 219-221.
_____1942, A new species of phyllopod crustacean from the southwestern short-grass prairies: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 92, no. 3136, p. 33-39.
_____1952, On the correct names of several North American species of Branchinecta Verrill: American Midland Naturalist, v. 47, no. 1, p. 61-65.
Marsh, C. D., 1907, A revision of the North American species of Diaptomus: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 15, p. 381-516.
_____1910, A revision of the North American species of Cyclops: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 16, p. 1067-1134.
_____1926, On a collection of Copepoda from Florida, with a description of Diaptomus floridanus, new species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 70, no. 10, p. 1-4.
_____1929, Distribution and key of the North American copepods of the genus Diaptomus, with a description of a new species: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 75, no. 14, p. 1-27.
_____1933, Synopsis of the calanoid crustaceans, exclusive of the Diaptomidae, found in fresh and brackish waters, chiefly of North America: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 82, no. 18, p. 1-58.
Mattox, N. T., 1939, Descriptions of two new species of the genus Eulimnadia and notes on the other Phyllopoda of Illinois: American Midland Naturalist, v. 22, no. 3, p. 642-653.
_____1950, Notes on the life history and description of a new species of conchostracan phyllopod, Caenestheriella gynecia: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 69, no. 1, p. 50-53.
_____1953a, A new conchostracan phyllopod, Eulimnadia alineata, from Arkansas American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, no. 1, p. 210-213.
_____1953b, Two new species of Eulimnadia from Maryland and Virginia (Crustacea:Conchostraca): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 43, no. 2, p. 57-60.
_____1954a, A new Eulimnadia from the rice fields of Arkansas, with a key to the American species of the genus (Conchostraca, Limnadlidae): New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 2, no. 1, 10 p.
_____1954b, Description of Eocyzicus concavus (Mackin), with a review of other North American species of the genus (Crustacea:Conchostraca): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 44, no. 2, p. 46-49.
_____1957, A new estherid conchostracan, with a review of the other North American forms: American Midland Naturalist, v. 58, no. 2, p. 367-377.
_____1959, Conchostraca, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 577-586.
McCarraher, D. B., 1970, Some ecological relations of fairy shrimps in alkaline habitats of Nebraska: American Midland Naturalist, v. 84, no. 1, p. 59-68.

Megard, R. O., 1967, Three new species of Alona (Cladocera, Chydoridae) from the United States: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 52, no. 1, p. 37-50.
Meijering, M. P. D., 1975, Notes on the systematics and ecology of Daphnia pulex Leydig in northern Canada: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 60, no. 5, p. 691-703.
Monk, C. R., 1941, Marine Harpacticoid copepods from California: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 60, no. 1, p. 75-99.
Moore, G. M., 1939, A limnological investigation of the microscopic benthic fauna of Douglas Lake, Michigan: Ecological Monographs, v. 9, no. 4, p. 537-582.
Moore, W. G., 1966, New World fairy shrimps of the genus Streptocephalus (Branchiopoda, Anostraca): Southwestern Naturalist, v. 1, p. 24-48.
Moore, W. G., and Young, J. B., 1964, Fairy shrimps of the genus Thamnocephalus (Branchiopoda, Anostraca) in the United States and Mexico: Southwestern Naturalist, v. 9, no. 2, p. 68-77.
Muller, G. W., 1912, Ostracoda: Berlin, R. Friedlander und Sohn, 434 p.
Packard, A. S., Jr., 1883, A monograph of the phyllopod Crustacea of North America, with remarks on the Order Phyllocarida in Hayden, B. V., A report of the progress of the exploration in Wyoming and Idaho for the year 1978: 12th Annual Report of the U.S. Geological and Geographical Survey of the Territories, part 1, p. 295-592.
Parenzan, P., 1932, Cladocera, Sistematica e corologia dei Cladoceri limnicoli italiani ed appendice sui Cladoceri in generale: Bollettino di Pesca, Piscicoltura Idrobiologia, Memoire Science (series B), Supplement, p. 1-340.
Pearse, A. S., 1905, Contributions to the copepod fauna of Nebraska and other states: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 26, p. 145-160.
_____1906, Freshwater Copepoda of Massachusetts: American Naturalist, v. 40, p. 241-251.
Pejler, B., 1973, On the taxonomy of limnoplanktic Daphnia species in northern Sweden: Zoon, v. 1, no. 1, p. 23-27.
Pennak, R. W., 1939, A new copepod from the sandy beaches of a Wisconsin lake: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, p. 224-227.
_____1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Reed, E. B., 1958, Two new species of Diaptomus from arctic and subarctic Canada (Calanoida, Copepoda): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 36, no. 5, p. 663-670.
Relyea, G. M., 1937, The brine shrimp of Great Salt Lake: American Naturalist, v. 71, no. 737, p. 612-616.
Roberts, L. S., 1970, Ergasilis (Copepoda:Cyclopoida)--Revision and key to species in North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 89, no. 1, p. 134-161.
Robertson, A., 1975, A new species of Diaptomus (Copepoda, Calanoida) from Oklahoma and Texas: American Midland Naturalist, v. 93, no. 1, p. 206-214.
Rosenberg, L. E., 1946, Fairy shrimps in California rice fields: Science, v. 104, no. 2692, p. 111-112.
Ruber, E., 1968, Description of a salt marsh copepod Cyclops (Apocyclops) spartinus n. sp. and a comparison with closely related species: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 87, no. 3, p. 368-375.

Rylov, V. M., 1935, Die Cladoceren: Die Binnengewasser, v. 15, p. 97-157.
_____1948, Freshwater Cyclopoida: Fauna SSSR Crustacea, v. 3, no. 3, 314 p. [Also published Jerusalem, Israel Program for Scientific Translations. Available from the office of Technical Services, U.S. Department of Commerce, Washington, D.C.]
Sandberg, P. A., and Plusquellac, P. L., 1974, Notes on the anatomy and passive dispersal of Cyprideis (Cytheracea, Ostracoda): Geoscience and Man, v. 6, p. 1-26.
Sars, G. O., 1926, Freshwater Ostracoda from Canada and Alaska: Canadian Arctic Expedition 1913-1918 Report, v. 7, Crustacea, part 1, p. 1-22.
_____1928, An account of the Crustacea of Norway, with short descriptions and figures of all species, v. 9--Ostracoda: Bergen, Norway, Bergen Museum, parts 15-16, p. 241-277.
Schmidt, P. P., 1976, Recent and subfossil finds of a new species of ostracod, Potamocypris parva, in Greenland (Crustacea, Ostracoda, Cyprididae): Astarte, v. 9, no. 1, p. 13-17.
Scourfield, D. J., 1942, The "Pulex" forms of Daphnia and their separation into two distinct series represented by D. pulex (De Geer) and D. obstusa Kurz: Annales and Magazine of Natural History, v. 9, no. 11, p. 202-219.
Scourfield, D. J., and Harding, J. P., 1966, A key to the British freshwater Cladocera, with notes on their ecology: Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 5, 55 p.
Shantz, H. L., 1905, Notes on North American species of Branchinecta and their habitats: Biological Bulletin, v. 9, p. 249-264.
Sharpe, R. W., 1898, Contribution to a knowledge of the North American freshwater Ostracoda included in the Families Cytheridae and Cyprididae: Bulletin of the Illinois Laboratory of Natural History, v. 4, p. 414-484.
_____1903, Report on the freshwater Ostracoda of the United States National Museum, including a revision of the subfamilies and genera of the Family Cyprididae: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 26, p. 969-1001.
_____1908, A further report on the Ostracoda of the United States National Museum: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 35, p. 399-430.
_____1910, On some Ostracoda, mostly new, in the collection of the United States National Museum: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 38, no. 1750, p. 335-341.
_____1918, The Ostracoda, in Ward, H. B., and Whipple, G. C., eds., Freshwater biology: New York, John Wiley, p. 790-827.
Sissom, S. L., 1976, Studies on a new fairy shrimp from the playa lakes of West Texas USA, Brachiopoda, Anostraca, Thamnocephalidae: Crustaceana, v. 30, no. 1, p. 39-42.
Smirnov, N. N., 1966a, Alonopsis (Chydoridae, Cladocera)--Morphology and taxonomic position: Hydrobiologia, v. 27, no. 1/2, p. 113-136.
_____1966b, Pleuroxus (Chydoridae)--Morphology and taxonomy: Hydrobiologia, v. 28, no. 2, p. 161-194.
_____1968, On comparative functional morphology of limbs of Chydoridae (Cladocera): Crustaceana, v. 14, p. 76-96.
_____1972, Detailed morphology of trunk limbs of some Aloninae: Hydrobiologia, v. 40, no. 3, p. 393-422.
_____1974, Chydoridae: Fauna of the U.S.S.R. Crustacea, v. 1, no. 2, 644 p.

Smith, R. N., 1965, Musculature and muscle scars of Chlamydotheca arcuata (Sars) and Cypridopsis vidua (O. F. Muller) (Ostracoda:Cyprididae), in Four reports of ostracod investigations: Washington, D.C., National Science Foundation Project GB-26, Report no. 3, 40 p.

Sohn, I. G., 1976, Antiquity of the adductor muscle attachment scar in Darwinula Brady and Robertson, 1885, in Hartmann, Gerhard, ed., Proceedings of the International Symposium on Evolution of Post-Paleozoic Ostracoda, 5th, Hamburg, 1974: Abhandlungen Verhandlung naturwissenschaften Verin Hamburg, n.f. 18-19 (Supplement), p. 305-308.

Sohn, I. G., and Kornicker, L. S., 1972, Cypretta kawatai, a new species of freshwater Ostracoda Crustacea: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 85, no. 26, p. 313-316.

_____1973, Morphology of Cypretta kawatai Sohn and Kornicker, 1972 (Crustacea, Ostracoda), with a discussion of the genus: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology, no. 141, p. 1-28.

Spandl, Hermann, 1926, Copepoda: Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands, v. 19, no. 15, p. 1-82.

Storch, O., 1925, Cladocera: Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands, v. 15, p. 1-102.

Thomas, I. F., 1961, Review of the genera Pseudosida Herrick, 1884, and Latonopsis Sars, 1888 (Cladocera): Crustaceana, v. 3, no. 1, p. 1-8.

Tressler, W. L., 1937, Ostracoda: Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 34, p. 188-207.

_____1941, Ostracoda from Puerto Rican bromeliads: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 31, no. 6, p. 263-269.

_____1947, A check list of the known species of North American freshwater Ostracoda: American Midland Naturalist, v. 38, no. 3, p. 698-707.

_____1954, Fresh-water Ostracoda from Texas and Mexico: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 44, no. 5, p. 138-149.

_____1957, The Ostracoda of Great Slave Lake: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 47, no. 12, p. 415-423.

_____1959, Ostracoda, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 657-734.

Turpen, J. B., and Angell, R. W., 1971, Ostracod molting and calcification: Biological Bulletin, v. 140, no. 2, p. 331-338.

Uéno, Masuzo, 1927, The freshwater Branchiopoda of Japan: Kyoto University, College of Science Memoirs, Series B, v. 2, no. 5, p. 259-311.

Wilson, C. B., 1911a, North American parasitic copepods, Part 9--The Lernaeopodidae: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 39, p. 189-226.

_____1911b, North American parasitic copepods belonging to the Family Ergasilidae: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 39, p. 263-400.

_____1915, North American parasitic copepods belonging to the Lernaeopodidae, with a revision of the entire family: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 47, p. 565-729.

_____1916, Copepod parasites of freshwater fishes and their economic relations to Mussel Glochidia: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 34, p. 333-374.

_____1917, North American parasitic copepods belonging to the Lernaeidae, with a revision of the entire family: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 53, p. 1-150.

_____1932, The copepods of the Woods Hole region, Massachusetts: Smithsonian Institution, United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 158, p. 1-635.
_____1944, Parasitic copepods in the United States National Museum: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 94, no. 3177, p. 529-582.
Wilson, M. S., 1941, New species and distribution records of diaptomid copepods from the Marsh collection in the United States National Museum: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 31, no. 12, p. 509-515.
_____1953, New and inadequately known North American species of the copepod genus Diaptomus: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 122, no. 2, 30 p.
_____1954, A new species of Diaptomus from Louisiana and Texas, with notes on the subgenus Leptodiaptomus (Copepoda, Calanoida): New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 2, no. 3, p. 48-60.
_____1955, A new Louisiana copepod related to Diaptomus (Aglaodiaptomus) clavipes Schacht (Copepoda, Calanoida): New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 3, no. 2, p. 37-47.
_____1956, North American harpacticoid copepods, Part I--Comments on the known freshwater species of the Canthocamptidae; Part 2--Canthocamptus oregonensis, n. sp. from Oregon and California: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 75, no. 3, p. 290-307.
_____1958a, New records and species of calanoid copepods from Saskatchewan and Louisiana: Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 36, no. 4, p. 489-497.
_____1958b, The copepod genus Halicyclops in North America, with description of a new species from Lake Pontchartrain, Louisiana, and the Texas Coast: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 6, no. 4, p. 176-189.
_____1958c, North American harpacticoid copepods, Part 4--Diagnoses of new species of fresh-water Canthocamptidae and Cletodidae (genus Huntemannia): Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 71, p. 43-48.
_____1959, Branchiura and parasitic Copepoda, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 862-868.
_____1972, Copepods of marine affinities from mountain lakes of western North America: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 17, no. 5, p. 762-763.
_____1975, North American harpacticoid copepods, Part 2--New records and species of Elaphoidella (Canthocamptidae) from the USA and Canada: Crustaceana, v. 28, no. 2, p. 125-138.
Wilson, M. S., and Moore, W. G., 1953a, Diagnosis of a new species of diaptomid copepod from Louisiana: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 72, no. 3, p. 292-295.
_____1953b, New records of Diaptomus sanguineus and allied species from Louisiana, with the description of a new species (Crustacea:Copepoda): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 43, no. 4, p. 121-127.
Wilson, M. S., and Yeatman, H. C., 1959, Free-living Copepoda, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 735-861.
Yeatman, H. C., 1944, American cyclopoid copepods of the viridis-vernalis group (including a description of Cyclops carolinianus n. sp.): American Midland Naturalist, v. 32, no. 1, p. 1-90.

_____1959, Some effects of temperature and turbulence on the external morphology of Cyclops carolinianus: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 75, no. 2, p. 154-167.
_____1964, A new cavernicolous cyclopoid copepod from Tennessee and Illinois: Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 39, no. 3, p. 95-98.

Malacostraca

Adamstone, F. B., 1928, Relict amphipods of the genus Pontoporeia: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 47, no. 3, p. 366-371.
Banner, A. H., 1948, A taxonomic study of the Mysidacea and Euphausiacea (Crustacea) of the northeastern Pacific, Part II--Mysidacea, from tribe Mysini through subfamily Mysidellinae: Toronto, Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, v. 27, no. 57, p. 65-112.
_____1953, On a new genus and species of Mysid from southern Louisiana: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 1, no. 1, p. 1-8.
_____1954, New records of Mysidacea and Euphausiacea from the northeastern Pacific and adjacent areas: Pacific Science, v. 8, no. 2, p. 125-139.
Barker, D., 1959, The distribution and systematic position of the Thermosbaenacea: Hydrobiologia, v. 13, p. 209-235.
Barnard, J. L., 1958, Index to the families, genera, and species of the Gammaridean amphipoda (Crustacea): Los Angeles, University of Southern California Press, Allan Hancock Foundation Publication, Occasional Papers, no. 19, 145 p.
Benedict, J. E., 1896, Preliminary descriptions of a new genus and three new species of crustaceans from an artesian well at San Marcos, Texas: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 18, p. 615-617.
Bousfield, E. L., 1958, Freshwater amphipod crustaceans of glaciated North America: Canadian Field-Naturalist, v. 72, no. 2, p. 55-113.
Bowman, T. E., 1964, Antrolana lira, a new genus and species of troglobitic cirolanid isopod from Madison Cave, Virginia: International Journal of Speleology, v. 1, no. 1-2, p. 229-236.
_____1967, Asellus kenki, a new isopod crustacean from springs in the eastern United States: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 80, p. 131-140.
_____1974, The Californi freshwater isopod, Asellus tomalensis, rediscovered and compared with Asellus occidentalis: Hydrobiologia, v. 44, no. 4, p. 431-441.
Caine, E. A., 1974, Zoogeography of the Florida troglobitic crayfishes, genus Procambarus: American Midland Naturalist, v. 92, no. 2, p. 487-492.
Chace, F. A., Jr., 1954, Two new subterranean shrimps (Decapoda:Caridea) from Florida and the West Indies, with a revised key to the American species: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 44, no. 10, p. 318-324.
Chace, F. A., Jr., Mackin, J. G., Hubricht, Leslie, Banner, A. H., and Hobbs, H. H., Jr., 1959, Malacostraca, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 869-901.

Cole, G. A., 1970, The epimera of North American freshwater species of Gammarus (Crustacea:Amphipoda): Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 83, no. 31, p. 333-348.
Collinge, W. E., 1944, On the freshwater isopod genus Caecidotea Packard: Annales and Magazine of Natural History, v. 11, no. 11, p. 815-817.
Creaser, E. P., 1931, The Michigan decapod crustaceans: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 13, p. 257-276.
_____1932, The Decapod crustaceans of Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 27, p. 321-338.
_____1933, Descriptions of some new and poorly known species of North American crayfishes: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 275, 21 p.
_____1934a, A faunistic area of five isolated species of crayfish in south-eastern Missouri: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 27, p. 1-8.
_____1934b, A new genus and species of blind amphipod, with notes on parallel evolution in certain amphipod genera: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 282, 5 p.
Creaser, E. P., and Ortenburger, A. I., 1933, The Decapod crustaceans of Oklahoma: Publication of the University of Oklahoma Biological Survey, v. 5, p. 14-29.
Crocker, D. W., 1957, The crayfishes of New York State (Decapoda, Astacidae): Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 355, 97 p.
Crocker, D. W., and Barr, D. W., 1968, Handbook of the crayfishes of Ontario: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, Royal Ontario Museum, 158 p.
Eberly, W. R., 1965, A new troglobitic isopod (Asellidae) from southern Indiana: Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 75, p. 286-288.
Ellis, T. K., 1940, A new amphipod of the genus Crangonyx from South Carolina: Charleston, The Charleston Museum Leaflet, no. 13, 8 p.
_____1941, A new fresh-water amphipod of the genus Stygobromus from South Carolina: Charleston, The Charleston Museum Leaflet, no. 16, 14 p.
Embody, G. C., 1910, A new freshwater amphipod from Virginia, with some notes on its biology: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 38, p. 299-305.
Engle, E. T., 1926, Crayfishes of the genus Cambarus in Nebraska and eastern Colorado: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 42, no. 994, p. 87-104.
Faxon, Walter, 1914, Notes on the crayfishes in the United States National Museum and the Museum of Comparative Zoology, with descriptions of new species and subspecies to which is appended a catalogue of the known species and subspecies: Cambridge, Harvard University, Memoir of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 40, p. 347-427.
Fitzpatrick, J. F., Jr., 1967, The propinquus, group of the crawfish genus Orconectes (Decapoda:Astacidae): Ohio Journal of Science, v. 67, no. 3, p. 129-172.
Fleming, L. E., 1973, The evolution of North American isopods of the genus Asellus (Crustacea:Asellidae), Part 2: International Journal of Speleology, v. 5, no. 3-4, p. 283-310.
Francois, D. D., 1959, The crayfishes of New Jersey: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 59, no. 2, p. 108-127.
Gledhill, T., Sutcliffe, D. W., and Williams, W. D., 1976, Key to British fresh-water Crustacea:Malacostraca: Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 32, p. 1-72.

Harris, J. A., 1903, An ecological catalogue of the crayfishes belonging to the genus Cambarus: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 2, no. 3, p. 51-187.
Hatchett, S. P., 1947, Biology of the isopoda of Michigan: Ecological Monographs, v. 17, no. 1, p. 47-79.
Hay, W. P., 1902, Observations on the crustacean fauna of the region about the Mammoth Cave, Kentucky: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 25, no. 1285, p. 223-236.
Hedgpeth, J. W., 1947, River shrimps: Progressive Fish-Culturist, v. 9, no. 4, p. 181-184.
_____1949, The North American species of Macrobrachium (river shrimp): Texas Journal of Science, v. 1, no. 3, p. 28-38.
_____1968, The atyid shrimp of the genus Syncaris in California: Internationale Revue Gesamten Hydrobiologie, v. 53, no. 4, p. 511-524.
Henry, J. P., and Magniez, G., 1970, Contribution à la systématique des asellides (Crustacea Isopoda): Annales Spéléologie, v. 25, no. 2, p. 335-367.
Hobbs, H. H., Jr., 1942a, A generic revision of the crayfishes of the subfamily Cambarinae (Decapoda, Astacidae), with the description of a new genus and species: American Midland Naturalist, v. 28, no. 2, p. 334-357.
_____1942b, The crayfishes of Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida Publication, Biological Science Series, v. 3, no. 2, 179 p.
_____1945a, Two new species of crayfishes of the genus Cambarellus from the Gulf Coastal States, with a key to the species of the genus (Decapoda, Astacidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 34, p. 466-474.
_____1945b, Notes on the first pleopod of the male Cambarinae (Decapoda, Astacidae): Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 8, no. 1, p. 67-70.
_____1948a, On the crayfishes of the Limosus section of the genus Orconectes (Decapoda, Astacidae): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 38, no. 1, p. 14-21.
_____1948b, Two new crayfishes of the genus Orconectes from Arkansas, with a key to the species of the Hylas group (Decapoda, Astacidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 39, no. 1, p. 139-150.
_____1962, Notes on the affinities of the members of the Blandingii Section of the crayfish genus Procambarus (Decapoda, Astacidae): New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 9, p. 273-293.
_____1967, A new crayfish from Alabama caves, with notes on the origin of the genera Orconectes and Cambarus (Decapoda:Astacidae): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 123, no. 3621, p. 1-17.
_____1968, Crustacea:Malacostraca, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. K1-K36.
_____1969, On the distribution and phylogeny of the crayfish genus Cambarus, in Holt, P. C., ed., The distributional history of the biota of the southern Appalachians, Part I--Invertebrates: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Monograph 1, p. 93-178.
_____1972, Crayfishes (Astacidae) of North and Middle America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 9, 173 p.

_____1974, A checklist of the North and Middle America crayfishes (Decapoda: Astacidae and Cambaridae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 166, 161 p.

Hobbs, H. H., Jr., and Hart, C. W., Jr., 1959, The freshwater decapod crustaceans of the Appalachicola drainage system in Florida, southern Alabama and Georgia: Gainesville, University of Florida, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 4, no. 5, p. 145-191.

Holmes, S. J., 1900, Synopsis of California stalkeyed crustacea: San Francisco, Occasional Papers of the California Academy of Sciences, v. 7, 262 p.

Holsinger, J. R., 1966, Subterranean amphipods of the genus Stygonectes (Gammaridae) from Texas: American Midland Naturalist, v. 76, no. 1, p. 100-124.

_____1967, Systematics, speciation, and distribution of the subterranean amphipod genus Stygonectes (Gammaridae): Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 259, 176 p.

_____1969a, The systematics of the North American subterranean amphipod genus Apocrangonyx (Gammaridae), with remarks on ecology and zoogeography: American Midland Naturalist, v. 81, p. 1-28.

_____1969b, Biogeography of the freshwater amphipod crustaceans (Gammaridae) of the central and southern Appalachians, in Holt, P. C., ed., The distributional history of the biota of the southern Appalachians, Part I--Invertebrates: Blackburg, Va., Research Division Monograph 1, p. 1-28.

_____1971, A new species of the subterranean amphipod genus Allocrangonyx (Gammaridae), with a redescription of the genus and remarks on its zoogeography: International Journal of Speleology, v. 3, p. 317-331.

_____1972, The freshwater amphipod crustaceans (Grammaridae) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 5, 89 p.

_____1974, Systematics of the subterranean amphipod genus Stygobromus (Gammaridae), Part I--Species of the western United States: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 160, p. 1-63.

Holsinger, J. R., and Bowman, T. E., 1973, A new troglobitic isopod of the genus Lirceus (Asellidae) from southwestern Virginia, with notes on its ecology and additional cave records for the genus in the Appalachians: International Journal of Speleology, v. 5, no. 3-4, p. 261-271.

Holsinger, J. R., and Steeves, H. R., 1971, A new species of subterranean isopod crustacean (Asellidae) from the central Appalachians, with remarks on the distribution of other isopods of the region: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 84, no. 23, p. 189-200.

Holthuis, L. B., 1949, Note on the species of Palaemonetes (Crustacea Decapoda) found in the United States of America: Amsterdam, Koninklijke Nederlandse Akademie Van Wetenschappen Proceedings, v. 51, no. 1, p. 87-95.

_____1952, A general revision of the Palaemonidae (Crustacea Decapoda Natantia) of the Americas, Part II--The subfamily Palaemoninae: Los Angeles, University of Southern California Press, Allan Hancock Foundation Occasional Papers no. 12, 396 p.

Hubricht, Leslie, 1943, Studies in the nearctic freshwater Amphipoda, Part III--Notes on the freshwater Amphipoda of eastern United States, with descriptions of ten new species: American Midland Naturalist, v. 29, no. 3, p. 683-712.

Hubricht, Leslie, and Harrison, C. H., 1941, The freshwater amphipoda of Island County, Washington: American Midland Naturalist, v. 26, no. 2, p. 330-333.

Hubricht, Leslie, and Mackin, J. G., 1940, Descriptions of nine new species of freshwater amphipod crustaceans, with notes and new localities for other species: American Midland Naturalist, v. 23, no. 1, p. 187-218.

_____1949, The freshwater isopods of the genus Lirceus (Asellota, Assellidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 42, no. 2, p. 334-349.

Hungerford, H. B., 1922, A new subterranean isopod from Kansas Caecidotea tridentata: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 14, p. 175-178.

Juday, Chancey, and Birge, E. A., 1927, Pontoporeia and Mysis in Wisconsin Lakes: Ecology, v. 8, no. 4, p. 445-452.

Karaman, G. S., 1974, Contribution to the knowledge of the Amphipoda--Revision of the genus Stygobromus Cope 1872 (FAmerican Gammaridae) from North America: Glasnik Republickog Zavodaza Zastitic Prirode--Prirodnjackog Muzeja u titgradu, v. 7, p. 97-125.

Kunkel, B. W., 1918, The Arthrostraca of Connecticut: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 26, 261 p.

Levi, H. W., 1949, Two new species of cave isopods from Pennsylvania: Notulae Naturae of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia no. 220, p. 1-6.

Lyle, C., 1938, The crawfishes of Mississippi, with special reference to the biology and control of destructive species: Ames, Iowa State Journal of Science, v. 13, p. 75-77.

Mackin, J. G., 1935, Studies on the Crustacea of Oklahoma, Part III--Subterranean amphipods of the genera Niphargus and Boruta: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 54, no. 1, p. 41-51.

Mackin, J. G., and Hubricht, Leslie, 1938, Records of distribution of isopods in central and southern United States, with descriptions of four new species of Mancasellus and Asellus (Asellota, Asellidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 19, no. 3, p. 628-637.

_____1940, Descriptions of seven new species of Caecidotea (Isopoda, Asellidae) from Central United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 59, no. 3, p. 383-397.

Maguire, B., 1965, Monodella texana n. sp., An extension of the range of the crustacean order Thermosbaenacea to the Western Hemisphere: Crustaceana, v. 9, p. 149-154.

Maloney, J. O., 1939, A new cave isopod from Florida: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 86, no. 3057, p. 457-459.

Markus, H. C., 1930, Studies on the morphology and life history of the isopod, Mancasellus macrourus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, p. 220-237.

Meehean, O. L., 1936, Notes on the freshwater shrimp Palaemonetes paludosa (Gibbes): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 55, p. 433-441.

Menzies, R. J., 1954, A review of the systematics and ecology of the genus "Exosphaeroma," with the description of a new genus, a new species, and a new subspecies (Crustacea, Isopoda, Sphaeromidae): American Museum Novitates no. 1683, 24 p.

Miller, G. C., 1965, Western North American crawfishes (Pacifastacus) in brackish water environments: Oregon Fish Commission Research Briefs, v. 11, no. 1, p. 42-50.
Miller, M. A., 1933, A new blind isopod, Asellus californicus, and a revision of the subterranean asellids: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Zoology, v. 39, no. 4, p. 97-110.
Newman, W. A., and Ross, Arnold, 1976, Revision of the balanomorph barnacles; including a catalog of the species: Memoirs of the San Diego Society of Natural History no. 9, 108 p.
Noodt, W., 1974, Bathynellacea (Crustacea, Syncarida) auch in Nord-Amerika Naturwissenschaften, v. 61, no. 3, p. 132.
Ortmann, A. E., 1905, The mutual affinities of the species of the genus Cambarus, and their dispersal over the United States: Philadelphia, Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, v. 44, no. 180, p. 91-136.
_____1906, The crawfishes of the State of Pennsylvania: Pittsburgh, Memoirs of the Carnegie Museum, v. 2, no. 10, p. 343-521.
_____1931, Crawfishes of the southern Appalachians and the Cumberland Plateau: Pittsburgh, Annals of the Carnegie Museum, v. 20, no. 2, p. 61-160.
Penn, G. H., 1956, The genus Procambarus in Louisiana (Decapoda, Astacidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 56, no. 2, p. 406-422.
_____1957, Variation and subspecies of the crawfish Orconectes palmeri (Faxon): New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 5, no. 10, p. 229-262.
_____1959, An illustrated key to the crawfishes of Louisiana, with a summary of their distribution within the State (Decapoda:Astacidae): New Orleans, Tulane University, Studies in Zoology, v. 7, no. 1, p. 3-20.
Penn, G. H., and Hobbs, H. H., Jr., 1958, A contribution toward a knowledge of the crawfishes of Texas (Decapoda:Asticidae): Austin, The Texas Journal of Science, v. 10, p. 452-483.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Richardson, Harriet, 1904, Isopod crustaceans of the northwest coast of North America, in Harriman Alaska Expedition--Crustacea: New York, Doubleday, v. 10, p. 211-230.
_____1905, A monograph of the isopods of North America: Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 54, 727 p.
Rhoades, R., 1944a, Crayfishes of Kentucky, with notes on variations, distribution, and description of new species and subspecies: American Midland Naturalist, v. 31, no. 1, p. 111-149.
_____1944b, Further studies on distribution and taxonomy of Ohio crayfishes, with the description of a new subspecies: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 44, no. 2, p. 95-99.
Riegel, J. A., 1959, The systematics and distribution of crayfishes in California: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, v. 45, p. 29-50.
Schmitt, W. L., 1933, Notes on shrimps of the genus Macrobrachium found in the United States: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 23, no. 6, p. 312-317.
Schultze, P., 1926, Schizopoda: Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands, v. 17, no. 17, 18 p.

Schwartz, F. J., and Meredith, W. G., 1962, Crayfishes of the Cheat River watershed in West Virginia and Pennsylvania, Part II--Observations upon ecological factors relating to distribution: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 62, no. 5, p. 260-273.

Segerstrale, S. G., 1937, Studien über die Bodentierwelt in südfinnländischen Küstengewässern, III--Zur morphologie und biologie des Amphipoden Pontoporeia affinis, nebst einer revision der Pontoporeia-Systematic: Societas Scientiarum Fennica Commentationes Biologicae, v. 7, no. 1, p. 5-183.

Shoemaker, C. R., 1938, A new species of freshwater amphipod of the genus Synpleonia, with remarks on related genera: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 51, p. 137-142.

_____1942, Notes on some American freshwater amphipod crustaceans and descriptions of a new genus and two new species: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 101, no. 9, 31 p.

_____1944, Description of a new species of amphipoda of the genus Anisogammarus from Oregon: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 34, p. 89-93.

Smalley, A. E., 1961, A new cave shrimp from southeastern United States (Decapoda, Atyidae): Crustaceana, v. 3, no. 2, p. 127-130.

Stansbery, D. H., 1962, A revised checklist of the crayfish of Ohio (Decapoda: Astacidae): Columbus, Ohio State University, Department of Zoology and Entomology, 5 p.

Steele, M., 1902, The crayfish of Missouri: University of Cincinnati Bulletin, v. 10, p. 1-53.

Steeves, H. R., III, 1963a, The troglobitic asellids of the United States--The Stygius group: American Midland Naturalist, v. 69, no. 2, p. 470-481.

_____1963b, Two new troglobitic asellids from West Virginia: American Midland Naturalist, v. 70, no. 2, p. 462-465.

_____1964, The troglobitic asellids of the United States--The Hobbsi group: American Midland Naturalist, v. 71, no. 2, p. 445-451.

_____1965, Two new species of troglobitic asellids from the United States: American Midland Naturalist, v. 73, no. 1, p. 81-84.

_____1968, Three new species of troglobitic asellids from Texas: American Midland Naturalist, v. 79, no. 1, p. 183-188.

Steeves, H. R., III, and Holsinger, J. R., 1968, Biology of three new species of troglobitic asellids from Tennessee: American Midland Naturalist, v. 80, no. 1, p. 75-83.

Steeves, H. R., III, and Seidenberg, A. J., 1971, A new species of troglobitic asellid from Illinois: American Midland Naturalist, v. 85, no. 1, p. 231-234.

Styron, C. E., 1969, Taxonomy of two populations of an aquatic isopod, Lirceus fontinalis Raf: American Midland Naturalist, v. 82, no. 2, p. 402-416.

Tattersall, W. M., 1932, Contributions to a knowledge of the Mysidacea of California, Part II--The Mysidacea collected during the survey of San Francisco Bay by the USS "Albatross" in 1914: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Zoology, v. 37, no. 14, p. 315-347.

_____1951, A review of the Mysidacea of the United States National Museum: Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 201, p. 1-292.

Thienemann, A., 1925, Mysis relicta--Funte Mitteilung über die Bezichungen Zwischen dem sauerstoffgehalt des wassers und der zusammensetzung der fauna in Norddeutschen seen: Zeitschrift für Morphologie Ökologie der Tiere, v. 3, p. 389-440.

Turner, C. L., 1926, The crayfishes of Ohio: Columbus, Ohio Biological Survey Bulletin, v. 13, no. 3, p. 145-195.

Ulrich, C. J., 1902, A contribution to the subterranean fauna of Texas: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 23, p. 83-100.

VanName, W. G., 1936, The American land and freshwater isopod Crustacea: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 71, p. 1-535.

_____1940, A supplement to the American land and freshwater isopod crustacea: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 77, p. 109-142.

_____1942, A second supplement to the American land and freshwater isopod Crustacea: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 80, no. 8, p. 299-329.

Weckel, A. L., 1907, The freshwater Amphipoda of North America: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 32, p. 25-58.

Williams, A. B., 1954, Speciation and distribution of the crayfishes of the Ozark Plateaus and Ouachita Provinces: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 36, no. 2, p. 803-918.

_____1965, Marine decapod crustaceans of the Carolinas: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Commercial Fisheries, v. 65, no. 1, 298 p.

Williams, A. B., and Leonard, A. B., 1952, The crayfishes of Kansas: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 34, no. 2, p. 961-1012.

Williams, W. D., 1970, A revision of North American epigean species of Asellus (Crustacea:Isopoda): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 49, 80 p.

_____1972, Freshwater isopods (Asellidae) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 7, 45 p.

GASTROTRICHA

Brunson, R. B., 1947, Gastrotricha of North America, Part II--Four new species of Ichthydium from Michigan: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 33, p. 59-62.

_____1948, Chaetonotus tachyneusticus, a new species of gastrotrich from Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 67, no. 4, p. 350-351.

_____1950, An introduction to the taxonomy of the Gastrotricha, with a study of eighteen species from Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 69, no. 4, p. 325-352.

_____1959, Gastrotricha, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Freshwater biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 406-419.

Davison, D. B., 1938, A new species of gastrotrichan--Chaetonotus robustus, new species: American Museum Novitates no. 972, p. 1-6.

De Beauchamp, P. M., 1934, Sur la morphologie et l'ethologie des Neogossea (gastrotriches): Bulletin de la Societe Zoologique France, v. 58, p. 331-342.

Grünspan, T., 1910, Fauna aquatica Europeae, die Süsswassergastrotrichen Europas--Eine zusammenfassende Darstellung ihrer anatomie, biologie und systematik: Annales de Biologia Lacustre, v. 4, p. 211-365.
Hatch, M. H., 1939, Notes on two species of Gastrotricha from Washington: American Midland Naturalist, v. 21, no. 1, p. 257-258.
Hyman, L. H., 1951, The invertebrates Acanthocephala, Aschelminthes, and Entroprocta: New York, McGraw-Hill, v. III, 572 p.
Mola, Pasquale, 1932, Gastrotricha delle acque dolci italiane: Internationale Revue, v. 26, p. 397-423.
Murray, J., 1913, Gastrotricha: London, Journal of the Quekett Microscopical Club, v. 12, p. 211-238.
Packard, C. E., 1936, Observations of the Gastrotricha indigenous to New Hampshire: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 55, p. 422-427.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Remane, A., 1927, Beiträge zur Systematik der Süsswassergastrotrichen: Zoologische Jahrbücher Abterlung Systematik, v. 53, p. 269-320.
_____1935-36, Gastrotricha (Gastrotricha und Kinorhyncha), in Bronns, Klassen und Ordnungen des Tierreichs, v. IV--Abteilung II: Leipzig, Germany, Akademische Verlagssgesellschaft, book 1, part 2, Lfrg. 1-2, p. 1-242.
Saito, I., 1937, Neue und bekannte Gastrotrichen der Umgebung von Hiroshima (Japan): Hiroshima University, Journal of Science, series B, division 1, v. 5, p. 245-265.
Zelinka, Carl, 1890, Die Gastrotrichen--Eine monographische Darstellung ihrer anatomie, biologie und systematik: Zeitschrift für wissenschafliche Zoologie, v. 49, p. 209-384.

TARDIGRADA

Bartos, Emanuel, 1941, Studien über die Tardigraden des Karpathengebietes: Zoologische Jahrbücher Abterlung Systematik Ökologie Geographie der Tiere, v. 74, p. 435-472.
Beasley, C. W., 1978, The Tardigrades of Oklahoma: American Midland Naturalist, v. 99, no. 1, p. 128-141.
Cu énot, L. C. M. J., 1932, Tardigrades: Faune de France, v. 24, 96 p.
Dastych, H., 1974, North Korean Tardigrada: Acta Zoologischer Cracov, v. 19, p. 125-145.
Doyere, M. P. L. N., 1840, Memoire sur les Tardigrades: Annales Sciences Naturelles Zoologie, v. 14, p. 269-361; v. 17, p. 193-205; v. 18, p. 5-35.
Greven, H., 1972, Tardigraden des nördlichen Sauerlandes: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 189, no. 5-6, p. 368-381.
Horning, D. S., Jr., Shuster, R. O., and Grigarick, A. A., 1978, Tardigrada of New Zealand: New Zealand Journal of Zoology, v. 5, no. 2, p. 185-280.
Higgins, R. P., 1959, Life history of Macrobiotus islandicus Richters, with notes on other tardigrades from Colorado: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 78, no. 2, p. 137-154.
_____ed., 1975, International symposium on tardigrades: Memorie dell' Istituto Italaniano di Idrobiologia, Supplement, v. 32, p. 1-469.
Marcus, Ernst, 1928a, Spinnentiere oder Arachnoidea, Part IV--Bärtierchen (Tardigrada): Tierwelt Deutschlands, v. 12, p. 1-230.

_____1928b, Zur Ökologie und Physiologie der Tardigraden: Zoologische Jahrbücher Abteleung Physiolog, v. 44, no. 3, p. 323-370.
_____1936, Tardigrada: Das Tierreich, v. 66, 340 p.
_____1959, Tardigrada, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 508-521.
Matthews, G. B., 1938, Tardigrada from North America: American Midland Naturalist, v. 19, no. 3, p. 619-627.
May, R. M., 1948, La vie des Tardigrades, in Rostand, J., ed., Histoires naturelles: Paris, Gallimard, v. 8, p. 1-131.
Morgan, C. I., 1976, Studies on the British Tardigrade fauna--Some zoogeographical and ecological notes: Journal of Natural History, v. 10, no. 6, p. 607-632.
Morgan, C. I., and King, P. E., 1976, British tardigrades, Tardigrada: London, Academic Press, 133 p.
Muller, Z., 1935, Zur vergleichenden Myologie der Tardigraden: Zeitschrift fur wissenschaftliche Zoologie, v. 147, no. 2, p. 171-204.
Murray, J., 1910, Tardigrada: Reports of the Scientific Investigations of the British Antarctic Expedition, 1907-1909, v. 1, part V, p. 83-185.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Petersen, B., 1951, The Tardigrade fauna of Greenland--A faunistic study with some few ecological remarks: Meddelanden om Grønland, v. 150, no. 5, 94 p.
Ramazotti, Giuseppe, 1972, Il phylum Tardigrada: Memorie dell' Istituto Italiano di Idrobiologia Dott. Marco de Marchi, v. 28, 732 p.
_____1974, Suplemento a "Il phylum Tardigrada" (2d ed.): Memorie dell' Istituto Italiano Idrobiologia Dott. Marco de Marchi, v. 31, p. 69-179.
Riggin, G. T., 1962, Tardigrada of southwest Virginia, with the addition of a description of a new marine species from Florida: Virginia Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin, v. 152, p. 1-145.
Rudescu, L., 1964, Tardigrada:Arthropoda: Fauna Republicu Populare Romania, v. 4, no. 7, p. 1-400.
Schuster, R. O., and Grigarick, A. A., 1965, Tardigrada from western North America, with emphasis on the fauna of California: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Zoology, v. 76, p. 1-67.
Schuster, R. O., Toftner, E. C., and Grigarick, A. A., 1977, Tardigrada of Pope Beach, Lake Tahoe, California, USA: Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 35, no. 1, p. 115-136.
Thulin, Gustav, 1911, Beiträge zur Kenntnis der Tardigradenfauna Schwedens: Arkiv für Zoologi, v. 7, no. 16, 60 p.
_____1928, Über die Phylogenie und das system der Tardigraden: Hereditas, v. 11, no. 2/3, p. 207-266.

MACROPHYTES

Beal, E. O., 1977, A manual of marsh and aquatic vascular plants of North Carolina, with habitat data: North Carolina Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 247, 298 p.
Britton, N. L., and Brown, Addison, 1970, An illustrated flora of the northern United States and Canada (2d ed.): New York, Dover Publications, v. 1, 680 p.; v. 2, 735 p.; v. 3, 637 p.

Conrad, H. S., 1956, How to know the mosses and liverworts: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 226 p.

_____1959, Bryophyta, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1161-1169.

Correll, D. S., and Correll, H. B., 1975, Aquatic and wetland plants of southwestern United States: Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, v. 1, 846 p.; v. 2, 920 p.

Dawson, E. Y., 1956, How to know the seaweeds: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 197 p.

Eyles, D. E., and Robertson, L., Jr., 1963, A guide and key to the aquatic plants of the southeastern United States: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Circular no. 158, 151 p. [Reprint of U.S. Public Health Service Bulletin no. 286, 1944.]

Fassett, N. C., 1969, A manual of aquatic plants: Madison, University of Wisconsin Press, 405 p.

Fernald, M. L., 1970, Gray's manual of botany (8th ed.): New York, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1,632 p.

Grout, A. J., 1924, Mosses with a hand-lens--A popular guide to the common or conspicuous mosses and liverworts of the northeastern United States (3d ed.): New York, published by the author, 339 p.

_____1928-1940, Moss flora of North America, north of Mexico: New York, privately printed, 3 v.

Haslam, S. M., 1978, River plants--The macrophytic vegetation of water courses: Cambridge, England, Cambridge University Press, 396 p.

Hitchcock, A. S., 1935, Manual of the grasses of the United States: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Miscellaneous Publication 200, 1,040 p.

Hotchkiss, Neil, 1972, Common marsh, underwater and floating-leaved plants of the United States and Canada: New York, Dover Publications, 124 p.

Jennings, O. E., 1951, A manual of the mosses of western Pennsylvania and adjacent regions (2d ed.): American Midland Naturalist Monograph no. 6, 396 p.

Kapp, R. O., 1969, How to know pollen and spores: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 249 p.

Lawrence, G. H. M., 1951, Taxonomy of vascular plants: New York, Macmillan, 823 p.

_____1955, An introduction to plant taxonomy: New York, Macmillan, 179 p.

Martin, A. C., and Uhler, F. M., 1939, Food of game ducks in the United States and Canada: U.S. Department of Agriculture Technical Bulletin no. 634, 157 p.

Mason, H. L., 1957, A flora of the marshes of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, 878 p.

Muenscher, W. C., 1944, Aquatic plants of the United States: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 374 p.

_____1959, Vascular plants, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1170-1193.

Ogden, E. C., 1943, The broad-leaved species of Potamogeton of North America, north of Mexico: Rhodora, v. 45, p. 57-105.

_____1953, Key to the North American species of Potamogeton: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Circular 31, 11 p.

Prescott, G. W., 1969, How to know the aquatic plants: Dubuque, Iwoa, W. C. Brown Co., 171 p.

Radford, A. E., Ahles, H. E., and Bell, C. R., 1968, Manual of the vascular flora of the Carolinas: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 1,183 p.

Rossbach, G. B., 1939, Aquatic Utricularias: Rhodora, v. 41, p. 113-128.
Schuster, R. M., 1949, The ecology and distribution of Hepaticae in central and western New York: American Midland Naturalist, v. 42, no. 3, p. 513-712.
_____1956, Boreal Hepaticae--A manual of the liverworts of Minnesota and adjacent regions: American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, p. 257-684.
Small, J. K., 1933, Manual of the southeastern flora: New York, published by the author, 1,554 p.
Smith, G. M., 1950, The freshwater algae of the United States (2d ed.): New York, McGraw-Hill, 719 p.
Steward, A. N., Dennis, L. R. J., and Gilkey, H. M., 1963, Aquatic plants of the Pacific Northwest, with vegetative keys (2d ed.): Corvallis, Oregon State University Press, 261 p.
Tarver, D. P., Rodger, J. A., Mahler, M. J., and Lazor, R. L., 1978, Aquatic and wetland plants of Florida: Florida Department of Natural Resources, Bureau of Aquatic Plant Research and Control, 127 p.
Taylor, W. R., 1957, Marine algae of the northeastern coast of North America (rev. ed.): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan Studies, Scientific Series, v. 13, 509 p.
Welch, W. H., 1957, Mosses of Indiana: Indianapolis, The Bookwalter Co., 478 p.
Weldon, L. W., Blackburn, R. D., and Harrison, D. S., 1969, Common aquatic weeds: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Services Handbook no. 352, 43 p.
Winterringer, G. S., and Lopinot, A. C., 1966, Aquatic plants of Illinois: Springfield, Illinois State Museum Popular Science Series no. 6, 142 p.
Wood, R. D., 1967, Charophytes of North America: Kingston, R.I., University of Rhode Island Bookstore, 72 p.

PORIFERA

Annandale, Nelson, 1909, Freshwater sponges in the collection of the United States National Museum, Part II--Specimens from North and South America: Proceedings of the United States National Museum, Smithsonian Institution, v. 37, no. 1712, p. 401-406.
Arndt, W., 1926, Die Spongillidenfauna Europas: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 17, no. 2, p. 337-365.
_____1928, Porifera, Schwämme, Spongien: Tierwelt Deutchlands, v. 4, p. 1-94.
Bowerbank, J. S., 1863, A monograph of the Spongillidae: Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, p. 440-472.
Carter, H. J., 1881, History and classification of the known species of Spongilla: Annales and Magazine of Natural History, v. 7, no. 5, p. 77-107.
De Laubenfels, M. W., 1936, A discussion of the Sponge fauna of the Dry Tortugas in particular and the West Indies in general, with material for a revision of the families and orders of the Porifera: Carnegie Institution, Papers of the Tortugas Laboratory 30, p. 1-225.
_____1953, Guide to the sponges of eastern North America: Coral Gables, University of Miami, 32 p.
Eshleman, S. K., 1949, A key to Florida's freshwater sponges, with descriptive notes: Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 12, no. 1, p. 35-44.

Gee, N. G., 1932a, Genus Trochospongilla of the freshwater sponges: Peking Natural History Bulletin, v. 6, no. 2, p. 1-32.
_____1932b, The known freshwater sponges: Peking Natural History Bulletin, v. 6, no. 3, p. 25-51.
Harrison, F. W., Johnston, L., Stansell, K. B., and McAndrew, W., 1977, The taxonomic and ecological status of the environmentally restricted spongilla species of North America, Part I--Spongilla sponginosa Penney 1957: Hydrobiologia, v. 53, no. 3, p. 199-201.
Jewell, M. E., 1935, An ecological study of the freshwater sponges of northern Wisconsin: Ecological Monographs, v. 5, no. 4, p. 461-501.
_____1939, An ecological study of the freshwater sponges of Wisconsin, Part II--The influence of calcium: Ecology, v. 20, no. 1, p. 11-28.
_____1952, The genera of North American freshwater sponges--Parameyenia new genus: Lawrence, Transactions of the Kansas Academy of Science, v. 55, no. 4, p. 445-457.
_____1959, Porifera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 298-312.
Leveaux, M., 1939, La formation des gemmules chez les Spongillidae: Annales de la Société Royale Zoologique de Belgique, v. 70, p. 53-96.
Lindenschmidt, M. J., 1950, A new species of freshwater sponge: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 69, no. 2, p. 214-216.
Neidhofer, J. R., 1940, The freshwater sponges of Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 32, p. 177-197.
Old, M. C., 1931a, A new species of freshwater sponge: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 4, p. 298-301.
_____1931b, Taxonomy and distribution of the freshwater sponges (Spongillideae) of Michigan: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 15, p. 439-477.
_____1932a, Environmental selection of the freshwater sponges (Spongillidae) of Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 51, no. 2, p. 129-136.
_____1932b, Contribution to the biology of freshwater sponges (Spongillidae): Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 17, p. 663-679.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Penney, J. T., 1933, A new freshwater sponge from South Carolina: Proceedings of the United States National Museum, Smithsonian Institution, v. 82, no. 24, p. 1-5.
Penney, J. T., and Racek, A. A., 1968, Comprehensive revision of the worldwide collection of freshwater sponges (Porifera:Spongillidae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, United States National Museum Bulletin 272, 184 p.
Potts, E., 1887, Freshwater sponges--A monograph: Philadelphia, Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, p. 158-279.
Smith, F., 1918, A new species of Spongilla from Oneida Lake, New York: Syracuse University, New York State College of Forestry Technical Publication no. 9, p. 239-243.
_____1921, Distribution of the freshwater sponges of North America: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 14, p. 13-22.
_____1923, Data on the distribution of the Michigan freshwater sponges: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 1, p. 418-421.

Stephens, Jane, 1920, The freshwater sponges of Ireland: Dublin, Proceedings of the Royal Irish Academy, v. 35, section B, p. 205-254.
Volkmer-Ribeiro, C., 1976, A new monotypic genus of neotropical freshwater sponges (Porifera-Spongillidae) and evidence of a speciation via hybridism: Hydrobiologia, v. 50, p. 271-281.

TURBELLARIA

Beauchamp, R. S. A., 1932, Some ecological factors and their influence on competition between stream and lake-loving triclads: Journal of Animal Ecology, v. 1, no. 2, p. 175-190.
Beauchamp, R. S. A., and Ullyot, P., 1932, Competitive relationships between certain species of freshwater triclads: Journal of Ecology, v. 20, no. 1, p. 200-208.
Buchanan, J. W., 1936, Notes on an American cave flatworm Sphalloplana percaeca (Packard): Ecology, v. 17, no. 2, p. 194-211.
Carter, J. S., 1929, Observations on Rhabdocoeles of Albermarle County, Virginia: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 48, p. 431-437.
Castle, W. A., 1941, The morphology and life history of Hymanella retenuova, a new species of triclad from New England: American Midland Naturalist, v. 26, no. 1, p. 85-96.
Castle, W. A., and Hyman, L. H., 1934, Observations on Fonticola velata (Stringer), including a description of the anatomy of the reproductive system: Journal of the American Microscopical Society, v. 53, no. 2, p. 154-171.
Ferguson, F. F., 1939-40, A monograph of the genus Macrostomum O. Schmidt 1848, parts I-VIII: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 126, no. 1/2, p. 7-20; v. 127, p. 131-144; v. 128, no. 3/4, p. 49-68, no. 7/8, p. 188-205, no. 11/12, p. 274-291; v. 129, no. 1/2, p. 21-48, no. 5/6, p. 120-146, no. 9/10, p. 244-266.
Ferguson, F. F., and Hayes, W. J., Jr., 1941, A synopsis of the genus Mesotoma Ehrenberg 1835: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 57, no. 1, p. 1-52.
Gilbert, C. M., 1938, A new North American rhabdocoele-Pseudophaenocora sulfophila nov. genus, nov. spec.: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 124, no. 8, p. 193-216.
Graff, L. von, 1911, Acoela, Rhabdocoela, und Alloeocoela des Ostens der Vereinigten Staaten von Amerika: Zeitschrift für wissenschaftliche Zoologie, v. 99, p. 1-108.
_____1913, Turbellaria, Part II--Rhabdocoelida: Das Tierreich, v. 35, p. 1-484.
Hayes, W. J., Jr., 1941, Rhabdocoela of Wisconsin, Part I--Morphology and taxonomy of Protoascus wisconsinensis n. g., n. sp.: American Midland Naturalist, v. 25, no. 2, p. 388-401.
Heinlein, E., and Wachowski, H. E., 1944, Studies on the flatworm Catenula virginia: American Midland Naturalist, v. 31, no. 1, p. 150-158.
Hyman, L. H., 1925, The reproductive system and other characters of Planaria dorotocephala Woolworth: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 44, p. 51-89.

_____1928, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part I--Procotyla fluviatilis, commonly but erroneously known as Dendrocoelum lacteum: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 47, no. 2, p. 222-255.
_____1931a, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part III--On Polycelis coronata (Girard): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 2, p. 124-135.
_____1931b, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part IV--Recent European revisions of the triclads, and their application to the American forms, with a key to the latter and new notes on distribution: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 4, p. 316-335.
_____1931c, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part V--Description of two new species: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 50, no. 4, p. 336-343.
_____1935, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part VI--A new dendrocoelid from Montana, Dendrocoelopsis vaginatus n. sp: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 54, no. 4, p. 338-345.
_____1937a, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part VII--The two species confused under the name Phagocata gracilis, the validity of the generic name Phagocata Leidy 1847, and its priority over Fonticola Komarck 1926: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 56, no. 3, p. 298-310.
_____1937b, Studies on the morphology, taxonomy, and distribution of North American triclad Turbellaria, Part VIII--Some cave planarians of the United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 56, p. 457-477.
_____1938, North American Rhabdocoela and Alloecoela, Part II--Rediscovery of Hydrolimax grisea Haldeman: American Museum Novitates, v. 1004, p. 1-19.
_____1939a, North American triclad Turbellaria, Part IX--The priority of Dugesia Girard 1850 over Euplanaria Hesse 1897, with notes on American species of Dugesia: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 3, p. 264-275.
_____1939b, North American triclad Turbellaria, Part X--Additional species of cave planarians: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 3, p. 276-284.
_____1939c, New species of flatworms from North, Central, and South America: Proceedings of the United States National Museum, Smithsonian Institution, v. 86, no. 3055, p. 419-439.
_____1951, North American triclad Turbellaria, Part XII--Synopsis of the known species of freshwater planarians of North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 70, no. 2, p. 154-167.
Hyman, L. H., and Jones, E. R., 1959, Turbellaria, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 323-365.
Kenk, Roman, 1935, Studies on Virginian triclads: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 51, no. 1, p. 79-125.
_____1944, The freshwater triclads of Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publication of the Museum of Zoology, v. 60, p. 1-44.

_____1953, The freshwater triclads (Turbellaria) of Alaska: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 103, no. 3322, p. 164-186.
Kromhout, G. A., 1943, A comparison of the protonephridia of freshwater, brackish-water, and marine specimens of Gyratrix hermaphroditus: Journal of Morphology, v. 72, no. 1, p. 167-179.
Nuttycombe, J. W., 1956, The Catenula of the eastern United States: American Midland Naturalist, v. 55, no. 2, p. 419-433.
Nuttycombe, J. W., and Waters, A. J., 1938, The American species of the genus Stenostomum: Philadelphia, Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, v. 79, no. 2, p. 213-284.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Reisinger, Erich, 1923, Turbellaria: Biologie der Tiere Deutschlands, v. 4, 64 p.
Ruebush, T. K., 1935a, The genus Olisthanella in the United States: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 112, no. 5/6, p. 129-136.
_____1935b, The occurrence of Provortex affinis Jensen in the United States: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 111, no. 11/12, p. 305-308.
_____1937, The genus Dalyellia in America: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 119, p. 237-256.
_____1941, A key to the American freshwater Turbellarian genera, exclusive of the Tricladida: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 60, no. 1, p. 29-40.
Ruebush, T. K., and Hayes, W. J., Jr., 1939, The genus Dalyellia in America, Part II--A new form from Tennessee and a discussion of the relationships within the genus: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 128, p. 136-152.
Steinböck, O., 1926, Zur Ökologie der alpinen Turbellarien: Zeitschrift für Morphologie Ökologie der Tiere, v. 5, no. 3, p. 424-446.

NEMERTEA (Rhynchocoela)

Böhmig, L., 1898, Beiträge zur Anatomie und Histologie der Nemertinen Stich ostemmagroeccase Böhmig, Ganemertes chalicophora Graff: Zeitschrift für wissenschaftliche Zoologie, v. 64, p. 479-564.
Coe, W. R., 1943, Biology of the nemerteans of the Atlantic coast of North America: New Haven, Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, v. 35, p. 129-328.
_____1959, Nemertea, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 366-367.
Cordero, E. H., 1943, Hallazgos en diversos paises de Sud América de nemertinos de agua dulce del género "Prostoma": Anais Academia Brasileira de Ciencias, v. 15, no. 2, p. 125-134.
Montgomery, T. H., 1896, Stichostemma asensoriatum n. sp., a freshwater Nemertean from Pennsylvania: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 19, p. 436-438.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Reisinger, Erich, 1926, Nemertini: Biologie der Tiere Deutchlands, v. 17, p. 1-24.
Rioja, E., 1941, Estudios hidrobiologicos, Part V--Hallazgo en Zochimilco de Stichostemma rubrum (Leidy), nemerte de agua dulce: Mexico Anales Instituto Biologia, v. 12, p. 663-668.

Stiasny-Wijnhoff, G., 1938, Das Genus Prostoma Dugès, eine Gattung von Süsswasser-Nemertinen: Archives Neérlandaises de Zoologie Supplement, v. 3, p. 219-230.

NEMATODA (Nemata)

Bastian, H. C., 1865, Monograph on the Anguillulidae, or free nematids, marine, land, and freshwater, with descriptions of 100 new species: Transactions of the Linnean Society of London, v. 25, p. 74-184.

Baylis, H. A., and Daubney, R., 1926, A synopsis of the families and genera of Nematoda: London, British Museum of Natural History, 277 p.

Chatterji, R. C., 1935, Permanent mounts of nematodes: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 109, no. 9/10, p. 270.

Chitwood, B. G., 1931, A comparative histological study of certain nematodes: Zeitschrift für Morphologie Ökologie der tiere, v. 23, p. 237-284.

_____1935, Nematodes parasitic in, and associated with, Crustacea, and descriptions of new species and a new variety: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 2, p. 93-96.

_____1951, North American marine nematodes: Texas Journal of Science, v. 3, no. 4, p. 617-672.

Chitwood, B. G., and Allen, M. W., 1959, Nemata, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 368-401.

Chitwood, B. G., and Chitwood, M. B., 1930, A technique for the embedding of nematodes: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, no. 2, p. 186-187.

_____1937-40, An introduction to nematology, section I, parts I-III (rev. 1950), and section II, part I: Baltimore, Md., Monumental Printing Co., p. 1-240.

Chitwood, B. G., and McIntosh, A., 1934, A new variety of Alloionema (Nematoda:Diplogasteridae), with a note on the genus: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 1, p. 37-38.

Cobb, M. V., 1915, Some freshwater nematodes of the Douglas Lake region of Michigan, U.S.A.: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 34, p. 21-47.

Cobb, N. A., 1913, New nematode genera found inhabiting freshwater and nonbrackish soils: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 3, p. 432-444.

_____1914, The North American free-living freshwater nematodes: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 33, p. 69-119.

_____1914-35, Contributions to the science of nematology: Baltimore, Md., 490 p. [Issued in 26 parts, bound in one volume, some parts are reprints of previously published articles; others are original.]

_____1915, Nematodes and their relationships--Yearbook for 1914: U.S. Department of Agriculture, p. 457-490.

_____1917, The mononchs--A genus of free-living predatory nematodes: Soil Science, v. 3, p. 431-486.

_____1918, Filter-bed nemas--Nematodes of the slow sand filter beds of American cities (including new genera and species), with notes on hermaphroditism and parthenogenesis: Contributions in Science Nematology, no. 7, p. 189-212.

_____1919, The orders and classes of nemas: Contributions in Science Nematology, no. 8, p. 213-216.
_____1920, One hundred new nemas: Contributions in Science Nematology, no. 9, p. 217-393.
_____1935, A key to the genera of free-living nemas: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 2, p. 1-40.
Ferris, V. R., Ferris, J. M., and Tjepkema, J. P., 1973, Genera of freshwater nematodes (Nemotoda) of eastern North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 10, 38 p.
Filip'ev, I. N., 1934, The classification of the free-living nematodes and their relation to the parasitic nematodes: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 89, no. 6, p. 1-63.
_____1936, On the classification of the Tylenchinae: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 3, no. 2, p. 80-82.
Filip'ev, I. N., and Stekhoven, J. H. S., 1941, A manual of agricultural helminthology: Leiden, Germany, E. J. Brill, 878 p.
Goodey, T., 1947, Domorganus macronephriticus n.g., n. sp., a new cylindroloaimid free-living soil nematode: Journal of Helminthology, v. 21, p. 175-180.
_____1963, Soil and freshwater nematodes (2d ed., rev. by J. B. Goodey): New York, John Wiley, 544 p.
Hoeppli, R. J. C., 1926, Studies of free-living nematodes from the thermal waters of Yellowstone Park: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 45, p. 234-255.
Hyman, L. H., 1951, The invertebrates v. III--Acanthocephala, Aschelminthes, and Entoprocta: New York, McGraw-Hill, 572 p.
Man, J. G. de., 1884, Die frei in der reinen Erde und im süssen Wasser lebenden Nematoden der Niederländischen Fauna: Leiden, Germany, E. J. Brill, 206 p.
Micoletzky, H., 1925, Die freilebenden Süsswasser- und Moornematoden Dänemarks: D. Kgl. Danske Videnskabernes Selskab Skrifter Naturvidenskabelig og Mathematisk Afdeling, v. 10, p. 57-310.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Schneider, W., 1937, Freilebende Nematoden der Deutschen Limnologischen Sundaexpedition nach Sumatra, Java und Bali: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 15, p. 30-108.
Steiner, G., 1914, Freilebende Nematoden aus der Schweiz: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 9, p. 259-276, p. 420-438.
_____1915, Beiträge zur geographischen Verbreitung freilebender Nematoden: Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 46, p. 311-335, 337-349.
Thorne, G., 1930, Predaceous nemas of the genus Nygolaimus and a new genus Sectonema: Journal of Agricultural Research, v. 41, p. 445-466.
_____1935, Notes on free-living and plant parasitic nematodes, Part II: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 2, no. 2, p. 96-98.
_____1937, A revision of the nemotode family Cephalobidae Chitwood and Chitwood 1934: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Helminthological Society, v. 4, p. 1-16.
_____1939, A monograph of the nematodes of the superfamily Dorylaimoidea: Capita Zoologica (Gravenhage), v. 8, part 5, p. 1-261.
_____1961, Principles of nematology: New York, McGraw-Hill, 553 p.

Thorne, G., and Swanger, H. H., 1936, A monograph of the nematode genera Dorylaimus Dujardin, Aporcelaimus n.g., Dorylaimoides n.g. and Pungentus n.g.: Capita Zoologica (Hague), v. 6, no. 4, p. 1-223.
Wieser, W., and Hopper, B., 1967, Marine nematodes of the East Coast of North America, Part I--Florida: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 135, p. 239-344.

GORDIIDA

Camerano, L., 1897, Monografia dei Gordii: Memoir Royal Accademia Scienze Torino (2), v. 47, p. 339-419.
_____1915, Revisione dei Gordii: Memoir Royal Accademia Scienze Torino (2), v. 66, p. 1-66.
Carvalho, J. C. M., 1942, Studies on some Gordiacea of North and South America: Journal of Parasitology, v. 28, no 3, p. 213-221.
Chitwood, B. G., 1959, Gordiida, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 402-405.
Dorier, A., 1931, Recherches biologiques et systématiques sur les Gordiacés: Grenoble, Universite, Laboratories d'Hydrobiologie et de Pisciculture, Travaux, v. 22, p. 1-180.
Filip'ev, I. N., and Stekhoven, J. H. S., 1941, A manual of agricultural helminthology: Leiden, Germany, E. J. Brill, 878 p.
Goodey, T., 1963, Soil and freshwater nematodes (2d ed., rev. by J. B. Goodey): New York, John Wiley, 544 p.
Heinze, K., 1935a, Über das genus Parachordodes Camarano 1897 nebst allgemeinen Angaben über die Familie Chordodidae: Zeitschrift für Parasitenkunde, v. 7, no. 6, p. 657-678.
_____1935b, Über Gordiiden (Species Inquirendae und Neubeschreibunge): Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 111, no. 1/2, p. 23-32.
_____1937, Die Saitenwürmer (Gordioidea) Deutschlands--Eine systematisch-faunistische studie über Insektenparasiten aus der Gruppe der Nematomorpha: Zeitschrift für Parasitenkunde, v. 9, p. 263-344.
_____1941, Saitenwürmer oder Gordioidea: Tierwelt Deutschlands, v. 39, p. 1-78.
Hyman, L. H., 1951, The invertebrates Acanthocephala, Aschelminthes, and Entoprocta: New York, McGraw-Hill, v. III, 572 p.
Müller, G. W., 1927, Über Gordiaceen [Concening Gordiacea]: Zeitschrift für Morphologie Ökologie tiere, v. 7, no. 1/2, p. 134-219.
Montgomery, T. H., Jr., 1898a, The Gordiacea of certain American collections, with particular reference to the North American fauna: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 32, p. 21-60.
_____1898b, The Gordiacea of certain American collections, with particular reference to the North American fauna, Part II: San Francisco, Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences (3), v. 1, part 9, p. 335-344.
_____1899, Synopses of North American invertebrates, Part II--Gordiacea (Hair worms): American Naturalist, v. 33, p. 647-652.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Schuurmans Stekhoven, J. H., Jr., 1943, Contribution a l'étude des gordiides de la fauna Belge: Bulletin de Museum Royale d'Historique Naturelle Belgique, v. 19, p. 1-28.

Allman, G. J., 1856, A monograph of the fresh-water Polyzoa, including all the known species, both British and foreign: London, Ray Society, 119 p.

Brooks, C. M., 1929, Notes on the statoblasts and polypids of Pectinatella magnifica: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 81, p. 427-441.

Brown, C. J. D., 1933, A limnological study of certain fresh-water Polyzoa, with special reference to their statoblasts: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 52, no. 4, p. 271-316.

Bushnell, J. H., Jr., 1965, On the taxonomy and distribution of the freshwater Ectoprocta in Michigan, Parts I-III: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 84, no. 2, p. 231-244; no. 3, p. 339-358; no. 4, p. 529-548.

Davenport, C. B., 1904, Report on the freshwater bryozoa of the United States: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 27, p. 211-221.

Geiser, S. W., 1937, Pectinatella magnifica Leidy, an occasional river pest in Iowa: Dallas, Field and Laboratory, v. 5, p. 65-76.

Harmer, S. F., 1913, The Polyzoa of waterworks: Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, p. 426-457.

Hurrell, H. E., 1936, Freshwater Polyzoa in English lakes and rivers: Turtox News, v. 14, p. 1-2, 20-21.

Hyman, L. H., 1951, The invertebrates--Acanthocephala, Aschelminthes, and Entoprocta: New York, McGraw-Hill, 572 p.

Jullien, Jules, 1885, Monographie des Bryozoaires d'eau douce: Bulletin de la Societé Zoologique de France, v. 10, p. 91-207.

Kraepelin, Karl, 1887, Die deutschen Süsswasser-Bryozoen, Eine monographie, Part I--Anatomisch-systematischer Teil: Abhandlung naturwissenschaften Vereins Hamburg, v. 10, no. 9, 168 p.

_____1893, Die deutschen Süsswasser-Bryozoen, Eine monographie, Part II, Entwickelungsgeschichtlicher Teil: Abhandlung naturwissenschaften Vereins Hamburg, v. 12, no. 2, 67 p.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Rogick, M. D., 1934, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part I--The occurrence of Lophopodella carteri (Hyatt) 1866 in North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 53, no. 4, p. 416-424.

_____1935, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part II--The Bryozoa of Lake Erie: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 54, no. 3, p. 245-263.

_____1937, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part VI--The finer anatomy of Lophopodella carteri var. typica: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 56, no. 4, p. 367-396.

_____1938, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part VII--On the viability of dried statoblasts of Lophopodella carteri var. typica: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 57, no. 2, p. 178-199.

_____1940a, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part IX--Additions to New York Bryozoa: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 59, no. 2, p. 187-204.

_____1940b, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part XI--The viability of dried statoblasts of several species: Growth, v. 4, no. 3, p. 315-322.

_____1941, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part X--The occurrence of Plumatella casmiana in North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 60, no. 2, p. 211-220.
_____1943a, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part XIII--Additional Plumatella casmiana data: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, no. 3, p. 265-270.
_____1943b, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part XIV--The occurrence of Stolella indica in North America: New York, Annals of the New York Academy of Sciences, v. 45, no. 4, p. 163-178.
_____1945, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part XVI--Fredericella australiensis var. browni n. var.: Biological Bulletin, v. 89, no. 13, p. 215-228.
_____1959, Bryozoa, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 495-507.
_____1960a, Bryozoa: New York, McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology, v. 2, p. 354.
_____1960b, Ectoprocta: New York, McGraw-Hill Encyclopedia of Science and Technology, v. 5, p. 7.
Rogick, M. D., and van der Schalie, Harry, 1950, Studies on freshwater Bryozoa, Part XVII--Michigan Bryozoa: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 50, p. 136-146.
Twitchell, G. B., 1934, Urnatella gracilis Leidy, a living Trepostomatous bryozoan: American Midland Naturalist, v. 15, no. 6, p. 629-655.
Williams, S. R., 1921, Concerning larval colonies of Pectinatella: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 21, p. 123-127.

ANNELIDA

Altman, L. C., 1936, Oligochaeta of Washington: Seattle, University of Washington Publications in Biology, v. 4, no. 1, p. 1-105.
Brigham, A. R., Brigham, W. V., and Gnilka, A., eds., 1978, The aquatic insects and oligochaetes of the Carolina Piedmont: Charlotte, N.C., Duke Power Training Manual, 1 v.
Brinkhurst, R. O., 1963, Taxonomical studies on the Tubificidae (Annelida, Oligochaeta): Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, Systematische Beihefte, v. 2, 89 p.
_____1964, Studies on the North America aquatic Oligochaeta, Part I--Naididae and Opistocystidae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 116, p. 195-230.
_____1965, Studies on the North American aquatic Oligochaeta, Part II--Tubificidae: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 117, no. 4, p. 117-172.
_____1966, Taxonomic studies on the Tubificidae (Annelida, Oligochaeta): Internationale Revue der Gesamten Hydrobiologie, Supplement 51, no. 5, p. 727-742.
_____1968, Oligochaeta, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeast United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. I1-I17.
Brinkhurst, R. O., and Cook, D. G., 1966, Studies on the North American aquatic Oligochaeta, Part III--Lumbriculidae and additional notes and records of other families: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 118, p. 1-33.

Brinkhurst, R. O., and Jamieson, B. G. M., 1971, Aquatic Oligochaeta of the world: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 860 p.
Chen, Y., 1944, Notes on Naidomorph Oligochaeta of Philadelphia and vicinity: Notulae Naturae of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 136, p. 1-8.
Cook, D. G., 1970, Bathyal and abyssal Tubificidae (Annelida, Oligochaeta) from the Gay Head-Bermuda transect, with descriptions of new genera and species: Deep Sea Research, v. 17, p. 973-981.
_____1971, The Tubificidae Annelida Oligochaeta of Cape Cod Bay, Part II--Ecology and systematics, with the description of Phallodrilus-parviatriatus new species: Biological Bulletin, v. 141, no. 2, p. 203-221.
_____1975, Cave dwelling aquatic Oligochaeta Annelida from the Eastern USA: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 94, no. 1, p. 24-37.
Davies, R. W., 1971, A key to the freshwater Hirudinoidea of Canada: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 28, no. 4, p. 543-552.
Foster, N. M. C., 1972, Freshwater polychaetes (Annelida) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 4, 15 p.
Galloway, T. W., 1911, The common freshwater Oligochaeta of the United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 30, p. 285-317.
Goodnight, C. J., 1941, The Branchiobdellidae (Oligochaeta) of Florida: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 60, no. 1, p. 69-74.
_____1959, Oligochaeta, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Freshwater biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 522-537.
Hartman, Olga, 1938, Brackish and freshwater Nereidae from the northeast Pacific, with the description of a new species from central California: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Zoology, v. 43, no. 4, p. 79-82.
_____1951, The littoral marine annelids of the Gulf of Mexico: Port Arkansas, Tex., Publications of the Institute of Marine Science, v. 2, no. 1, p. 7-124.
_____1959a, Polychaeta, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Freshwater biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 538-541.
_____1959b, Capitellidae and Nereidae (marine annelids) from the Gulf side of Florida, with a review of freshwater Nereidae: Marine Science of the Gulf and Caribbean Bulletin, v. 9, no. 2, p. 153-168.
_____1961, Polychaetous annelids from California: Los Angeles, University of Southern California Press, Allan Hancock Foundation for Scientific Research Reports no. 25, 226 p.
Hartman, Olga, and Reish, D. J., 1950, The marine annelids of Oregon: Corvallis, Oregon State Monographs, Studies in Zoology 6, 61 p.
Hermann, S. J., 1970, Systematics, distribution, and ecology of Colorado Hirudinea: American Midland Naturalist, v. 83, no. 1, p. 1-37.
Herter, K., 1932, Hiridinea: Biologie Tiere Deutschland, v. 12b, no. 35, 158 p.
Hiltunen, J. K., 1967, Some oligochaetes from Lake Michigan: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 86, p. 433-454.
Hiltunen, J. K., and Klemm, D. J., 1980, A guide to the Naididae (Annelida, Clitellata, Oligochaeta) of North America: Cincinnati, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency EPA-600/4-80-031, 48 p.

Hoffman, R. L., 1963, A revision of the North American annelid worms of the genus Cambarincola (Oligochaeta:Branchiobdellidae): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 114, no. 3470, p. 271-371.

Holmquist, Charlotte, 1973, Fresh-water polychaete worms of Alaska, with notes on the anatomy of Manayunkia speciosa Leidy: Zoologische Jahrbücher Systematik, v. 100, no. 4, p. 497-516.

Holt, P. C., 1953, Characters of systematic importance in the family Branchiobdellidae (Oligochaeta): Virginia Journal of Science, v. 4, no. 2, p. 57-61.

_____1960, On a new genus of the family Branchiobdellidae (Oligochaeta): American Midland Naturalist, v. 64, no. 1, p. 169-176.

_____1965, On Ankyrodrilus, a new genus of branchiobdellid worms (Annelida): Virginia Journal of Science, v. 16, no. 1, p. 9-21.

_____1967a, Oedipodrilus oedipus, n.g., n. sp. (Annelida, Clitellata: Branchiobdellida): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 86, no. 1, p. 58-60.

_____1967b, Status of genera Branchiobdella and Stephanodrilus in North America, with description of a new genus (Clitellata:Branchiobdellida): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 124, no. 3631, p. 1-10.

_____1968a, The Branchiobdellida--Epizootic annelids: The Biologist, v. 50, p. 79-94.

_____1968b, New genera and species of branchiobdellid worms (Annelida: Clitellata): Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 81, p. 291-318.

_____1968c, The genus Pterodrilus (Annelida:Branchiobdellida): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 125, no. 3668, 44 p.

_____1969, The relationships of the branchiobdellid fauna of the Southern Appalachians, in Holt, P. C., ed., The distributional history of the biota of the southern Appalachians, Part I--Invertebrates: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Monograph 1, p. 191-219.

_____1973a, Branchiobdellids (Annelida:Clitellata) from some eastern North American caves, with descriptions of new species of the genus Cambarincola: International Journal of Speleology, v. 5, no. 3-4, p. 219-256.

_____1973b, Epigean branchiobdellids (Annelida:Clitellata) from Florida: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 86, no. 7, p. 79-103.

_____1974a, An emendation of the genus Triannulata Goodnight, 1940, with the assignment of Triannulata montana to Cambarincola Ellis 1912 (Clitellata: Branchiobdellida): Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 87, no. 8, p. 57-72.

_____1974b, The genus Xironogiton Ellis, 1919 (Clitellata:Branchiobdellida): Virginia Journal of Science, v. 25, no. 1, p. 5-19.

Johnson, H. P., 1903, Freshwater nereids from the Pacific Coast and Hawaii, with remarks on freshwater Polychaeta in general, in Parker, G. H., ed., Mark Anniversary Volume: New York, Henry Holt and Co., p. 205-222.

Klemm, D. J., 1972a, The leeches (Annelida:Hirudinea) of Michigan: Michigan Academician, v. 4, no. 4, p. 405-444.

_____1972b, Freshwater leeches (Annelida:Hirudinea) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems, Identification Manual no. 8, 53 p.

Kopenski, M. L., 1972, Leeches Hirudinea of Marquette County, Michigan: Michigan Academician, v. 4, no. 3, p. 377-383.
Mann, K. H., 1962, Leeches (Hirudinea)--Their structure, physiology, ecology, and embryology: New York, Pergamon, 201 p.
_____1964, A key to the British freshwater leeches, with notes on their ecology: Ambleside, Westmorland Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication, no. 14, 50 p.
Meyer, M. C., 1940, A revision of the leeches (Piscicolidae) living on fresh-water fishes of North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 59, no. 3, p. 354-376.
_____1946, Further notes on the leeches (Piscicolidae) living on fresh-water fishes of North America: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 65, no. 3, p. 237-249.
Meyer, M. C., and Moore, J. P., 1954, Notes on Canadian leeches (Hirudinea), with the description of a new species: Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 12, no. 1, p. 63-96.
Miller, J. A., 1929, The leeches of Ohio--Distribution of the species together with what is known of their occurrence, food, and habitat: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, The Franz Theodore Stone Laboratory Contribution, no. 2, 38 p.
_____1937, A study of the leeches of Michigan, with keys to orders, suborders and species: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 37, no. 2, p. 85-90.
Moore, J. P., 1901, The Hirudinea of Illinois: Illinois State Laboratory Natural History Bulletin, v. 5, p. 479-547.
_____1906, Hirudinea and Oligochaeta collected in the Great Lakes region: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 25, p. 153-172.
_____1951, Leeches (Hirudinea) from Alaskan and adjacent waters: Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 9, no. 1, p. 11-77.
_____1959, Hirudinea, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 542-557.
Nachtrieb, H. F., Hemmingway, E. E., and Moore, J. P., 1912, The leeches of Minnesota: Geological and Natural History Survey of Minnesota, Zoology Series, v. 5, 150 p.
Pennak, R. W., 1971, A freshwater archiannelid from the Colorado Rocky Mountains: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 90, no. 3, p. 372-375.
_____1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Richardson, L. R., 1969, A contribution to the systematics of the hirudinid leeches, with description of new families, genera and species: Acta Zoology Academy of Sciences, Hungary, v. 15, no. 1/2, p. 97-149.
Sapkarev, J. A., 1967/1968, The taxonomy and ecology of leeches (Hirudinea) of Lake Mendota, Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 56, p. 225-253.
Sawyer, R. T., 1967, The leeches of Louisiana, with notes on some North American species (Hirudinea, Annelida): Proceedings of the Louisiana Academy of Science, v. 30, Index 21-30, p. 32-38.
_____1972, North American freshwater leeches, exclusive of the Piscicolidae, with a key to all species: Urbana, University of Illinois Press, Illinois Biological Monographs, v. 46, 154 p.

Soos, Arpad, 1965-69, Identification key to the leech (Hirudinoidea) genera of the world, with a catalogue of the species: Acta Zoology Academy of Sciences, Hungary, Part I, v. 11, no. 3/4, p. 417-463; Part II, v. 12, no. 1/2, p. 145-160; Part III, no. 12, no. 3/4, p. 371-407; Part IV, v. 13, no. 3/4, p. 417-432; Part V, v. 15, no. 1/2, p. 151-201; Part VI, v. 15, no. 3, p. 397-454.

Sperber, Christina, 1948, A taxonomical study of the Naididae: Zoologiska Bidrag Från Uppsala, v. 28, 296 p.

Stephenson, John, 1930, The Oligochaeta: Oxford, Clarendon Press, 978 p.

Wesenberg-Lund, Elise, 1958, Lesser Antillean Polychaetes, chiefly from brackish water, with a survey and a bibliography of fresh and brackish water polychaetes: Studies on the Fauna of Curacao and other Caribbean Islands [Natuurwet, Studies Surnaime], v. 8, p. 1-41.

INSECTA

Coleoptera

Anderson, R. D., 1962, The Dytiscidae (Coleoptera) of Utah--Keys, original citation, types, and Utah distribution: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 22, no. 1-3, p. 54-75.

Arnett, R. H., Jr., 1963, The beetles of the United States, a manual for identification: Washington, D.C., Catholic University Press, 1,112 p. [Reprinted, 1968, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]

Balfour-Browne, F., 1940, British water beetles, v. I: London, Ray Society Publication, v. 127, 375 p.

_____1950, British water beetles, v. II: London, Ray Society Publication, v. 134, 394 p.

Bayer, L. J., and Brockmann, H. J., 1975, Curculionidae and Chrysomelidae found in aquatic habitats in Wisconsin: The Great Lakes Entomologist, v. 8, no. 4, p. 219-226.

Bertrand, H. P., 1955, Notes sur les premiers états des Dryopides d'Amérique: Annales de la Société Entomologique de France, v. 124, p. 97-139.

_____1972, Larves et nymphes des Coléopteres aquatiques du globe: Paris, Henri Bertrand, 799 p.

Blackwelder, R. E., 1939, Fourth supplement, 1933 to 1938 (inclusive), to the Leng catalogue of Coleoptera of America, north of Mexico: Mount Vernon, N.Y., J. D. Sherman, Jr., 146 p.

Böving, A. G., 1914, Notes on the larva of Hydroscapha and some other aquatic larvae from Arizona: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 16, no. 4, p. 169-174.

_____1929, On the classification of beetles according to larval characters: Brooklyn Entomological Society Bulletin, v. 24, p. 55-80.

Böving, A. G., and Craighead, F. C., 1930-31, An illustrated synopsis of the principal larval forms of the order Coleoptera: Entomologica Americana (New Series), v. 11, p. 1-351.

Bradley, J. C., 1930, A manual of the genera of beetles of America, north of Mexico: Ithaca, N.Y., Daw, Illston & Co., 360 p.

Britton, E. B., 1966, On the larva of Sphaerius and the systematic position of the Sphaeriidae (Coleoptera): Australian Journal of Zoology, v. 14, no. 6, p. 1193-1198.

Brown, H. P., 1970a, A key to the dryopid genera of the New World (Coleoptera, Dryopoidea): Entomological News, v. 81, no. 7, p. 171-175.
_____1970b, Neocylloepus, a new genus from Texas and Central America (Coleoptera:Dryopoidea, Elmidae): Coleopterists' Bulletin, v. 24, p. 1-28.
_____1972a, Synopsis of the genus Heterelmis in the USA, with description of a new species from Arizona (Coleoptera, Dryopoidea, Elmidae): Entomological News, v. 83, no. 9, p. 229-238.
_____1972b, Aquatic dryopoid beetles (Coleoptera) of the United States: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 6, 82 p.
Brown, H. P., and Murvosh, C. M., 1974, A revision of the genus Psephenus (waterpenny beetles) of the United States and Canada (Coleoptera, Dryopoidea, Psephenidae): Philadelphia, Transactions of the Entomological Society, v. 100, no. 3, p. 289-340.
Brown, H. P., and Shoemake, C. M., 1964, Oklahoma riffle beetles (Coleoptera: Dryopoidea), Part V--Additional state and county records: Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 46, p. 27-28.
Chamberlin, J. C., and Ferris, G. F., 1929, On Liparocephalus and allied genera (Coleoptera:Staphylinidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 5, p. 137-143; 153-162.
Chandler, H. P., 1954, New genera and species of Elmidae (Coleoptera) from California: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 30, p. 125-131.
Dillon, E. S., and Dillon, L. S., 1961, A manual of common beetles of eastern North America: New York, Harper and Row, 884 p.
Doyen, J. T., 1975, Intertidal insects; Order Coleoptera, in Smith, R. I., ed., Intertidal invertebrates of the central California coast (3d ed.): Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 446-452.
_____1976, Marine beetles (Coleoptera excluding Staphylinidae), in Cheng, L., ed., Marine insects: Amsterdam, North-Holland, p. 497-519.
Doyen, J. T., and Ulrich, G., 1978, Aquatic Coleoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 203-231.
Edwards, J. G., 1950, Amphizoidae (Coleoptera) of the world: Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 8, no. 3, p. 303-332.
Fall, H. C., 1901, List of the Coleoptera of southern California, with notes on habits and distribution and descriptions of new species: San Francisco, Occasional Papers of the California Academy of Sciences VIII, 282 p.
Finni, G. R., and Skinner, B. A., 1975, The Elmidae and Dryopoidae (Coleoptera:Dryopoidea) of Indiana: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 48, no. 3, p. 388-395.
Folkerts, G. W., and Donavan, L. A., 1974, Notes on the ranges and habitats of some little known aquatic beetles of the southeastern U.S. (Coleoptera: Gyrinidae, Dytiscidae): Coleopterists' Bulletin, v. 28, no. 4, p. 203-208.
Gordon, R. D., and Post, R. L., 1965, North Dakota water beetles: North Dakota insects: Fargo, North Dakota State University, Agricultural Experiment Station Publication no. 5, 53 p.
Hatch, M. H., and others, 1962, 1965, The beetles of the Pacific Northwest, Part 3--Pselaphidae and Diversicornia One; Part 4--Marcodactyles, Palpicornes, and Heteromera: Seattle, University of Washington, Publication in Biology, v. 16, 1 v.

Hinton, H. E., 1935, Notes on the Dryopoidea (Coleoptera): Stylops, v. 4, p. 169-179.
_____1939, An inquiry into the natural classification of the Dryopoidea, based partly on a study of their internal anatomy (Coleoptera): London, Transactions of the Royal Entomological Society, v. 89, p. 133-184.
_____1940, A synopsis of the genus Macronychus Muller (Coleoptera, Elmidae): London, Proceedings of the Royal Entomological Society, v. 9, p. 113-119.
_____1955, On the respiratory adaptations, biology and taxonomy of the Psephenidae, with notes on some related families (Coleoptera): Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, v. 125, p. 543-568.
_____1971, A revision of the genus Hintonelmis Spangler (Coleoptera:Elmidae): Transactions of the Entomological Society of London, v. 123, p. 189-208.
Hoffman, C. E., 1940, Morphology of the immature stages of some northern Michigan Donaciini (Chrysomelidae, Coleoptera): Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 25, p. 243-292.
Holland, D. G., 1972, A key to the larvae, pupae and adults of the British species of Elminthidae: Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 26, 58 p.
Istock, C. A., 1966, Distribution, coexistence and competition of whirligig beetles: Evolution, v. 20, no. 2, p. 211-234.
James, H. G., 1969, Immature stages of five diving beetles (Coleoptera: Dysticidae)--Notes on their habits and life history, and a key to aquatic beetles of vernal woodland pools in southern Ontario: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Ontario, v. 100, p. 52-97.
Jaques, H. E., 1951, How to know the beetles--Pictured keys for identifying many of the beetles which are most frequently seen, with aids for their study and with other helpful pictures: Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 372 p.
LaRivers, Ira, 1950a, The Dryopoidea known or expected to occur in the Nevada area (Coleoptera): Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 8, p. 97-111.
_____1950b, The staphylinoid and dascilloid aquatic Coleoptera of the Nevada area: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 10, p. 66-70.
_____1951, A revision of the genus Ambrysus in the United States: Berkeley, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 8, no. 7, p. 277-338.
_____1954, Nevada Hydrophilidae (Coleoptera): American Midland Naturalist, v. 52, p. 164-174.
Larson, D. J., 1975, The predaceous water beetles (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae) of Alberta--Systematics, natural history and distribution: Quaestiones Entomologicae, v. 11, no. 3, p. 245-498.
Leech, H. B., 1942, Key to the nearctic genera of water beetles of the tribe Agabini, with some generic synonomy (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 35, no. 3, p. 355-362.
_____1948, Contributions toward a knowledge of the insect fauna of Lower California, Coleoptera:Haliplidae, Dytiscidae, Gyrinidae, Hydrophilidae, Limnebiidae: San Francisco, Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, v. 24, no. 11, p. 375-478.
Leech, H. B., and Chandler, H. P., 1956, Aquatic Coleoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 293-371.
Leech, H. B., and Sanderson, M. W., 1959, Coleoptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 981-1023.

Leng, C. W., 1920, Catalogue of the Coleoptera of America, north of Mexico: Mount Vernon, N.Y., J. D. Sherman, Jr., 470 p.
Leng, C. W., and Mutchler, A. J., 1927, Supplement, 1919 to 1924 (inclusive), to the catalogue of the Coleoptera of America, north of Mexico: Mount Vernon, N.Y., J. D. Sherman, Jr., 78 p.
_____1933, Second and third supplements, 1925 to 1932 (inclusive), to the catalogue of the Coleoptera of North America, north of Mexico: Mount Vernon, N.Y., J. D. Sherman, Jr., 112 p.
Malcolm, S. E., 1971, The water beetles of Maine, including the families Gyrinidae, Haliplidae, Dytiscidae, Noteridae, and Hydrophilidae: Orono, University of Maine, Life Sciences and Agriculture Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 48, 49 p.
Mathieson, R., 1912, The Haliplidae of North America, north of Mexico: Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 20, p. 156-193.
Matta, J. F., 1974, The aquatic Hydrophilidae of Virginia (Coleoptera: Polyphage): Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Bulletin 94, 144 p.
Miller, D. C., 1964, Notes on Enochrus and Cymbiodyta from the Pacific Northwest (Coleoptera:Hydrophilidae): Coleopterists' Bulletin, v. 18, p. 69-78.
_____1974, Revision of the New World Chaetarthria (Coleoptera:Hydrophilidae): Entomologica Americana, v. 49, no. 1, p. 1-123.
Moore, I., 1956, A revision of the Pacific coast Phytosi, with a review of the foreign genera (Coleoptera:Staphylinidae): Transactions of the San Diego Society of Natural History, v. 12, p. 103-151.
Moore, I., and Legner, E. F., 1975, Revision of the genus Endeodes LeConte, with a tabular key to the species (Coleoptera:Melyridae): Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 85, no. 2, p. 70-81.
_____1976, Intertidal rove beetles (Coleoptera:Staphylinidae), in Cheng, L., ed., Marine insects: Amsterdam, North-Holland, p. 521-551.
Musgrave, P. N., 1935, A synopsis of the genus Helichus Brichson in the United States and Canada, with descriptions of new species: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 37, no. 7, p. 137-145.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Peterson, Alvah, 1951, Larvae of insects, an introduction to nearctic species, Part II--Coleoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Siphonaptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera: Ann Arbor, Mich., Edwards Brothers, 416 p.
Roberts, C. H., 1895, The species of Dineutes of America, north of Mexico: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 22, p. 279-288.
_____1913, Critical notes on the species of Haliplidae of America, north of Mexico, with descriptions of new species: Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 21, p. 91-123.
Rymer-Roberts, A. W., 1930, A key to the principal families of Coleoptera in the larval stage: Entomological Research Bulletin, v. 21, p. 57-72.
Sanderson, M. W., 1938, A monographic revision of the North American species of Stenelmis (Dryopidae:Coleoptera): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 25, no. 22, p. 635-717.
_____1953, A revision of the nearctic genera of Elmidae (Coleoptera): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 26, p. 148-163.
_____1954, A revision of the nearctic genera of Elmidae (Coleoptera): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 27, p. 1-13.

Schaeffer, C. F. A., 1925, Revision of the New World species of the tribe Donaciini of the coleopterous family Chrysomelidae: Brooklyn Museum of Science Bulletin, v. 3, no. 3, 165 p.

Schwarz, E. A., 1914, Aquatic beetles, especially Hydroscapha, in hot springs in Arizona: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 16, no. 4, p. 163-168.

Sinclair, R. M., 1964, Water quality requirements for elmid beetles, with larvae and adults keys to the eastern genera: Nashville, Tennessee Stream Pollution Control Board, Tennessee Department of Public Health, 14 p.

Smetana, A., 1974, Revision of the genus Cymbiodyta Bed. (Coleoptera: Hydrophilidae): Entomological Society of Canada Memoirs, v. 93, p. 1-113.

Spangler, P. J., and Gordon, R. D., 1973, Descriptions of the larvae of some predacious water beetles (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae): Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 86, no. 22, p. 261-277.

Spilman, T. J., 1961, On the immature stages of the Ptilodactylidae (Coleoptera): Entomological News, v. 72, p. 105-107.

_____1967, The heteromerous intertidal beetles (Coleoptera:Salpingidae: Aegialitinae): Pacific Insects, v. 9, p. 1-21.

Tanner, V. M., 1943, A study of the subtribe Hydronomi, with a description of new species (Curculionidae): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 4, no. 1/2, p. 1-38.

Van Tassell, E. R., 1963, A new Berosus from Arizona, with a key to the Arizona species (Coleoptera, Hydrophilidae): Coleopterists' Bulletin, v. 17, p. 1-5.

Wallis, J. B., 1933, Revision of the North American species, north of Mexico of the genus Haliplus, Latreille: University of Toronto Press, 76 p. [Reprinted from Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, v. 19.]

_____1939a, The genus Graphoderus Aube in North America, north of Mexico: Canadian Entomologist, v. 71, no. 6, p. 128-130.

_____1939b, The genus Ilybius Er. in North America (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 71, no. 9, p. 192-199.

Winters, F. C., 1927, Key to the subtribe Helocharae Orchym. (Coleoptera-Hydrophilidae) of boreal America: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 4, no. 1, p. 19-29.

Wooldridge, D. P., 1965, A preliminary checklist of the aquatic Hydrophilidae of Illinois: Springfield, Transactions of the Illinois State Academy of Science, v. 58, p. 205-206.

_____1967, The aquatic Hydrophilidae of Illinois: Springfield, Transactions of the Illinois State Academy of Science, v. 60, p. 422-431.

Young, F. N., 1954, The water beetles of Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida Press, University of Florida Studies, Biological Science Series, v. 5, no. 1, 288 p.

_____1960, Notes on the water beetles of Southampton Island in the Canadian Arctic (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae and Haliplidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 92, no. 4, p. 275-278.

_____1961, Geographical variation in the Tropisternus mexicanus (Castelnau) complex (Coleoptera, Hydrophilidae): Proceedings of the 11th International Congress of Entomology, v. 1, p. 112-116.

_____1967, A key to the genera of American bidessine water beetles, with descriptions of three new genera (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae, Hydroporinae): Coleopterists' Bulletin, v. 21, p. 75-84.

_____1969, A checklist of the American bidessini (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae-Hydroporinae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 33, 5 p.
_____1974, Review of the predaceous water beetles of genus Andocheilus (Coleoptera, Dytiscidae, Hydroporinae): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 670, 28 p.
Zimmerman, J. R., 1970, A taxonomic revision of the aquatic beetle genus Laccophilus (Dytiscidae) of North America: Philadelphia, Memoirs of the American Entomological Society, no. 26, 275 p.
Zimmerman, J. R., and Smith, R. L., 1975a, The genus Rhantus (Coleoptera: Dytiscidae) in North America, Part I--General account of the species: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 101, no. 1, p. 33-123.
_____1975b, A survey of the Deronectes (Coleoptera:Dytiscidae) of Canada, the United States and northern Mexico: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 101, no. 1, p. 651-726.

Collembola

Bacon, G. A., 1914, Distribution of Collembola in the Claremont-Laguna region of California: Pomona College Journal of Entomology and Zoology, v. 6, p. 137-179.
Baumgartner-Gamauf, M., 1959, Einige ufer- und wasserbewohnende Collembolen des Seewinkels: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften Mathematrisch Naturwissenschaftliche Klasse, v. 168, p. 363-369.
Brown, J. M., 1929, Freshwater Collembola: Naturalist, v. 2, p. 111-113.
Chang, S. L., 1966, Some physiological observations on two aquatic Collembola Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 85, no. 3, p. 359-371.
Christiansen, K., 1978, Aquatic Collembola, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 51-55.
Christiansen, K., and Bellinger, P., 1980, The Collembola of North America north of the Rio Grande--A taxonomic analysis: Grinnell, Iowa, Grinnell College, 4 v.
Davenport, C. B., 1903, Collembola of Cold Spring Beach: Brooklyn, N.Y., Cold Spring Harbor Monographs, v. 2, 32 p.
Delamare-Deboutteville, C., 1953, Collemboles marins de la zone souterraine humide de sables littoraux: Vie et Milieu, v. 4, p. 290-319.
Folsom, J. W., 1916, North American Collembolous insects of the subfamilies Achorutinae, Neanurinae, and Podurinae: Washington, D.C., Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 50, no. 2134, p. 477-525.
_____1934, Redescriptions of North America Smynthuridae: Ames, Iowa State Journal of Science, v. 8, no. 4, p. 461-511.
_____1937, Nearctic Collembola or springtails of the family Isotomidae: Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin, v. 168, 144 p.
Folsom, J. W., and Mills, H. B., 1938, Contribution to the knowledge of the genus Sminthurides Börner: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 82, no. 4, p. 229-274.
Gisin, H., 1960, Collembolenfauna Europas: Genève Muséum d'Histoire Naturelle, 312 p.

Guthrie, J. E., 1903, the Collembola of Minnesota: Minneapolis, Minnesota Geological and Natural History Survey Zoological Series, v. 4, 110 p.
James, H. G., 1933, Collembola of the Toronto region, with notes on the biology of Isotoma plautris Mueller: Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, v. 19, no. 1, p. 77-116.
Maynard, E. A., 1951, A monograph of the Collembola or springtail insects of New York: Ithaca, Comstock Publishing Company, 339 p.
Mills, H. B., 1934, A monograph of the Collembola of Iowa: Iowa State College of Agriculture and Mechanical Arts Monograph no. 3, 143 p.
Mills, H. B., and Rolfs, A. R., 1933, Collembola from the State of Washington: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 9, p. 77-83.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.) New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Rimski-Korsakov, M. N., 1940, Key to the freshwater Collembola of U.S.S.R., with descriptive notes: Freshwater Life, U.S.S.R., v. 1, p. 108-110.
Salmon, J. T., 1964, An index to the Collembola: Wellington, Bulletin of the Royal Society of New Zealand, v. 7, p. 1-644.
Schaller, F., 1970, Collembola (Springschwanze): Berlin, Handbook of Zoology, v. 4, no. 2, p. 1-72.
Scott, D. B., Jr., 1942a, Some Collembola records for the Pacific Coast and a description of a new species: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 18, no. 4, p. 177-186.
_____1942b, Aquatic Collembola, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 74-78.
Scott, H. G., 1961, Collembola--Pictorial keys to the Nearctic genera: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 54, no. 1, p. 104-113.
Strenzke, K., 1955, Thalassobionte und thalasophile Collembola, in Remane, A., ed., Tierwelt der Nord-und Ostsee: Leipzig, Akademische, Lfg. 36, 52 p.

Diptera

Alexander, C. P., 1930, Observations on the dipterous family Tanyderidae: Sidney, Australia, Proceedings of the Linnean Society of New South Wales, v. 55, p. 221-230.
_____1958, Geographical distribution of the net-winged midges (Blepharoceridae, Diptera): Proceedings of the 10th International Congress of Entomology, v. 1, p. 813-828.
_____1963, Family Deuterophlebiidae; guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The Diptera or true flies of Connecticut, fascicle 8: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 93, 115 p.
Battle, F. V., and Turner, E. C., 1971, The insects of Virginia, Part III--A systematic review of the genus Culicoides (Diptera:Ceratopogonidae) in Virginia, with a geographic catalog of the species occurring in the eastern United States north of Florida: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Bulletin, v. 44, p. 1-129.
Becker, T., 1926, Ephydridae. Fam. 56, in Linder, Erwin, ed., Die Fliegen der palaearktischen Region 6, part I: Stuttgart, p. 1-115.
Chillcott, J. G., 1961, A revision of the genus Roederioides Coquillett (Diptera:Emphididae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 93, p. 419-428.
Cole, F. R., and Schlinger, E. I., 1969, The flies of western North America: Berkeley, University of California Press, 693 p.

Crampton, G. C., Curran, C. H., and Alexander, C. P., 1942, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The diptera or true flies of Connecticut, first fascicle; external morphology; key to families, Tanyderidae, Ptychopteridae, Trichoceridae, Anisopodidae, Tipulidae: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 64, 509 p.

Curran, C. H., 1928, Insects of Porto Rico and Virgin Islands--Diptera or two-winged flies: New York Academy of Sciences, Scientific Survey of Porto Rico and the Virgin Islands, v. 11, pt. 1, 118 p.

_____1965, The families and genera of North American Diptera (2d rev. ed.): Woodhaven, N.Y., H. Tripp, 515 p.

Deonier, D. L., 1971, A systematic and ecological study of nearctic Hydrellia (Diptera:Ephydridae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology, no. 68, 147 p.

Disney, R. H. L., 1975, A key to the larvae, pupae, and adults of the British Dixidae Diptera--The meniscus midges: Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 31, 78 p.

Dyar, H. G., and Shannon, R. C., 1924, The American species of Thaumaleidae (Orphnephilidae, Diptera): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 14, p. 432-434.

Edwards, F. W., 1929, A revision of the Thaumaleidae (Diptera): Zoologischer Anzeiger, v. 82, p. 121-142.

Exner, K., and Craig, D. A., 1976, Larvae of Alberta Tanyderidae (Diptera: Nematocera): Quaestiones Entomologicae, v. 12, p. 219-237.

Griffiths, G. C. D., 1972, Studies on the phylogenetic classification of diptera Cyclorrhapha, with special reference to the structure of the male postabdomen: The Hague, Netherlands, W. Junk, Series Entomologica, v. 8, 340 p.

Grogan, W. L., and Wirth, W. W., 1975, A revision of the genus Palpomyia Meigen of northeastern North America (Diptera:Ceratopogonidae): College Park, University of Maryland, Agricultural Experiment Station Contribution no. 5076, 49 p.

Hartley, J. C., 1961, A taxonomic account of the larvae of some British Syrphidae: Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, v. 136, p. 505-573.

Hayes, W. P., 1938, 1939, A bibliography of keys for the identification of immature insects, Part I--Diptera: Entomological News, v. 49, no. 9, p. 246-251; v. 50, no. 1, p. 5-10; no. 3, p. 76-82.

Heath, B. L., and McCafferty, W. P., 1975, Aquatic and semiaquatic Diptera of Indiana: Lafayette, Purdue University Research Bulletin no. 930, p. 1-17.

Henning, W., 1948, 1950, 1952, Die larvenformen der Dipteren: Berlin, Akademie-Verlag, part I, 185 p.; part 2, 458 p.; part 3, 628 p. (Reprinted 1968.)

_____1967, Diptera:Muscidae, in Illies, Joachim, ed., Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer, p. 423-424.

Hogue, C. L., 1966, The California species of Philorus--Taxonomy, early stages and descriptions of two new species (Diptera:Blepharoceridae): Los Angeles County Museum of Natural History Contributions in Science, no. 99, 22 p.

_____1973a, The net-winged midges, or Blephariceridae of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, California Insect Survey Bulletin, v. 15, 83 p.

1973b, A taxonomic review of the genus Maruina (Diptera:Psychodidae): Bulletin of the Los Angeles County Museum, Science, no. 17, p. 1-69.
Ide, F. P., 1965, A fly of the archaic family Nymphomyiidae (Diptera) from North America: Canadian Entomologist, v. 97, p. 496-507.
James, M. T., 1959, Diptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1057-1079.
_____1960, The soldier flies or Stratiomyidae of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, California Insect Survey Bulletin, v. 6, p. 79-122.
Jamnback, Hugo, 1969, Bloodsucking flies and other outdoor nuisance arthropods of New York State: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Memoir 19, 90 p.
Johannsen, O. A., 1922, Stratiomyiid larvae and puparia of the Northeastern States: Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 30, p. 141-153.
_____1934, Aquatic Diptera, Part I--Nemocera, exclusive of Chironomidae and Ceratopogonidae: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 164, p. 1-70.
_____1935, Aquatic Diptera, Part II--Orthorrhapha-Brachycera and Cyclorrhapha: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 177, p. 1-62.
Kellogg, V. L., 1903, The net-winged midges (Blepharoceridae) of North America: San Francisco, Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences, (3d series, Zoology) v. 3, p. 187-232.
Kennedy, H. D., 1958, Biology and life history of a new species of mountain midge, Deuterophlebia nielsoni, from eastern California (Diptera: Deuterophlebiidae): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 79, p. 201-228.
_____1960, Deuterophlebia inyoensis, a new species of mountain midge from the alpine zone of the Sierra Nevada Range, California (Diptera: Deuterophlebiidae): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 79, p. 191-210.
Kettle, D. S., and Lawson, J. W. H., 1952, The early stages of British biting midges, Culicoides Latreille (Diptera:Ceratopogonidae) and allied genera: London, Bulletin of Entomological Research, v. 43, p. 421-467.
Kevan, D. K. McE., and Cutten-Ali-Khan, F. E. A., 1975, Canadian Nymphomyiidae (Diptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 53, p. 853-866.
Knight, A. W., 1963, Description of the Tanyderid larva Protanyderus margarita Alexander from Colorado: Bulletin of the Brooklyn Entomological Society, v. 58, p. 99-102.
Knutson, L. V., 1970, Biology and immature stages of malacophagous flies, Antichaeta analis, A. brevipennis and A. obliviosa (Diptera:Sciomyzidae): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 92, p. 67-101.
Knutson, L. V., and Berg, C. O., 1964, Biology and immature stages of snail-killing flies--The genus Elgiva (Diptera:Sciomyzidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 57, p. 173-192.
Lavallee, A. G., and Wallace, J. B., 1974, Immature stages of Milesiinae (Syrphidae), Part II--Sphegina keeniana and Chrysogaster nitida: Journal of the Georgia Entomological Society, v. 9, no. 1, p. 8-15.
Linley, J. R., 1976, Biting midges of mangrove swamps and salt marshes (Diptera:Ceratopogonidae), in Cheng, L., ed., Marine insects: Amsterdam, North-Holland, p. 335-376.

Mathis, W. N., 1975, A systematic study of Coenia and Paracoenia (Diptera: Ephydridae): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 35, p. 65-85.
McFadden, M. W., 1967, Soldier fly larvae in America, north of Mexico: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 121, no. 3569, 72 p.
_____1972, The soldier flies of Canada and Alaska (Diptera:Stratiomyidae), Part I--Beridinae, Sarginae, and Clitellariinae: Canadian Entomologist, v. 104, p. 531-562.
Merritt, R. W., and Schlinger, E. I., 1978, Aquatic Diptera, Part 2--Adults of aquatic Diptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hart Publishing Co., p. 259-283.
Needham, J. G., and Betten, Cornelius, 1901, Aquatic insects in the Adirondacks--Diptera: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Bulletin, v. 47, p. 545-612.
Neff, S. E., and Berg, C. O., 1966, Biology and immature stages of malacophagous Diptera of the genus Sepedon (Sciomyzidae): Blacksburg, Virginia Polytechnic Institute, Agricultural Experiment Station Bulletin 566, 13 p.
Nielsen, Anker, 1951, Contributions to the metamorphosis and biology of the genus Atrichopogon Kieffer (Diptera, Ceratopogonidae), with remarks on the evolution and taxonomy of the genus: Coppenhagen, Denmark, Kongelige Danske videnskabernes selskab, Biologiske skrifter, v. 6, no. 6, 95 p.
Nowell, W. R., 1951, The dipterous family Dixidae in western North America (Insecta:Diptera): Microentomology, v. 16, p. 187-270.
_____1963, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--Dixidae, fascicle 3: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 93, p. 85-102.
Pennak, R. W., 1945, Notes on mountain midges (Deuterophlebiidae), with a description of the immature stages of a new species from Colorado: American Museum Novitates, no. 1276, 10 p.
_____1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Peters, T. M., and Cook, E. F., 1966, The nearctic Dixidae (Diptera): College Park, Md., Miscellaneous Publications of the Entomological Society of America, v. 5, p. 233-278.
Peterson, Alvah, 1951, Larvae of insects, an introduction to nearctic species, Part II--Coleoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Siphonaptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera: Ann Arbor, Mich., Edwards Brothers, 416 p.
Quate, L. W., 1955, A revision of the Psychodidae (Diptera) in America, north of Mexico: Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 10, no. 3, p. 103-273.
Quate, L. W., and Wirth, W. W., 1951, A taxonomic revision of the genus Maruina (Diptera:Psychodidae): Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 9, p. 151-166.
Rozkosny, R., and Knutson, L. V., 1970, Taxonomy, biology, and immature stages of palearctic Pteromicra, snail-killing Diptera (Sciomyzidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 63, no. 5, p. 1434-1458.
Saether, O. A., 1970, Nearctic and palearctic Chaoborus (Diptera:Chaoboridae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin, no. 174, 57 p.

_____1972, Chaoboridae, in Bick, H., and others, eds., Die binnengewaesser, einzeldarstellugen aus der limnologie und ihren nachbargebieten, Teil 1--Das zooplankton der binnengewaesser [Inland waters, monographs from limnology and related areas, Part 1--The zooplankton of the internal waters]: Stuttgart, E. Schweizebart'sche Verlagsbuchhandlung, v. 26, p. 257-280.

Simpson, K. W., 1975, Biology and immature stages of three species of nearctic Ochthera (Diptera:Ephydridae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 77, p. 129-155.

_____1976, Shore flies and brine flies (Diptera:Ephydridae), in Cheng, L., ed., Marine insects: Amsterdam, North-Holland, p. 465-495.

Steyskal, G. C., 1957, A revision of the family Dryomyzidae (Diptera, Acalyptratae): Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 42, p. 55-68.

Stone, Alan, 1964, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The Diptera or true flies of Connecticut; fascicle 9, Simuliidae and Thaumaleidae: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 97, 123 p.

_____1968, The genus Corethrella in the United States (Diptera:Chaoboridae): Florida Entomologist, v. 51, p. 183-186.

Stone, Alan, Sabrosky, C. W., Wirth, W. W., Foote, R. H., and Coulson, J. R., eds., 1965, A catalog of the Diptera of America, north of Mexico: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Handbook no. 276, 1696 p.

Stuckenberg, B. R., 1973, The Athericidae, a new family in the lower Brachycera (Diptera): Washington, D.C., Annals of the United States National Museum, v. 21, no. 3, p. 649-673.

Teskey, H. J., 1978, Aquatic Diptera, Part I--Larvae of aquatic Diptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 245-257.

Thomsen, L. C., 1937, Aquatic Diptera, Part V--Ceratopogonidae: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 210, p. 57-80.

Vaillant, F., 1959, The larvae of three nearctic Diptera of the Family Psychodidae: Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 67, p. 39-47.

_____1963, Les Maruina d'Amérique du Nord (Diptera, Psychodidae) [The Maruina of North America (Diptera, Psychodidae)]: Bulletin de la Société Entomologique de France, v. 68, no. 314, p. 71-91.

_____1967, Diptera--Dolichopodidae, Empididae, in Illies, Joachim, ed., Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer, p. 401-409.

Vockeroth, J. R., 1967, Diptera Scatophagidae, in Illies, Joachim, ed., Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer.

Wallace, J. B., and Neff, S. E., 1971, Biology and immature stages of the genus Cordilura (Diptera:Scatophagidae) in the eastern United States: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 64, p. 1310-1330.

Webb, D. W., and Brigham, W. U., 1978, Aquatic Diptera, in Brigham, A. R., Brigham, W. U., and Gnilka, A., eds., Aquatic insects and oligochaetes of the Carolina Piedmont: Charlotte, N.C., Duke Power, Duke Power Training Manual, p. 11.1-11.11.

Wirth, W. W., 1951a, A new mountain midge from California (Diptera: Deuterophlebiidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 27, p. 49-57.
_____1951b, A revision of the dipterous family Canaceidae: Honolulu, Bernice P. Bishop Museum Occasional Papers, v. 20, no. 14, p. 245-275.
_____1952, The Heleidae of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 9, no. 2, p. 95-266.
_____1964, A revision of the shore flies of the genus Brachydeutera Loew (Diptera:Ephydridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 57, p. 3-12.
_____1971, The brine flies of the genus Ephydra in North America (Diptera: Ephydridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 64, p. 357-377.
Wirth, W. W., and Atchley, W. R., 1973, A review of the North American Leptoconops (Diptera:Ceratopogonidae): Lubbock, Texas Tech Press, Texas Tech University Graduate Studies no. 5, 57 p.
Wirth, W. W., and Stone, Alan, 1956, Aquatic Diptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 372-482.
Williams, F. X., 1938, Biological studies in Hawaiian water-loving insects, Part III--Diptera or flies; A, Ephydridae and Anthomyiidae: Proceedings of the Hawaii Entomological Society, v. 10, p. 85-119.
_____1939, Biological studies in Hawaiian water-loving insects, Part III--Diptera or flies. B. Asteiidae, Syrphidae, and Dolichopodidae: Proceedings Hawaii Entomological Society, v. 10, p. 281-315.

Chironomidae

Beck, E. C., and Beck, W. M., Jr., 1969, Chironomidae (Diptera) of Florida, Part III--The Harnischia complex (Chironominae): Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 13, no. 5, p. 277-313.
Beck, W. M., Jr., 1976, Biology of the larval Chironomids: Tallahassee, Florida Department of Environmental Regulation Technical Series, v. 2, no. 1, 58 p.
Beck, W. M., Jr., and Beck, E. C., 1964, New Chironomidae from Florida (Diptera): Florida Entomologist, v. 47, p. 201-207.
_____1966, Chironomidae (Diptera) of Florida, Part I--Pentaneurini (Tanypodinae): Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 10, p. 305-379.
Brundin, L. Z., 1966, Transantarctic relationships and their significance, as evidenced by chironomid midges, with a monograph of the subfamilies Podonominae and Aphroteniinae and the austral Heptagyiae: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar, Series 4, v. 11, no. 1, 472 p.
Bryce, D., and Hobart, A., 1972, The biology and identification of the larvae of the Chironomidae (Diptera): Entomologist's Gazette, v. 23, p. 175-217.
Buckley, B. R., and Sublette, J. E., 1964, Chironomidae (Diptera) of Louisiana, Part II--The limnology of the upper part of Cane River Lake, Natchitoches Parish, Louisiana, with particular reference to the emergence of Chironomidae: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 11, p. 151-166.

Chernovskii, A. A., 1961, Identification of the larvae of the midge family Tendipedidae (translation): Boston Spa, Yorkshire, England, National Lending Library for Science and Technology, 300 p. [Available as TT62-13587 from Clearing House for Science and Technology Information.]

Coffman, W. P., 1978, Chironomidae, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 345-376.

Curry, L. L., 1958, Larvae and pupae of the species of Cryptochironomus (Diptera) in Michigan: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 3, no. 4, p. 427-442.

Darby, R. E., 1962, Midges associated with California rice fields, with special reference to their ecology (Diptera:Chironomidae): Hilgardia, v. 32, no. 1, 206 p.

Dendy, J. S., and Sublette, J. E., 1959, The Chironomidae (Tendipedidae: Diptera) of Alabama, with descriptions of six new species: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 52, p. 506-519.

Edward, D. H. D., 1963, The biology of parthenogenetic species of Lundstroemia (Diptera:Chironomidae), with descriptions of the immature stages: London, Proceedings of the Royal Entomological Society, v. 38, p. 165-170.

Fittkau, E. J., 1962, Die Tanypodinae (Diptera:Chironomidae)--Die tribus Anatopyniini, Macropelopiini und Pentaneurini: Abhandlungen zur Larval-systematik der Insekten, v. 6, 453 p.

Fittkau, E. J., Reiss, Friedrich, and Hoffrichter, Odwin, 1976, A bibliography of the Chironomidae: University of Trondheim, The Royal Norwegian Society of Sciences and Letters, Gunneria 26, 177 p.

Gouin, F. J., 1959, Morphology of the larval head of some Chironomidae (Diptera:Nematocera): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 137, p. 175-201.

Hamilton, A. L., Saether, O. A., and Oliver, D. R., 1969, A classification of the nearctic Chironomidae: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Technical Report 124, 42 p.

Hansen, D. C., and Cook, E. F., 1976, The systematics and morphology of the nearctic species of Diamesa Meigen, 1835 (Diptera:Chironomidae): Philadelphia, American Entomological Society Memoirs no. 30, p. 1-203.

Hauber, U. A., 1947, The Tendipedinae of Iowa: American Midland Naturalist, v. 38, no. 2, p. 456-465.

Hirvenoja, M., 1973, Revision der Gattung Cricotopus van der Wulp and ihrer Verwandten (Diptera:Chironomidae) [Revision of the genus Cricotopus and its relatives Diptera Chironomidae]: Zoologici Fennica Annales, v. 10, no. 1, p. 1-363.

Hudson, P. L., 1971, The Chironomidae (Diptera) of South Dakota: Vermillion, Proceedings of the South Dakota Academy of Science, v. 50, p. 155-174.

Johannsen, O. A., 1937a, Aquatic Diptera, Part III--Chironomidae, subfamilies Tanypodinae, Diamesinae, and Orthocladiinae: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 205, p. 1-84.

_____1937b, Aquatic Diptera, Part IV--Chironomidae, subfamily Chironomidae: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 210, p. 1-56. [Reprinted, 1969, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]

Johannsen, O. A., and Townes, H. K., 1952, Tendipedidae (Chironomidae), in Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The Diptera or true flies, of Connecticut; fascicle 5, Midges and gnats: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 80, p. 3-147.

Malloch, J. R., 1915a, The Chironomidae or midges of Illinois, with particular reference to the species occurring in the Illinois River: Illinois State Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 10, p. 275-543.

_____1915b, Some additional records of Chironomidae for Illinois and notes on other Illinois Diptera: Illinois State Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 11, p. 305-363.

Mason, W. T., Jr., 1973, An introduction to the identification of Chironomid larvae: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, National Environmental Research Center, Analytical Quality Control Laboratory, 90 p.

Noesel, M. W., 1974, Observations on the Coelotanypodini of the Northeastern States, with keys to the known stages (Diptera:Chironomidae: Tanypodinae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 47, p. 417-432.

Oliver, D. R., 1981, Chironomidae, in Manual of nearctic Diptera, v. 1: Biosystematics Research Institute, Ottawa Research Branch, Agriculture Canada Monograph no. 27, p. 423-458.

Oliver, D. R., McClymont, D., and Roussel, M. E., 1978, A key to some larvae of Chironomidae (Diptera) from the Mackenzie and Porcupine River watersheds: Fisheries and Marine Service (Canada), Technical Report no. 791, 1 v.

Pankratova, V. Ya., 1970, Keys to the larvae of the species of the genera, Diamesa, Eukiefferiella, Orthocladius, Cricotopus, Psectrocladius, and Chaetocladius (translated from the Russian): Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Transactions (new Series) no. 64, 14 p.

_____1977, Licinki i kikolki komarov podsemiectr Podonominae i Tanypodinae Fauny SSSR (Diptera, Chironomidae = Tendipedidae) [Midge larvae and pupae of the subfamilies Podonominae and Tanypodinae]: Institut Akademiya NAUK SSSR, v. 112, p. 1-154.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Roback, S. S., 1953, Savannah River tendipedid larvae [Diptera:Tendipedidae (=Chironomidae)]: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 105, p. 91-132.

_____1957, The immature tendipedids of the Philadelphia area: Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, Monograph no. 9, 152 p.

_____1962, The genus Xenochironomus (Diptera:Tendipedidae) Kieffer; taxonomy and immature stages: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 88, no. 4, p. 235-246.

_____1969, The immature stages of the genus Tanypus Meigen (Diptera: Chironomidae:Tanypodinae): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 94, p. 407-428.

_____1971, The adults of the subfamily Tanypodinae (Pelopiinae) in North America (Diptera:Chironomidae): Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, Monograph no. 17, 410 p.

_____1974, The immature stages of the genus Coelotanypus (Chironomidae: Tanypodinae:Coelotanypodini) in North America: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 126, p. 9-19.

_____1976, The immature chironomids of the eastern United States, Part I--Introduction and Tanypodinae; Coelotanypodini: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 127, p. 147-201.
_____1977, The immature chironomids of the eastern United States, Part II--Tanypodinae; Tanypodini: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 128, p. 55-87.
_____1978, The immature chironomids of the eastern United States, Part III--Tanypodinae; Anatopyniini, Macropelopiini, and Natarsiini: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 129, p. 151-202.
Saether, O. A., 1969, Some nearctic Podonominae, Diamesinae, and Orthocladiinae (Diptera:Chironomidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 170, p. 1-154.
_____1971, Notes on general morphology and terminology of the Chironomidae (Diptera): Canadian Entomologist, v. 103, p. 1237-1260.
_____1975a, Nearctic and palaearctic Heterotrissocladius (Diptera, Chironomidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 193, 67 p.
_____1975b, Two new species of Heterotanytarsus Sparck, with keys to nearctic and palaearctic males and pupae of the genus (Diptera:Chironomidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 32, p. 259-270.
_____1975c, Two new species of Protanypus Kieffer, with keys to nearctic and palaearctic species of the genus (Diptera:Chironomidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 32, p. 367-388.
_____1976, Revision of Hydrobaenus, Trissocladius, Zalutschia, Paratrissocladius, and some related genera (Diptera:Chironomidae): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 195, p. 1-287.
_____1977, Taxonomic studies on Chironomidae; Nanocladius, Pseudochironomus, and the Harnischia complex: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 196, p. 1-143.
_____1980, Glossary of Chironomid morphology terminology (Diptera: Chironomidae): Entomologica Scandinavica (Supplement 14), 51 p.
Simpson, K. W., 1982, A guide to basic taxonomic literature for the genera of North American Chironomidae (Diptera)--Adults, pupae, and larvae: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 447, p. 1-43.
Simpson, K. W., and Bode, R. W., 1980, Common larvae of Chironomidae (Diptera) from New York State streams and rivers, with particular reference to the fauna of artificial substrates: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 439, 105 p.
Soponis, A. R., 1977, A revision of the nearctic species of Orthocladius (Orthocladius) Van der Wulp (Diptera:Chironomidae): Entomological Society of Canada Memoir no. 102, 187 p.
Sublette, J. E., 1960, Chironomid midges of California, Part I--Chirominae, exclusive of Tanytarsini (=Calopsectrini): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the Unites States National Museum, v. 112, p. 197-226.
_____1964a, Chironomid midges of California, Part II--Tanypodinae, Podonominae, and Diamesinae: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 115, p. 85-136.
_____1964b, Chironomidae (Diptera) of Louisiana, Part I--Systematics and immature stages of some benthic chironomids of west-central Louisiana: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 11, p. 109-150.

_____1973, The Family Chironomidae, in Delfinado, M. D., and Hardy, D. E., A catalog of the Diptera of the Oriental region, v. I--Suborder Nematocera: Honolulu, The University of Hawaii Press, various pagination.
Sublette, J. E., and Sublette, M. S., 1965, Family Chironomidae, in Stone, Alan, Sabrosky, C. W., Wirth, W. W., Foote, R. H., and Coulson, J. R., eds., A catalog of the Diptera of America, north of Mexico: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Handbook no. 276, p. 142-181.
Thienemann, August, 1954, Chironomus, Leben, verbeitung und wirtschaftliche bedeutung der Chironomiden: Die Binnengewässer, v. 20, p. 1-834.
Tilley, L. J., 1978, Some larvae of Diamesinae and Podonominae, Chironomidae from the Brooks Range, Alaska, with provisional key (Diptera): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 54, p. 241-260.
_____1979, Some larvae of Orthocladiinae, Chironomidae Diptera from Brooks Range, Alaska, with provisional key (Diptera): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 55, p. 127-146.
Townes, H. K., Jr., 1945, The nearctic species of Tendipedini [Diptera, Tendipedidae (=Chironomidae)]: American Midland Naturalist, v. 34, p. 1-206.
Wirth, W. W., 1947, Notes on the genus Thalassomyia Schiner, with descriptions of two new species (Diptera:Tendipedidae): Hawaiian Entomological Society Proceedings, v. 13, p. 117-139.
_____1949, A revision of the Clunionine midges, with descriptions of a new genus and four new species (Diptera:Tendipedidae): Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 8, p. 151-182.
Wirth, W. W., and Sublette, J. E., 1970, A review of the Podonominae of North America, with descriptions of three new species of Trichotanypus (Diptera:Chironomidae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 43, no. 4, p. 335-354.

Culicidae

Baker, M., 1961, The altitudinal distribution of mosquito larvae in the Colorado Front Range: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 87, p. 231-246.
Barr, A. R., 1958, The mosquitoes of Minnesota: Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 228, 154 p.
Bickley, W. E., Joseph, S. R., Mallack, Jerry, and Berry, R. A., 1971, An annotated list of the mosquitoes of Maryland: Mosquito News, v. 31, no. 2, p. 186-190.
Breland, O. P., 1958, A report on Haemagogus mosquitoes in the United States, with notes on identification (Diptera:Culicidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 51, p. 217-221.
Brothers, D. B., 1971, A checklist of the mosquitoes of Idaho: Pocatello, Idaho State University Museum, v. 14, p. 72-73.
Carpenter, S. J., 1941, The mosquitoes of Arkansas (Rev. ed.): Little Rock, Arkansas State Board of Health, 87 p.
_____1968, Review of recent literature on mosquitoes of North America, California Vector Views, v. 15, p. 71-98.
_____1970, Review of recent literature on mosquitoes of North America, Supplement I: California Vector Views, v. 17, p. 39-65.
_____1974, Review of recent literature on mosquitoes of North America, Supplement II: California Vector Views, v. 21, p. 73-99.

Carpenter, S. J., and La Casse, W. J., 1955, Mosquitoes of North America (north of Mexico): Berkeley, University of California Press, 360 p. [Reprinted, 1974, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]
Carpenter, S. J., Middlekauff, W. W., and Chamberlain, R. W., 1946, The mosquitoes of the southern United States east of Oklahoma and Texas: American Midland Naturalist, Monograph 3, p. 1-292.
Cook, E. F., 1956, The nearctic Chaoborinae (Diptera:Culcidae): Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 218, p. 1-102.
Curtis, L. C., 1967, The mosquitoes of British Columbia: Victoria, Occasional Papers of the British Columbia Provincial Museum no. 15, 90 p.
Darsie, R. F., MacCreary, D., and Stearns, L. A., 1951, An annotated list of the mosquitoes of Delaware: New Jersey Mosquito Extermination Association Proceedings, v. 38, p. 137-146.
Dickinson, W. E., 1944, The mosquitoes of Wisconsin: Milwaukee Public Museum Bulletin, v. 8, no. 3, p. 269-365.
Division of Medical Entomology, Bureau of Laboratories, compiler, 1944, The mosquitoes of Texas: Austin, Texas State Health Department, 100 p.
Dixon, R. D., and Burst, R. A., 1971, Mosquitoes of Manitoba, Part III--Ecology of larvae in the Winnipeg area: Canadian Entomologist, v. 104, p. 961-968.
Dorer, R. E., Bickley, W. E., and Nicholson, H. P., 1944, An annotated list of the mosquitoes of Virginia: Mosquito News, v. 4, p. 48-50.
Dyar, H. G., 1928, The mosquitoes of the Americas: Washington, D.C., Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication no. 387, 616 p.
Gjullin, C. M., and Eddy, G. W., 1972, The mosquitoes of the northwestern United States: U.S. Department of Agriculture Technical Bulletin no. 1,447, 111 p.
Gladney, W. J., and Turner, E. C., 1969, Insects of Virginia, no. 2--The mosquitoes of Virginia: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Bulletin no. 49, 24 p.
Good, N. E., 1945, A list of the mosquitoes of the District of Columbia: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 47, p. 168-179.
Harmston, F. C., 1949, An annotated list of mosquito records from Colorado: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 9, p. 65-75.
Harmston, F. C., and Lawson, F. A., 1967, Mosquitoes of Colorado: Atlanta, U.S. Public Health Service, Bureau of Disease Prevention and Environmental Control, National Communicable Disease Center, 140 p.
Headlee, T. J., 1945, The mosquitoes of New Jersey and their control: New Brunswick, Rutgers University Press, 326 p.
James, H. G., Wishart, G., Bellamy, R. E., Maw, M., and Belton, P., 1969, An annotated list of mosquitoes of southeastern Ontario: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Ontario, v. 100, p. 200-230.
King, W. V., Bradley, G. H., Smith, C. N., and McDuffy, W. C., 1960, A handbook of the mosquitoes of the southeastern United States: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Handbook no. 173, 188 p.
Knight, K. L., and Wonio, Michael, 1969, Mosquitoes of Iowa (Diptera: Culicidae): Ames, Iowa State University Agricultural and Home Economics Experiment Station Special Report no. 61, 79 p.
Matheson, Robert, 1944, Handbook of the mosquitoes of North America-- Their anatomy and biology, how they can be studied and how identified; how they carry disease and how they can be controlled (2d ed.): Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 314 p.

Mattingly, P. F., 1973, Culicidae (mosquitoes), in Smith, K. G. V., ed., Insects and other arthropods of medical importance: London, Bulletin of the British Museum (Natural History), Entomology, p. 37-107.
McDonald, J. L., Sluss, T. P., Lang, J. D., and Roan, C. C., 1973, The mosquitoes of Arizona: Tucson, University of Arizona, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 205, 21 p.
Newson, H. D., 1978, Culicidae, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 311-329.
Nielsen, L. T., 1968, A current list of mosquitoes known to occur in Utah, with a report of new records: Utah Mosquito Abatement Association Proceedings, v. 21, p. 34-37.
Nielsen, L. T., and Rees, D. M., 1961, An identification guide to the mosquitoes of Utah: Salt Lake City, University of Utah Biological Series, v. 12, no. 3, 63 p.
Parsons, M. A., Berry, R. L., Jalil, M., and Masterson, R. A., 1972, A revised list of the mosquitoes of Ohio, with some new distribution and species records: Mosquito News, v. 32, p. 223-226.
Parsons, R. E., and Howell, D. E., 1971, A list of Oklahoma mosquitoes: Mosquito News, v. 31, p. 168-169.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Quinby, G. E., Serfling, R. E., and Neel, J. K., 1944, Distribution and prevalence of the mosquitoes of Kentucky: Journal of Economic Entomology, v. 37, p. 547-550.
Rees, D. M., 1943, The mosquitoes of Utah: Salt Lake City, Bulletin of the University of Utah, v. 33, no. 7, 99 p.
Ross, H. H., 1947, The mosquitoes of Illinois (Diptera, Culicidae): Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 24, article 1, 96 p.
Rozeboom, L. E., 1942, The mosquitoes of Oklahoma: Stillwater, Oklahoma Agricultural and Mechanical College Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. T-16, 56 p.
Siverly, R. E., 1972, Mosquitoes of Indiana: Indianapolis, Publication of the Indiana State Board of Health, 126 p.
Smith, L. W., Jr., and Enns, W. R., 1968, A list of Missouri mosquitoes: Mosquito News, v. 28, p. 50-51.
Stojanovich, C. J., 1961, Illustrated key to common mosquitoes of northeastern North America: Atlanta, 49 p.
Stone, Alan, 1981, Culicidae, in Manual of nearctic Diptera, v. 1: Canada Department of Agriculture Research Branch Monograph no. 27, p. 341-350.
Sublette, M. S., and Sublette, J. E., 1970, Distributional records of mosquitoes on the southern high plains, with a checklist of species from New Mexico and Texas: Mosquito News, v. 30, no. 4, p. 533-538.
Trimble, R. M., 1972, Occurrence of Culiseta minnesotae and Aedes trivittatus (Diptera, Culicidae) in Manitoba, including a list of mosquitoes from Manitoba: Canadian Entomologist, v. 104, no. 10, p. 1535-1537.
Wilson, C. A., Barnes, R. C., and Fulton, H. L., 1946, A list of the mosquitoes of Pennsylvania, with notes on their distribution and abundance: Mosquito News, v. 6, p. 78-84.

Anderson, J. R., 1960, The biology and taxonomy of Wisconsin blackflies (Diptera:simuliidae): Madison, University of Wisconsin, Ph.D. dissertation, 185 p.

Crosskey, R. W., 1973, Simuliidae (blackflies), in Smith, K. G. V., ed., Insects and other arthropods of medical importance: London, Bulletin of the British Museum (Natural History), Entomology, p. 109-153.

Davies, D. M., Peterson, B. V., and Wood, D. M., 1962, The blackflies (Diptera:Simuliidae) of Ontario, Part I--Adult identification and distribution, with descriptions of six new species: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Ontario, v. 92, p. 70-154.

Dyar, H. G., and Shannon, R. C., 1927, North American two-winged flies of the Family Simuliidae: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States, National Museum, v. 69, p. 1-54.

Hall, F., 1974, A key to the Simulium larvae of southern California (Diptera:Simuliidae): California Vector Views, v. 21, p. 65-71.

Malloch, J. R., 1914, American blackflies or buffalo gnats: U.S. Department of Agriculture, Bureau of Entomology Technical Series 26, p. 1-82.

Metcalf, C. L., 1932, Blackflies and other biting flies of the Adirondacks: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 289, p. 1-40.

Muirhead-Thompson, R. C., 1966, Blackflies, in Smith, C. N., ed., Insect colonization and mass production: New York, Academic Press, p. 127-144.

Nicholson, H. P., and Mickel, C. E., 1950, The blackflies of Minnesota (Simuliidae): Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin 192, p. 1-64.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Peterson, B. V., 1960, The Simuliidae (Diptera) of Utah, Part I--Keys, original citations, types and distribution: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 20, p. 81-104.

_____1970, The Prosimulium of Canada and Alaska (Diptera:Simuliidae): Entomological Society of Canada Memoirs no. 69, 216 p.

_____1977, A synopsis of the genus Parasimulium Mallock (Diptera:Simuliidae), with descriptions of one new subgenus and two species: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 79, p. 96-106.

_____1978, Simuliidae, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 331-344.

_____1981, Simuliidae, in Manual of nearctic Diptera, v. 1--Biosystematics Research Institute, Ottawa Research Branch, Agriculture Canada Monograph no. 27, p. 355-392.

Shewell, G. E., 1958, Classification and distribution of Arctic and subarctic Simuliidae: Proceedings of the 10th International Congress of Entomology, v. 1, p. 635-643.

Smart, J., 1945, The classification of the Simuliidae (Diptera): London, Transactions of the Royal Entomological Society, v. 95, no. 8, p. 463-532.

Smith, L. M., and Lowe, H., 1948, The black gnats of California: Hilgardia, v. 18, no. 3, p. 157-183.

Sommerman, K. M., 1953, Identification of Alaskan blackfly larvae (Diptera: Simuliidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 55, p. 258-273.

Stains, G. S., and Knowlton, G. F., 1943, A taxonomic and distributional study of Simuliidae of western United States: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 36, no. 2, p. 259-280.
Stone, Alan, 1952, The Simuliidae of Alaska (Diptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 54, p. 69-96.
_____1963, A new Parasimulium and further records for the type species (Diptera:Simuliidae): Brooklyn Entomological Society Bulletin, v. 58, p. 127-129.
_____1964, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The Diptera or true flies of Connecticut; fascicle 9, Simuliidae and Thaumaleidae: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 97, 123 p.
_____1965, Family Simuliidae, in Stone, Alan, Sabrosky, C. W., Wirth, W. W., Foote, R. H., and Coulson, J. R., eds., A catalog of the Diptera of America, north of Mexico: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Handbook 276, p. 181-189.
Stone, Alan, and Jamnback, H. A., 1955, The blackflies of New York State (Diptera:Simuliidae): Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 349, p. 1-144.
Stone, Alan, and Snoddy, E. L., 1969, The blackflies of Alabama (Diptera: Simuliidae): Auburn, Auburn University, Alabama Agricultural Experiment Station Bulletin no. 390, 93 p.
Twinn, C. R., 1936, The blackflies of eastern Canada (Simuliidae, Diptera): Canadian Journal of Research, v. 14, p. 97-150.
Wood, D. M., Peterson, B. V., Davies, D. M., and Gyorkos, H., 1963, The blackflies (Diptera:Simuliidae) of Ontario, Part II--Larval identification, with descriptions and illustrations: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Ontario, v. 93, p. 99-129.

Tipulidae and Tabanidae

Alexander, C. P., 1919, The crane flies of New York, Part I--Distribution and taxonomy of the adult flies: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 25, p. 767-993.
_____1920, The crane flies of New York, Part II--Biology and phylogeny: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 38, p. 695-1133.
_____1934, Family Tipulidae--The crane flies, in Curran, C.H., ed., The families and genera of North American Diptera: New York, Ballou, p. 33-59.
_____1942, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VI--The Diptera or true flies of Connecticut; fascicle 1, Family Tipulidae: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 64, p. 196-485.
_____1965, Family Tipulidae, in Stone, Alan, Sabrosky, C. W., Wirth, W. W., Foote, R. H., and Coulson, J. R., eds., A catalog of the Diptera of America, north of Mexico: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Handbook 276, p. 16-90.
_____1967, The crane flies of California: California Insect Survey Bulletin, v. 8, 269 p.

Alexander, C. P., and Byers, G. W., 1981, Tipulidae, in Manual of nearctic Diptera, v. 1: Biosystematics Research Institute, Ottawa Research Branch, Agriculture Canada Monograph no. 27, p. 153-190.

Axtell, R. C., 1976, Coastal horseflies and deerflies (Diptera:Tabanidae), in Cheng, L., ed., Marine insects: Amsterdam, North-Holland, p. 415-455.

Brennan, J. M., 1935, The Pangoniinae of nearctic America (Diptera:Tabanidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 22, no. 13, p. 249-401.

Brodo, F., 1967, A review of the subfamily Cylindrotominae in North America (Diptera:Tipulidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 47, no. 3, p. 71-115.

Byers, G. W., 1978, Tipulidae, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 285-310.

Dickinson, W. E., 1932, Crane flies of Wisconsin: Milwaukee Public Museum Scientific Publication, v. 8, no. 2, p 141-266.

Goodwin, J. T., 1973a, Immature stages of some eastern nearctic Tabanidae (Diptera), Part II--Genera of the tribe Diachlorini: Journal of the Georgia Entomological Society, v. 8, no. 1, p. 5-11.

_____1973b, Immature stages of some eastern nearctic Tabanidae (Diptera), Part IV--The genus Merycomyia: Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 48, no. 3, p. 115-118.

_____1974, Immature stages of some eastern nearctic Tabanidae (Diptera), Part V--Stenotabanus (Aegialomyia) magnicallus (Stone): Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 49, no. 1, p. 14-15.

Lane, R. S., 1975, Immatures of some Tabanidae (Diptera) from Mendocino County, California: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 68, no. 5, p. 803-819.

Marchand, W., 1920, The early stages of the Tabanidae (horseflies): Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research Monograph no. 13, 203 p.

Pechuman, L. L., 1973, Horseflies and deerflies of Virginia (Diptera: Tabanidae): Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Bulletin 81, 92 p.

Pechuman, L. L., and Teskey, H. J., 1981, Tabanidae, in Manual of nearctic Diptera, v. 1: Biosystematics Research Institute, Ottawa Research Branch, Agriculture Canada Monograph no. 27, p. 463-478.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Philip, C. B., 1931, The Tabanidae (horseflies) of Minnesota, with special reference to their biologies and taxonomy: Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 80, 132 p.

Roberts, R. H., and Dicke, R. J., 1964, The biology and taxonomy of some immature nearctic Tabanidae (Diptera): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 56, no. 1, p. 31-40.

Rogers, J. S., 1930, The summer crane-fly fauna of the Cumberland Plateau of Tennessee: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 215, 50 p.

_____1932, The ecological distribution of the crane flies of northern Florida: Ecological Monograph, v. 3, no. 1, p. 2-74.

_____1942, The crane flies (Tipulidae) of the George reserve, Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publication of the Museum of Zoology, v. 53, 128 p.

Stone, Alan, 1938, The horseflies of the subfamily Tabanidae of the nearctic region: U.S. Department of Agriculture Miscellaneous Publication 305, 172 p.

Teskey, H. J., 1969, Larvae and pupae of some eastern North American Tabanidae (Diptera): Entomological Society of Canada Memoir no. 63, 147 p.

Thompson, P. H., 1967, Tabanidae of Maryland: Philadelphia, Transactions of the Entomological Society of America, v. 93, no. 4, p. 463-519.

Ephemeroptera

Allen, R. K., 1967, New species of New World Leptohyphinae (Ephemeroptera: Tricorythidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 99, no. 4, p. 350-375.

_____1973, Generic revisions of the mayfly nymphs Traverella in Northern and Central America (Leptophlebiidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 66, no. 6, p. 1287-1295.

Allen, R. K., and Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1956, A list of the mayflies of Oregon: Provo, Proceedings of the Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 33, p. 85-87.

_____1959, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera:Ephemerellidae), Part I--The subgenus Timpanoga: Canadian Entomologist, v. 91, no. 1, p. 51-58.

_____1961a, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part II--The subgenus Caudatella: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 54, no. 4, p. 603-612.

_____1961b, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part III--The subgenus Attennatella: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 34, no. 4, p. 161-173.

_____1962a, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part IV--The subgenus Dannella: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 35, no. 3, p. 333-338.

_____1962b, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part V--The subgenus Drunella in North America: College Park, Md., Entomological Society of America Miscellaneous Publications, v. 3, no. 5, p. 147-179.

_____1963a, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part VI--The subgenus Serratella in North America: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 56, no. 5, p. 583-600.

_____1963b, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera: Ephemerellidae), Part VII--The subgenus Eurylophella: Canadian Entomologist, v. 95, no. 6, p. 597-623.

_____1965, A revision of the genus Ephemerella (Ephemeroptera:Ephemerellidae), Part VIII--The subgenus Ephemerella in North America: College Park, Md., Entomological Society of America Miscellaneous Publications, v. 4, no. 6, p. 244-282.

_____1976, A revision of the genus Ametropus in North America (Ephemeroptera Ametropodidae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 49, no. 4, p. 625-635.

Bednarik, A. F., and McCafferty, W. P., 1979, Biosystematic revision of the genus Stenonema (Ephemeroptera:Heptageneiidae): Canadian Bulletin of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, no. 201, 73 p.

Berner, Lewis, 1950, The mayflies of Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida Press, Biological Sciences Series, v. 4, no. 4, 267 p.

_____1955, The southeastern species of Baetisca (Ephemeroptera:Baetiscidae): Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 18, p. 1-19.

_____1956, The genus Neoephemera in North America (Ephemeroptera: Neoephemeridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 49, no. 1, p. 33-42.

_____1959, A tabular summary of the biology of North American mayfly nymphs (Ephemeroptera): Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum, v. 4, no. 11, p. 1-58.

_____1968, Ephemeroptera, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. M1-M10.

_____1975, The mayfly family Leptophlobiidae in the southeastern United States: Florida Entomologist, v. 58, no. 3, p. 137-156.

Burks, B. D., 1953, The mayflies, or Ephemeroptera, of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 26, p. 1-216. [Reprinted 1975, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]

Day, W. C., 1956, Ephemeroptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 79-105.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1957, The predaceous mayfly nymphs of North America: Provo, Proceedings of the Utah Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 34, p. 23-24.

_____1958, North American mayflies of the family Oligoneuriidae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 51, p. 375-382.

_____1959, Ephemeroptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 908-916.

_____1961, A key to the genera of the known nymphs of the Oligoneuriidae (Ephemeroptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 63, p. 255-256.

_____1978, Ephemeroptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 57-80.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., and Allen, R. K., 1957, A checklist of the Ephemeroptera of North America north of Mexico: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 50, no. 4, p. 317-324.

_____1964, The Rocky Mountain species of Epeorus (Iron) Eaton (Ephemeroptera: Heptageniidae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 37, no. 4, p. 275-288.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., Allen, R. K., and Peters, W. L., 1963, An annotated key to the nymphs of the families and subfamilies of mayflies (Ephemeroptera): Salt Lake City, University of Utah Biological Series, v. 13, no. 1, 55 p.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., and Jensen, S. L., 1974, A new genus and subfamily of North American Heptageniidae (Ephemeroptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 76, p. 495-497.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., Jensen, S. L., and Berner, Lewis, 1976, The mayflies of North and Central America: Minneapolis, University of Minnesota Press, 330 p.

Edmunds, G. F., Jr., and Traver, J. R., 1954, An outline of a reclassification of the Ephemeroptera: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 56, no. 5, p. 236-240.

_____1959, The classification of the Ephemeroptera, Part I--Ephemeroidea: Behningiidae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 52, p. 43-51.

Flowers, R. W., and Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1975, Heptageniidae (Ephemeroptera) of Wisconsin: Great Lakes Entomologist, v. 8, no. 4, p. 201-218.

Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1970, Key to genera of Wisconsin Plecoptera (stonefly) nymphs, Ephemeroptera (mayfly) nyumphs, and Trichoptera (caddisfly) larvae: Madison, Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Research Report no. 67, 68 p.

Ide, F. P., 1937, Descriptions of eastern North American species of Baetine mayflies, with particular reference to nymphal stages: Canadian Entomologist, v. 69, p. 219-231, 235-243.

Koss, R. W., 1968, Morphology and taxonomic use of Ephemeroptera eggs: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 61, no. 3, p. 696-721.

_____1970, The significance of the egg stage to taxonomic and phylogenetic studies of the Ephemeroptera: Proceedings of the 1st International Conference on Ephemeroptera, v. 1, p. 73-78.

Koss, R. W., and Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1974, Ephemeroptera eggs and their contribution to phylogenetic studies of the order: The Journal of the Linnean Society of London, Zoology, v. 55, no. 4, p. 267-349.

Leonard, J. W., and Leonard, F. A., 1962, Mayflies of Michigan trout streams: Bloomfield Hills, Mich., Cranbrook Institute of Science Bulletin no. 43, 139 p.

Lewis, P. A., 1974, Taxonomy and ecology of Stenonema mayflies (Heptageniidae: Ephemeroptera): U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Environmental Monitoring Series Report EPA-670/4-74-006, 81 p.

Macan, T. T., 1970, A key to the nymphs of the British species of Ephemeroptera, with notes on their ecology (2d ed.): Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 20, 68 p.

McCafferty, W. P., 1975, The burrowing mayflies (Ephemeroptera:Ephemeroidea) of the United States: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 101, no. 3, p. 447-54.

McCafferty, W. P., and Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1973, Subgeneric classification of Ephemera (Ephemeroptera, Ephemeridae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 49, no. 4, p. 300-307.

_____1976, Redefinition of the family Palingeniidae and it implications for the higher classification of Ephemeroptera: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 69, no. 3, p. 486-490.

Needham, J. G., and Betten, Cornelius, 1901, Aquatic insects in the Adirondacks--Ephemeridae: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin, v. 47, p. 383-612.

_____1920, Burrowing mayflies of our larger lakes and streams: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 36, p. 267-292.

Needham, J. G., Traver, J. R., and Hsu, Yin-chi, 1935, The biology of mayflies, with a systematic account of North American species: Ithaca, Comstock Publishing Company, 759 p. [Reprinted 1969, East Lansing, Mich., Entomological Reprint Specialists, Inc.]

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Peters, W. L., and Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1970, Revision of the generic classification of the Eastern Hemisphere Leptophebiidae (Ephemeroptera): Pacific Insects, v. 12, no. 1, p. 157-240.
Schneider, R. F., 1967, Mayfly nymphs from northwestern Florida: Gainesville, Quarterly Journal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 29, no. 3, p. 202-206.
Schwiebert, E., 1973, Nymphs--A complete guide to naturals and their imitations: Winchester, N.Y., 339 p.
Scott, D. C., Berner, Lewis, and Hirsch, A., 1959, The nymph of the mayfly genus Tortopus (Ephemeroptera:Polymitarcyidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 52, p. 205-213.
Spieth, H. T., 1941, Taxonomic studies on the Ephemeroptera, Part II--The genus Hexagenia: American Midland Naturalist, v. 26, no. 2, p. 233-274.
Thew, T. B., 1960, Revision of the genera of the family Caenidae (Ephemeroptera): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 86, p. 187-205.
Traver, J. R., 1932-33, Mayflies of North Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 47, p. 85-161, 163-236; v. 48, p. 141-206.
Traver, J. R., and Edmunds, G. F., Jr., 1967, A revision of the genus Thraulodes (Ephemeroptera:Leptophlebiidae): College Park, Md., Entomological Society of America Miscellaneous Publications, v. 5, no. 8, p. 351-395.

Hemiptera

Anderson, L. D., 1932, A monograph of the genus Metrobates (Hemiptera: Gerridae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 20, no. 16, p. 297-311.
Applegate, R. L., 1973, Corixidae (water boatmen) of the South Dakota glacial lake district: Entomological News, v. 84, no. 5, p. 163-170.
Bacon, J. E., 1956, A taxonomic study of the genus Rhagovelia (Hemiptera, Veliidae) of the Western Hemisphere: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 38, p. 695-913.
Blatchley, W. S., 1926, Heteroptera or true bugs of eastern North America: Indianapolis, The Nature Publishing Company, 1,116 p.
Bobb, M. L., 1974, The insects of Virginia, Part 7--The aquatic and semiaquaitc Hemiptera of Virginia: Blacksburg, Va., Resources Division Bulletin, v. 87, 196 p.
Britton, W. E., 1923, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part IV--The Hemiptera or sucking insects of Connecticut: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 34, 807 p.
Brooks, A. R., and Kelton, L. A., 1967, Aquatic and semiaquatic Heteroptera of Alberta, Saskatchewan, and Manitoba (Hemiptera): Memoirs of the Entomological Society of Canada no. 51, 92 p.
Calabrese, D., 1974, Keys to the adults and nymphs of the species of Gerris occurring in Connecticut USA, in Beard, R. L., ed., Connecticut Entomological Society 25th Anniversary memoirs: New Haven, Connecticut Entomological Society, p. 227-266.

Chapman, H. C., 1958, Notes on the identity, habitat and distribution of some semi-aquatic Hemiptera of Flordia: Florida Entomologist, v. 41, no. 3, p. 117-124.

Drake, C. J., 1952, Alaskan Saldidae (Hemiptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 54, p. 145-148.

Drake, C. J., and Chapman, H. C., 1953, A preliminary report on the Pleidae (Hemiptera) of the Americas: Proceedings of the Biological Society of Washington, v. 66, p. 53-59.

_____1954, New American waterstriders (Hemiptera): Florida Entomologist, v. 37, p. 151-155.

_____1958a, New neotropical Hebridae, including a catalog of the American species (Hemiptera): Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 48, no. 10, p. 317-326.

_____1958b, The subfamily Soldoidinae (Hemiptera:Saldidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 51, no. 5, p. 480-485.

Drake, C. J., and Harris, H. M., 1932a, A synopsis of the genus Metrobates Uhler (Hemiptera:Gerridae): Pittsburgh, Annals of Carnegie Museum, v. 21, p. 83-88.

_____1932b, A survey of the species of Trepobates Uhler (Hemiptera, Gerridae): Brooklyn Entomological Society Bulletin, v. 27, no. 2, p. 113-122.

_____1934, The Gerrinae of the Western Hemisphere (Hemiptera): Pittsburgh, Annals of Carnegie Museum, v. 23, p. 179-240.

Drake, C. J., and Hoberlandt, L., 1950, Catalogue of genera and species of Saldidae (Hemiptera): Prague, Acta Entomologického Musea Narodio, v. 26, no. 376, 12 p.

Drake, C. J., and Hottes, F. C., 1950, Saldidae of the Americas (Hemiptera): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 10, p. 51-61.

_____1952, Genus Trepobates Herrich-Schaeffer (Hemiptera; Gerridae): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 12, p. 35-38.

Drake, C. J., and Hussey, R. F., 1955, Concerning the genus Microvelia Westwood, with descriptions of two new species and a checklist of the American forms (Hemiptera:Veliidae): Florida Entomologist, v. 38, p. 95-115.

Drake, C. J., and Lauck, D. R., 1959, Description, synonomy, and checklist of American Hydrometridae (Hemiptera-Heteroptera): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 19, p. 43-52.

Froeschner, R. C., 1949, Contributions to a synopsis of the Hemiptera of Missouri, Part IV--Hebridae, Cimicidae, Anthrocoridae, Cryptostemmatidae, Isometopidae, Miridae: American Midland Naturalist, v. 42, no. 1, p. 123-188.

_____1962, Contributions to a synopsis of the Hemiptera of Missouri, Part V--Hydrometridae, Gerridae, Viliidae, Saldidae, Ochteridae, Gelastocoridae, Naucoridae, Belostomatidae, Nepidae, Notonectidae, Pleidae, Corixidae: American Midland Naturalist, v. 67, no. 1, p. 208-240.

Gittelman, S. H., 1974, The habitat preference and immature stages of Neoplea striola (Hemiptera:Pleidae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 47, no. 4, p. 491-503.

Gould, G. E., 1931, The Rhagovelia of the Western Hemisphere, with notes on world distribution (Hemiptera, Veliidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 20, no. 1, p. 5-61.

Hamilton, M. A., 1931, The morphology of the water-scorpion, Nepa cinerea Linn. (Rhynchota, Heteroptera): Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, p. 1067-1136.
Harris, H. M., and Shull, W. E., 1944, A preliminary list of Hemiptera of Idaho: Ames, Iowa State University Press, Iowa State Journal of Science, v. 18, no. 2, p. 199-208.
Herring, J. L., 1951, The aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera of northern Florida, Part IV--Classification of habitats and keys to the species: Florida Entomologist, v. 34, no. 4, p. 146-161.
Herring, J. L., and Ashlock, P. D., 1971, A key to the nymphs of the families of Hemiptera of America north of Mexico: Florida Entomologist, v. 54, no. 3, p. 207-212.
Hidalgo, J., 1935, The genus Abedus stal. (Hemiptera, Belostomatidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas, Science Bulletin, v. 22, no. 16, p. 493-519.
Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1970, Corixidae of Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 58, p. 203-235.
Hodgden, B. B., 1949a, A monograph of the Saldidae (Hemiptera) of North and Central America and the West Indies: Lawrence, University of Kansas, Ph.D. dissertation, 511 p.
_____1949b, New Saldidae from the Western Hemisphere: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 22, no. 4, p. 149-165.
Hoffman, W. E., 1924, The life histories of three species of gerrids (Heteroptera:Gerridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 17, no. 4, p. 419-430.
_____1932, The biology of three North American species of Mesovelia (Hemiptera, Mesoveliidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 64, no. 4, p. 88-95; no. 5, p. 113-120; no. 6, p. 126-134.
Hungerford, H. B., 1919, The biology and ecology of aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 21, no. 17, 341 p.
_____1922, The Nepidae of North America north of Mexico: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 14, p. 425-453.
_____1933, The genus Notonecta of the world: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 21, no. 1, 195 p.
_____1948, The Corixidae of the Western Hemisphere: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 32, 826 p. [Reprinted, 1976, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]
_____1954, The genus Rheumatobates Bergroth (Hemiptera:Gerridae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 36, p. 529-588.
_____1959, Hemiptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 958-972.
Hungerford, H. B., and Evans, N. E., 1934, The Hydrometridae of the Hungarian National Museum and other studies in the family: Annals of the National Museum of Hungary, v. 28, p. 31-112.
Hungerford, H. B., and Matsuda, R., 1960, Keys to subfamilies, tribes, genera, and subgenera of the Gerridae of the world: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 41, p. 3-23.
Lansbury, I., 1960, The Corixidae (Hemiptera-Heteroptera) of British Columbia: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of British Columbia, v. 57, p. 34-43.

LaRivers, Ira, 1948, A new species of Pelocoris from Nevada, with notes on the genus in the United States (Hemiptera:Naucoridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 41, no. 3, p. 371-376.

_____1951, A revision of the genus Ambrysus in the United States (Hemiptera: Naucoridae): Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 8, p. 277-332.

_____1971, Studies of Naucoridae (Hemiptera): Memoirs of the Biological Society of Nevada, v. 2, 120 p.

_____1974, Catalogue of taxa described in the family Naucoridae (Hemiptera), Supplement no. 1--Corrections, emendations and additions, with descriptions of new species: Occasional Papers of the Biological Society of Nevada, v. 38, p. 1-17.

_____1976, Catalogue of taxa described in the family Naucoridae (Hemiptera), with descriptions of new species, Supplement no. 2: Occasional Papers of the Biological Society of Nevada, v. 41, p. 1-18.

Lauck, D. R., 1963, A monograph of the genus Belostoma (Hemiptera), Part I--Introduction and B. dentatum and subspinosum groups: Chicago Academy of Sciences Bulletin, v. 11, no. 3, p. 34-81.

_____1964, A monograph of the genus Belostoma (Hemiptera), Part III--B triangulum, bergi, minor, bifoveolatum and flumineum groups: Chicago Academy of Sciences Bulletin, v. 11, no. 5, p. 102-154.

Macan, T. T., 1965, A revised key to the British water bugs (Hemiptera-Heteroptera): Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 16, 77 p.

McKinstry, A. P., 1942, A new family of Hemiptera-Heteroptera proposed for Macrovelia hornii Uhler: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 18, no. 2, p. 90-96.

Matsuda, R., 1960, Morphology, evolution and a classification of the Gerridae (Hemiptera-Heteroptera): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 41, p. 25-632.

Menke, A. S., 1958, A synopsis of the genus Belostoma Latreille of America, north of Mexico, with the description of a new species (Hemiptera: Belostomatidae): Los Angeles, Bulletin of the Southern California Academy of Sciences, v. 57, no. 3, p. 154-174.

_____1960, A taxonomic study of the genus Abedus Stal (Hemiptera: Belostomatidae): Berkeley and Los Angeles, University of California Press, University of California Publication in Entomology, v. 16, p. 393-440.

_____1963, A review of the genus Lethocerus in North and Central America, including the West Indies (Hemiptera:Belostomatidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 56, no. 3, p. 261-267.

_____ed., 1979, The semiaquatic and aquatic Hemiptera of California (Heteroptera:Hemiptera): California Insect Survey Bulletin, v. 21, 166 p.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Polhemus, J. T., 1966, Some Hemiptera new to the United States (Notonectidae, Saldidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 68, no. 1, p. 57.

_____1973, Notes on aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera from the southwestern United States (Insecta:Hemiptera): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 33, no. 2, p. 113-119.

_____1974, The austrina group of the genus Microvelia (Hemiptera:Veliidae): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 34, no. 3, p. 207-217.
_____1976, A reconsideration of the status of the genus Paravelia Breddin, with other notes and a checklist of species (Veliidae:Heteroptera): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 49, no. 4, p. 509-513.
_____1978, Aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 119-131.
Polhemus, J. T., and Chapman, H. C., 1966, Notes on some Hebridae from the United States, with the description of a new species Hebrus obscura (Hemiptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 68, no. 2, p. 209-211.
Porter, T. W., 1950, Taxonomy of the American Hebridae and the natural history of selected species: Lawrence, University of Kansas, Ph.D. dissertation, 165 p.
Rice, L. A., 1954, Observations on the biology of ten notonectid species found in the Douglas Lake, Michigan, region: American Midland Naturalist, v. 51, p. 105-132.
Sailer, R. I., 1948, The genus Trichocorixa (Corixidae, Hemiptera), in Hungerford, H. B., ed., The corixidae of the Western Hemisphere (Hemiptera): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 32, p. 289-407.
Schaefer, K. F., and Drew, W. A., 1968, The aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera of Oklahoma: Stillwater, Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 47, p. 125-134.
_____1969, The aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera (Belostomatidae and Saldidae) of Oklahoma: Stillwater, Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 48, p. 79-83.
Schell, D. V., 1943, The Ochteridae (Hemiptera) of the Western Hemisphere: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 16, no. 1, p. 29-36; no. 2, p. 37-47.
Schroeder, H. O., 1931, The genus Rheumatobates and notes on the male genitalia of some Gerridae (Hemiptera, Gerridae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 20, no. 1, p. 63-99.
Schuh, R. T., 1967, The shore bugs (Hemiptera:Saldidae) of the Great Lakes region: Contribution of the American Entomological Institute, v. 2, no. 2, 35 p.
Scudder, G. G. E., 1971, The Gerridae (Hemiptera) of British Columbia: Journal of the Entomological Society of British Columbia, v. 68, p. 3-10.
Smith, C. L., and Polhemus, J. T., 1978, The Veliidae (Heteroptera) of America, north of Mexico: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 80, no. 1, p. 56-68.
Sprague, I. B., 1967, Nymphs of the genus Gerris (Heteroptera:Gerridae) in New England: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 60, no. 5, p. 1038-1044.
Strickland, E. H., 1953, An annotated list of the Hemiptera (S. L.) of Alberta: Canadian Entomologist, v. 85, p. 193-214.
Todd, E. L., 1955, A taxonomic revision of the Family Gelastocoridae (Hemiptera): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 37, p. 277-475.
_____1961, A checklist of the Gelastocoridae (Hemiptera): Proceedings of the Hawaii Entomological Society, v. 17, p. 461-476.

Torre-Bueno, J. R. de la, 1926, The family Hydrometridae in the Western Hemisphere: Entomologica Americana, v. 7, no. 5, p. 83-128.
Truxal, F. S., 1949, A study of the genus Martarega (Hemiptera:Notonectidae): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 22, no. 1, p. 1-24.
_____1953, A revision of the genus Buenoa (Hemiptera:Notonectidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 35, p. 1351-1523.
Usinger, R. L., 1941, Key to the subfamilies of Naucoridae, with a generic synopsis of the new subfamily Ambrysinae (Hemiptera): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 34, no. 1, p. 5-16.
_____1945, Notes on the genus Cryptostemma, with a new record for Georgia and a new species from Puerto Rico (Hemiptera:Cryptostemmatidae): Entomological News, v. 56, no. 9, p. 238-241.
_____1946, Notes and descriptions of Ambrysus Stal, with an account of the life history of Ambrysus mormon Montd: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 31, no. 1, p. 185-210.
_____1956, Aquatic Hemiptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 182-228.
Van Duzee, E. P., 1917, Catalogue of the Hemiptera of America north of Mexico: Berkeley, University of California Press, University of California Publications in Entomology, v. 2, 902 p.
Wilson, C. A., 1958, Aquatic and semiaquatic Hemiptera of Mississippi: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 6, p. 115-170.

Hymenoptera

Annecke, D. P., and Doutt, R. L., 1961, The genera of the Mymaridae (Hymenoptera:Chalcidoidea): South Africa Department of Agriculture Technical Services Report, Entomological Memoir, v. 5, p. 1-71.
Bradley, J. C., 1902, A recently discovered genus and species of aquatic Hymenoptera: Canadian Entomologist, v. 34, no. 7, p. 179-180.
Capek, M., 1970, A new classification of the Braconidae (Hymenoptera) based on the cephalic structures of the final instar larva and biological evidence: Canadian Entomologist, v. 102, no. 7, p. 846-875.
Caudell, A. N., 1922, A diving wasp: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 24, p. 125-126.
Chagnon, G., 1923, A hymenopteron of aquatic habits: Canadian Entomologist, v. 64, p. 112.
Clausen, C. P., 1940, Entomophagous insects: New York, McGraw-Hill, 688 p.
Cushman, R. A., 1933, Aquatic ichneumon flies: Canadian Entomologist, v. 65, 24 p.
_____1935, New ichneumon flies: Washington, D.C., Journal of the Washington Academy of Sciences, v. 25, no. 12, p. 547-564.
Doutt, R. L., 1949, A synopsis of North American Anaphoidea: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 25, p. 155-160.
Doutt, R. L., and Viggiani, G., 1968, The classification of the Trichogrammatidae (Hymenoptera:Chalcidoidea): San Francisco, Proceedings of the California Academy of Sciences (4th series), v. 35, no. 20, p. 477-586.
Evans, H. E., 1950-51, A taxonomic study of the nearctic spider wasps belonging to tribe Pompilini (Hymenoptera:Pompilidae): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 75, p. 133-270; v. 76, p. 207-361; v. 77, p. 203-330.

_____1959, The larvae of Pompilidae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 52, p. 430-444.
Fischer, M., 1971, Index of world Opiinae, in Delucchi, V., and Remaudiera, G., eds., Index of entomophagous insects, v. 5: Paris, Le Francois, p. 1-189.
Frohne, W. C., 1939, Semiaquatic Hymenoptera in north Michigan lakes: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, p. 228-240.
Girault, A. A., 1911, Synonymic and descriptive notes on the Chalcidoid family Trichogrammatidae, with descriptions of new species: Philadelphia, Transactions of the Entomological Society, v. 37, p. 43-83.
Graham, M. W. R. de V., 1959, Keys to the British genera and species of Elachertinae, Eulophinae, Entedontinae and Euderinae (Hymenoptera: Chalcidoidea): Transactions of the Society of British Entomology, v. 13, p. 169-204.
_____1969, The Pteromalidae of north-western Europe (Hymenoptera: Chalcidoidea): London, Bulletin of the British Museum (Natural History), Entomology, v. 16, p. 1-908.
Hagen, K. S., 1956, Aquatic Hymenoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 289-292.
_____1978, Aquatic Hymenoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 233-243.
Hedqvist, K. J., 1967, Hymenoptera, in Illies, Joachim, ed., Limnofauna Europaea: Stuttgart, Gustav Fischer, p. 242-244.
Henriksen, K. L., 1922, Notes up on some aquatic Hymenoptera: Bruxelles, Annales de Biologie Lacustre, v. 11, p. 19-37.
Heymons, R., 1908, Süsswasser-Hymenopteren aus der Umgebung Berlins: Deutsche Entomologische Zeitschrift, p. 137-150.
Hoffmann, C. H., 1932, Hymenopterous parasites from the eggs of aquatic and semiaquatic insects: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 5, p. 33-37.
Kieffer, J. J., 1916, Diapriidae: Das Tierreich, v. 44, 627 p.
Krombein, K. V., and Burks, B. D., 1967, Hymenoptera of America, north of Mexico; synoptic catalog: U.S. Department of Agriculture Monograph 2 (Supplement 2), 305 p.
Martin, C. H., 1928, Biological studies of two hymenopterous parasites of aquatic insect eggs: Entomologica Americana, v. 8., p. 105-156.
Masner, L., 1972, The classification and interrelationships of Thoronini (Hymenoptera, Proctotrupoidea, Scelionidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 104, no. 6, p. 833-849.
_____1976, Revisionary notes and keys to world genera of Scelionidae (Hymenoptera:Proctotrupoidea): Entomological Society of Canada Memoirs, no. 97, 87 p.
Matheson, Robert, and Crosby, C. R., 1912, Aquatic Hymenoptera in America: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 5, p. 65-71.
Michener, C. D., 1953, Comparative morphological and systematic studies of bee larvae, with a key to the families of hymenopterous larvae: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 35, no. 8, p. 987-1102.
Musebeck, C. F. W., 1950, Two new genera and three new species of Braconidae (Hymenoptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 52, p. 77-81.

Musebeck, C. F. W., Krombein, K. V., and Townes, H. K., 1951, Hymenoptera of America, north of Mexico; synoptic catalog: U.S. Department of Agriculture Monograph 21, 420 p.
Nagaraja, H., and Nagarkatti, S., 1973, A key to some New World species of Trichogramma (Hymenoptera:Trichogrammatidae), with descriptions of four new species: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 75, p. 288-297.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Richards, O. W., 1956, Hymenoptera--Introduction and keys to families: Handbooks for identification of British insects, v. 6, pt. 1, 94 p.
Riegel, G. T., 1950, A new genus and species of Dacnusini Hymenoptera:Braconidae): Entomological News, v. 61, p. 125-129.
Riek, E. F., 1970, Hymenoptera, in Insects of Australia: Melbourne University Press, p. 867-983.
Ruschka, F., and Thienemann, A., 1913, Zur kenntnis der Wasser-Hymenopteren: Zeitschrift wissenschaftliche Insektenbiologie, v. 9, p. 48-52; 82-87.
Short, J. R. T., 1959, A description and classifcation of the final instar larvae of the Ichneumonidae (Insecta, Hymenoptera): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 110, p. 391-511.
_____1970, On the classification of the final instar larvae of the Ichneumonidae (Hymenoptera): Transactions of the Entomological Society of London (Supplement), v. 122, pt. 6, p. 185-210.
Townes, H. K., 1957, Nearctic wasps of the subfamilies Pepsinae and Ceropalinae: Washington, D.C., United States National Museum Bulletin no. 209, 286 p.
_____1969, 1970, 1971, The genera Ichneumonidae, Parts 1, 2, 4: American Entomological Institute Memoirs, v. 11, 300 p.; v. 12, 537 p.; v. 17, 372 p.
Yoshimoto, C. M., 1976, Synopsis of the genus Mestocharis Förster in America, north of Mexico (Chalcidoidea:Eulophidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 108, p. 755-758.

Lepidoptera

Berg, C. O., 1950, Biology of certain aquatic caterpillars (Pyralidae:Nymphula spp.) which feed on Potamogeton: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 69, p. 254-266.
Braun, A. F., 1917, The Nepticulidae of North America: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 43, p. 155-209.
Capps, H. W., 1956, Keys for identification of some lepidopterous larvae frequently intercepted at quarantine: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture, Agricultural Research Service ARS 33-20, p. 1-37.
Crumb, S. E., 1956, The larvae of the Phalaenidae: Washington, D.C., U.S. Department of Agriculture Technical Bulletin 1135, p. 1-356.
Dyar, H. G., 1906, The North American Nymphulinae and Scopariinae: New York, Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 14, p. 77-107.
_____1917, Notes on North American Nymphulinae (Lepidoptera, Pyralidae): Insecutor Inscitae Menstruus, v. 5, no. 4-6, p. 75-79.
Forbes, W. T. M., 1910, The aquatic caterpillars of Lake Quinsigamond: Psyche, v. 17, p. 219-227.

_____1911, Another aquatic caterpillar (Elophila): Psyche, v. 18, p. 120-121.
_____1923, The Lepidoptera of New York and neighboring states: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 68, 2 v.
_____1938, Aceptropus in America (Lepidoptera, Pyralidae): New York, Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 46, no. 3, p. 338.
_____1954, Lepidoptera of New York and neighboring states, Part III--Noctuidae: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 329, p. 1-433.
_____1960, Lepidoptera of New York and neighboring states, Part IV--Agaristidae through Nymphalidae, including butterflies: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 371, p. 1-188.
Fracker, S. B., 1930, The classification of lepidopterous larvae: Urbana, Illinois Biological Monograph, v. 2, no. 1, p. 1-169.
Frohne, W. C., 1938, Biology of Chilo forbesellus Fernald, an hygrophilous crambine moth: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, no. 3, p. 304-326.
_____1939, Observations on the biology of three semiaquatic lacustrine moths: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 58, p. 327-348.
Hampson, G. F., Sir, 1897, On the classification of two subfamilies of the family Pyralidae--The Hydrocampinae and Scoparianae: Transactions of the Entomological Society of London, p. 127-240.
_____1906, Descriptions of new Pyralidae of the subfamilies Hydrocampinae and Scoparianae: Annals and Magazine of Natural History, Series 7, v. 18, p. 373-393; 455-472.
Hart, C. A., 1895, On the entomology of the Illinois River and adjacent waters: Illinois Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 4, p. 149-273.
Heinrich, C., 1916, On the taxonomic value of some larval characters in the Lepidoptera: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 18, p. 154-164.
_____1940, Some new American pyralidoid moths: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 42, no. 2, p. 31-41.
Hinton, H. E., 1946, On the homology and nomenclature of the setae of lepidopterous larvae, with some notes on the phylogeny of the Lepidoptera: London, Transactions of the Royal Entomological Society, v. 97, p. 1-37.
Hodges, R. W., 1962, A revision of the Cosmopterigidae of America, north of Mexico, with a definition of the Momphidae and Walshiidae (Lepidoptera: Gelechioidea): Entomologica, v. 42, p. 1-171.
Judd, W. W., 1950, Acentropus niveus (Oliv.) (Lepidoptera:Pyralidae) on the north shore of Lake Erie, with a consideration of its distribution in North America: Canadian Entomologist, v. 82, p. 250-252.
Klima, A., 1937, Pyralidae--Subfamily Scopariinae, Nymphulinae: Lepidopterorum Catalogus pars 84, Gravenhage, W. Junk, 226 p.
Lange, W. H., Jr., 1956a, A generic revision of the aquatic moths of North America (Lepidoptera:Pyralidae, Nymphulinae): Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 14, p. 59-144.
_____1956b, Aquatic Lepidoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 271-288.
_____1978, Aquatic and semiaquatic Lepidoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 187-201.

Lavery, M. A., and Costa, R. R., 1973, Geogrpahic distribution of the genus Parargyractis (Lepidoptera:Pyralidae) throughout the Lake Erie and Lake Ontario watersheds USA: New York, Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 81, no. 1, p. 42-49.

Lloyd, J. T., 1914, Lepidopterous larvae from rapid streams: New York, Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 22, p. 145-152.

McDunnough, J. H., 1938, Checklist of the Lepidoptera of Canada and the United States of America: Los Angeles, Memoirs of the Southern California Academy of Science, v. 1, no. 1, p. 1-174.

McGaha, Y. J., 1954, Contribution to the biology of some Lepidoptera which feed on certain aquatic flowering plants: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, p. 167-177.

MacKay, M. R., 1959, Larvae of North American Olethreutidae (Lepidoptera): Canadian Entomologist, v. 91 (Supplement 10), p. 3-338.

_____1962a, Additional larvae of the North American Olethreutidae (Lepidoptera:Tortricidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 94, p. 626-643.

_____1962b, Larvae of North American Tortricidae (Lepidoptera:Tortricidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 28, p. 1-182.

_____1972, Larval sketches of some Microlepidoptera, chiefly North American: Memoirs of the Entomological Society of Canada no. 88, p. 1-83.

Mosher, E., 1916, A classification of the Lepidoptera based on characters of the pupae: Urbana, Illinois State Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 12, p. 17-159.

Munroe, E. G., 1947, Further North American records of Acentropus niveus (Lepidoptera, Pyralidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 79, no. 6, p. 120.

_____1972-73, Pyraloidea--Pyralidae (in part), in Dominick, R. B., ed., The moths of America, north of Mexico: London, E. W. Classey Ltd., p. 1-304, Fasc. 13.1, A-C.

Okumura, G. T., 1961, Identification of lepidopterous larvae attacking cotton, with illustrated key (primarily California species): Sacramento, California Department of Agriculture Special Publication no. 282, 80 p.

Packard, A. S., Jr., 1884, Habits of an aquatic Pyralid caterpillar: American Naturalist, v. 18, no. 8, p. 824-826.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Peterson, Alvah, 1948, Larvae of insects, an introduction to nearctic species, Part I--Lepidoptera and plant infesting Hymenoptera: Columbus, Ohio State University, 315 p.

Reichholf, J., 1970, Untersuchungen zur biologie des wasserschmetterlings Nymphula nymphaeata L. (Lepidoptera, Pyralidae): Internationale Revue Gesamten der Hydrobiologie, v. 55, no. 5, p. 687-728.

Schaus, W., 1924, New species of Pyralidae of the subfamily Nymphulinae from tropical America. (Lepidoptera): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 26, p. 93-130.

_____1940, Insects of Porto Rico and Virgin Islands--Moths of the Families Geometridae and Pyralidae: New York Academy of Sciences, Science Survey of Porto Rico and the Virgin Islands, v. 12, p. 291-417.

Welch, P. S., 1915, The Lepidoptera of the Douglas Lake region, northern Michigan: Entomological News, v. 26, p. 115-119.

_____1916, Contribution to the biology of certain aquatic Lepidoptera: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 9, p. 159-187.

_____1959, Lepidoptera, in Edmonson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1050-1056.
Walsingham, T., 1907, Micro-Lepidoptera: Fauna Hawaiiensis, v. 1, p. 549-640.
Williams, F. X., 1944, Biological studies in Hawaiian water-loving insects, Part IV--Lepidoptera or moths and butterflies: Proceedings of the Hawaii Entomological Society, v. 12, p. 180-185.

Megaloptera and Neuroptera

Anthony, M. H., 1902, The metamorphosis of Sisyra: American Naturalist, v. 26, p. 615-631.
Azam, K. M., and Anderson, N. H., 1969, Life history and habits of Sialis rotunda and S. californica in western Oregon: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 62, no. 3, p. 549-558.
Baker, J. R., and Neunzig, H. H., 1968, The egg masses, eggs, and first instar larvae of eastern North American Corydalidae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 61, no. 5, p. 1181-1187.
Brown, H. P., 1952, The life history of Climacea areolaris (Hagen), a neuropterous 'parasite' of fresh-water sponges: American Midland Naturalist, v. 47, no. 1, p. 130-160.
Carpenter, F. M., 1940, A revision of the nearctic Hemerobiidae, Berothidae, Sisyridae, Polystoechotidae and Dilaridae (Neuroptera): Proceedings of the American Academy of Arts and Science, v. 74, p. 193-280.
Chandler, H. P., 1954, Four new species of dobsonflies from California (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 30, p. 105-111.
_____1956a, Megaloptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 229-233.
_____1956b, Aquatic Neuroptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 234-236.
Cuyler, R. D., 1956, Taxonomy and ecology of larvae of sialoid Megaloptera of east-central North Carolina, with a key to and description of larvae of genera known to occur in the United States: Raleigh, North Carolina State University, M.S. thesis, 150 p.
_____1958, The larvae of Chauliodes Latrielle (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 51, no. 6, p. 582-586.
_____1965, The larva of Nigronia fasciatus Walker (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Entomological News, v. 76, no. 7, p. 192-194.
Davis, K. C., 1903, Aquatic insects in New York State, Part 7--Sialidae of North and South America: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin, v. 68, p. 442-486.
Evans, E. D., 1972, A study of the Megaloptera of the Pacific coastal region of the United States: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Ph.D. disseration, 210 p.
_____1978, Megaloptera and aquatic Neuroptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 133-145.
Flint, O. S., Jr., 1964, New species and new state records of Sialis (Neuroptera:Sialidae): Entomological News, v. 75, p. 9-13.
Gurney, A. B., and Parfin, Sophy, 1959, Neuroptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 973-980.

Hazard, E. E., 1960, A revision of the genera Chauliodes and Nigronia (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Columbus, Ohio State University, M.S. thesis, 53 p.
Isom, B. G., 1968, New distribution records for aquatic neuropterans, Sisyridae (spongilla flies) in the Tennessee River drainage: Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 43, no. 4, p. 109-110.
Maddux, D. E., 1954, A new species of dobsonfly from California (Megaloptera: Corydalidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 30, p. 70-71.
Munroe, E. G., 1953, Chauliodes disjunctus Walker--A correction, with the descriptions of a new species of a new genus (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 85, p. 190-192.
Needham, J. G., and Betten, Cornelius, 1901, Aquatic insects of the Adirondacks--Family Sialidae: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Bulletin, v. 47, p. 541-544.
Neunzig, H. H., 1966, Larvae of the genus Nigronia Banks (Neuroptera: Corydalidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 68, p. 11-16.
Old, M. C., 1932, Observations on the Sisyridae (Neuroptera): Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 17, p. 681-684.
Parfin, S. I., 1952, The Megaloptera and Neuroptera of Minnesota: American Midland Naturalist, v. 47, p. 421-434.
Parfin, S. I., and Gurney, A. B., 1956, The spongilla flies, with special reference to those of the Western Hemisphere (Sisyridae, Neuroptera): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 105, no. 3360, p. 421-529.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Peterson, Alvah, 1951, Larvae of insects, an introduction to nearctic species, Part II--Coleoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Siphonaptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera: Ann Arbor, Mich., Edwards Brothers, 416 p.
Poirrier, M. A., and Arceneaux, Y. M., 1972, Studies on southern Sisyridae (spongilla flies), with a key to the third-instar larvae and additional sponge-host records: American Midland Naturalist, v. 88, no. 2, p. 455-458.
Pritchard, G., and Leischner, T. G., 1973, The life history and feeding habits of Sialis cornuta Ross in a series of abandoned beaver ponds (Insecta: Megaloptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 51, no. 2, p. 121-131.
Ross, H. H., 1937, Studies of nearctic aquatic insects, Part I--Nearctic alder files of the genus Sialis (Megaloptera, Sialidae): Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 21, p. 57-78.
Seitz, W., 1940, Zur Frage des Extremitätencharakters der Tracheenkiemen von Sialis flavilatera L. im Rahmen allgemeiner biologischer Untersuchungen: Zeitschrift für Morphologie Ökologie der tiere, v. 37, p. 214-275.
Smith, E. L., 1970, Biology and structure of the dobsonfly, Neohermes californicus Walker (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 46, no. 2, p. 142-150.
Tarter, D. C., and Watkins, W. D., 1974, Distribution of the fishfly genera Chauliodes Latreille and Nigronia Banks in West Virginia: Morgantown, Proceedings of the West Virginia Academy of Science, v. 46, no. 2, p. 146-150.

Tarter, D. C., Watkins, W. D., and Little, M. L., 1975, Life history of the fishfly, Nigronia fasciatus (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Psyche, v. 82, no. 1, p. 81-88.
_____1976, Distribution, including new state records, of fishflies in Kentucky (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Lexington, Transactions of the Kentucky Academy of Science, v. 37, no. 1-2, p. 26-28.
Townsend, L. H., 1935, Key to larvae of certain families and genera of nearctic Neuroptera: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 37, p. 25-30.
_____1939, A new species of Sialis (Megaloptera:Sialidae) from Kentucky: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 41, p. 224-226.
Watkins, W. D., Tarter, D. C., Little, M. L., and Hopkin, S. D., 1975, New records of fishflies for West Virginia (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Morgantown, Proceedings of the West Virginia Academy of Science, v. 47, no. 1, p. 1-5.

Odonata

Beatty, G. , and Beatty, A. F., 1968, Checklist and bibliography of Pennsylvania Odonata: University Park, Proceedings of the Pennsylvania Academy of Science, v. 42, p. 120-129.
Belle, J., 1973, A revision of the new world genus Progomphus Selys, 1854 (Anisoptera:Gomphidae): Odonatologica, v. 2, no. 4, p. 191-308.
Bennefield, B. L., 1965, A taxonomic study of the subgenus Ladona (Odonata: Libellulidae): Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 45, p. 361-396.
Bick, G. H., 1950, The dragonflies of Mississippi (Odonata:Anisoptera) American Midland Naturalist, v. 43, p. 66-78.
_____1957a, The Odonata of Louisiana: New Orleans, Tulane University, Tulane Studies in Zoology, v. 5, p. 69-136.
_____1957b, The Odonata of Oklahoma: Southwestern Naturalist, v. 2, no. 1, p. 1-18.
_____1959, Additional dragonflies (Odonata) from Arkansas: Southwestern Naturalist, v. 4, no. 3, p. 131-133.
Bick, G. H., and Hornuff, L. E., 1972, Odonata collected in Wyoming, South Dakota, and Nebraska: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 74, no. 1, p. 1-8.
_____1974, New records of Odonata from Montana and Colorado: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 76, no. 1, p. 90-93.
Borror, D. J., 1937, An annotated list of the dragonflies (Odonata) of Ohio: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 37, no. 3, p. 185-196.
_____1942, A revision of the libelluline genus Erythrodiplax (Odonata): Columbus, Ohio State University Graduate School Studies, Contributions in Zoology and Entomology, Biological Series, v. 4, 286 p.
_____1944, An annotated list of the Odonata of Maine: Canadian Entomologist, v. 76, no. 7, p. 134-150.
_____1945, A key to the new world genera of Libellulidae (Odonata): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 38, no. 2, p. 168-194.

Brown, C. J. D., 1934, A preliminary list of Utah Odonata: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 291, p. 1-17.
Byers, C. F., 1930, A contribution to the knowledge of Florida Odonata: Gainesville, University of Florida Publication, Biological Science Series, v. 1, no. 1, 327 p.
_____1937, A review of the dragonflies of the genera Neurocordulia and Platycordulia: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology, v. 36, p. 1-36.
_____1940, A study of the dragonflies of the genus Progomphus (Gomphoides), with a description of a new species: Gainesville, Proceedings of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 4, p. 19-86.
Calvert, P. P., 1893, Catalogue of the Odonata (dragonflies) of the vicinity of Philadelphia: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 20, p. 152-272.
_____1909, Contributions to a knowledge of the Odonata of the neotropical region, exclusive of Mexico and Central America: Pittsburgh, Annals of Carnegie Museum, v. 6, no. 1, 280 p.
Corbet, P. S., Longfield, C., and Moore, N. W., 1960, Dragonflies: London, Collins, 260 p.
Cruden, R. W., 1962, A preliminary survey of West Virginia dragonflies (Odonata): Entomological News, v. 73, no. 6, p. 156-160.
Davis, W. T., 1933, Dragonflies of the genus Tetragoneuria: Brooklyn Entomological Society Bulletin, v. 28, no. 3, p. 87-104.
Donnelly, T. W., 1961, The Odonata of Washington, D.C., and vicinity: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 63, no. 1, p. 1-13.
Fisher, E. G., 1940, A list of Maryland Odonata: Entomological News, v. 51, no. 2, p. 37-42; no. 3, p. 67-72.
Fraser, F. C., 1929, A revision of the Fissilabioidae (Cordulegasteridae, Petaliidae, and Petaluridae) (Order Odonata), Part I--Cordulegasteridae: Memoirs of the India Museum of Zoological Survey, v. 9, no. 3, p. 69-167.
_____1933, A revision of the Fissilabioidea (Cordulegasteridae, Petaliidae, and Petaluridae) (Order Odonata), Part II--Petaliidae and Petaluridae, and Appendix to Part I: Memoirs of the India Museum of Zoological Survey, v. 9, p. 205-260.
_____1957, A reclassification of the Order Odonata: Sydney, Australia, Royal Zoological Society of New South Wales, Australian Zoological Handbook, 133 p.
Garman, H., 1924, Odonata from Kentucky: Entomological News, v. 35, no. 8, p. 285-288.
Garman, P., 1917, The Zygoptera, or damselflies of Illinois: Illinois State Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 12, p. 411-587.
_____1927, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part 5--The Odonata or dragonflies: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin, v. 39, p. 4-331.
Garcia-Diaz, J., 1938, An ecological survey of the fresh water insects of Puerto Rico, Part I--The Odonata, with new life histories: Rio Piedras, University of Puerto Rico, Journal of Agriculture, v. 22, p. 43-97.
Gillespie, J., 1941, Some unusual dragonfly records from New Jersey (Odonata): Entomological News, v. 52, no. 8, p. 225-226.

Gloyd, L. K., 1958, The dragonfly fauna of the Big Bend region of Trans-Pecos Texas: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 593, p. 1-23.

_____1959, Elevation of the Macromia group to family status (Odonata): Entomological News, v. 70, no. 8, p. 197-205.

Gloyd, L. K., and Wright, Mike, 1959, Odonata, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 917-940.

Harwood, P. D., 1971, Synopsis of James G. Needham's Cornell University unpublished manuscript, The dragonflies of West Virginia: Morgantown, Proceedings of the West Virginia Academy of Science, v. 43, p. 72-74.

Hayes, W. P., 1941, A bibliography of keys for the identification of immature insects, Part II--Odonata: Entomological News, v. 52, no. 2, p. 52-55; no. 3, p. 66-69; no. 4, p. 93-98.

Howe, R. H., 1917-23, Manual of the Odonata of New England, Parts 1-6: Memoirs of the Thoreau Museum of Natural History II, 149 p.

Johnson, C., 1972, The damselflies (Zygoptera) of Texas: Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 16, no. 2, p. 55-128.

Johnson, C., and Westfall, M. J., Jr., 1970, Diagnostic keys and notes on the damselflies (Zygoptera) of Florida: Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 15, no. 2, p. 45-89.

Kellicott, D. S., 1899, The Odonata of Ohio: Ohio Academy of Sciences Special Papers no. 2, 114 p.

Kennedy, C. H., 1915, Notes on the life history and ecology of the dragonflies (Odonata) of Washington and Oregon: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 49, no. 2107, p. 259-345.

_____1917a, Notes on the life history and ecology of the dragonflies (Odonata) of central California and Nevada: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 52, no. 2192, p. 483-635.

_____1917b, The dragonflies of Kansas: Lawrence, Kansas University Bulletin, v. 18, p. 127-145.

Kormondy, E. J., 1958, Catalogue of the Odonata of Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 104, 43 p.

_____1959, The systematics of Tetragoneuria, based on ecological, life history, and morphological evidence (Odonata:Corduliidae): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 107, 79 p.

LaRivers, Ira, 1940, A preliminary synopsis of the dragonflies of Nevada: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 16, no. 3, p. 111-123.

Levine, H. R., 1957, Anatomy and taxonomy of the mature naiads of the dragonfly genus Plathemis (Family Libellulidae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 134, no. 11, 28 p.

Montgomery, B. E., 1940, The Odonata of South Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 56, no. 2, p. 283-301.

_____1967, Geographical distribution of the Odonata of the North Central States: American Association of Economic Entomologists, Proceedings of the North-Central Branch, v. 22, p. 121-129.

Musser, R. J., 1962, Dragonfly nymphs of Utah (Odonata:Anisoptera): Salt Lake City, University of Utah Biology Series, v. 12, no. 6, 71 p.

Muttkowski, R. A., 1908, Review of the dragonflies of Wisconsin: Madison, Wisconsin Natural Historical Society Bulletin, v. 6, p. 57-123.
_____1910, Catalogue of the Odonata of North America: Milwaukee Public Museum Bulletin, v. 1, article 1, 207 p.
Needham, J. G., 1901, Aquatic insects in the Adirondacks--Odonata: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Bulletin, v. 47, p. 419-540.
Needham, J. G., and Fisher, E., 1936, The nymphs of North American Libelluline dragonflies (Odonata): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 62, p. 107-116.
Needham, J. G., and Hart, C. H., 1901, The dragonflies (Odonata) of Illinois, Part I, Petaluridae, Aeschnidae, and Gomphidae: Illinois State Laboratory of Natural History Bulletin, v. 6, article 1, 94 p.
Needham, J. G., and Heywood, H. B., 1929, A handbook of the dragonflies of North America: Springfield, Ill., Baltimore, Md., C. C. Thomas, 378 p.
Needham, J. G., and Westfall, M. J., Jr., 1955, A manual of the dragonflies of North America (Anisoptera) including the Greater Antilles and the provinces of the Mexican border: Berkeley, University of California Press, 615 p.
Paulson, D. R., 1970, A list of the Odonata of Washington, with additions to and deletions from the State list: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 46, no. 3, p. 194-198.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Pruess, N. C., 1968, Checklist of Nebraska Odonata: American Association of Economic Entomologists, Proceedings of the North-Central Branch, v. 22, p. 112.
Ries, M. D., 1967, Present state of knowledge of the distribution of Odonata in Wisconsin: American Association of Economic Entomologists, Proceedings of the North-Central Branch, v. 22, p. 113-115.
_____1969, Odonata new to the Wisconsin State list: Michigan Entomologist, v. 2, p. 22-27.
Ris, F., 1930, A revision of the libelluline genus Perithemis (Odonata): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 21, 50 p.
Roback, S. S., and Westfall, M. J., Jr., 1967, New records of Odonata nymphs from the United States and Canada, with water quality data: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 93, no. 1, p. 101-124.
Smith, R. F., and Pritchard, A. E., 1956, Odonata, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 106-153.
Snodgrass, R. E., 1954, The dragonfly larva: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Miscellaneous Collections, v. 123, no. 2, 38 p.
Walker, E. M., 1912, The North American dragonflies of the genus Aeshna: University of Toronto Studies, Biological Series, v. 11, 213 p.
_____1925, The North American dragonflies of the genus Somatochlora: University of Toronto Studies, Biological Series, v. 26, 202 p.
_____1928, The nymphs of the Stylurus group of the genus Gomphus, with notes on the distribution of the group in Canada (Odonata): Canadian Entomologist, v. 60, no. 4, p. 79-88.
_____1953, The Odonata of Canada and Alaska, v. 1--General, the Zygoptera: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 292 p.

_____1958, The Odonta of Canada and Alaska, Part III, v. 2--The Anisoptera, four families: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 318 p.
Walker, E. M., and Corbet, P. S., 1975, The Odonata of Canada and Alaska, v. 3--Anisoptera, three families: Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 307 p.
Westfall, M. J., Jr., 1942, A list of the dragonflies (Odonata) taken near Brevard, North Carolina: Entomological News, v. 53, no. 4, p. 94-100; no. 5, p. 127-132.
_____1952, Additions to the list of dragonflies of Mississippi (Odonata: Anisoptera): Entomological News, v. 63, p. 200-203.
_____1953, Notes on Florida Odonata, including additions to the State list: Florida Entomologist, v. 36, p. 165-173
_____1978, Odonata, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 81-98.
White, H. B., and Morse, W. J., 1973, Odonata (dragonflies) of New Hampshire--An annotated list: New Hampshire Agricultural Experimental Station, Research Report no. 30, 46 p.
Whitehouse, F. C., 1941, British Columbia dragonflies (Odonata), with notes on distribution and habits: American Midland Naturalist, v. 26, no. 3, p. 488-557.
Williamson, E. B., 1900, Dragonflies of Indiana: Indianapolis, Department of Geology and Natural Resources of Indiana, 24th Annual Report, v. 24, p. 229-333, 1003-1011.
_____1903, The dragonflies (Odonata) of Tennessee, with a few records for Virginia and Alabama: Entomological News, v. 14, p. 221-229.
_____1917, An annotated list of the Odonta of Indiana: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 2, 12 p.
_____1932, Dragonflies collected in Missouri: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 240, 40 p.
Wilson, C. B., 1920, Dragonflies and damselflies in relation to pond fish culture, with a list of those found near Fairport, Iowa: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin, v. 36, p. 182-264.
Wright, M., 1943, A comparison of the dragonfly fauna of the lower delta of the Mississippi River with that of the marshes of the Central Gulf Coast: Ecological Monographs, v. 13, no. 4, p. 481-497.
Wright, Mike, and Peterson, Alvah, 1944, A key genera of anisopterous dragonfly nymphs of the United States and Canada (Odonata, suborder Anisoptera): Ohio Journal of Science, v. 44, no. 4, p. 151-166.

Orthoptera

Blatchley, W. L., 1920, The Orthoptera of northeastern America: Indianapolis, Nature Publishing Company, 784 p.
Cantrall, I. J., 1978, Semiaquatic Orthoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 99-103.
Chopard, L., 1938, La biologie des Orthopteres: Paris, Encyclopédie Entomologique, Series A, v. 20, 541 p.
Gunther, K. K., 1975, Das genus Neotridactylus Gunther, 1972 (Tridactylidae: Saltatoria:Insecta): Mittelungen Zoologischer Museum in Berline, v. 51, no. 2, p. 305-365.

Hebard, Morgan, 1934, The Dermaptera and Orthoptera of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, no. 20, p. 125-279.
LaRivers, Ira, 1956, Aquatic Orthoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, 154 p.
Rehn, J. A. G., and Eades, D. C., 1961, The tribe Leptysmini (Orthoptera: Acrididae:Cyrtacanthacridinae) as found in North America and Mexico: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 113, p. 81-134.
Rehn, J. A. G., and Grant, H. J., 1961, A monograph of the Orthoptera of North America (north of Mexico), v. I: Monographs of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia no. 12, p. 1-257.
Rehn, J. A. G., and Hebard, Morgan, 1915a, Studies in American Tettigoniidae (Orthoptera), Part IV--A synopsis of the species of the genus Orchelimum: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 41, p. 11-83.
_____1915b, Studies in American Tettigoniidae (Orthoptera), Part V--A synopsis of the species of the genus Conocephalus found in North America north of Mexico: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 41, p. 155-224.
Vickery, V. R., and Johnstone, D. R., 1970, Generic status of some Nemobiinae (Orthoptera:Gryllidae) in northern North America: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 63, no. 6, p. 1740-1749.

Plecoptera

Baumann, R. W., 1975, Revision of the stonefly family Nemouridae (Plecoptera)--A study of the world fauna at the generic level: Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 211, 74 p.
Baumann, R. W., and Gaufin, A. R., 1970, The Capnia projecta complex of western North America (Plecoptera:Capniidae): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 96, no. 3, p. 435-468.
Baumann, R. W., Gaufin, A. R., and Surdick, R. F., 1977, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of the Rocky Mountains: Philadelphia, Memoirs of the American Entomological Society no. 31, 208 p.
Cather, M. R., Stark, B. P., and Gaufin, A. R., 1975, Records of stoneflies (Plecoptera) from Nevada: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 35, no. 1, p. 49-50.
Claassen, P. W., 1928, Additions and corrections to the monograph on the Plecoptera of North America: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 21, p. 667-668.
_____1931, Plecoptera nymphs of America (north of Mexico): Thomas Say Foundation, v. 3, 199 p.
_____1940, A catalog of the Plecoptera of the world: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir 232, 235 p.
Frison, T. H., 1929, Fall and winter stoneflies, or Plecoptera of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 18, no. 2, p. 345-409.
_____1935, The stoneflies, or Plecoptera, of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 20, p. 281-471.

_____1937, Descriptions of Plecoptera, with special reference to Illinois species, in Ross, H. H., and Frison, T. H., studies of nearctic aquatic insects: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 21, article 3, p. 78-98.
_____1942, Studies of North American Plecoptera, with special reference to the fauna of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 22, no. 2, p. 235-356.
Gaufin, A. R., 1956, An annotated list of the stoneflies of Ohio (Plecoptera): Ohio Journal of Science, v. 56, no. 6, p. 321-324.
_____1964, The Chloroperlidae of North America: Gewaesser und Abwaesser, Eine Limnologische Schriftenreihe, v. 34/35, p. 37-49.
Gaufin, A. R., Nebeker, A. V., and Sessions, J., 1966, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of Utah: Salt Lake City, University of Utah Biological Series, v. 14, no. 1, 93 p.
Gaufin, A. R., and Ricker, W. E., 1974, Additions and corrections to a list of Montana stoneflies: Entomological News, v. 85, no. 9-10, p. 285-288.
Gaufin, A. R., Ricker, W. E., Miner, M., Milam, P., and Hays, R. A., 1972, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of Montana: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 98, no. 1, p. 1-161.
Hanson, J. F., 1942, Records and descriptions of North American Plecoptera, Part II--Notes on North American Perlodidae: American Midland Naturalist, v. 28, no. 2, p. 389-407.
_____1946, Comparative morphology and taxonomy of the Capniidae (Plecoptera): American Midland Naturalist, v. 35, no. 1, p. 193-249.
_____1968, Plecoptera, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. P1-P6.
Harden, P. H., and Mickel, C. E., 1952, The stoneflies of Minnesota (Plecoptera): Minneapolis, University of Minnesota, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 201, 84 p.
Harper, P. P., 1978, Plecoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 105-118.
Harper, P. P., and Hynes, H. B. N., 1971a, The Leuctridae of eastern Canada (Insecta:Plecoptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, no. 6, p. 915-920.
_____1971b, The Capniidae of eastern Canada (Insecta:Plecoptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, no. 6, p. 921-940.
_____1971c, The nymphs of the Taeniopterygidae of eastern Canada (Insecta: Plecoptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, no. 6, p. 941-947.
_____1971d, The nymphs of the Nemouridae of eastern Canada (Insecta: Plecoptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 49, no. 8, p. 1129-1142.
Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1970, Key to genera of Wisconsin Plecoptera (stonefly) nymphs, Ephemeroptera (mayfly) nymphs, and Trichoptera (caddisfly) larvae: Madison, Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources, Research Report no. 67, 68 p.
Hilsenhoff, W. L., and Billmyer, S. J., 1973, Perlodidae (Plecoptera) of Wisconsin: Great Lakes Entomologist, v. 6, no. 1, p. 1-14.
Hitchcock, S. W., 1968, Alloperia (Chloroperlidae:Plecoptera) of the Northeast, with a key to species: Journal of the New York Entomological Society, v. 76, p. 39-46.

_____1969, Plecoptera from high altitudes and a new species of Leuctra (Leuctridae): Entomological News, v. 80, no. 12, p. 311-316.
_____1974, Guide to the insects of Connecticut, Part VII--The Plecoptera or stoneflies of Connecticut: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin 107, 262 p.
Hoppe, G. N., 1938, Plecoptera of Washington: Seattle, University of Washington Publication in Biology, v. 4, p. 139-174.
Hynes, H. B. N., 1941, The taxonomy and ecology of the nymphs of British Plecoptera, with notes on the adults and eggs: Transactions of the Entomological Society of London, v. 91, p. 459-557.
_____1976, Biology of Plecoptera: Annual Review of Entomology, v. 21, p. 135-153.
_____1977, A key to the adults and nymphs of the British stoneflies (Plecoptera), with notes on their ecology and distribution: Ambleside, Westmorland, Freshwater Biological Association Scientific Publication no. 17, 90 p.
Illies, Joachim, 1962, Die Unterordnungen, Familien und Gattungen der Plecoptera: Verhandlungen des XI Internationale Kongresser Entomologische Wien, v. 3, p. 263-267.
_____1965, Phylogeny and zoogeography of the Plecoptera: Annual Review of Entomology, v. 10, p. 117-140.
_____1966, Katalog der rezenten Plecoptera: Das Tierreich, v. 82, 631 p.
Jewett, S. G., Jr., 1954, New stoneflies (Plecoptera) from western North America: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 11, p. 543-549.
_____1956, Plecoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 155-181.
_____1959, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of the Pacific Northwest: Corvallis, Oregon State College Studies in Entomology no. 3, 95 p.
_____1960, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of California: California Insect Survey Bulletin, v. 6, p. 125-177.
_____1962, New stoneflies and records from the Pacific Coast of the United States (Plecoptera): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 38, p. 15-20.
_____1963, A stonefly aquatic in the adult stage: Science, v. 139, no. 3554, p. 484-485.
Knight, A. W., Nebeker, A. V., and Gaufin, A. R., 1965, Further descriptions of the eggs of Plecoptera of western United States: Entomological News, v. 76, no. 9, p. 233-239.
Lehmkuhl, D. M., 1971, Stoneflies (Plecoptera:Nemouridae) from temporary lentic habitats in Oregon: American Midland Naturalist, v. 85, no. 2, p. 514-515.
McCaskill, V. H., and Prins, R., 1968, Stoneflies (Plecoptera) of northwestern South Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 84, no. 4, p. 448-454.
Nebeker, A. V., and Gaufin, A. R., 1966, The Capnia columbiana complex of North America (Capniidae:Plecoptera): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 91, no. 4, p. 467-487.
_____1967, Geographic and seasonal distribution of the family Capniidae of western North America (Plecoptera): Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 40, no. 3, p. 415-421.
Needham, J. G., and Claassen, P. W., 1925, A monograph of the Plecoptera or stoneflies of America north of Mexico: Thomas Say Foundation, v. 2, 397 p. [Reprinted 1970, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]

Needham, J. G., and Smith, L. W., 1916, The stoneflies of the genus Peltoperla: Canadian Entomologist, v. 48, p. 80-88.
Nelson, C. H., and Hanson, J. F., 1971, Contribution to the anatomy and phylogeny of the family Pteronarcidae (Plecoptera): Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 97, no. 1, p. 123-200.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.) New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Ricker, W. E., 1943, Stoneflies of southwestern British Columbia: Bloomington, Indiana University Publications in Science Series no. 12, 145 p.
_____1944, Some Plecoptera from the far North: Canadian Entomologist, v. 76, no. 9, p. 174-185.
_____1945, A first list of Indiana stoneflies (Plecoptera): Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 54, p. 225-230.
_____1946, Some prairie stoneflies (Plecoptera): Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, v. 26, no. 1, p. 3-8.
_____1947, Stoneflies of the Maritime Provinces and Newfoundland: Transactions of the Royal Canadian Institute, v. 26, no. 2, p. 401-417.
_____1952, Systematic studies in Plecoptera: Bloomington, Indiana University Publications in Science Series, no. 18, 200 p.
_____1959, Plecoptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 941-957.
_____1965, New records and descriptions of Plecoptera (Class Insecta): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 22, p. 475-501.
Ricker, W. E., Malouin, R., Harper, P., and Ross, H. H., 1968, Distribution of Quebec stoneflies (Plecoptera): Naturaliste Canadien, v. 95, no. 5, p. 1085-1123.
Ricker, W. E., and Ross, H. H., 1968, North American species of Taeniopteryx (Plecoptera, Insecta): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Journal, v. 25, no. 7, p. 1423-1439.
_____1969, The genus Zealeuctra and its position in the family Leuctridae (Plecoptera, Insecta): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 47, no. 6, p. 1113-1127.
_____1975, Synopsis of the Brachypterinae (Insecta:Plecoptera: Taeniopterygidae): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 53, no. 2, p. 132-153.
Ricker, W. E., and Scudder, G. G. E., 1975, An annotated checklist of the Plecoptera (insecta) of British Columbia: Syesis, v. 8, p. 333-348.
Ross, H. H., and Ricker, W. E., 1971, The classification, evolution, and dispersal of the winter stonefly, genus Allocapnia: Urbana, University of Illinois Biological Monographs, v. 45, 166 p.
Stark, B. P., and Gaufin, A. R., 1974, The species of Calineuria and Doroneuria (Plecoptera:Perlidae): Great Basin Naturalist, v. 34, no. 2, p. 83-93.
_____1976, The Nearctic genera of Perlidae (Plecoptera): College Park, Md., Entomological Society of America Miscellaneous Publications, v. 10, no. 1, 77 p.
Stark, B. P., Oblad, B. R., and Gaufin, A. R., 1973, An annotated list of the stoneflies (Plecoptera) of Colorado, Part 1: Entomological News, v. 84, no. 9, p. 269-277; no. 10, p. 301-305.

Stark, B. P., and Stewart, K. W., 1973, Distribution of stoneflies (Plecoptera) in Oklahoma: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 46, no. 4, p. 563-577.
Stark, B. P., Wolff, T. A., and Gaufin, A. R., 1975, New records of stoneflies (Plecoptera) from New Mexico: Great Basin Naturalist, v. 35, no. 1, p. 97-99.
Stewart, K. W., Baumann, R. W., and Stark, B. P., 1974, The distribution and past dispersal of southwestern United States Plecoptera: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 99, no. 4, p. 507-546.
Surdick, R. F., and Kim, K. C., 1976, Stoneflies (Plecoptera) of Pennsylvania, a synopsis: University Park, Pennsylvania State University, Bulletin of the Agricultural Experiment Station no. 808, 73 p.
Szczytko, S. W., and Stewart, K. W., 1977, The stoneflies (Plecoptera) of Texas: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society, v. 103, no. 2, p. 327-378.
_____1979, The genus Isoperla (Plecoptera) of western North America--Holomorphology and systematics, and a new stonefly genus Cascadoperla: Philadelphia, Memoirs of the American Entomological Society no. 32, 120 p.
Wu, C. F., 1923, Morphology, anatomy and ethology of Nemoura: Bulletin of the Lloyd Library of Botany, Natural History, Pharmacy, and Materia Medica no. 23 (Entomological Series no. 3), 81 p.
Zwick, P., 1971, Notes on the genus Perlinella and a generic synonymy in North American Perlidae (Plecoptera): Florida Entomologist, v. 54, no. 14, p. 315-320.
_____1973, Insecta:Plecoptera--Phylogenetischer system und katalog: Das Tierreich, v. 94, 465 p.

Trichoptera

Anderson, N. H., 1976, The distribution and biology of the Oregon Trichoptera: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 134, 157 p.
Betten, Cornelius, 1934, The caddisflies or Trichoptera of New York State: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 292, 576 p.
_____1950, The genus Pycnopsyche (Trichoptera): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 43, no. 4, p. 508-522.
Blickle, R. L., 1962, Hydroptilidae (Trichoptera) of Florida: Florida Entomologist, v. 45, no. 3, p. 153-155.
_____1964, Hydroptilidae (Trichoptera) of Maine: Entomological News, v. 75, no. 6, p. 159-162.
Blickle, R. L., and Morse, W. J., 1966, The caddisflies (Trichoptera) of Maine, excepting the family Hydroptilidae: Maine Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin T-24, p. 1-12.
Denning, D. G., 1943, The hydropsychidae of Minnesota (Trichoptera): Entomologica Americana, v. 23, no. 2, p. 101-171.
_____1950, Order Trichoptera, the caddisflies, in Wray, D. L., ed., The insects of North Carolina (2d supp.): Raleigh, North Carolina Department of Agriculture, p. 12-23.
_____1956, Trichoptera, in Usinger, R. L., ed., Aquatic insects of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, p. 237-270.

_____1958, The genus Farula (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 51, no. 6, p. 531-535.
_____1964, The genus Homophylax (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 57, no. 2, p. 253-260.
_____1970, The genus Pscyhoglypha (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 102, no. 1, p. 15-30.
_____1975, New species of Trichoptera from western North America: Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 51, no. 4, p. 318-326.
Denning, D. G., and Blickle, R. L., 1972, A review of the genus Ochrotrichia (Trichoptera:Hydroptilidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 65, no. 1, p. 141-151.
Edwards, S. W., 1966, An annotated list of the Trichoptera of middle and west Tennessee: Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 41, no. 4, p. 116-128.
_____1973, Texas caddisflies: The Texas Journal of Science, v. 24, no. 4, p. 491-516.
Elkins, W. A., 1936, The immature stages of some Minnesota Trichoptera: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 29, p. 656-681.
Etnier, D. A., 1965, An annotated list of the Trichoptera of Minnesota, with a description of a new species: Entomological News, v. 76, no. 6, p. 141-152.
Fischer, F. C. J., 1960-73, Trichopterorum Catalogus: Nederlandsche Entomologische Vereeniging.
Flint, O. S., Jr., 1960, Taxonomy and biology of limnephelid larvae (Trichoptera), with special reference to species in eastern United States: Antomologica Americana, v. 40, p. 1-117.
_____1961, The immature stages of the Arctopsychinae occurring in eastern North America (Trichoptera:Hydropsychidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 54, no. 1, p. 5-11.
_____1963, Studies of neotropical caddisflies, Part I--Rhyacophilidae and Glossosomatidae (Trichoptera): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 114, no. 3473, p. 453-478.
_____1964a, The caddisflies (Trichoptera) of Puerto Rico: Rio Piedras, University of Puerto Rico Agricultural Experimental Station Technical Paper no. 40, 80 p.
_____1964b, Notes on some nearctic Psychomyiidae, with special reference to their larvae (Trichoptera): Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum, v. 115, no. 3491, p. 467-481.
_____1965, The genus Neohermes (Megaloptera:Corydalidae): Psyche, v. 72, p. 255-263.
_____1970, Studies of neotropical caddisflies, Part X--Leucotrichia and related genera from North and Central America (Trichoptera: Hydroptilidae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 60, p. 1-64.
_____1974a, Studies of neotropical caddisflies, Part XVII--The genus Smicridea from North and Central America (Trichoptera:Hydropsychidae): Washington, D.C., Smithsonian Institution Press, Smithsonian Contributions to Zoology no. 167, 65 p.
_____1974b, The genus Culoptila Mosely in the United States, with two new combinations (Trichoptera:Glossosomatidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 76, no. 3, 284 p.

Gordon, A. E., 1974, A synopsis and phylogenetic outline of the nearctic members of Cheumatopsyche: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 126, no. 9, p. 117-160.
Hickin, N. E., 1968, Caddis larvae--Larvae of the British Trichoptera: Rutherford, N.J., Fairleigh Dickinson University Press, 480 p.
Hiley, P. D., 1970, A key to the larvae of four distinct limnephilids--Drusus annulatus Stephens, Ecclisopteryx guttulata (Pictet), Apatania muliebris McLachlan and Ironoquia dubia Stephens (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): Entomologist's Gazette, v. 21, no. 4, p. 289-294.
Hilsenhoff, W. L., 1970, Key to genera of Wisconsin Plecoptera (stonefly) nymphs, Ephemeroptera (mayfly) nymphs, and Trichoptera (caddisfly) larvae: Madison, Wisconsin Department of Natural Resources Resource Report, v. 67, 68 p.
Hyland, Kerwin, Jr., 1948, New records of Pennsylvania caddisflies (Trichoptera): Entomological News, v. 59, no. 2, p. 38-40.
Knowlton, G. F., and Harmston, F. C., 1938, Notes on Utah Plecoptera and Trichoptera: Entomological News, v. 49, no. 10, p. 284-286.
Leonard, J. W., and Leonard, F. A., 1949, Noteworthy records of caddisflies from Michigan, with descriptions of a new species: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology, v. 520, p. 1-8.
Lloyd, J. T., 1921, Biology of the North American caddisfly larvae: Bulletin of the Lloyd Library of Botany, Pharmacy and Materia Media no. 21 (Entomological Series no. 1), p. 1-124.
Malicky, H., 1973, Trichoptera (Köcherfliegen): Handbook of Zoology, v. 4, p. 1-114.
Merrill, D., and Wiggins, G. B., 1971, The larva and pupa of the caddisfly genus Setodes in North America (Trichoptera:Leptoceridae): University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Sciences Occasional Papers, v. 19, p. 1-12.
Milne, M. J., 1939, Immature North American Trichoptera: Psyche, v. 46, no. 1, p. 9-19.
Morse, J. C., 1972, The genus Nyctiophylax in North America: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 45, no. 2, p. 172-181.
_____1975, A phylogeny and revision of the caddisfly genus Ceraclea (Trichoptera, Leptoceridae): American Entomological Institute Contributions, v. 11, no. 2, p. 1-97.
Morse, W. J., and Blickle, R. L., 1953, A checklist of the Trichoptera (caddisflies) of New Hampshire: Entomological News, v. 64, no. 3, p. 68-73; no. 4, p. 97-102.
_____1957, Additions and corrections to the list of New Hampshire Trichoptera: Entomological News, v. 68, no. 5, p. 127-130.
Newell, R. L., and Potter, D. S., 1973, Distribution of some Montana caddisflies (Trichoptera): Missoula, Proceedings of the Montana Academy of Sciences, v. 33, p. 12-21.
Nimmo, A. P., 1971, The adult Rhyacophilidae and Limnephilidae (Trichoptera) of Alberta and eastern British Columbia and their post-glacial origin: Quaestiones Entomologicae, v. 7, no. 1, 234 p.
_____1974, The adult Trichoptera (Insecta) of Alberta and eastern British Columbia, and their post-glacial origins, Part II--The families Glossosomatidae and Philopotamidae: Quaestiones Entomologicae, v. 10, no. 4, p. 315-349.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.

Peterson, Alvah, 1951, Larvae of insects, an introduction to nearctic species, Part II--Coleoptera, Diptera, Neuroptera, Siphonaptera, Mecoptera, Trichoptera: Ann Arbor, Mich., Edwards Brothers, 416 p.

Resh, V. H., 1975, A distributional study of the caddisflies of Kentucky: Lexington, Transactions of the Kentucky Academy of Science, v. 36, no. 1-2, p. 6-16.

_____1976, The biology and immature stages of the caddisfly genus Ceraclea in eastern North America (Trichoptera:Leptoceridae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 69, no. 6, p. 1039-1061.

Ross, H. H., 1941, Descriptions and records of North American Trichoptera: Philadelphia, Transactions of the American Entomological Society v. 67, p. 35-126.

_____1944, The caddisflies, or Trichoptera, of Illinois: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 23, no. 1, p. 1-326. [Reprinted, 1972, Los Angeles, Entomological Reprint Specialists.]

_____1946, A review of the nearctic Lepidostomatidae (Trichoptera): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 39, no. 2, p. 265-291.

_____1950, Synoptic notes on some nearctic limnephilid caddisflies (Trichoptera, Limnephilidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 43, p. 410-429.

_____1956, Evolution and classification of the mountain caddisflies: Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 213 p.

_____1959, Trichoptera, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1024-1049.

Ross, H. H., and Merkley, D. R., 1950, The genus Tinodes in North America: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 23, no. 2, p. 64-67.

_____1952, An annotated key to the nearctic males of Limnephilus (Trichoptera: Limnephilidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 47, p. 435-455.

Ross, H. H., and Scott, D. C., 1974, A review of the caddisfly genus Agrodes, with descriptions of new species (Trichoptera:Sericostomatidae): Journal of the Georgia Entomological Society, v. 9, no. 3, p. 147-155.

Ross, H. H., and Spencer, G. J., 1952, A preliminary list of the Trichoptera of British Columbia: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of British Columbia, v. 48, p. 43-51.

Ross, H. H., and Wallace, J. B., 1974, The North American genera of the family Sericostomatidae (Trichoptera): Journal of the Georgia Entomological Society, v. 9, no. 1, p. 42-48.

Sattler, Werner, 1963, Über den Körperbau, die ökologie und ethologie der larvae und puppe von Macronema Pict. (Hydropsychidae): Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 59, no. 1, p. 26-60.

Schmid, F., 1968, La famille des Arctopsychides (Trichoptera): Entomological Society of Quebec Memoirs, no. 1, p. 1-84.

_____1970, Le genre Rhyacophila et la famille des Rhyacophilidae (Trichoptera): Entomological Society of Canada Memoirs, v. 66, p. 1-230.

Schuster, G. A., 1978, A manual for the identification of the larvae of the genera Hydropsyche Pictet and Symphitopsyche Ulmer in eastern and central North America (Trichoptera:Hydropsychidae): U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Office of Research and Development, 129 p.

Sherberger, F. F., and Wallace, J. B., 1971, Larvae of the southeastern species of Molanna: Journal of the Kansas Entomological Society, v. 44, no. 2, p. 217-224.

Smith, S. D., 1965, Distribution and biological records of Idaho caddisflies (Trichoptera): Entomological News, v. 76, no. 9, p. 242-245.

_____1968a, The Arctopsychinae of Idaho (Trichoptera:Hydropsychidae): Pan-Pacific Entomologist, v. 44, no. 2, p. 102-112.

_____1968b, The Rhyacophila of the Salmon River drainage of Idaho [USA], with special reference to larvae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 61, no. 3, p. 655-674.

Unzicker, J. D., Aggus, L., and Warren, L. O., 1970, A preliminary list of the Arkansas Trichoptera: Journal of the Georgia Entomological Society, v. 5, no. 3, p. 167-174.

Vorhies, C. T., 1909, Studies on the Trichoptera of Wisconsin: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 16, pt. 1, no. 6, p. 647-738.

Wallace, J. B., 1968, Trichoptera, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. S1-S19.

Wallace, J. B., and Ross, H. H., 1971, Pseudogoerinae--A new subfamily of Odontoceridae (Trichoptera): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 64, no. 4, p. 890-894.

Wiggins, G. B., 1954, The caddisfly genus Beraea in North America (Trichoptera): University of Torronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Contribution, no. 39, p. 1-13.

_____1956, A revision of the North American caddisfly genus Banksiola (Trichoptera:Phryganeidae): University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Contribution, no. 43, p. 1-12.

_____1960, A preliminary systematic study of the North American larvae of the caddisflies, family Phryganeidae (Trichoptera): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 38, no. 6, p. 1153-1170.

_____1962, A new subfamily of phryganeid caddisflies from western North America (Trichoptera:Phryganeidae): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 40, no. 5, p. 879-891.

_____1965, Additions and revisions to the genera of North American caddisflies of the family Brachycentridae, with special reference to the larval stages (Trichoptera): Canadian Entomologist, v. 97, p. 1089-1106.

_____1973a, New systematic data for the North American caddisfly genera Lepania, Goeracea and Goerita (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Contribution, no. 91, p. 1-33.

_____1973b, Contributions to the systematics of the caddisfly family Limnephilidae (Trichoptera), Part I: University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Division Contribution, no. 94, p. 1-32.

_____1975, Contributions to the systematics of the caddisfly family Limnephilidae (Trichoptera), Part II: Canadian Entomologist, v. 107, p. 325-336.

_____1976, Contributions to the systematics of the caddisfly family Limnephilidae (Trichoptera), Part III--The genus Goereilla: International Symposium on Trichoptera, 1st, Lunz Am See, Austria [The Hague], Proceedings, p. 7-19.

_____1977, Larvae of the North American caddisfly genera (Trichoptera): Toronto, University of Toronto Press, 401 p.

_____1978, Trichoptera, in Merritt, R. W., and Cummins, K. W., eds., An introduction to the aquatic insects of North America: Dubuque, Iowa, Kendall/Hunt Publishing Co., p. 147-185.

Wiggins, G. B., and Anderson, N. H., 1968, Contributions to the systematics of the caddisfly genera Pseudostenophylax and Philocasca, with special reference to the immature stages (Trichoptera:Limnephilidae): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 46, no. 1, p. 61-75.

Yamamoto, T., and Ross, H. H., 1966, A phylogenetic outline of the caddisfly genus Mystacides (Trichoptera:Leptoceridae): Canadian Entomologist, v. 98, p. 627-632.

Yamamoto, T., and Wiggins, G. B., 1964, A comparative study of the North American species in the caddisfly genus Mystacides (Trichoptera: Leptoceridae): Canadian Journal of Zoology, v. 42, p. 1105-1126.

ACARI

Arndt, W., and Viets, K., 1938, Die biologischen (parasitologischen) Bezichungen zwischen Arachnoideen and Spongien: Zeitschrift fur Parasitenkunde, v. 10, no. 1, p. 67-93.

Baker, E. W., and Wharton, G. W., 1952, An introduction to acarology: New York, Macmillan, 465 p.

Balogh, J., 1972, The Oribatid genera of the world: Budapest, Akademiai Kiado, 188 p.

Banks, Nathan, 1907, A catalogue of the Acarina or mites of the United States: Smithsonian Institution, Proceedings of the United States National Museum Proceedings, v. 32, no. 1553, p. 595-625.

Barr, D. W., 1973, Methods for the collection, preservation, and study of water mites (Acari:Parasitengona): University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Sciences Occasional Papers, 28 p.

Bergstrom, D. W., 1953, Hydracarina from the Rocky Mountain Region: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 72, no. 2, p. 157-162.

Cook, D. R., 1953, Marshallothyas, a new genus belonging to the subfamily Thyasinae (Acarinae:Hydracarina): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 55, no. 6, p. 305-308.

_____1954a, Preliminary list of the Arrenuri of Michigan, Part I--The subgenus Arrenurus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, no. 1, p. 39-58.

_____1954b, Preliminary list of the Arrenuri of Michigan, Part II--The subgenus Megaluracarus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, no. 4, p. 367-380.

_____1955a, A new species of Athienemannia from western North America: Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 57, no. 6, p. 306-308.

_____1955b, Two new genera of Hydracarina from a spring in northern Michigan: American Midland Naturalist, v. 53, no. 2, p. 412-418.

_____1955c, Preliminary list of the Arrenuri of Michigan, Part III--The subgenera Micruracarus and Truncaturus: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 74, no. 1, p. 60-67.

_____1955d, Preliminary studies of the Hydracarina of Michigan--The Subfamily Foerliinae (Acarina:Pionidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 48, no. 4, p. 299-307.

_____1959, Studies on the Thyasinae of North America (Acarina:Hydryphantidae): American Midland Naturalist, v. 62, no. 2, p. 402-428.

_____1961a, New species of Bandakia, Wettina, and Athienemannis from Michigan (Acarina, Hydracarina): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 63, no. 4, p. 262-268.
_____1961b, Water mites of the genus Feltria in central and western United States (Acarina:Feltriidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 54, no. 1, p. 118-133.
_____1963a, Studies on the phreaticolous water mites of North America--The genera Neomamersa Lundblad and Kawamuracarus Uchida: American Midland Naturalist, v. 70, no. 2, p. 300-308.
_____1963b, Studies on the phreaticolous water mites of North America--The Family Neoacaridae: College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 56, no. 4, p. 481-487.
_____1963c, Studies on the phreaticolous water mites of North America--The genus Feltria (Acarina:Feltriidae): College Park, Md., Annals of the Entomological Society of America, v. 56, no. 4, p. 488-500.
_____1963d, Omartacaridae, a new family of water mites from the ground waters of North America: Entomological News, v. 74, no. 2, p. 37-43.
_____1968a, Water mites of the genus Stygomomonia in North America (Acarina: Momoniidae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 70, no. 3, p. 210-224.
_____1968b, New species of Neoacarus Halbert and Volsellacarus Cook from North America (Acarina:Neoacaridae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of Washington, v. 70, p. 67-74.
_____1969, New studies on the water mite genera Neomamersa and Kawamuracarus (Acarina, Limnesiidae) from North America: American Midland Naturalist, v. 81, no. 1, p. 29-38.
_____1970a, North American species of the genus Hydrochoreutes (Acarina: Pioinidae): Michigan Entomologist, v. 3, no. 4, p. 108-117.
_____1970b, New or incompletely known species of Feltria from North America: Michigan Entomologist, v. 3, no. 3, p. 66-83.
_____1974a, North American species of the genus Axonopsis (Acarina:Aturidae: Axonopsinae): The Great Lakes Entomologist, v. 7, no. 3, p. 55-79.
_____1974b, Water mite genera and subgenera: Ann Arbor, American Entomological Institute Memoir no. 21, 860 p.
_____1975, North American species of the genus Brachypoda (Acarina:Aturidae: Axonopsinae): Proceedings of the Entomological Society of America, v. 77, no. 3, p. 278-289.
_____1975, New North American species of Arrenurus, mostly from Florida, USA (Acarina:Arrenuridae): American Entomological Institute Contribution, v. 11, no. 4, p 1-58.
_____1976a, North American species of the genus Koenikea (Acarina: Unionicolidae): American Entomological Institute Contribution, v. 11, no. 4, p. 59-100.
_____1976b, North American species of the genus Mideopsis (Acarina: Mideopsidae): American Entomological Institute Contribution, v. 11, no. 4, p. 101-148.
Cook, D. R., and Mitchell, R. D., 1952, Notes on collecting water mites: Turtox News, v. 30, no. 8, p. 122-125.
Crowell, R. M., 1960, The taxonomy, distribution and developmental stages of Ohio water mites: Ohio Biological Survey Bulletin, v. 1, no. 2, p. 1-77.
_____1961, Catalogue of the distribution and ecological relationships of North American Hydracarina: Canadian Entomologist, v. 93, no. 5, p. 321-359.

Elton, C.S., 1923, On the colours of water mites: Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London, p. 1231-1239.
Habeeb, Herbert, 1950, Three interesting water mites: Naturaliste Canadien, v. 77, no. 3/4, p. 112-117.
_____1953a, North American Hydrachnellae, Acari, Part I-V: Leaflets of Acadian Biology no. 1, p. 1-16.
_____1953b, North American Hydrachnellae, Acari, Part IV: Three new species of water mites belonging to the genus Aturus: Naturaliste Canadien, v. 80, p. 274-276.
Hoff, C. C., 1944, A preliminary study of the Hydracarina of Reelfoot Lake, Tennessee: Nashville, Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 19, no. 1, p. 45-69.
Husmann, S., and Teschner, D., 1970, Okologie, morphologie, and verbreitungsgeschichte subterraner Wassermilben (Limnohalacaridae) aus Schweden: Archiv fur Hydrobiologie, v. 67, no. 2, p. 242-267.
Imamura, T., 1957, Subterranean water mites of the middle and southern Japan: Archiv fur Hydrobiologie, v. 53, no. 3, p. 350-391.
_____1959, Checklist of the troglobiontic Trombidiidae, Porohalacaridae and Hydrachnellae of Japan: Biogeographical Society of Japan Bulletin, v. 21, p. 63-66.
_____1970, Some psammobiotic water mites of Lake Biwa: Annotations Zoological Japonenses, v. 43, no. 4, p. 200-206.
Koenike, F., 1912, A revision of my "Nordamerikanische Hydrachniden": Canadian Institute Transactions, v. 9, p. 281-296.
Krantz, G. W., 1975, A manual of acarology: Corvallis, Oregon State University Book Stores, Inc., 335 p.
Lavers, C. H., Jr., 1945, The species of Arrenurus of the State of Washington: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 64, no. 3, p. 228-264.
Lundblad, O., 1935, Die nordamerikanischen Arten der Gattung Hydrachna: Arkiv fur Zoologie, v. 28, p. 1-44.
_____1941, Eine Ubersicht des Hydrachnellensystems and der bis jetzt bekannten Verbreitung der Gattungen dieser Gruppe: Uppsala, Zoologiska Bidrag, v. 20, p. 359-379.
Marshall, Ruth, 1908, The Arrhenuri of the United States: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 28, p. 85-140.
_____1914, Some new American water mites: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 17, pt. 2, p. 1300-1304.
_____1924a, Arrhenuri from Washington and Alaska: Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters Transactions, v. 21, p. 214-218.
_____1924b, Water mites of Alaska and the Canadian Northwest: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 43, p. 236-255.
_____1926, Water mites of the Okoboji region: Iowa City, The University of Iowa Studies in Natural History, v. 11, no. 9, p. 28-35.
_____1927a, Water mites from Cuba: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 46, no. 1, p. 60-61.
_____1927b, Hydracarina of the Douglas Lake region: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 46, no. 4, p. 268-285.
_____1928, A new species of water mite from thermal springs: Psyche, v. 35, p. 92-95.
_____1929a, The water mites of Lake Wawasee: Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 38, p. 315-320.

_____1929b, Canadian Hydracarina: University of Toronto, Studies in Biology Series, v. 33, p. 57-93.
_____1930, Hydracarina from Glacier National Park: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 49, p. 342-345.
_____1931, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part I--The red mites: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 26, p. 311-319.
_____1932, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part II: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 27, p. 339-358.
_____1933, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part III: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 28, p. 37-61.
_____1935, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part IV: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 29, p. 273-297.
_____1937, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part V: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 30, p. 225-252.
_____1940a, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, Part VI: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 32, p. 135-165.
_____1940b, The water mite genus Tyrellia: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 32, p. 383-389.
_____1943a, Hydracarina from California, Part I: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, no. 3, p. 306-324.
_____1943b, Hydracarina from California, Part II: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 62, no. 4, p. 404-415.
_____1944, Preliminary list of the Hydracarina of Wisconsin, revision of Part I: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 36, p. 349-373.
Mitchell, R. D., 1953, A new species of Lundbladia and remarks on the Family Hydryphantidae (water mites): American Midland Naturalist, v. 49, p. 159-170.
_____1954a, Water mites of the genus Arturus (Family Axonopsidae): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 73, no. 4, p. 350-367.
_____1954b, Checklist of North American water mites: Fieldiana--Zoology, v. 35, p. 29-70.
_____1959, A new water mite of the genus Stygomomonia (Family Momoniidae): Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 78, p. 154-157.
_____1963, A new water mite of the Family Thermacaridae from hot springs: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 82, p. 230-233.
Mitchell, R. D., and Cook, D. R., 1952, The preservation and mounting of water mites: Turtox News, v. 30, no. 9, p. 169-172.
Newell, I. M., 1945, Hydrozetes Berlese (Acari, Oribatoidea)--The occurrence of the genus in North America and the phenomenon of levitation: New Haven, Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Sciences, v. 36, p. 253-268.
_____1947, A systematic and ecological study of the Halacaridae of eastern North America: Bingham Oceanographic Collection Bulletin, v. 10, 232 p.
_____1959, Acari, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1080-1116.

Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Prasad, Vikram, and Cook, D. R., 1972, The taxonomy of water mite larvae: Ann Arbor, American Entomological Institute Memoir no. 18, 326 p.
Smith, I. M., 1972, A review of the water mite genus Nautarachna (Acari: Parasitengona:Pionidae): University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Contribution no. 86, 17 p.
_____1979, A review of water mites of the family Anisitsiellidae (Prostigmata:Lebertioidea) from North America: Canadian Entomologist, v. 111, no. 5, p. 529-550.
Soar, C. D., and Williamson, W., 1925-1929, British Hydracarina: London, Ray Society, 3 v.
Szalay, L., 1949, Über die Hydracarinen der unterirdischen Gewasser: Hydrobiologia, v. 2, no. 2, p. 141-179.
Viets, K., 1936, Wassermilben oder Hydracarina: Die Tierwelt Deutschlands, v. 31 and v. 32, p. 1-574.
_____1938, Über die verscheidenen Biotope der Wassermilben, besonders über solche mit anormalen Lebensbedingungen und über einige neue Wassermilben aus Thermalgewassern: Verhundlungen der Internationalen Vereinigung für theoretische und angewandte Limnologie, v. 8, no. 3, p. 209-224.
_____1950, Porohalacaridae (Acari) aus der grundwasserfauna des Maingebietes: Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 43, no. 2, p. 247-257.
_____1955a, In subterranen Gewässern Deutschlands lebende Wassermilben (Hydrachnellae, Porohalacaridae und Stygothrombiidae): Archiv für Hydrobiologie, v. 50, p. 33-63.
_____1955b, Die Milben des Süsswassers and des Meeres, Teil I--Bibliographie: Jena, Germany, 476 p.
_____1956, Die Milben des Süsswassers and des Meeres. Hydrachnellae et Halacaridae (Acari). Teil II and III, Katalog und Nomenklatur: Jena, Germany, Gustav Fischer, 870 p.
Wolcott, R. H., 1900, New genera and species of North American Hydrachnidae: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 21, p. 177-200.
_____1905, A review of the genera of the water mites: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 26, p. 161-243.
Young, W. C., 1968, New species of Midea, Piona, and Sperchon (Hydracarina) from Colorado: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 87, no. 2, p. 165-177.
_____1969, Ecological distribution of Hydracarina in north central Colorado: American Midland Naturalist, v. 82, no. 2, p. 367-401.

MOLLUSCA

Amos, M. H., 1966, Commercial clams of the North American Pacific Coast: U.S. Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Circular no. 237, 18 p.
Anonymous, 1968, A guide for the identification of the snail intermediate hosts of schistosomiasis in the Americas: World Health Organization (WHO), Pan American Health Organization Scientific Publication no. 168, 122 p.
Athearn, H. D., 1964, Three new unionids from Alabama and Florida and a note on Lampsilis jonesi: Nautilus, v. 77, no. 4, p. 134-139.
_____1967, Changes and reductions in our freshwater molluscan populations: 1967 Annual Report, American Malacological Union, p. 44-45.

Athearn, H. D., and Clark, A. H., Jr., 1962, The freshwater mussels of Nova Scotia: National Museum of Canada Bulletin no. 183, p. 11-41. [Contributions in Zoology, 1960-1961.]

Baker, F. C., 1898, The Mollusca of the Chicago area--The Pelecypoda: Chicago Academy of Sciences Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 3, p. 1-130.

_____1911, The Lymnaeidae of North and Middle America: Chicago Academy of Sciences Special Publication, v. 3, 539 p.

_____1928, The fresh water Mollusca of Wisconsin, Part I--Gastropoda and Part II--Pelecypoda: Madison, Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, no. 70, pt. I, p. 1-105; pt. II, p. 1-495.

_____1945, The molluscan family Planorbidae: Urbana, University of Illinois Press, 530 p.

Basch, P. F., 1959a, The anatomy of Laevapex fuscus, a freshwater limpet (Gastropoda:Pulmonata): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publication of the Museum of Zoology no. 108, 56 p.

_____1959b, Status of the genus Gundlachia (Pulmonata:Ancylidae): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 602, p. 1-9.

_____1963, A review of the recent freshwater limpet snails of North America (Mollusca:Pulmonata): Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 129, no. 8, p. 402-461.

Beetle, D. E., 1961, A checklist of Wyoming recent Mollusca: Sterikiana, v. 3, p. 1-9.

Berry, E. G., The Amnicolidae of Michigan--Distribution, ecology, and taxonomy: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publication of the Museum of Zoology no. 57, 68 p.

Bequaert, J. C., and Miller, W. B., 1973, The mollusks of the arid Southwest, with an Arizona checklist: Tucson, University of Arizona Press, 271 p.

Bickel, D., 1967, Preliminary checklist of recent and Pleistocene Mollusca of Kentucky: Sterkiana, v. 28, p. 7-20.

_____1968, Checklist of the Mollusca of Tennessee: Sterkiana, v. 31, p. 15-39.

_____1969, Distribution notes on western and southwestern snails: Sterkiana, v. 36, p. 21.

Branson, B. A., 1970, Checklist and distribution of Kentucky aquatic gastropods: Kentucky Fisheries Bulletin no. 54, 20 p.

Branson, B. A., and Batch, D. L., 1971, Annotated distribution records for Kentucky Mollusca: Sterkiana, v. 43, p. 1-9.

Brooks, S. T., and Herrington, H. B., 1944, The Sphaeriidae, a preliminary survey: Nautilus, v. 57, no. 3, p. 93-97.

Bryce, G. W., 1970, Rediscovery of the Limpet, Acroloxus coloradensis (Basommatophora:Acroloxidae), in Colorado: Nautilus, v. 83, no. 3, p. 105-108.

Burch, J. B., 1972, Freshwater sphaeriacean clams (Mollusca:Pelecypoda) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 3, 31 p.

_____1973, Freshwater unionacean clams (Mollusca:Pelecypoda) of North America: Washington, D.C., U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Biota of Freshwater Ecosystems Identification Manual no. 11, 176 p.

_____1975a, Freshwater sphaeriacean clams (Mollusca:Pelecypoda) of North America: Hamburg, Mich., Malacological Publications, 96 p.

_____1975b, Freshwater unionacean clams (Mollusca:Pelecypoda) of North America: Hamburg, Mich., Malacological Publications, 204 p.

Call, R. E., 1895, A study of the Unionidae of Arkansas, with incidental reference to their distribution in the Mississippi Valley: St. Louis, Transactions of the Academy of Science, v. 7, no. 1, 64 p.
_____1900, A descriptive illustrated catalogue of the Mollusca of Indiana: Indiana Department of Geology and Natural Resources, 24th Annual Report, p. 337-535, 1013-1017.
Chamberlain, R. V., and Jones, D. T., 1929, A descriptive catalogue of the Mollusca of Utah: Salt Lake, Bulletin of the University of Utah, v. 19, no. 4, 203 p.
Cheatum, E. P., and Fullington, R. W., 1971, The aquatic and land Mollusca of Texas--Keys to the families of the recent land and freshwater snails of Texas: Dallas Museum of Natural History Bulletin 1 (Supplement), 1 v.
Clarke, A. H., Jr., ed., 1970, Papers on the rare and endangered mollusks of North America: Malacologia, v. 10, no. 1, 56 p.
_____1973, The freshwater molluscs of the Canadian Interior Basin: Malacologia, v. 13, no. 1-2, 509 p.
Clarke, A. H., Jr., and Berg, C. O., 1959, The freshwater mussels of central New York, with an illustrated key to the species of northeastern North America: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station Memoir no. 367, 79 p.
Clench, W. J. 1959, Mollusca, in Edmondson, W. T., ed., Ward and Whipple's Fresh-water biology (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, p. 1117-1160.
Clench, W. J., and Fuller, S. L. H., 1965, The genus Viviparus (Viviparidae) in North America: Harvard University, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 2, p. 385-412.
Clench, W. J., and Turner, R. D., 1956, Freshwater mollusks of Alabama, Georgia, and Florida from the Escambia to the Suwannee River: Gainesville, University of Florida, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 1, no. 3, p. 98-239.
Cvancara, A. M., 1970, Mussels (Unionidae) of the Red River Valley in North Dakota and Minnesota, U.S.A.: Malacologia, v. 10, no. 1, p. 57-92.
Dall, W. H., 1910, Land and freshwater mollusks of Alaska and adjoining regions: Smithsonian Institution, Harriman Alaska Series, v. 13, p. 1-171.
Dawley, C., 1947, Distribution of aquatic mollusks in Minnesota: American Midland Naturalist, v. 38, no. 3, p. 671-697.
Dineen, C. F., 1971, Changes in the molluscan fauna of the Saint Joseph River, Indiana, between 1959 and 1970: Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 80, p. 189-195.
Dundee, D. S., 1974, Catalog of introduced mollusks of eastern North America (north of Mexico): Sterkiana, v. 55, p. 1-37.
Ferguson, F. F., and Richards, C. S., 1963, Fresh-water mollusks of Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands: Transactions of the American Microscopical Society, v. 82, no. 4, p. 391-395.
Filice, F. P., 1958, Invertebrates from the estuarine portion of San Francisco Bay and some factors influencing their distributions: Wasmann Journal of Biology, v. 16, no. 2, p. 159-211.
Fretter, Vera, and Peake, J., eds., 1978, Pulmonates, v. 2A--Systematics, evolution, and ecology: New York, Academic Press, 540 p.
Frierson, L. S., 1927, A classified and annotated checklist of the North American Naiades: Waco, Texas, Baylor University Press, 111 p.

Fuller, S. L. H., 1971, A brief field guide to fresh-water mussels (Mollusca: Bivalvia:Unionacea) of the Savannah River System: ASB (Association Southeastern Biologists) Bulletin, v. 18, p. 139-146.
Fuller, S. L. H., and Bereza, D. J., 1973, Recent additions to the naiad fauna of the eastern Gulf drainage (Bivalvia:Unionoida:Unionidae): ASB (Association Southeastern Biologists) Bulletin, v. 20, p. 53-54.
Goodrich, Calvin, 1922, The Anculosae of the Alabama River drainage: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology, v. 7, 57 p.
_____1924, The genus Gyrotoma: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology, v. 12, 32 p.
_____1931, The Pleurocerid genus Eurycaelon: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 223, p. 1-9.
_____1932, The Mollusca of Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Museum Handbook Series no. 5, 120 p.
_____1934a, Studies of the Gastropod family Pleuroceridae, Part I: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 286, 17 p.
_____1934b, Studies of the Gastropod family Pleuroceridae, Part II: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 295, 6 p.
_____1940, The Pleuroceridae of the Ohio River drainage system: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 417, 21 p.
_____1941a, Distribution of the gastropods of the Cahaba River, Alabama: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 428, p. 1-30.
_____1941b, Studies of the Gastropod family Pleuroceridae, Part VIII: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 447, 13 p.
_____1942, The Pleuroceridae of the Atlantic Coastal Plain: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 456, p. 1-6.
_____1944, Pleuroceridae of the Great Basin: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 485, 11 p.
Goodrich, Calvin, and Van der Schalie, H., 1939, Aquatic mollusks of the Upper Peninsula of Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 43, 45 p.
_____1944, A revision of the Mollusca of Indiana: American Midland Naturalist, v. 32, no. 2, p. 257-326.
Grantham, B. J., 1969, The fresh-water pelecypod fauna of Mississippi: Hattiesburg, University of Southern Mississippi, Ph.D. dissertation, 243 p.
Haas, F., 1969, Superfamilia Unionacea: Berlin, Das Tierreich, v. 88, 663 p.
Haas, F., and contributors, 1969, Superfamily Unionacea: Treatise Invertebrate Paleontology, part N, v. 1 (of 3), Mollusca 6 (Bivalvia), p. N411-N470.
Hanna, G. D., 1966, Introduced mollusks of western North America: San Francisco, Occasional Papers of the California Academy of Sciences, v. 48, 108 p.
Hannibal, H. B., 1912, A synopsis of the Recent and Tertiary freshwater Mollusca of the Californian Province: Proceedings of the Malacological Society of London, v. 10, p. 112-166.

Harman, W. N., and Berg, C. O., 1970, Freshwater Mollusca of the Finger Lakes region of New York: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 70, no. 3, p. 146-150.

_____1971, The freshwater snails of central New York, with illustrated keys to the genera and species: Ithaca, N.Y., Cornell University, Agricultural Experiment Station (Entomology), v. 1, no. 4, 68 p.

Harman, W. N. and Forney, J. L., 1970, Fifty years of change in the molluscan fauna of Oneida Lake, New York: Limnology and Oceanography, v. 15, p. 454-460.

Heard, W. H., 1962, Distribution of Sphaeriidae (Pelecypoda) in Michigan U.S.A.: Malacologia v. 1, no. 1, p. 139-161.

_____1965, Recent Eupera (Pelecypoda:Sphaeriidae) in the United States: American Midland Naturalist, v. 74, p. 309-317.

_____1970, Eastern freshwater mollusks, Part II--The south Atlantic and Gulf drainages, in Clarke, A. H. Jr., ed., Papers on the rare and endangered mollusks of North America: Malacologia, v. 10, no. 1, p. 23-27.

_____1968, Mollusca, in Parrish, F. K., ed., Keys to water quality indicative organisms (southeastern United States): Washington, D.C., Federal Water Pollution Control Administration, p. G1-G26.

Heard, W. H., and Burch, J. B., 1966, Key to the genera of freshwater pelecypods (mussels and clams) of Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Museum of Zoology Circular no. 4, 14 p.

Heard, W. H., and Guckert, R. H., 1970, A re-evalutation of the recent Unionacea (Pelecypoda) of North America: Malacologia, v. 10, no. 2, p. 333-355.

Henderson, Junius, 1924, Mollusca of Colorado, Utah, Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 13, no. 2, p. 65-223.

_____1929, The non-marine mollusca of Oregon and Washington: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 17, no. 2, p. 47-190.

_____1936a, Mollusca of Colorado, Utah, Montana, Idaho, and Wyoming--Supplement: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 23, no. 2, p. 81-145.

_____1936b, The non-marine mollusca of Oregon and Washington--Supplement: Boulder, University of Colorado Studies, v. 23, no. 4, p. 251-280.

Herrington, H. B., 1962, A revision of the Sphaeriidae of North America (Mollusca:Pelecypoda): Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 118, 74 p.

Hubendick, B., 1951, Recent Lymnaedidae, their variation, morphology, taxonomy, nomenclature and distribution: Kungliga Svenska Vetenskapsakademein Handlingar Series 4, v. 3, no. 1, 222 p.

_____1964, Studies on ancyclidae, the subgroups: Meddelanden Fran Goteborgs Musei Zoologiska Avdelning 137 (Goteborgs Kungliga Vetenskaps-Och Vitterhets-Samhalles Handlingar, Sjatte Foljden, Series B), v. 9, no. 6, 72 p.

Ingram, W. M., 1948, The larger freshwater clams of California, Oregon, and Washington: Journal of Entomology and Zoology, v. 40, p. 72-92.

Isely, F. B., 1925, The freshwater mussel fauna of eastern Oklahoma: Stillwater, Proceedings of the Oklahoma Academy of Science, v. 4, p. 43-118.

Isom, B. G., 1969, The mussel resource of the Tennessee River: Malacologia, v. 7, p. 397-425.

Isom, B. G., and Yokley, P., 1968, The mussel fauna of Duck River in Tennessee, 1965: American Midland Naturalist, v. 80, no. 1, p. 34-41.

Johnson, R. I., 1967, Additions to the unionid fauna of the gulf drainage of Alabama, Georgia, and Florida (Mollusca:Bivalvia): Breviora, no. 270, p. 1-21.
_____1970, The systematics and zoogeography of the Unionidae (Mollusca: Bivalvia) of the southern Atlantic Slope region: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 140, no. 6, p. 263-449.
_____1972, The Unionidae (Mollusca:Bivalvia) of peninsular Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 16, no. 4, p. 181-249.
Keen, A. M., and Frizzell, D. L., 1946, Illustrated key to west North American pelecepod genera: Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 28 p.
Keen, A. M., and Pearson, J. C., 1952, Illustrated key to west North American gastropod genera: Stanford, Calif., Stanford University Press, 39 p.
Krumholz, L. A., Bingham, R. L., and Meyer, E. R., 1970, A survey of the commercially valuable mussels of the Wabash and White Rivers of Indiana: Indianapolis, Proceedings of the Indiana Academy of Science, v. 79, p. 205-226.
Leonard, A. B., 1959, Handbook of gastropods in Kansas: Lawrence, University of Kansas Museum of Natural History Miscellaneous Publication no. 20, 224 p.
Mathiak, H. A., 1979, A river survey of the Unionid mussels of Wisconsin 1973-1977: Horicon, Wis., Sand Shell Press, 75 p.
Matteson, M. R., and Dexter, R. W., 1966, Changes in pelecypod populations in Salt Fork of Big Vermilion River, Illinois, 1918-1962: Nautilus, v. 79, no. 3, p. 96-101.
Miles, C. D., 1958, The family Succineidae (Gastropoda:Pulmonata) in Kansas: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 38, pt. 2, no. 24, p. 1499-1543.
Morrison, J. P. E., 1932, A report on the mollusca of the northeastern Wisconsin lake district: Madison, Transactions of the Wisconsin Academy of Sciences, Arts, and Letters, v. 27, p. 359-396.
_____1955a, Family relationships in the North American freshwater mussels: American Malacological Union Annual Report no. 22, p. 16-17.
_____1955b, Notes on the genera Lanx and Fisherola: Nautilus, v. 68, p. 79-83.
Murray, H. D., and Leonard, A. B., 1962, Handbook of unionid mussels in Kansas: Lawrence, University of Kansas Publications, Museum of Natural History no. 28, 184 p.
Murray, H. D., and Roy, E. C., 1968, Checklist of freshwater and land mollusks of Texas: Sterkiana, v. 30, p. 25-42.
Neel, J. K., and Allen, W. A., 1964, The mussel fauna of the Upper Cumberland Basin before its impoundment: Malacologia, v. 1, no. 3, p. 427-459.
Ortmann, A. E., 1911, A monograph of the naiades of Pennsylvania, Parts 1 and 2: Carnegie Museum Memoir, v. 4, p. 279-374.
_____1912, Notes upon the families and genera of the Naiades: Pittsburgh, Annals of the Carnegie Museum, v. 8, p. 222-365.
_____1918, The nayads (freshwater mussels) of the upper Tennessee drainage, with notes on synonomy and distribution: Philadelphia, Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society, v. 57, p. 521-626.
_____1919, A monograph on the naiades of Pennsylvania, Part 3--Systematic account of the genera and species: Carnegie Museum Memoir, v. 8, no. 1, p. 1-384.

_____1923-24, Notes on the anatomy and taxonomy of certain Lampsilinae from the Gulf drainage: Nautilus, v. 37, p. 56-60, 99-105, 137-144.
Ortmann, A. E., and Walker, Bryant, 1922, On the nomenclature of certain North American naiades: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 112, p. 1-75.
Parmalee, P. W., 1967, The fresh-water mussels of Illinois: Springfield, Illinois State Museum Popular Science Series no. 8, 108 p.
Pennak, R. W., 1978, Fresh-water invertebrates of the United States (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 803 p.
Pillsbry, H. A., 1934, Review of the Planorbidae of Florida, with notes on other members of the family: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 86, p. 29-66.
Robertson, I. C. S., and Blakeslee, C. L., 1948, The Mollusca of the Niagara frontier region and adjacent territory: Buffalo Society of Natural Sciences Bulletin, v. 19, no. 3, 191 p.
Runham, N. W., Isarankura, K., and Smith, B. J., 1965, Methods for narcotizing and anaesthetizing gastropods: Malacologia, v. 2, no. 2, p. 231-238.
Scammon, R. E., 1906, The Unionidae of Kansas, Part I: Lawrence, University of Kansas Science Bulletin, v. 3, no. 9, p. 277-373.
Simpson, C. T., 1914, A descriptive catalogue of the naiades, or pearly freshwater mussels: Detroit, Bryant Walker, 1,540 p.
Sinclair, R. M., and Isom, B. G., 1963, Further studies on the introduced asiatic clam Corbicula in Tennessee: Tennessee Department of Public Health, Stream Pollution Control Board, 75 p.
Stansbery, D. H., 1970, Eastern freshwater mollusks, Part I--The Mississippi and St. Lawrence River systems, in Symposium on the rare and endangered mollusks: Malacologia, v. 10, p. 9-22.
Starrett, W. C., 1971, A survey of the mussels (Unionacea) of the Illinois River, a polluted stream: Urbana, Illinois Natural History Survey Bulletin, v. 30, p. 267-403.
Stein, C. B., 1962, Key to the freshwater mussels (family Unionidae) of western Lake Erie: Columbus, Ohio State University, Stone Laboratory, 5 p.
Sterki, V., 1916, A preliminary catalog of the North American Sphaeriidae: Pittsburgh, Annals of the Carnegie Museum, v. 10, p. 429-474.
Strecker, J. K., Jr., 1931, The distribution of the naiades or pearly fresh-water mussels of Texas: Waco, Texas, Baylor University Special Bulletin, no. 2, 69 p.
_____1935, Land and fresh-water snails of Texas: Austin, Transactions of the Texas Academy of Science, v. 17, p. 4-44.
Stunkard, H. W., 1917, Studies on North American Polystomidae, Aspidogastridae, and Paraphistomidae: Illinois Biological Monographs, v. 3, no. 3, 114 p.
Surber, T., 1912, Identification of the glochidia of freshwater mussels: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries, Document no. 771, p. 1-10.
Taft, C., 1961, The shell-bearing land snails of Ohio: Ohio Biological Survey Bulletin, v. 1, no. 3, 108 p.
Taylor, D. W., and Sohl, N. F., 1962, An outline of gastropod classification: Malacologia, v. 1, no. 1, p. 7-32.
Thompson, F. G., 1968, The aquatic snails of the family Hydrobiidae of peninsular Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida Press, 268 p.
_____1970, Some hydrobiid snails from Georgia and Florida: Gainesville, Quarterly Jorunal of the Florida Academy of Sciences, v. 32, p. 241-265.

Tuthill, S. J., and Johnson, R. L., 1969, Nonmarine mollusks of the Katalla region, Alaska: Nautilus, v. 83, p. 44-52.
Tuthill, S. J., and Laird, W. M., 1963-1964, Molluscan fauna of some alkaline lakes and sloughs in southern central North Dakota: Nautilus, v. 77, p. 47-55, 81-90.
Utterback, W. I., 1915-1916, The naiades of Missouri: American Midland Naturalist, v. 4, p. 41-53, 97-152, 181-204, 244-273, 311-327, 339-354, 387-400, 432-464.
Valentine, B. D., and Stansbery, D. H., 1971, An introduction to the naiades of the Lake Texoma region, Oklahoma, with notes on the Red River fauna (Mollusca:Unionidae): Sterkiana, v. 42, p. 1-40.
Van der Schalie, H., 1938a, The naiad fauna of the Huron River, in southeastern Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 40, 83 p.
_____1938b, The naiades (freshwater mussels) of the Cahaba River in northern Alabama: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 392, 29 p.
_____1940, The naiad fauna of the Chipola River, in northwestern Florida: Lloydia, v. 3, p. 191-208.
_____1948, The land and freshwater mollusks of Puerto Rico: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 70, 134 p.
Van der Schalie, H., and Van der Schalie, A., 1950, The mussels of the Mississippi River: American Midland Naturalist, v. 44, p. 448-466.
Walker, B., 1918, A synopsis of the classification of fresh-water mollusca of North America, north of Mexico, and a catalogue of the more recently described species, with notes: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 6, 213 p.
Walter, H. J., and Burch, J. B., 1957, Key to the genera of freshwater gastropods (snails and limpets) occurring in Michigan: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Museum of Zoology Circular no. 3, 8 p.
Webb, W. F., 1942, United States mollusca--A descriptive manual of many of the marine, land and freshwater shells of North America, north of Mexico: Rochester, N.Y., Bookcraft, 220 p.
Wenz, W., 1938-1944, Gastropoda, Band 1--Prosobranchia und Allgemeiner Teil: Koeltz, Germany, Koenigstein-Taunus, 1,639 p.
_____1960, Gastropoda, Band 2--Euthyneura: Koeltz, Germany, Koenigstein-Taunus, 834 p.
Wilson, C. B., and Clark, H. W., 1914, The mussels of the Cumberland River and its tributaries: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries, Document no. 781, 63 p.
Wilson, C. B., and Danglade, E., 1914, The mussel fauna of central and northern Minnesota: U.S. Commission Fisheries Report for 1913, appendix V, p. 1-26. [Issued separately as U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Document no. 803.]
Winslow, M. L., 1926, A revised checklist of Michigan mollusca: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Occasional Papers of the Museum of Zoology no. 181, 28 p.

Marine

Ackerman, B., 1951, Handbook of fishes of the Atlantic seaboard: Washington, D.C., American Publishing Co., 144 p.

Bailey, R. M., Fitch, J. E., and Herald, E. S., 1970, A list of common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada (3d ed.): American Fisheries Society Special Publication no. 6, 150 p.

Baxter, J. L., 1966, Inshore fishes of California (3d ed.): Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, 80 p.

Bearden, C. M., 1961, List of marine fishes recorded from South Carolina: Wadmalaw Island, Bears Bluff Laboratory no. 34, 1 v.

Bigelow, H. B., and Schroeder, W. C., 1953, Fishes of the Gulf of Maine: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Fisheries Bulletin no. 74, 577 p.

_____1954, Deep water elasmobranchs and chimaeroids from the northwestern Atlantic slope: Harvard University, Bulletin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, v. 112, no. 2, p. 35-87.

Böhlke, J. E., and Chaplin, C. G., 1968, Fishes of the Bahamas and adjacent tropical waters: Philadelphia, Livingston Publishing Co., 771 p.

Breder, C. M., Jr., 1948, Field book of marine fishes of the Atlantic coast from Labrador to Texas: New York, G. P. Putnam and Sons, 332 p.

Casey, J. G., 1964, Angler's guide to sharks of the northeastern United States, Maine to Chesapeake Bay: Washington, D.C., U.S. Bureau of Sport Fisheries and Wildlife Circular no. 179, 32 p.

Clemens, W. A., and Wilby, G. V., 1961, Fishes of the Pacific coast of Canada (2d ed.): Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 68, 443 p.

Gosline, W. A., and Brock, V. E., 1960, Handbook of Hawaiian fishes: Honolulu, University of Hawaii Press, 372 p.

Heemstra, P. C., 1965, A field key to the Florida sharks: Florida Board of Conservation, Marine Laboratory Technical Series no. 45, 11 p.

Hildebrand, S. F., and Schroeder, W.C., 1928, Fishes of Chesapeake Bay: U.S. Bureau of Fisheries Bulletin no. 43, pt. 1, 366 p.

Liem, A. H., and Scott, W. B., 1966, Fishes of the Atlantic Coast of Canada: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 155, 485 p.

Lippson, A. J., and Moran, R. L., 1974, Manual for identification of early developmental stages of fishes of the Potomac River estuary: Baltimore, Md., Martin Marietta Corp., Environmental Technology Center, 282 p.

McAllister, D.E., 1960, List of the marine fishes of Canada: National Museum of Canada Bulletin no. 168, 76 p. [Also published in National Museum of Canada Biological Series no. 62.]

McHugh, J. L., and Fitch, J. E., 1951, Annotated list of the Clupeid fishes of the Pacific Coast from Alaska to Cape San Lucas, Baja, California: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, v. 37, p. 491-495.

Miller, D. J., and Lea, R. N., 1972, Guide to the coastal marine fishes of California: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin 157, 235 p.

Perlmutter, A., 1961, Guide to marine fishes: New York, New York University Press, 431 p.

Pew, P., 1954, Food and game fishes of the Texas Coast: Texas Game and Fish Commission Bulletin 33, 68 p.

Pough, R. H., 1951, Audubon water bird guide: Garden City, N.Y., Doubleday, 352 p.

Randall, J. E., 1968, Caribbean reef fishes: Jersey City, N.J., T.F.H. Publications, Inc., 318 p.
Rass, T. S., ed., 1966, Fishes of the Pacific and Indian Oceans--Biology and distribution [translated from Russian]: Israel Prog. for Science Translation, IPST Catalog 1411; TT65-50120, 266 p. [Also published in Frud. Institute Okeaual Transactions no. 73.]
Robins, C. R., 1958, Checklist of the Florida game and commercial marine fishes, including those of the Gulf of Mexico and the West Indies, with approved common names: Florida Department of Natural Resources, Education Series no. 12, 46 p.
Roedel, P. M., 1948, Common marine fishes of California: Sacramento, California Division of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin no. 68, 150 p.
Schwartz, F. J., 1970, Marine fishes common to North Carolina: North Carolina Department of Natural and Economic Resources, Division of Commercial and Sport Fisheries, 32 p.
Taylor, H. F., 1951, Survey of marine fisheries of North Carolina: Chapel Hill, University of North Carolina Press, 555 p.
Thompson, J. R., and Springer, S., 1961, Sharks, skates, rays, and chimaeras: U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Bureau of Commercial Fisheries Circular no. 228, 18 p.
Thomson, K. S., Weed, W. H., Taruski, A. G., and Simanek, D. E., 1978, Saltwater fishes of Connecticut (2d ed.): Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin 105, 186 p.
Tinker, S. W., 1978, Fishes of Hawaii, a handbook of the marine fishes of Hawaii and the central Pacific Ocean: Hawaiian Services, Inc., 532 p.
Walford, L. A., 1937, Marine game fishes of the Pacific Coast from Alaska to the Equator: Berkeley, University of California Press, 205 p.

Freshwater

Addair, J., 1944, The fishes of the Kanawha River system in West Virginia and some factors which influence their distribution: Columbus, Ohio State University, Ph.D. dissertation, 225 p.
Altig, R., 1970, A key to the tadpoles of the continental United States and Canada: Herpetologica, v. 26, no. 2, p. 180-207.
Babcock, H. L., 1971, Turtles of the northeastern United States: New York, Dover Publications, 105 p.
Bailey, J. R., and Oliver, J. A., 1939, The fishes of the Connecticut watershed, in Biological survey of the Connecticut watershed: Concord, New Hampshire Fish and Game Department, Biological Survey Report no. 4, p. 150-189.
Bailey, R. M., 1938, Key to the freshwater fishes of New Hampshire, in The fishes of the Merrimack watershed: Concord, New Hampshire Fish and Game Department, Biological Survey Report no. 3, p. 149-185.
_____1956, A revised list of the fishes of Iowa, with keys for identification, in Harlan, J. R., and Speaker, E. B., eds., Iowa fish and fishing (3d ed.): Iowa State Conservation Commission, p. 327-377.
Bailey, R. M., and Allum, M. O., 1962, Fishes of South Dakota: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Miscellaneous Publications of the Museum of Zoology no. 119, 131 p.
Bailey, R. M., Fitch, J. E., and Herald, E. S., 1970, A list of common and scientific names of fishes from the United States and Canada (3d ed.): American Fisheries Society Special Publication no. 6, 150 p.

Bailey, R. M., Winn, H. E., and Smith, C. L., 1954, Fishes from the Escambia River, Alabama and Florida, with ecological and taxonomic notes: Proceedings of the Academy of Natural Sciences of Philadelphia, v. 106, p. 109-164.

Baxter, G. T., and Simon, J. R., 1970, Wyoming fishes: Wyoming Game and Fish Department Bulletin no. 4, 168 p.

Bean, T. H., 1903, Catalogue of the fishes of New York: Albany, New York State Museum and Science Service Bulletin no. 60, 784 p.

Beckman, W. C., 1952, Guide to the fishes of Colorado: Boulder, University of Colorado, Museum Leaflet no. 11, 110 p.

Bishop, S. C., 1947, Handbook of salamanders: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 555 p.

Black, J. D., 1940, The distribution of the fishes of Arkansas: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Ph.D. dissertation, 243 p.

Blair, W. F., Blair, A. P., Brodkarb, F. R., Cagle, F. R., and Moore, G. A., 1968, Vertebrates of the United States: New York, McGraw-Hill, 616 p.

Bond, C. E., 1961, Keys to Oregon freshwater fishes: Corvallis, Oregon State University, Agricultural Experiment Station Technical Bulletin no. 58, 42 p.

Brandon, R. A., 1961, A comparison of the larvae of five northeastern species of Ambystoma (Amphibia, Caudata): Copeia, v. 4, p. 377-383.

_____1964, An annotated and illustrated key to multistage larvae of Ohio salamanders: Ohio Journal of Science, v. 64, no. 4, p. 252-258.

Briggs, J. C., 1958, A list of Florida fishes and their distribution: Gainesville, University of Florida, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 2, p. 224-318.

Burr, J. G., 1932, Fishes of Texas--Handbook of the more important game and commercial types: Texas Game, Fish, and Oyster Commission Bulletin no. 5, 41 p.

Carpenter, R. G., and Siegler, H. R., 1947, A sportsman's guide to the fresh-water fishes of New Hampshire: Concord, New Hampshire Fish and Game Department, 87 p.

Carr, A. F., Jr., 1936, A key to the fresh-water fishes of Florida: Gainesville, Proceedings of the Florida Academy of Sciences, p. 72-86.

_____1952, Handbook of turtles: Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 542 p.

Carr, A. F., Jr., and Goin, C. J., 1955, Guide to the reptiles, amphibians and fresh-water fishes of Florida: Gainesville, University of Florida Press, 341 p.

Churchill, E. P., and Over, W. H., 1933, Fishes of South Dakota: Pierre, South Dakota Department of Game and Fish, 87 p.

Clay, W. M., 1962, A field manual of Kentucky fishes: Frankfort, Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, 147 p.

_____1975, The fishes of Kentucky: Frankfort, Kentucky Department of Fish and Wildlife Resources, 416 p.

Conant, Roger, 1975, A field guide to reptiles and amphibians of eastern and central North America (2d ed.): Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 429 p.

Cook, F. A., 1959, Freshwater fishes in Mississippi: Jackson, Mississippi Game and Fish Commission, 239 p.

Cooper, G. P., 1939-1945, Biological surveys of various watersheds of Maine: Augusta, Maine Department of Inland Fisheries and Game, Fish Survey Reports nos. 1-6, various pagination.

Courtenay, W. R., Jr., and Robins, C. R., 1973, Exotic aquatic organisms in Florida, with emphasis on fishes--A review and recommendations: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 102, no. 1, p. 1-12.
Cross, F. B., 1967, Handbook of fishes of Kansas: Lawrence, University of Kansas Museum of Natural History Miscellaneous Publication no. 45, 357 p.
Dahlberg, M. D., and Scott, D. C., 1971, The fresh water fishes of Georgia: Atlanta, Bulletin of the Georgia Academy of Science 29, p. 1-64.
Davis, R. M., 1974, Key to the freshwater fishes of Maryland: Baltimore, Maryland Department of Natural Resources, 48 p.
Denoncourt, R. F., and Cooper, E. L., 1975, A review of the literature and checklist of fishes of the Susquehanna River drainage above Conowingo Dam: University Park, Proceedings of the Pennsylvania Academy of Science, v. 49, no. 2, p. 121-125.
Denoncourt, R. F., Raney, E. C., Hocutt, C. H., and Stauffer, J. R., Jr., 1975, A checklist of the fishes of West Virginia: Hopewell, Virginia Journal of Science, v. 26, no. 3, p. 117-120.
Dickerson, M. C., 1969, The frog book: New York, Dover Publications, 253 p.
Dill, W. A., 1944, The fishery of the lower Colorado River: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, v. 30, no. 3, p. 109-211.
Douglas, N. H., and Davis, J. T., 1967, A checklist of the freshwater fishes of Louisiana: Louisiana Wildlife and Fisheries Commission, p. 7-29.
Duellman, W. E., and Schwartz, A., 1958, Amphibians and reptiles of southern Florida: Gainesville, Bulletin of the Florida State Museum Biological Sciences, v. 3, no. 5, p. 182-324.
Eddy, Samuel, 1978, How to know the freshwater fishes (3d ed.): Dubuque, Iowa, W. C. Brown Co., 215 p.
Eddy, Samuel, and Underhill, J. C., 1974, Northern fishes (3d ed.): Minneapolis, University of Minnesota Press, 414 p.
Everhart, W. H., 1958, Fishes of Maine: Augusta, Maine Department of Inland Fisheries and Game, 96 p.
Evermann, B. W., and Clark, H. W., 1920, Lake Maxinkuckee, a physical and biological survey: Indiana State Department of Conservation Publication no. 7, 660 p. [Fishes, p. 238-451.]
Forbes, S. A., and Richardson, R. E., 1920, The fishes of Illinois (2d ed.): Springfield, Natural History Survey of Illinois, v. 3, 357 p.
Fowler, H. W., 1906, The fishes of New Jersey: Trenton, New Jersey State Museum, 1905 Annual Report, Part 2, p. 35-477.
_____1945, A study of the fishes of the southern Piedmont and coastal plain: Monograph of the Academy of Natural Science of Philadelphia no. 7, 408 p.
Gerking, S. D., 1945, The distribution of the fishes of Indiana: Investigations of Indiana Lakes and Streams, v. 3, p. 1-137.
_____1955, Key to the fishes of Indiana: Investigations of Indiana Lakes and Streams, v. 4, p. 49-86.
Gowanloch, J. N., 1965, Fishes and fishing in Louisiana: Louisiana Department of Conservation Bulletin no. 23, 701 p.
Greeley, J. R., 1927 to 1940, Various papers on the fishes of New York rivers: New York State Conservation Department Supplements to the 16th through 29th Annual Report, various pagination.
Greene, C. W., 1935, The distribution of Wisconsin fishes: Wisconsin Conservation Commission, 235 p.
Hankinson, T. L., 1929, Fishes of North Dakota: Ann Arbor, Papers of the Michigan Academy of Science, Arts, and Letters, v. 10, p. 439-460.

Harmic, J. L., 1952, A checklist of fishes found in Delaware, in Freshwater fisheries survey: Delaware Board of Game and Fish Commissioners, Fisheries Publication 1, 154 p.
Harlan, J. R., and Speaker, E. B., 1956, Iowa fish and fishing (3d ed.): Des Moines, Iowa State Conservation Commission, 337 p.
Hasting, R. W., 1977, Characteristics of the New Jersey Pine Barrens fish fauna: American Society of Ichthyologists and Herptologists 57th, Gainesville, Fla., Proceedings, various pagination.
Hitch, R. K., and Etnier, D. A., 1974, Fishes of the Hiwassee River system: Journal of the Tennessee Academy of Science, v. 49, no. 3, p. 81-87.
Hocutt, C. H., Denoncourt, R. F., and Stauffer, J. R., Jr., 1978, Fishes of the Greenbrier River, West Virginia, with drainage history of the central Appalachians: Journal of Biogeography, v. 5, no. 1, p. 59-80.
Hubbs, C. L., 1957, Distributional patterns of Texas freshwater fishes: Southwestern Naturalist, v. 2, p. 89-104.
_____1961, A checklist of Texas freshwater fishes: Texas Fish and Game Commission, Division of Inland Fisheries, Series 3, 14 p.
Hubbs, C. L., and Cooper, G. P., 1964, Fishes of the Great Lakes region: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan Press, 213 p.
Jenkins, R. E., Burkhead, N. M., and Jenkins, D. J., 1976, An ichthyologist looks at Virginia: Virginia Wildlife, v. 37, no. 7, p. 20-22.
Jenkins, R. E., Lachner, E. A., and Schwartz, F. J., 1972, Fishes of the central Appalachian drainages, their distribution and dispersal, in Holt, P. C., ed., The distributional history of the biota of the southern Appalachians, Part III--Vertebrates: Blacksburg, Va., Research Division Monograph no. 4, p. 177.
Johnson, R. E., 1942, The distribution of Nebraska fishes: Ann Arbor, University of Michigan, Ph.D. dissertation, 145 p.
Jordan, D. S., Evermann, B. W., and Clark, H. W., 1930, Checklist of the fishes and fish-like vertebrates of North and Middle America north of the northern boundary of Venezuela and Colombia: Washington, D.C., U.S. Bureau of Fisheries, 670 p.
Kendall, W. C., 1914, The fishes of Maine: Portland Society of Natural History Proceedings, 198 p.
Kimsey, J. B., and Fisk, L. O., 1960, Keys to the freshwater and anadromous fishes of California: California Department of Fish and Game, v. 46, no. 4, p. 453-479.
King, W., 1947, Important food and game fishes of North Carolina: North Carolina Department of Conservation and Development, 54 p.
Knapp, F. T., 1953, Fishes found in the freshwaters of Texas: Brunswick, Ga., Ragland Studio and Litho Printing Co., 166 p.
Koster, J., 1957, Guide to the fishes of New Mexico: Albuquerque, University of New Mexico Press, 116 p.
Kuhne, E. R., 1939, A guide to the fishes of Tennessee and the mid-South: Knoxville, Tennessee Department of Conservation, 124 p.
LaMonte, F. R., 1945, North American game fishes: Garden City, Doubleday, 202 p.
LaRivers, Ira, 1962, Fishes and fisheries of Nevada: Reno, Nevada State Fish and Game Commissions, 782 p.
LaRivers, Ira, and Trelease, T. J., 1952, An annotated checklist of the fishes of Nevada: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, v. 38, p. 113-123.

Lee, D. S., Gilbert, C. R., Hocutt, C. H., Jenkins, R. E., McAllister, D. E., and Stauffer, J. R., Jr., 1980, Atlas of North American freshwater fishes: North Carolina State Museum of Natural History, North Carolina Biological Survey, Publication 1980-12, 1 v.

Lee, D. S., Norden, A., Gilbert, C. R., and Franz, R., 1976, A list of the freshwater fishes of Maryland and Delaware: Chesapeake Science, v. 17, no. 3, p. 205-211.

Loyacano, H. A., 1975, A list of freshwater fishes of South Carolina: Clemsen University, South Carolina Agricultural Experiment Station Bulletin 580, 8 p.

McCabe, B. C., 1945, Fishes, in Fisheries survey report 1942: Massachusetts Department of Conservation, p. 30-68.

McKeown, S., 1978, Hawaiian reptiles and amphibians: Honolulu, The Oriental Publishing Co., 80 p.

McPhail, J. D., and Lindsey, C. C., 1970, Freshwater fishes of northwestern Canada and Alaska: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 173, 381 p.

Masnik, M. T., 1974, Composition, longitudinal distribution, and zoogeography of the fish fauna of the upper Clinch system in Tennessee and Virginia: Blacksburg, Virginia Polytechnic Institute, Ph.D. dissertation, 401 p.

Menhinick, E. F., Burton, T. M., and Bailey, J. R., 1974, An annotated checklist of the freshwater fishes of North Carolina: Journal of the Elisha Mitchell Scientific Society, v. 90, no. 1, p. 24-50.

Mettee, M. F., 1978, The fishes of the Birmingham-Jefferson County region of Alabama, with ecological and taxonomic notes: Tuscaloosa, Geological Survey of Alabama Bulletin no. 115, 182 p.

Miller, R. R., 1952, Bait fishes of the Lower Colorado River from Lake Mead, Nevada, to Yuma, Arizona, with a key for their identification: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, v. 38, p. 7-42.

Milstein, C. B., and Thomas, D. L., 1976, Fishes new or uncommon to the New Jersey coast: Chesapeake Science, v. 17, no. 3, p. 198-204.

Moore, G. A., 1968, Fishes, in Vertebrates of the United States: New York, McGraw-Hill, p. 22-165.

Moore, G. A., and Riggs, C. D., 1965, Checklist of known Oklahoma fishes, in Know your Oklahoma fishes: Oklahoma Department of Wildlife Conservation, p. 41-44.

Morita, C. M., 1963, Freshwater fishing in Hawaii: Honolulu, Department of Land and Natural Resources, Division of Fish and Game, 20 p.

Morrow, J. E., 1974, Illustrated keys to the freshwater fishes of Alaska: Anchorage, Alaska Northwest Publishing Co., 78 p.

Moyle, P. B., 1976, Inland fishes of California: Berkeley, University of California Press, 405 p.

Oliver, J. A., and Shaw, C. E., 1953, The amphibians and reptiles of the Hawaiian islands: Zoologica, v. 38, p. 65-95.

Pflieger, W. L., 1976, The fishes of Missouri: Jefferson City, Missouri Department of Conservation, 343 p.

Pough, R. H., 1951, Audubon water bird guide: New York, Doubleday, 352 p.

Raney, E. C., 1950, Freshwater fishes, in The James River basin, past, present, future: Richmond, Virginia Academy of Science, p. 151-194.

Richards, J. S., 1976, Changes in fish species composition in the Au Sable River, Michigan, from the 1920's to 1972: Transactions of the American Fisheries Society, v. 105, no. 1, p. 32-40.

Scarola, J. F., 1973, Freshwater fishes of New Hampshire: Concord, New Hampshire Fish and Game Department, 131 p.
Schultz, L. P., 1936, Keys to the fishes of Washington, Oregon, and closely adjoining regions: Seattle, University of Washington, Publications in Biology, v. 2, no. 4, p. 105-228.
_____1941, Fishes of Glacier National Park, Montana: U.S. Department of the Interior Conservation Bulletin no. 22, 42 p.
Scott, W. B., and Crossman, E. J., 1969, Checklist of Canadian freshwater fishes, with keys to identification: Toronto, University of Toronto, Royal Ontario Museum Life Science Miscellaneous Publication, 104 p.
_____1973, Freshwater fishes of Canada: Fisheries Research Board of Canada Bulletin no. 184, 966 p.
Sigler, W. F., and Miller, R. R., 1963, Fishes of Utah: Salt Lake City, Utah State Department of Fish and Game, 203 p.
Simon, J. R., 1939, Yellowstone fishes: Yellowstone Park, Yellowstone Library and Museum Association, 39 p.
_____1946, Wyoming fishes: Wyoming Game and Fish Department Bulletin no. 4, 129 p.
Smith, H. M., 1907, The fishes of North Carolina: Raleigh, North Carolina Geological and Economic Survey, v. 2, 453 p.
Smith-Vaniz, W. F., 1968, Freshwater fishes of Alabama: Auburn, Auburn University, Agricultural Experiment Station, 211 p.
Stauffer, J. R., Hocutt, C. H., and Denoncourt, R. F., Fishes of the Guyandotte River, West Virginia: M.S. thesis.
Stauffer, J. R., Hocutt, C. H., and Lee, D. S., 1978, The zoogeography of the freshwater fishes of the Potomac River, in Flynn, K.C., and Mason, W. T., eds., The freshwater Potomac--Aquatic communities and environmental stresses: Rockville, Interstate Commission Potomac River Basin 78-2, p. 44-54.
Stebbins, R. C., 1966, A field guide to western reptiles and amphibians, field marks species in western North America: Boston, Houghton Mifflin, 279 p.
Tomichama, M. T., 1972, The biology of Sicydium Stimpsoni, freshwater goby endemic to Hawaii: Honolulu, University of Hawaii, 175 p.
Trautman, M. B., 1957, The fishes of Ohio, with illustrated keys: Columbus, Ohio State University Press, 683 p.
Van Meter, H., 1950, Identifying fifty prominent fishes of West Virginia: West Virginia Conservation Commission, Division of Fish Management Publication no. 3, 45 p.
Van Oosten, John, 1957, Great Lakes fauna, flora and their environment--A bibliography: Ann Arbor, Mich., Great Lakes Commission, 86 p.
Walford, L. A., 1931, Handbook of common commercial and game fishes of California: Sacramento, California Department of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin no. 28, 183 p. [Also published as California State Fisheries Contribution no. 102.]
Walters, Vladimir, 1955, Fishes of western Arctic America and eastern Artic Siberia: New York, Bulletin of the American Museum of Natural History, v. 106, no. 5, p. 255-368.
Ward, H. C., 1953, Know your Oklahoma fishes: Oklahoma City, Oklahoma Game and Fish Department, 40 p.
Whitworth, W. R., Berrien, P. L., and Keller, W. T., 1968, Freshwater fishes of Connecticut: Middletown, State Geological and Natural History Survey of Connecticut Bulletin no. 101, 134 p.

Wilimovsky, N. J., 1954, List of the fishes of Alaska: Stanford, Calif., Stanford University, Natural History Museum Ichthyological Bulletin no. 4, p. 279-294.

Williams, J. D., 1965, Studies on the fishes of the Tallapoosa River system, Alabama and Georgia: Tuscaloosa, University of Alabama, M.A. thesis, 135 p.

Winfield, J. M., 1976, Distribution of fishes of the Little Tennessee River system: Knoxville, University of Tennessee, M.A. thesis, 77 p.

Wright, A. H., and Wright, A. A., 1949, Handbook of frogs and toads of the United States and Canada (3d ed.): Ithaca, N.Y., Comstock Publishing Co., 640 p.

☆ U.S. GOVERNMENT PRINTING OFFICE: 1988—575-227/85,138 REGION NO. 8